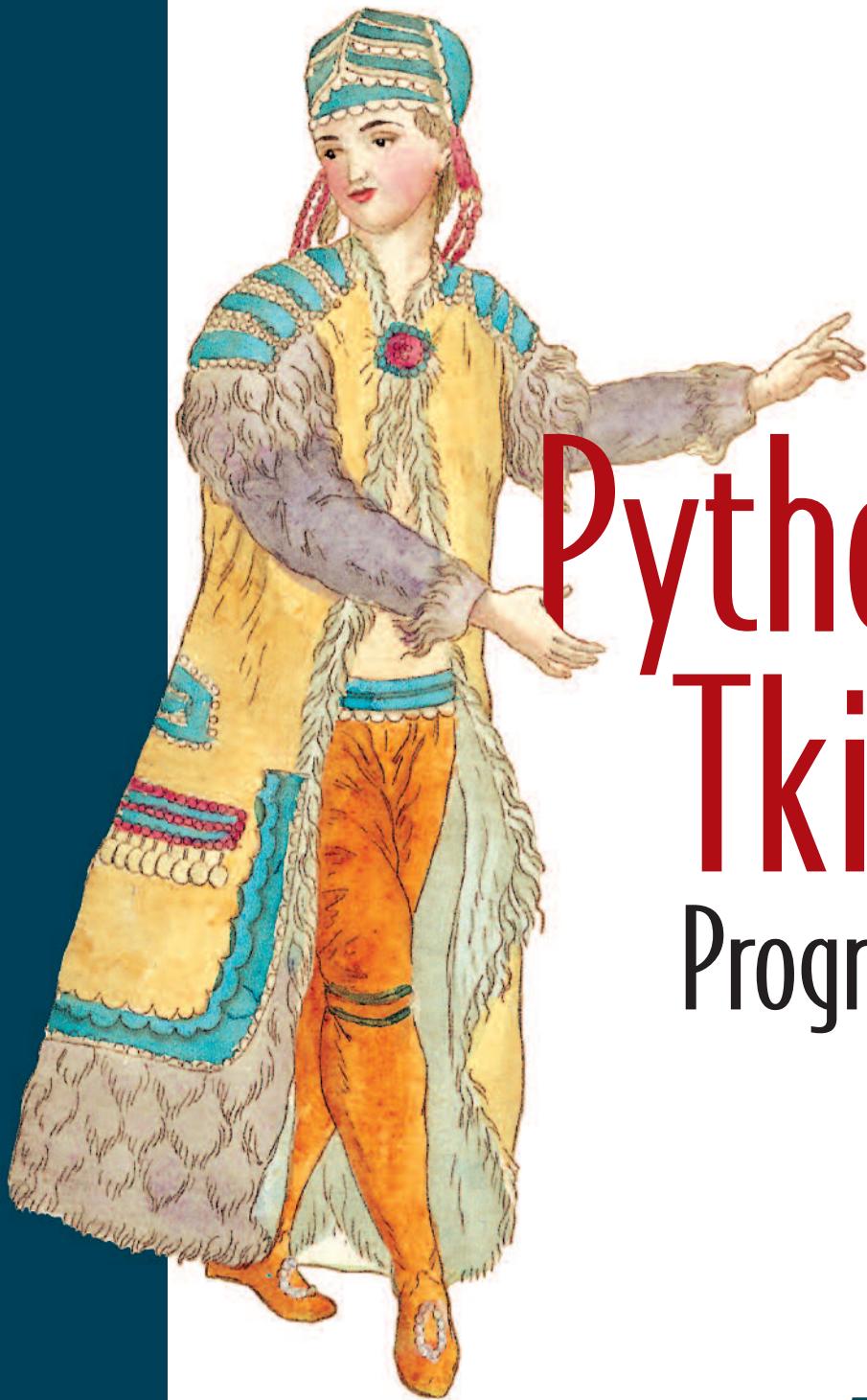


Graphical user interfaces for Python programs

John E. Grayson



# Python and Tkinter Programming

MANNING

# *Python and Tkinter Programming*



# *Python and Tkinter Programming*

---

JOHN E. GRAYSON



MANNING

Greenwich  
(74° w. long.)

For online information and ordering of this and other Manning books,  
go to [www.manning.com](http://www.manning.com). The publisher offers discounts on this book  
when ordered in quantity. For more information, please contact:

Special Sales Department  
Manning Publications Co.  
32 Lafayette Place                  Fax: (203) 661-9018  
Greenwich, CT 06830                  email: [orders@manning.com](mailto:orders@manning.com)

©2000 by Manning Publications Co. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior written permission of the publisher.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in the book, and Manning Publications was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

⊗ Recognizing the importance of preserving what has been written, it is Manning's policy to have the books we publish printed on acid-free paper, and we exert our best efforts to that end.



Manning Publications Co.  
32 Lafayette Place  
Greenwich, CT 06830

Copyeditor: Kristen Black  
Typesetter: Dottie Marsico  
Cover designer: Leslie Haimes

Second corrected printing 2000  
Printed in the United States of America  
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 – CM – 03 02 01 00

To the memory of Backy, who taught me the value of language.



# *brief contents*

---

*preface xv  
special thanks xvii  
about the reader xix  
about the author xx  
conventions xxi  
about the cover xxii  
author online xxiii*

## *Part I Basic concepts 1*

- 1 Python 3*
- 2 Tkinter 12*
- 3 Building an application 18*

## *Part 2 Displays 29*

- 4 Tkinter widgets 31*
- 5 Screen layout 77*
- 6 Events, bindings and callbacks 95*
- 7 Using classes, composites and special widgets 120*
- 8 Dialogs and forms 140*
- 9 Panels and machines 199*
- 10 Drawing blobs and rubber lines 237*
- 11 Graphs and charts 276*
- 12 Navigation 300*
- 13 The window manager 306*

## *Part 3 Putting it all together... 311*

- 14 Extending Python 313*
- 15 Debugging applications 329*
- 16 Designing effective graphics applications 338*
- 17 Programming for performance 348*
- 18 Threads and asynchronous techniques 361*
- 19 Distributing Tkinter applications 374*

## *Part 4 Appendices 381*

- appendix A Mapping Tk to Tkinter 383*
- appendix B Tkinter reference 425*
- appendix C Pmw reference: Python megawidgets 542*
- appendix D Building and installing Python, Tkinter 610*
- appendix E Events and keysyms 617*
- appendix F Cursors 621*
- appendix G References 625*
- index 629*

# *contents*

---

<i>preface</i>	xv
<i>special thanks</i>	xvii
<i>about the reader</i>	xix
<i>about the author</i>	xx
<i>conventions</i>	xxi
<i>about the cover</i>	xxii
<i>author online</i>	xxiii

## *Part I Basic concepts 1*

### **1 Python 3**

- 1.1 Introduction to Python programming and a feature review 3
  - Why Python? 4, Where can Python be used? 5
- 1.2 Key data types: lists, tuples and dictionaries 5
  - Lists 5, Tuples 7, Dictionaries 8
- 1.3 Classes 9
  - How do classes describe objects? 9, Defining classes 9, Neat Python trick #10 9, Initializing an instance 10, Methods 10, Private and public variables and methods 11, Inheritance 11, Multiple inheritance 11, Mixin classes 11

### **2 Tkinter 12**

- 2.1 The Tkinter module 12
  - What is Tkinter? 12, What about performance? 13, How do I use Tkinter? 13, Tkinter features 14
- 2.2 Mapping Tcl/Tk to Tkinter 14
- 2.3 Win32 and UNIX GUIs 15

- 2.4 Tkinter class hierarchy 16
- 2.5 Tkinter widget appearance 17

### **3 Building an application 18**

- 3.1 Calculator example: key features 21
- 3.2 Calculator example: source code 21
- 3.3 Examining the application structure 27
- 3.4 Extending the application 28

## *Part 2 Displays 29*

### **4 Tkinter widgets 31**

- 4.1 Tkinter widget tour 31
  - Toplevel 32, Frame 33, Label 35, Button 36, Entry 37, Radiobutton 37, Checkbutton 38, Menu 39, Message 42, Text 43, Canvas 44, Scrollbar 45, Listbox 45, Scale 46
- 4.2 Fonts and colors 47
  - Font descriptors 47, X Window System font descriptors 47, Colors 48, Setting application-wide default fonts and colors 49
- 4.3 Pmw Megawidget tour 49
  - AboutDialog 50, Balloon 50, ButtonBox 51, ComboBox 52, ComboBoxDialog 53, Counter 54, CounterDialog 55, Dialog 56, EntryField 56, Group 57, LabeledWidget 58, MenuBar 59, MessageBar 59, MessageDialog 61, NoteBookR 61, NoteBookS 62, NoteBook 63, OptionMenu 64, PanedWidget 65, PromptDialog 66, RadioSelect 66, ScrolledCanvas 67, ScrolledField 68, ScrolledFrame 69, ScrolledListbox 70, ScrolledText 70, SelectionDialog 71, TextDialog 72, TimeCounter 73
- 4.4 Creating new megawidgets 73
  - Description of the megawidget 73, Options 74, Creating the megawidget class 74

### **5 Screen layout 77**

- 5.1 Introduction to layout 77
  - Geometry management 78
- 5.2 Packer 79
  - Using the expand option 82, Using the fill option 82, Using the padx and pady options 84, Using the anchor option 84, Using hierarchical packing 84
- 5.3 Grid 86
- 5.4 Placer 90
- 5.5 Summary 94

## **6 Events, bindings and callbacks 95**

- 6.1 Event-driven systems: a review 95
  - What are events? 96, Event propagation 97, Event types 97
- 6.2 Tkinter events 98
  - Events 98
- 6.3 Callbacks 102
- 6.4 Lambda expressions 103
  - Avoiding lambdas altogether 103
- 6.5 Binding events and callbacks 104
  - Bind methods 104, Handling multiple bindings 106
- 6.6 Timers and background procedures 107
- 6.7 Dynamic callback handlers 107
- 6.8 Putting events to work 108
  - Binding widgets to dynamic data 108, Data verification 111, Formatted (smart) widgets 117
- 6.9 Summary 119

## **7 Using classes, composites and special widgets 120**

- 7.1 Creating a Light Emitting Diode class 120
  - Let's try that again 126, What has changed? 129
- 7.2 Building a class library 129
  - Adding a hex nut to our class library 131, Creating a switch class 133, Building a MegaWidget 136
- 7.3 Summary 139

## **8 Dialogs and forms 140**

- 8.1 Dialogs 141
  - Standard dialogs 141, Data entry dialogs 142, Single-shot forms 146, Tkinter variables 152
- 8.2 A standard application framework 155
- 8.3 Data dictionaries 165
- 8.4 Notebooks 172
- 8.5 Browsers 175
- 8.6 Wizards 184
- 8.7 Image maps 191
- 8.8 Summary 198

## **9 Panels and machines 199**

- 9.1 Building a front panel 199
- 9.2 Modularity 201

- 9.3 Implementing the front panel 201
- 9.4 GIF, BMP and overlays 215
- 9.5 And now for a more complete example 220
- 9.6 Virtual machines using POV-Ray 232
  - And now for something completely different... #10 The Example 233
- 9.7 Summary 236

## ***10 Drawing blobs and rubber lines 237***

- 10.1 Drawing on a canvas 238
- Moving canvas objects 243
- 10.2 A more complete drawing program 244
- 10.3 Scrolled canvases 251
- 10.4 Ruler-class tools 254
- 10.5 Stretching canvas objects 258
- 10.6 Some finishing touches 262
- 10.7 Speed drawing 271
- 10.8 Summary 275

## ***11 Graphs and charts 276***

- 11.1 Simple graphs 276
- 11.2 A graph widget 279
  - Adding bargraphs 286, Pie charts 289
- 11.3 3-D graphs 292
- 11.4 Strip charts 296
- 11.5 Summary 298

## ***12 Navigation 300***

- 12.1 Introduction: navigation models 300
- 12.2 Mouse navigation 301
- 12.3 Keyboard navigation: “mouseless navigation” 301
- 12.4 Building navigation into an application 302
- 12.5 Image maps 305
- 12.6 Summary 305

## ***13 The window manager 306***

- 13.1 What is a window manager? 306
- 13.2 Geometry methods 307
- 13.3 Visibility methods 308
- 13.4 Icon methods 309

13.5	Protocol methods	309
13.6	Miscellaneous wm methods	310

## *Part 3 Putting it all together... 311*

### **14 Extending Python 313**

14.1	Writing a Python extension	313
14.2	Building Python extensions	316
	Linking an extension statically in UNIX	316,
	Linking an extension statically in Windows	317,
	Building a dynamic module in UNIX	317,
	Building a dynamic module in Windows	318,
	Installing dynamic modules	319,
	Using dynamic modules	319
14.3	Using the Python API in extensions	319
14.4	Building extensions in C++	320
14.5	Format strings	321
14.6	Reference counts	324
14.7	Embedding Python	325
14.8	Summary	328

### **15 Debugging applications 329**

15.1	Why print statements?	329
15.2	A simple example	330
15.3	How to debug	333
15.4	A Tkinter explorer	334
15.5	pdb	336
15.6	IDLE	336
15.7	DDD	337

### **16 Designing effective graphics applications 338**

16.1	The elements of good interface design	339
16.2	Human factors	342
	Choosing fonts	343,
	Use of color in graphical user interfaces	344,
	Size considerations	346
16.3	Alternative graphical user interfaces	346
16.4	Summary	347

### **17 Programming for performance 348**

17.1	Everyday speedups	348
	Program organization	349,
	Using the Python optimizer	350,
	Examining code	350

17.2	Tkinter performance	350		
	Keep it short!	350, Eliminate local variables	351, Keep it simple	351,
	Fast initialization	352, Throttling events	352	
17.3	Python techniques	352		
	Importing modules	353, Concatenating strings	353, Getting nested	
	loops right	354, Eliminate module references	354, Use local variables	355,
	Using exceptions	356, Using map, filter and reduce	356	
17.4	Application profiling	357		
17.5	Python extensions	359		
17.6	Summary	360		
<b>18</b>	<b><i>Threads and asynchronous techniques</i></b>	<b>361</b>		
18.1	Threading	361		
	Non-GUI threads	362, GUI threads	365	
18.2	“after” processing	369		
18.3	Summary	373		
<b>19</b>	<b><i>Distributing Tkinter applications</i></b>	<b>374</b>		
19.1	General issues in distributing applications	374		
19.2	Distributing UNIX applications	375		
19.3	Distributing Win32 applications	376		
19.4	Python distribution tools	379		

## *Part 4 Appendices* 381

<i>appendix A Mapping Tk to Tkinter</i>	383
<i>appendix B Tkinter reference</i>	425
<i>appendix C Pmw reference: Python megawidgets</i>	542
<i>appendix D Building and installing Python, Tkinter</i>	610
<i>appendix E Events and keysyms</i>	617
<i>appendix F Cursors</i>	621
<i>appendix G References</i>	625
<i>index</i>	629

# *preface*

---

I first encountered Python in 1993 when I joined a small company in Rhode Island. Their primary product was a GUI-builder for X/Motif that generated code for C, C++, Ada and Python. I was tasked with extending the object-oriented interface for X/Motif and Python. In the past I'd become skeptical about the use of interpretive languages, so I began the task with little excitement. Two days later I was hooked. It was easy to develop interfaces that would have taken much more time and code to develop in C. Soon after, I began to choose interfaces developed using the Python interface in preference to compiled C code.

After I left the company in Rhode Island, I began to develop applications using Tkinter, which had become the preeminent GUI for Python. I persuaded one company, where I was working on contract, to use Python to build a code-generator to help complete a huge project that was in danger of overrunning time and budget. The project was a success. Four years later there are many Python programmers in that company and some projects now use Tkinter and Python for a considerable part of their code.

It was this experience, though, that led me to start writing this book. Very little documentation was available for Tkinter in the early days. The *Tkinter Life Preserver* was the first document that helped people pull basic information together. In 1997 Fredrik Lundh released some excellent documentation for the widget classes on the web, and this has served Tkinter programmers well in the past couple of years. One of the problems that I saw was that although there were several example programs available (the Python distribution contains several), they were mostly brief in content and did not represent a framework for a full application written with Tkinter. Of course, it is easy to connect bits of code together to make it do more but when the underlying architecture relies on an interpreter it is easy to produce an inferior product, in terms of execution speed, aesthetics, maintainability and extensibility.

So, one of the first questions that I was asked about writing Tkinter was "How do I make an XXX?" I'd usually hand the person a chunk of code that I'd written and, like most professional programmers, they would work out the details. I believe strongly that learning from full, working examples is an excellent way of learning how to program in a particular language and to achieve particular goals.

When I was training in karate, we frequently traveled to the world headquarters of Shukokai, in New Jersey, to train with the late Sensei Shigeru Kimura. Sensei Kimura often told us "I

can't *teach* you how to do this (a particular technique)—you have to *steal* it.” My approach to learning Tkinter is similar. If someone in the community has solved a problem, we need to steal it from them. Now, I am not suggesting that we infringe copyright and professional practice! I simply mean you should learn from whatever material is available. I hope that you will use the examples in the book as a starting point for your own creations. In a small number of cases I have used code or the ideas of other programmers. If this is the case I have given the original author an appropriate acknowledgment. If you use one of these pieces of code, I'd appreciate it if you would also acknowledge the original author. After all, what we “steal” has more value than what we produce ourselves—it came from the *Sensei!*

I was impressed by the format of Douglas A. Young's *The X Window System: Programming and Applications with Xt*. It is a little old now, but it had a high proportion of complete code examples, some of which made excellent templates upon which new applications could be built. *Python and Tkinter Programming* has some parallels in its layout. You will find much longer examples than you may be accustomed to in other programming books. I hope that many of the examples will be useful either as templates or as a source of inspiration for programmers who have to solve a particular problem.

One side effect of presenting complete examples as opposed to providing code fragments is that you will learn a great deal about *my* style of programming. During the extensive reviews for *Python and Tkinter Programming* some of the reviewers suggested alternate coding patterns for some of the examples. Wherever possible, I incorporated their suggestions, so that the examples now contain the programming styles of several people. I expect that you will make similar improvements when you come to implement your own solutions.

I hope that you find *Python and Tkinter Programming* useful. If it saves you even a couple of hours when you have an application to write, then it will have been worth the time spent reading the book.

## *special thanks*

---

Writing *Python and Tkinter Programming* has been the collective effort of many people. Each of these persons contributed their time, expertise and effort to help make the book more effective. Many of the words are theirs and not mine—the book is now better.

I want to thank the team of technical reviewers: Fred L. Drake, Robin Friedrich, Alan Gauld, Bob Gibson, Lynn Grande, Doug Hellmann, Garrett G. Hodgson, Paul Kendrew, Andrew M. Kuchling, Cameron Laird, Gregory A. Landrum, Ivan Van Laningham, Burt Leavenworth, Ken McDonald, Frank McGeough, Robert Meegan, William Peloquin, Robert J. Roberts and Guido van Rossum. They provided detailed comments that resulted in significant improvements to the book's content, focus and accuracy.

Some of the code examples were derived from code written by others. I want to thank these authors for agreeing to allow me to use their code in this book.

Doug Hellman wrote an excellent module for Pmw, GUIAppD.py, which I adapted as AppShell.py and used for many examples within the book. Doug agreed that I could use the code. If you find AppShell.py useful in your applications, please acknowledge the original author of this work.

Konrad Hinsen wrote TkPlotCanvas.py, which was intended to be used with NumPy, which uses extension modules optimized for numerical operations. I adapted it to run without NumPy and also added some additional graphical capabilities. Again, if you find it useful, please acknowledge Konrad Hinsen.

The Tree and Node classes used in chapter 8 are derived from code released by OpenChem for inclusion within their Open Source project. You might want to look at any future releases from this organization, since the tree-widget examples presented in this book are limited in their capability.

Appendix B uses the man pages for Tk as a starting point for documenting Tkinter. The copyright owners, the Regents of the University of California and Sun Microsystems allow derivative works to be made, provided that the original copyright is acknowledged.

I also want to thank Gordon Smith at General Dynamics for having confidence in the use of Python and Tkinter in some of the projects for which he was responsible; observing their use in real-world applications is one of the factors that prompted me to begin the task of writing the

book. I was able to test some of the draft chapters by giving them to his staff and intern students to solve some of their programming tasks.

Next, I want to thank everyone at Manning Publications who turned my ideas into a book. I had many long conversations with the publisher, Marjan Bace, who led me through the somewhat complex task of writing a book that is going to be useful to its readers. Ted Kennedy coordinated the review process which produced much constructive criticism. Mary Piergies took care of the production of the book with Kristen Black, the copyeditor, and Dottie Marsico, the typesetter, who took my crude attempts to use FrameMaker and gave the book the professional edge it needed. Doug Hellman did a fine technical edit and corrected many code problems found in the final typeset copy.

Finally, I'd like to thank my wife, Allison, and my children, Nina, Chris, Jeff and Alana, for understanding that it wasn't so much losing a spouse and father but gaining an author.

## *about the reader*

---

*Python and Tkinter Programming* is intended for programmers who already know Python or who are learning Python (perhaps using Manning’s *Quick Python* as their guide) who wish to add graphical user interfaces (GUIs) to their applications. Because *Python and Tkinter Programming* presents many fully functional examples with lots of code annotations, experienced programmers *without* Python expertise will find the book helpful in using Python and Tkinter to solve immediate problems.

The book may also be used by Tcl/Tk script programmers as a guide to converting from Tcl/Tk to Python and Tkinter. However, I do not intend to get into a philosophical discussion about whether that would be a proper thing to do—I’m biased!

## *about the author*

---

John Grayson is a consultant specializing in graphical user interfaces (GUIs). He has been supporting application design at a large U.S. communications company for several years, designing innovative interfaces and introducing Python and Object-Oriented Programming (OOP) to traditional development methods. Elsewhere, he has delivered real-world applications written in Python and Tkinter for commercial use.

He holds a Bachelor's degree in Applied Biology and a Ph.D. in Molecular Biology—but that has never been an impediment (especially because 90 percent of his thesis covered computer modeling of enzyme behavior).

Before specializing in user interfaces, he was an operating-system specialist and was later instrumental in developing support methodologies for UNIX at Stratus Computer, Inc., he built an F77 compiler and UNIX porting tools at Pacer Software, Inc. and he was an operating-system specialist at Prime Computer, Inc. both in the United States and Great Britain.

## *conventions*

---

Example code plays a very important role in *Python and Tkinter Programming*. Many programming books feature short, simple examples which illustrate one or two points very well—but really do little. In this book, the examples may be adapted for your own applications or even used just as they are. Most of the examples are intended to be run *stand-alone* as opposed to being run *interactively*. Most examples include markers in the body of the code which correspond to explanations which follow. For example:

```
def mouseDown(self, event):
    self.currentObject = None
    self.lastx = self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.lasty = self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    if not self.currentFunc:
        self.selObj = self.canvas.find_closest(self.startx,
                                              self.starty)[0]
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj, width=2)
    self.canvas.lift(self.selObj)
```



---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The `mouseDown` method deselects any currently selected object. The event returns x and y coordinates for the mouse-click as screen coordinates. The `canvasx` and `canvasy` methods of the `Canvas` widget ...
- ❷ If no drawing function is selected, we are in select mode and we search to locate the nearest object on the canvas and select it. This method of ...

Occasionally, I have set portions of code in **bold** code font to highlight code which is of special importance in the code example.

In a number of examples where the code spans several pages I have interspersed code explanations within the code sequence so that the explanatory text appears closer to the code that is being explained. The marker numbering is continuous within any given example.

## *about the cover*

---

The cover illustration of this book is from the 1805 edition of Sylvain Maréchal's four-volume compendium of regional dress customs. This book was first published in Paris in 1788, one year before the French Revolution. Its title alone required no fewer than 30 words:

*Costumes Civils actuels de tous les peuples connus dessinés d'après nature gravés et coloriés, accompagnés d'une notice historique sur leurs coutumes, moeurs, religions, etc., etc., redigés par M. Sylvain Maréchal*

The four volumes include an annotation on the illustrations: "gravé à la manière noire par Mixelle d'après Desrais et colorié." Clearly, the engraver and illustrator deserved no more than to be listed by their last names—after all they were mere technicians. The workers who colored each illustration by hand remain nameless.

The colorful variety of this collection reminds us vividly of how culturally apart the world's towns and regions were just 200 years ago. Dress codes have changed everywhere and the diversity by region, so rich at the time, has faded away. It is now hard to tell the inhabitant of one continent from another. Perhaps we have traded cultural diversity for a more varied personal life—certainly a more varied and exciting technological environment. At a time when it is hard to tell one computer book from another, Manning celebrates the inventiveness and initiative of the computer business with book covers based on the rich diversity of regional life of two centuries ago, brought back to life by Maréchal's pictures. Just think, Maréchal's was a world so different from ours people would take the time to read a book title 30 words long.

## *author online*

---

Purchase of *Python and Tkinter Programming* includes free access to a private Internet forum where you can make comments about the book, ask technical questions and receive help from the author and other Python and Tkinter users. To access the forum, point your web browser to [www.manning.com/grayson](http://www.manning.com/grayson). There you will be able to subscribe to the forum. This site also provides information on how to access the forum once you are registered, what kind of help is available and the rules of conduct on the forum.

All source code for the examples presented in this book is available from the Manning website. The URL [www.manning.com/grayson](http://www.manning.com/grayson) includes a link to the source code files.



P A R T

1

## *Basic concepts*

In part 1, I'll introduce Python, Tkinter and application programming. Since I assume you're already somewhat familiar with Python, chapter 1 is intended to illustrate the most important features of the language that will be used throughout the book. Additionally, I'll discuss features of Python's support for object-oriented programming so that those of you familiar with C++ or Java can understand how your experience may be applied to Python.

Chapter 2 quickly introduces Tkinter and explains how it relates to Tcl/Tk. You will find details of mapping Tk to Tkinter, along with a brief introduction to the widgets and their appearance.

Chapter 3 illustrates application development with Tkinter using two calculator examples. The first is a simple no-frills calculator that demonstrates basic principles. The second is a partially finished application that shows you how powerful applications may be developed using Python's and Tkinter's capabilities.





## C H A P T E R   1

---

# *Python*

- 1.1 Introduction to Python programming and a feature review 3
- 1.2 Key data types: lists, tuples and dictionaries 5
- 1.3 Classes 9

This chapter defines the key features of Python that make the language ideal for rapid prototyping of systems and for fully-functional applications. *Python and Tkinter Programming* is not intended to be a learning resource for beginning Python programmers; several other publications are better-suited to this task: *Quick Python*, *Learning Python*, *Programming Python*, *Internet Programming in Python* and *The Python Pocket Reference* are all excellent texts. Further information is provided in the “References” section at the end of this book. In this chapter, the key features of Python will be highlighted in concise examples of code to illustrate some of the building blocks that will be used in examples throughout the book.

### **1.1 *Introduction to Python programming and a feature review***

As stated earlier, this book is not intended to be used to learn Python basics directly. Programmers experienced in other languages will be able to analyze the examples and discover the key points to programming in Python. However, if you are relatively new to programming generally, then learning Python this way will be a tough, upward struggle.

This chapter is really not necessary for most readers, then, since the material will already be familiar. Its purpose is to provide a refresher course for readers who worked with Python in the early days and a map for Tcl/Tk programmers and those readers experienced with other languages.

Readers unfamiliar with object-oriented programming (OOP) may find section 1.3 useful as an introduction to OOP as it is implemented in Python. C++ or Java programmers who need to see how Python's classes operate will benefit as well.

I'm not going to explain the reasons why Python was developed or when, since this information is covered in every other Python book very well. I will state that Guido van Rossum, Python's creator, has been behind the language since he invented it at Stichting Mathematisch Centrum (CWI) in Amsterdam, The Netherlands, around 1990; he is now at the Corporation for National Research Initiatives (CNRI), Reston, Virginia, USA. The fact that one person has taken control of the growth of the language has had a great deal to do with its stability and elegance, although Guido will be the first to thank all of the people who have contributed, in one way or another, to the language's development.

Perhaps more important than any of the above information is the name of the language. This language has nothing to do with snakes. Python is named after *Monty Python's Flying Circus*, the BBC comedy series which was produced from 1969 to 1974. Like many university students around 1970, I was influenced by Monty Python, so when I started writing this book I could not resist the temptation to add bits of Python other than the language. Now, all of you that skipped the boring beginning bit of this book, or decided that you didn't need to read this paragraph are in for a surprise. Scattered through the examples you'll find bits of Python. If you have never experienced Monty Python, then I can only offer the following advice: if something about the example looks weird, it's probably Python. As my Yugoslavian college friend used to say "You find *that* funny"?

### 1.1.1 Why Python?

Several key features make Python an ideal language for a wide range of applications. Adding Tkinter to the mix widens the possibilities dramatically. Here are some of the highlights that make Python what it is:

- Automatic compile to bytecode
- High-level data types and operations
- Portability across architectures
- Wide (huge) range of supported extensions
- Object-oriented model
- Ideal prototyping system
- Readable code with a distinct C-like quality supports maintenance
- Easy to extend in C and C++ and embed in applications
- Large library of contributed applications and tools
- Excellent documentation

You might notice that I did not mention an interpreter explicitly. One feature of Python is that it is a bytecode engine written in C. The extension modules are written in C. With a little care in the way you design your code, most of your code will run using *compiled C* since many operations are built into the system. The remaining code will run in the bytecode engine.

The result is a system that may be used as a scripting language to develop anything from some system administration scripts all the way to a complex GUI-based application (using database, client/server, CORBA or other techniques).

### 1.1.2 Where can Python be used?

Knowing where Python can be used is best understood by learning where it might *not* be the best choice. Regardless of what I just said about the bytecode engine, Python has an interpretive nature, so if you can't keep within the C-extensions, there has to be a performance penalty. Therefore, real-time applications for high-speed events would be a poor match. A set of extensions to Python have been developed specifically for numerical programming (see "NumPy" on page 626). These extensions help support compute-bound applications, but Python is not the best choice for huge computation-intensive applications unless time *isn't* a factor. Similarly, graphics-intensive applications which involve real-time observation are not a good match (but see "Speed drawing" on page 271 for an example of what *can* be done).

## 1.2 Key data types: lists, tuples and dictionaries

Three key data types give Python the power to produce effective applications: two *sequence* classes—lists and tuples—and a *mapping* class—dictionaries. When they are used together, they can deliver surprising power in a few lines of code.

*Lists* and *tuples* have a lot in common. The major difference is that the elements of a list can be modified in place but a tuple is *immutable*: you have to deconstruct and then reconstruct a tuple to change individual elements. There are several good reasons why we should care about this distinction; if you want to use a tuple as the *key* to a dictionary, it's good to know that it can't be changed arbitrarily. A small advantage of tuples is that they are a slightly cheaper resource since they do not carry the additional operations of a list.

If you want an in-depth view of these data types take a look at chapters 6 and 8 of *Quick Python*.

### 1.2.1 Lists

Let's look at lists first. If you are new to Python, remember to look at the tutorial that is available in the standard documentation, which is available at [www.python.org](http://www.python.org).

#### Initializing lists

Lists are easy to create and use. To initialize a list:

```
lst = []                                # Empty list
lst = ['a', 'b', 'c']                      # String list
lst = [1, 2, 3, 4]                        # Integer list
lst = [[1,2,3], ['a','b','c']]            # List of lists
lst = [(1,'a'),(2,'b'),(3,'c')]          # List of tuples
```

#### Appending to lists

Lists have an append method built in:

```
lst.append('e')
lst.append((5,'e'))
```

## *Concatenating lists*

Combining lists works well:

```
lst = [1, 2, 3] + [4, 5, 6]
print lst
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
```

## *Iterating through members*

Iterating through a list is easy:

```
lst = ['first', 'second', 'third']
for str in lst:
    print 'this entry is %s' % str

set = [(1, 'uno'), (2, 'due'), (3, 'tres')]
for integer, str in set:
    print 'Numero "%d" in Italiano: è "%s"' % (integer, str)
```

## *Sorting and reversing*

Lists have built-in sort and reverse methods:

```
lst = [4, 5, 1, 9, 2]
lst.sort()
print lst
[1, 2, 4, 5, 9]

lst.reverse()
print lst
[9, 5, 4, 2, 1]
```

## *Indexing*

Finding an entry in a list:

```
lst = [1, 2, 4, 5, 9]
print lst.index(5)
3
```

## *Member*

Checking membership of a list is convenient:

```
if 'jeg' in ['abc', 'tuv', 'kie', 'jeg']:
    ...
if '*' in '123*abc':
    ...
```

## *Modifying members*

A list member may be modified in place:

```
lst = [1, 2, 4, 5, 9]
lst[3] = 10
print lst
[1, 2, 4, 10, 9]
```

### *Inserting and deleting members*

To insert a member in a list:

```
lst = [1, 2, 3, 4, 10, 9]
lst.insert(4, 5)
print lst
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 9]
```

To delete a member:

```
lst = [1, 2, 3, 4, 10, 9]
del lst[4]
print lst
[1, 2, 3, 4, 9]
```

## 1.2.2 Tuples

Tuples are similar to lists but they are *immutable* (meaning they cannot be modified). Tuples are a convenient way of collecting data that may be passed as a single entity or stored in a list or dictionary; the entity is then *unpacked* when needed.

### *Initializing tuples*

With the exception of a tuple containing *one* element, tuples are initialized in a similar manner to lists (lists and tuples are really related sequence types and are readily interchangeable).

```
tpl = ()                                # Empty tuple
tpl = (1,)                               # Singleton tuple
tpl = ('a', 'b', 'c')                   # String tuple
tpl = (1, 2, 3, 4)                      # Integer tuple
tpl = ([1,2,3], ['a','b','c'])        # Tuple of lists
tpl = ((1,'a'),(2,'b'),(3,'c'))       # Tuple of tuples
```

### *Iterating through members*

```
for i in tpl:
    ...
for i,a in ((1, 'a'), (2, 'b'), (3, 'c')):
    ...
```

### *Modifying tuples*

(But you said tuples were immutable!)

```
a = 1, 2, 3
a = a[0], a[1], 10, a[2]
a
(1, 2, 10, 3)
```

Note that you are not modifying the original tuple but you are creating a new name binding for a.

### 1.2.3 Dictionaries

*Dictionaries* are arrays of data indexed by *keys*. I think that they give Python the edge in designing compact systems. If you use lists and tuples as data contained within dictionaries you have a powerful mix (not to say that mixing code objects, dictionaries and abstract objects isn't powerful!).

#### *Initializing dictionaries*

Dictionaries may be initialized by providing key:value pairs:

```
dict = {}                                # Empty dictionary
dict = {'a': 1, 'b': 2, 'c': 3}           # String key
dict = {1: 'a', 2: 'b', 3: 'c'}          # Integer key
dict = {1: [1,2,3], 2: [4,5,6]}         # List data
```

#### *Modifying dictionaries*

Dictionaries are readily modifiable:

```
dict['a'] = 10
dict[10] = 'Larch'
```

#### *Accessing dictionaries*

Recent versions of Python facilitate lookups where the key may not exist. First, the old way:

```
if dict.has_key('a'):
    value = dict['a']
else:
    value = None
```

or:

```
try:
    value = dict['a']
except KeyError:
    value = None
```

This is the current method:

```
value = dict.get('a', None)
```

#### *Iterating through entries*

Get the keys and then iterate through them:

```
keys = dict.keys()
for key in keys:
    ...
```

#### *Sorting dictionaries*

Dictionaries have arbitrary order so you must sort the keys if you want to access the keys in order:

```
keys = dict.keys().sort()
for key in keys:
    ...
```

## 1.3 Classes

I'm including a short section on Python classes largely for C++ programmers who may need to learn some of the details of Python's implementation and for Python programmers who have yet to discover OOP in Python.

### 1.3.1 How do classes describe objects?

A class provides the following object descriptions:

- The attributes (data-members) of the object
- The behavior of the object (methods)
- Where behavior is inherited from other classes (superclasses)

Having said all that, C++ programmers will probably be tuning out at this point—but hold on for a little longer. There are some valuable features of Python classes, some of which may come as a bit of a surprise for someone who is not fully up to speed with Python OOP.

Most of the examples of applications in this book rely heavily on building class libraries to create a wide range of objects. The classes typically create instances with multiple formats (see LEDs and Switches in chapter 7). Before we start building these objects, let's review the rules and features that apply to Python classes.

### 1.3.2 Defining classes

A Python class is a user-defined data type which is defined with a class statement:

```
class AClass:  
    statements
```

*Statements* are any valid Python statements defining attributes and member functions. In fact, any Python statement can be used, including a `pass` statement, as we will see in the next section. Calling the class as a function creates an instance of the class:

```
anInstanceOfAClass = AClass()
```

### 1.3.3 Neat Python trick #10

A class instance can be used like a C structure or Pascal record. However, unlike C and Pascal, the members of the structure do not need to be declared before they are used—they can be created dynamically. We can use this ability to access arbitrary data objects across modules; examples using class instances to support global data will be shown later.

```
class DummyClass:  
    pass  
  
    Colors = DummyClass()  
    Colors.alarm = 'red'  
    Colors.warning = 'orange'  
    Colors.normal = 'green'
```

If the preceding lines are stored in a file called `programdata.py`, the following is a possible code sequence.

```
from programdata import Colors
...
Button(parent, bg=Colors.alarm, text='Pressure\nVessel',
       command=evacuateBuilding)
```

Alternately, if you apply a little knowledge about how Python manages data internally, you can use the following construction.

```
class Record:
    def __init__(self, **kw):
        self.__dict__.update(kw)
Colors = Record(alarm='red', warning='orange', normal='green')
```

### 1.3.4 Initializing an instance

Fields (instance variables) of an instance may be initialized by including an `__init__` method in the class body. This method is executed automatically when a new instance of the class is created. Python passes the instance as the first argument. It is a convention to name it `self` (it's called *this* in C++). In addition, methods may be called to complete initialization. The `__init__` methods of inherited classes may also be called, when necessary.

```
class ASX200(Frame):
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        Frame.__init__(self, master)
        Pack.config(self)
        self.state = NORMAL
        self.set_hardware_data(FORE)
        self.createWidgets()
    ...
    ...
switch = ASX200()
```

---

**Note** To use instance variables you must reference the containing object (in the previous example it is `switch.state`, not `self.state`). If you make a reference to a variable by itself, it is to a local variable within the executing function, not an instance variable.

---

### 1.3.5 Methods

We have already encountered the `__init__` method that is invoked when an instance is created. Other methods are defined similarly with `def` statements. Methods may take arguments: `self` is always the first or only argument.

You will see plenty of examples of methods, so little discussion is really necessary. Note that Python accepts named arguments, in addition to positional arguments, in both methods and function calls. This can make supplying default values for methods very easy, since omission of an argument will result in the default value being supplied. Take care when mixing positional and named arguments as it is very easy to introduce problems in class libraries this way.

### **1.3.6 Private and public variables and methods**

Unless you take special action, all variables and methods are public and virtual. If you make use of name mangling, however, you can emulate private variables and methods. You mangle the name this way: Any name which begins with a double-underscore (`__`) is private and is not exported to a containing environment. Any name which begins with a single underscore (`_`) indicates *private by convention*, which is similar to *protected* in C++ or Java. In fact, Python usually is more intuitive than C++ or other languages, since it is immediately obvious if a reference is being made to a private variable or method.

### **1.3.7 Inheritance**

The rules of inheritance in Python are really quite simple:

- Classes inherit behavior from the classes specified in their header and from any classes above these classes.
- Instances inherit behavior from the class from which they are created and from all the classes above this class.

When Python searches for a reference it searches in the immediate namespace (the instance) and then in each of the higher namespaces. The first occurrence of the reference is used; this means that a class can easily redefine attributes and methods of its superclasses. If the reference cannot be found Python reports an error.

Note that inherited methods are not automatically called. To initialize the base class, a subclass must call the `__init__` method explicitly.

### **1.3.8 Multiple inheritance**

Multiple inheritance in Python is just an extension of inheritance. If more than one class is specified in a class's header then we have multiple inheritance. Unlike C++, however, Python does not report errors if attributes of classes are multiple defined; the basic rule is that the first occurrence found is the one that is used.

### **1.3.9 Mixin classes**

A class that collects a number of common methods and can be freely inherited by subclasses is usually referred to as a *mixin* class (some standard texts may use base, generalized or abstract classes, but that may not be totally correct). Such methods could be contained in a Python module, but the advantage of employing a mixin class is that the methods have access to the instance `self` and thus can modify the behavior of an instance. We will see examples of mixin classes throughout this book.



## C H A P T E R    2

---

# *Tkinter*

2.1	The Tkinter module	12	2.4	Tkinter class hierarchy	16
2.2	Mapping Tcl/Tk to Tkinter	14	2.5	Tkinter widget appearance	17
2.3	Win32 and Unix GUIs	15			

This chapter describes the structure of the Tkinter module and its relationship to Tcl/Tk. The mapping with Tcl/Tk constructs to Tkinter is explained in order to assist Tcl/Tk programmers in converting to Tkinter from Tcl/Tk. Native GUIs for UNIX, Win32 and Macintosh implementations will be discussed and key architectural differences will be highlighted. Font and color selection will be introduced, and I'll cover this topic in more detail in "Tkinter widgets" on page 31. For readers who are unfamiliar with Tkinter, this chapter illustrates its importance to Python applications.

## **2.1 *The Tkinter module***

### **2.1.1 *What is Tkinter?***

Tkinter provides Python applications with an easy-to-program user interface. Tkinter supports a collection of Tk widgets that support most application needs. Tkinter is the Python interface to Tk, the GUI toolkit for Tcl/Tk. Tcl/Tk is the scripting and graphics facility developed by John Ousterhout, who was originally at University of California at Berkeley

and later at Sun Microsystems. Currently, Tcl/Tk is developed and supported by the Scriptics Corporation, which Ousterhout founded. Tcl/Tk enjoys a significant following with developers in a number of fields, predominantly on UNIX systems, but more recently on Win32 systems and MacOS. Ousterhout's *Tcl and the Tk Toolkit*, which was the first Tcl/Tk book, is still a viable, though old, reference document for Tcl/Tk. (You will find some excellent newer texts on the subject in the section "References" on page 625 ).

Tcl/Tk was first designed to run under the X Window system and its widgets and windows were made to resemble Motif widgets. The behavior of bindings and controls was also designed to mimic Motif. In recent versions of Tcl/Tk (specifically, release 8.0 and after), the widgets resemble native widgets on the implemented architecture. In fact, many of the widgets are native widgets and the trend to add more of them will probably continue.

Like Python extensions, Tcl/Tk is implemented as a C library package with modules to support interpreted scripts, or *applications*. The Tkinter interface is implemented as a Python module, Tkinter.py, which is bound to a C-extension (`_tkinter`) which utilizes these same Tcl/Tk libraries. In many cases a Tkinter programmer need not be concerned with the implementation of Tcl/Tk since Tkinter can be viewed as a simple extension of Python.

## 2.1.2 What about performance?

At first glance, it is reasonable to assume that Tkinter is not going to perform well. After all, the Python interpreter is utilizing the Tkinter module which, in turn, relies on the `_tkinter` interface which calls Tcl and Tk libraries and sometimes calls the Tcl interpreter to bind properties to widgets. Well, this is all true, but on modern systems it really does not matter too much. If you follow the guidelines in "Programming for performance" on page 348, you will find that Python and Tkinter have the ability to deliver viable applications. If your reason for using Python/Tkinter is to develop prototypes for applications, then the point is somewhat moot; you *will* develop prototypes quickly in Python/Tkinter.

## 2.1.3 How do I use Tkinter?

Tkinter comprises a number of components. `_tkinter`, as mentioned before, is the low level interface to the Tk libraries and is linked into Python. Until recently, it was the programmer's responsibility to add Tkinter to the Python build, but beginning with release 1.5.2 of Python, Tkinter, Tcl and Tk are part of the installation package—at least for the Win32 distribution. For several UNIX variants and Macintosh, it is still necessary to build Python to include Tkinter. However, check to see if a binary version is available for your particular platform.

Once a version of Python has been built and `_tkinter` has been included, as a shared library, dll or statically linked, the Tkinter module needs to be *imported*. This imports any other necessary modules, such as `Tkconstants`.



To create a Tkinter window, type three lines into the Python command line (or enter them into a file and type "python filename.py").

**Figure 2.1 Trivial Example**

```
from Tkinter import Label, mainloop  
Label(text='This has to be the\\nsimplest bit of code').pack()  
mainloop()
```

1  
2  
3

---

### Code comments

- ➊ First, we import components from the `Tkinter` module. By using `from module import Label, mainloop` we avoid having to reference the module to access attributes and methods contained in the module.
- ➋ We create a `Label` containing two lines of text and use the `Pack` geometry manager to *realize* the widget.
- ➌ Finally, we call the `Tkinter mainloop` to process events and keep the display activated. This example does not react to any application-specific events, but we still need a mainloop for it to be displayed; basic window management is automatic.

What you will see is shown in figure 2.1. Now, it really cannot get much simpler than that!

#### 2.1.4 Tkinter features

Tkinter adds object-oriented interfaces to Tk. Tcl/Tk is a command-oriented scripting language so the normal method of driving Tk widgets is to apply an operation to a widget identifier. In Tkinter, the widget references are *objects* and we drive the widgets by using object *methods* and their *attributes*. As a result, Tkinter programs are easy to read and understand, especially for C++ or Java programmers (although that is entirely another story!).

One important feature that Tk gives to any Tkinter application is that, with a little care in selecting fonts and other architecture-dependent features, it will run on numerous flavors of UNIX, Win32 and Macintosh without modification. Naturally, there are some intrinsic differences between these architectures, but Tkinter does a fine job of providing an architecture-independent graphics platform for applications.

It is the object-oriented features, however, that really distinguish Tkinter as an ideal platform for developing application frameworks. You will see many examples in this book where relatively little code will support powerful applications.

## 2.2 Mapping Tcl/Tk to Tkinter

Mapping of Tcl/Tk commands and arguments to Tkinter is really quite a simple process. After writing Tkinter code for a short time, it should be easy for a Tcl/Tk programmer to make the shift—maybe he will never go back to Tcl/Tk! Let's look at some examples.

Commands in Tk map directly to class constructors in Tkinter.

---

Tcl/Tk	Tkinter
label .myLabel	myLabel = Label(master)

---

Parent widgets (usually referred to as *master* widgets) are explicit in Tkinter:

Tcl/Tk	Tkinter
label .screen.for	label = Label(form) (screen is form's parent)

For configuration options, Tk uses keyword arguments followed by values or configure commands; Tkinter uses either keyword arguments or a dictionary reference to the option of the configure method in the target widget.

Tcl/Tk	Tkinter
label .myLabel -bg blue	myLabel = Label(master, bg="blue")
.myLabel configure -bg blue	myLabel["bg"] = "blue" myLabel.configure(bg = "blue")

Since the Tkinter widget object has methods, you invoke them directly, adding arguments as appropriate.

Tcl/Tk	Tkinter
pack label -side left -fill y	label.pack(side=LEFT, fill=Y)

The following illustration demonstrates how we access an inherited method *pack* from the Packer. This style of programming contributes to the compact nature of Tkinter applications and their ease of maintenance and reuse.

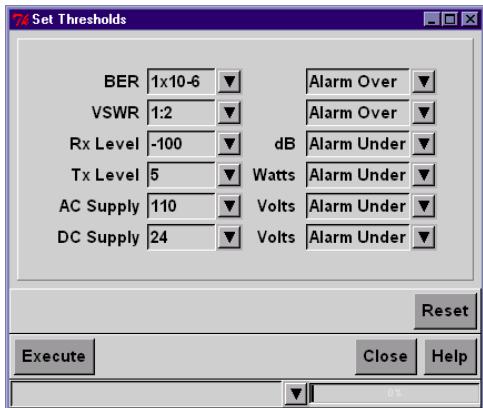
Full mappings of Tk to Tkinter are provided in “Mapping Tk to Tkinter” on page 383.

## 2.3 Win32 and UNIX GUIs

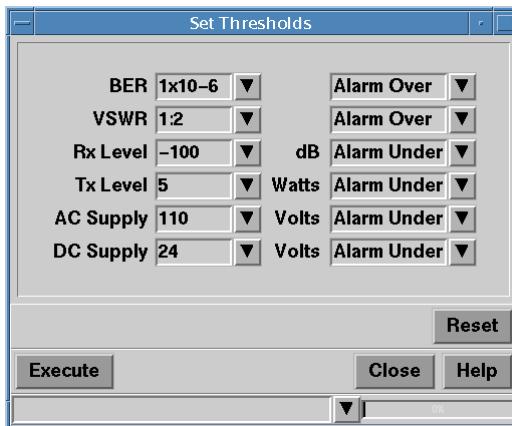
As I mentioned earlier, it is reasonable to develop Tkinter applications for use in Win32, UNIX and Macintosh environments. Tcl/Tk is portable and can be built on the specific platform, as can Python, with its `_tkinter` C module. Using `Pmw`\* (Python MegaWidgets), which provides a portable set of composite widgets and is 100% Python code, it is possible to use the bytecode generated on a UNIX system on a Win32 or Macintosh system. What you cannot control is the use of fonts and, to a lesser extent, the color schemes imposed by the operating system.

---

\* `Pmw`—Python MegaWidgets provide complex widgets, constructed from fundamental Tkinter widgets, which extend the available widgets to comboboxes, scrolled frames and button boxes, to name a few. Using these widgets gives GUI developers a rich palette of available input devices to use in their designs.



**Figure 2.2 Tkinter and Pmw on win32**



**Figure 2.3 Tkinter and Pmw running on UNIX**

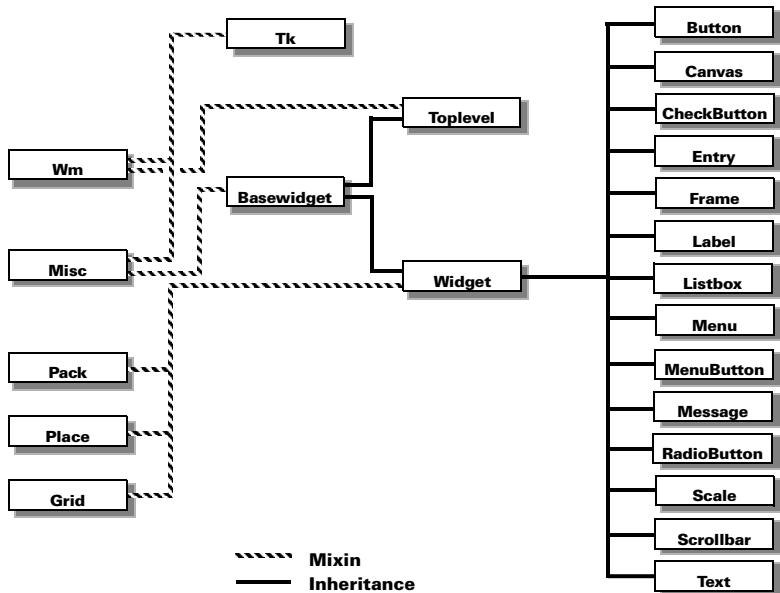
Take a look at figure 2.2. This application uses Pmw combobox widgets along with Tkinter button and entry widgets arranged within frames. The font for this example is Arial, bold and 16 point. Apart from the obvious Win32 controls in the border, there is little to distinguish this window from the one shown in figure 2.3, which was run on UNIX. In this case, the font is Helvetica, bold and 16 point. The window is slightly larger because the font has slightly different kerning rules and stroke weight, and since the size of the widget is dependent on the font, this results in a slightly different layout. If precise alignment and sizing is an absolute requirement, it is possible to detect the platform on which the application is running and make adjustments for known differences. In general, it is better to design an application that is not sensitive to small changes in layout.

If you look closely, you may also notice a difference in the top and bottom highlights for the Execute and Close buttons, but not for the buttons on the Pmw widgets. This is because Tk is drawing Motif decorations for UNIX and Windows SDK decorations for Win32.

In general, as long as your application does not make use of very platform-specific fonts, it will be possible to develop transportable code.

## 2.4 Tkinter class hierarchy

Unlike many windowing systems, the Tkinter hierarchy is really quite simple; in fact, there really isn't a hierarchy at all. The WM, Misc, Pack, Place and Grid classes are mixins to each of the widget classes. Most programmers only need to know about the lowest level in the tree to perform everyday operations and it is often possible to ignore the higher levels. The notional "hierarchy" is shown in figure 2.4.



**Figure 2.4 Tkinter widget “hierarchy”**



**Figure 2.5 Tkinter widgets: a collage**

## 2.5 Tkinter widget appearance

To conclude this initial introduction to Tkinter, let's take a quick look at the appearance of the widgets available to a programmer. In this example, we are just looking at the basic configuration of the widgets and only one canvas drawing option is shown. I've changed the border on the frames to add some variety, but you are seeing the widgets with their default appearance. The widgets are shown in figure 2.5. The code is not presented here, but it is available online.

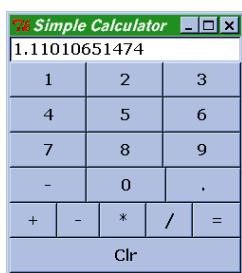


## C H A P T E R    3

# *Building an application*

- 3.1 Calculator example: key features 21
- 3.2 Calculator example: source code 21
- 3.3 Examining the application structure 27
- 3.4 Extending the application 28

Most books on programming languages have followed Kernigan and Ritchie's example and have presented the obligatory "Hello World" example to illustrate the ease with which that language may be applied. Books with a GUI component seem to continue this tradition and present a "Hello GUI World" or something similar. Indeed, the three-line example presented on page 13 is in that class of examples.



**Figure 3.1 A simple calculator**

There is a growing trend to present a calculator example in recent publications. In this book I am going to start by presenting a simple calculator (you may add the word obligatory, if you wish) in the style of its predecessors. The example has been written to illustrate several Python and Tkinter features and to demonstrate the compact nature of Python code.

The example is not complete because it accepts only mouse input; in a full example, we would expect keyboard input as well. However, it does work and it demonstrates that you do not need a lot of code to get a Tkinter screen up and running. Let's take a look at the code that supports the screen:

## calc1.py

```
from Tkinter import *

def frame(root, side):
    w = Frame(root)
    w.pack(side=side, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
    return w

def button(root, side, text, command=None):
    w = Button(root, text=text, command=command)
    w.pack(side=side, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
    return w

class Calculator(Frame):
    def __init__(self):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        self.pack(expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        self.master.title('Simple Calculator')
        self.master.iconname("calc1")

        display = StringVar()
        Entry(self, relief=SUNKEN,
              textvariable=display).pack(side=TOP, expand=YES,
                                         fill=BOTH)

        for key in ("123", "456", "789", "-0."):
            keyF = frame(self, TOP)
            for char in key:
                button(keyF, LEFT, char,
                       lambda w=display, s=' %s '%char: w.set(w.get()+s))

        opsF = frame(self, TOP)
        for char in "+-*=/":
            if char == '=':
                btn = button(opsF, LEFT, char)
                btn.bind('<ButtonRelease-1>',
                         lambda e, s=self, w=display: s.calc(w), '+')
            else:
                btn = button(opsF, LEFT, char,
                             lambda w=display, c=char: w.set(w.get()+' '+c+' '))

        clearF = frame(self, BOTTOM)
        button(clearF, LEFT, 'Clr', lambda w=display: w.set(''))

    def calc(self, display):
        try:
            display.set(`eval(display.get())`)
        except ValueError:
            display.set("ERROR")

if __name__ == '__main__':
    Calculator().mainloop()
```

The diagram consists of seven numbered callouts (1 through 7) pointing to various parts of the Python code:

- Callout 1 points to the `frame` function definition.
- Callout 2 points to the `Calculator` class definition.
- Callout 3 points to the `Entry` widget creation.
- Callout 4 points to the first `for` loop that creates digit buttons.
- Callout 5 points to the button configuration with a lambda function.
- Callout 6 points to the button configuration with a lambda function and the `bind` method.
- Callout 7 points to the `calc` method definition.

---

### Code comments

- ➊ We begin by defining convenience functions to make the creation of frame and button widgets more compact. These functions use the `pack` geometry manager and use generally useful values for widget behavior. It is always a good idea to collect common code in compact functions (or classes, as appropriate) since this makes readability and maintenance much easier.
- ➋ We call the `Frame` constructor to create the toplevel shell and an enclosing frame. Then, we set titles for the window and icon.
- ➌ Next, we create the display at the top of the calculator and define a Tkinter variable which provides access to the widget's contents:

```
display = StringVar()  
Entry(self.master, relief=SUNKEN,  
      textvariable=variable).pack(side=TOP, expand=YES,  
      fill=BOTH)
```

- ➍ Remember that character strings are sequences of characters in Python, so that each of the subsequences is really an array of characters over which we can iterate:

```
for key in ("123", "456", "789", "-0."):   
    keyF = frame(self, TOP)  
    for char in key:
```

We create a frame for each row of keys.

- ➎ We use the convenience function to create a button, passing the frame, pack option, label and callback:

```
button(keyF, LEFT, char,  
       lambda w=display, c=char: w.set(w.get() + c))
```

Don't worry about the `lambda` form of the callback yet, I will cover this in more detail later. Its purpose is to define an inline function definition.

- ➏ The `=` key has an alternate binding to the other buttons since it calls the `calc` method when the left mouse button is released:

```
btn.bind('<ButtonRelease-1>',  
        lambda e, s=self, w=display: s.calc(w))
```

- ➐ The `calc` method attempts to evaluate the string contained in the display and then it replaces the contents with the calculated value or an `ERROR` message:

```
display.set(`eval(display.get())`)
```

Personally, I don't like the calculator, even though it demonstrates compact code and will be quite easy to extend to provide more complete functionality. Perhaps it is the artist in me, but it doesn't *look* like a calculator!

Let's take a look at a partly-finished example application which implements a quite sophisticated calculator. It has been left unfinished so that curious readers can experiment by adding functionality to the example (by the time you have finished reading this book, you will be ready to build a Cray Calculator!). Even though the calculator is unfinished, it can still be put to some use. As we will discover a little later, some surprising features are hidden in the reasonably short source code.

Let's start by taking a look at some of the key features of the calculator.

### 3.1 Calculator example: key features

The calculator example illustrates many features of applications written in Python and Tkinter, including these:



**Figure 3.2**  
A better calculator

- *GUI application structure* Although this is a simple example, it contains many of the elements of larger applications that will be presented later in the book.
- *Multiple inheritance* It is simple in this example, but it illustrates how it may be used to simplify Python code.
- *Lists, dictionaries and tuples* As mentioned in chapter 1, these language facilities give Python a considerable edge in building concise code. In particular, this example illustrates the use of a dictionary to dispatch actions to methods. Of particular note is the use of lists of tuples to define the content of each of the keys. Unpacking this data generates each of the keys, labels and associated bindings in a compact fashion.
- *Pmw (Python megawidgets)* The scrolled text widget is implemented with Pmw. This example illustrates setting its attributes and gaining access to its components.
- *Basic Tkinter operations* Creating widgets, setting attributes, using text tags, binding events and using a geometry manager are demonstrated.
- *eval and exec functions* The example uses eval to perform many of the math functions in this example. However, as you will see later in this chapter, eval cannot be used to execute arbitrary Python code; exec is used to execute single or multiple lines of code (and multiple lines of code can include control flow structures).

### 3.2 Calculator example: source code

#### calc2.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw

class SLabel(Frame):
    """ SLabel defines a 2-sided label within a Frame. The
        left hand label has blue letters; the right has white letters. """
    def __init__(self, master, leftl, rightl):
        Frame.__init__(self, master, bg='gray40')
        self.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        Label(self, text=leftl, fg='steelblue1',
              font=("arial", 6, "bold"), width=5, bg='gray40').pack(
            side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        Label(self, text=rightl, fg='white',
              font=("arial", 6, "bold"), width=1, bg='gray40').pack(
```

#### ① Python MegaWidgets

```

        side=RIGHT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

class Key(Button):
    def __init__(self, master, font=('arial', 8, 'bold'),
                 fg='white', width=5, borderwidth=5, **kw):
        kw['font'] = font
        kw['fg'] = fg
        kw['width'] = width
        kw['borderwidth'] = borderwidth
        apply(Button.__init__, (self, master), kw)
        self.pack(side=LEFT, expand=NO, fill=NONE)

class Calculator(Frame):
    def __init__(self, parent=None):
        Frame.__init__(self, bg='gray40')
        self.pack(expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        self.master.title('Tkinter Toolkit TT-42')
        self.master.iconname('Tk-42')
        self.calc = Evaluator()      # This is our evaluator
        self.buildCalculator()       # Build the widgets

    # This is an incomplete dictionary - a good exercise!
    self.actionDict = {'second': self.doThis, 'mode': self.doThis,
                       'delete': self.doThis, 'alpha': self.doThis,
                       'stat': self.doThis, 'math': self.doThis,
                       'matrix': self.doThis, 'program': self.doThis,
                       'vars': self.doThis, 'clear': self.clearall,
                       'sin': self.doThis, 'cos': self.doThis,
                       'tan': self.doThis, 'up': self.doThis,
                       'X1': self.doThis, 'X2': self.doThis,
                       'log': self.doThis, 'ln': self.doThis,
                       'store': self.doThis, 'off': self.turnoff,
                       'neg': self.doThis, 'enter': self.doEnter,
                       }
    self.current = ""

    def doThis(self,action):
        print '%s has not been implemented' % action

    def turnoff(self, *args):
        self.quit()

    def clearall(self, *args):
        self.current = ""
        self.display.component('text').delete(1.0, END)    ④

    def doEnter(self, *args):
        self.display.insert(END, '\n')
        result = self.calc.runpython(self.current)          ⑤
        if result:
            self.display.insert(END, '%s\n' % result, 'ans')  ⑥
        self.current = ""

    def doKeypress(self, event):
        key = event.char
        if key != '\b':
            self.current = self.current + key

```

```

        else:
            self.current = self.current[:-1]    ↑ 7   ↑ 8

def keyAction(self, key):
    self.display.insert(END, key)
    self.current = self.current + key

def evalAction(self, action):
    try:
        self.actionDict[action](action)
    except KeyError:
        pass

```

---

### Code comments

- ❶ Pmw (Python MegaWidgets) widgets are used. These widgets will feature prominently in this book since they provide an excellent mechanism to support a wide range of GUI requirements and they are readily extended to support additional requirements.
- ❷ In the constructor for the Key class, we add key-value pairs to the kw (keyword) dictionary and then apply these values to the Button constructor.

```

def __init__(self, master, font=('arial', 8, 'bold'),
             fg='white', width=5, borderwidth=5, **kw):
    kw['font'] = font
    ...
    apply(Button.__init__, (self, master), kw)

```

This allows us a great deal of flexibility in constructing our widgets.

- ❸ The Calculator class uses a dictionary to provide a *dispatcher* for methods within the class.

```

'matrix': self.doThis, 'program': self.doThis,
'vars': self.doThis, 'clear': self.clearall,
'sin': self.doThis, 'cos': self.doThis,

```

Remember that dictionaries can handle much more complex references than the relatively simple cases we need for this calculator.

- ❹ We use a Pmw ScrolledText widget, which is a composite widget. To gain access to the contained widgets, the component method is used.

```
    self.display.component('text').delete(1.0, END)
```

- ❺ When the ENTER key is clicked, the collected string is directed to the calculator's evaluator:

```
    result = self.calc.runpython(self.current)
```

The result of this evaluation is displayed in the scrolled text widget.

- ❻ The final argument in the text insert function is a text tag 'ans' which is used to change the foreground color of the displayed text.

```
    self.display.insert(END, '%s\n' % result, 'ans')
```

- ❼ doKeypress is a *callback* bound to all keys. The event argument in the callback provides the client data for the callback. event.char is the key entered; several attributes are available in the client data, such as x-y coordinates of a button press or the state of a mouse operation (see "Tkinter events" on page 98). In this case we get the character entered.

- ❽ A simple exception mechanism to take action on selected keys is used.

## calc2.py (continued)

```
def buildCalculator(self):
    FUN = 1                      # A Function
    KEY = 0                       # A Key
    KC1 = 'gray30'                 # Dark Keys
    KC2 = 'gray50'                 # Light Keys
    KC3 = 'steelblue1'              # Light Blue Key
    KC4 = 'steelblue'                # Dark Blue Key
    keys = [
        [ ('2nd',   '',   '',   KC3, FUN, 'second'),   # Row 1
          ('Mode',  'Quit',  '',   KC1, FUN, 'mode'),
          ('Del',   'Ins',   '',   KC1, FUN, 'delete'),
          ('Alpha', 'Lock',  '',   KC2, FUN, 'alpha'),
          ('Stat',   'List',  '',   KC1, FUN, 'stat') ],
        [ ('Math',  'Test',  'A',   KC1, FUN, 'math'),      # Row 2
          ('Mtrx',  'Angle', 'B',   KC1, FUN, 'matrix'),
          ('Prgm',  'Draw',   'C',   KC1, FUN, 'program'),
          ('Vars',   'YVars',  '',   KC1, FUN, 'vars') ],
        [ ('Clr',   '',   '',   KC1, FUN, 'clear') ],
        [ ('X-1',   'Abs',   'D',   KC1, FUN, 'X1'),       # Row 3
          ('Sin',   'Sin-1', 'E',   KC1, FUN, 'sin'),
          ('Cos',   'Cos-1', 'F',   KC1, FUN, 'cos'),
          ('Tan',   'Tan-1', 'G',   KC1, FUN, 'tan'),
          ('^',     'PI',    'H',   KC1, FUN, 'up') ],
        [ ('X2',   'Root',  'I',   KC1, FUN, 'X2'),       # Row 4
          ('EE',   'J',   KC1, KEY, ','),
          ('{',   'K',   KC1, KEY, '('),
          ('}',   'L',   KC1, KEY, ')'),
          ('/',   'M',   KC4, KEY, '/') ],
        [ ('Log',   '10x',  'N',   KC1, FUN, 'log'),       # Row 5
          ('7',   'Un-1', 'O',   KC2, KEY, '7'),
          ('8',   'Vn-1', 'P',   KC2, KEY, '8'),
          ('9',   'n',    'Q',   KC2, KEY, '9'),
          ('X',   '[',   'R',   KC4, KEY, '*') ],
        [ ('Ln',   'ex',   'S',   KC1, FUN, 'ln'),        # Row 6
          ('4',   'L4',   'T',   KC2, KEY, '4'),
          ('5',   'L5',   'U',   KC2, KEY, '5'),
          ('6',   'L6',   'V',   KC2, KEY, '6'),
          ('-',   ']',   'W',   KC4, KEY, '-') ],
        [ ('STO',  'RCL',  'X',   KC1, FUN, 'store'),     # Row 7
          ('1',   'L1',   'Y',   KC2, KEY, '1'),
          ('2',   'L2',   'Z',   KC2, KEY, '2'),
          ('3',   'L3',   '',   KC2, KEY, '3'),
          ('+',   'MEM',  '',   KC4, KEY, '+') ],
        [ ('Off',  '',   '',   KC1, FUN, 'off'),        # Row 8
          ('0',   '',   '',   KC2, KEY, '0'),
          ('.',   ':',   '',   KC2, KEY, '.'),
          ('(-)', 'ANS',  '?',   KC2, FUN, 'neg'),
          ('Enter', 'Entry',  '',   KC4, FUN, 'enter')] ]
    self.display = Pmw.ScrolledText(self, hscrollmode='dynamic',          ⑩
                                    vscrollmode='dynamic', hull_relief='sunken',
                                    hull_background='gray40', hull_borderwidth=10,
```

```

        text_background='honeydew4', text_width=16,
        text_foreground='black', text_height=6,
        text_padx=10, text_pady=10, text_relief='groove',
        text_font=('arial', 12, 'bold'))
    self.display.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

    self.display.tag_config('ans', foreground='white')
    self.display.component('text').bind('<Key>', self.doKeypress)
    self.display.component('text').bind('<Return>', self.doEnter)

    for row in keys:
        rowa = Frame(self, bg='gray40')
        rowb = Frame(self, bg='gray40')
        for p1, p2, p3, color, ktype, func in row:
            if ktype == FUN:
                a = lambda s=self, a=func: s.evalAction(a)
            else:
                a = lambda s=self, k=func: s.keyAction(k)
            SLabel(rowa, p2, p3)
            Key(rowb, text=p1, bg=color, command=a)
        rowa.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        rowb.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

class Evaluator:
    def __init__(self):
        self.myNameSpace = {}
        self.runpython("from math import *")

    def runpython(self, code):
        try:
            return `eval(code, self.myNameSpace, self.myNameSpace)`
        except SyntaxError:
            try:
                exec code in self.myNameSpace, self.myNameSpace
            except:
                return 'Error'

Calculator().mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ➊ A number of constants are defined. The following data structure is quite complex. Using constants makes it easy to change values throughout such a complex structure and they make the code much more readable and consequently easier to maintain.

```

FUN = 1          # A Function
KEY = 0          # A Key
KC1 = 'gray30'   # Dark Keys
KC2 = 'gray50'   # Light Keys

```

These are used to populate a nested list of lists, which contains tuples. The tuples store three labels, the key color, the function or key designator and the method to bind to the key's cmd (activate) callback.

- ➋ We create the Pmw ScrolledText widget and provide values for many of its attributes.

```
    self.display = Pmw.ScrolledText(self, hscrollmode='dynamic',
```

```
vscrollmode='dynamic', hull_relief='sunken',  
hull_background='gray40', hull_borderwidth=10,  
text_background='honeydew4', text_width=16,
```

Notice how the attributes for the `hull` (the container for the subordinate widgets within Pmw widgets) and the `text` widget are accessed by prefixing the widget.

- 11 We define a text tag which is used to differentiate output from input in the calculator's screen.

```
self.display.tag_config('ans', foreground='white')
```

We saw this tag in use earlier in the `text.insert` method.

- Again, we must use a lambda expression to bind our callback function.

- 13 Python exceptions are quite flexible and allow simple control of errors. In the calculator's evaluator (`runpython`), we first run `eval`.

```
try:  
    return `eval(code, self.myNameSpace, self.myNameSpace)`
```

This is used mainly to support direct calculator math. eval cannot handle code sequences, however, so when we attempt to eval a code sequence, a `SyntaxError` exception is raised.

- #### 14 We trap the exception:

```
except SyntaxError:  
    try:  
        exec code in self.myNameSpace, self.myNameSpace  
    except:  
        return 'Error'
```

and then the code is exec'ed in the except clause. Notice how this is enclosed by another try... except clause.

```
import sys
dir(sys)
['__doc__', '__name__', '__
_stderr__', '__stdin__', '__
_stdout__', 'argv', 'builtin
__module_names', 'copyri
```

**Figure 3.3 Python input**

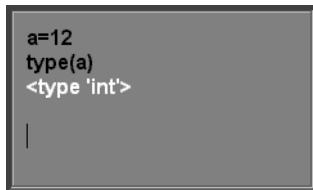
```
atform', 'prefix', 'setcheck  
interval', 'setprofile', 'settr  
ace', 'stderr', 'stdin', 'stdo  
ut', 'version', 'winver']
```

### Figure 3.4 Output from dir()

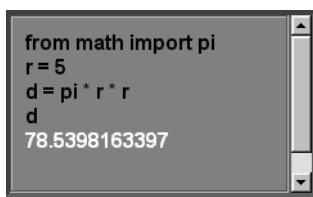
Figure 3.2 shows the results of clicking keys on the calculator to calculate simple math equations. Unlike many calculators, this displays the input and output in different colors. The display also scrolls to provide a history of calculations, not unlike a printing calculator. If you click on the display screen, you may input data directly. Here is the surprise: you can enter Python and have `exec` run the code.

Figure 3.3 shows how you can import the `sys` module and access built-in functions within Python. Technically, you could do almost anything from this window (within the constraint of a very small display window). However, I don't think that this calculator is the much-sought Interactive Development Environment (IDE) for Python! (Readers who subscribe to the Python news group will understand that there has been a *constant* demand for an IDE for Python. Fortunately, Guido Van Rossum has now released IDLE with Python.)

When you press ENTER after `dir()`, you will see output similar to figure 3.4. This list of built-in symbols has scrolled the display over several lines (the widget is only 16 characters wide, after all).



**Figure 3.5 Variables and built-in functions**



**Figure 3.6 Using the math module**

Because we are maintaining a local namespace, it is possible to set up an interactive Python session that can do some useful work. Figure 3.5 shows how we are able to set variables within the namespace and manipulate the data with built-ins.

Figure 3.6 is yet another example of our ability to gain access to the interpreter from an interactive shell. While the examples have been restricted to operations that fit within the limited space of the calculator's display, they do illustrate a potential for more serious applications. Note how Python allows you to create and use variables within the current namespace.

**Note**

When developing applications, I generally hide a button or bind a “secret” key sequence to invoke a GUI which allows me to execute arbitrary Python so that I can examine the namespace or modify objects within the running system. It is really a miniature debugger that I always have access to during development when something unusual happens. Sometimes restarting the application for a debug session just does not get me to the solution. An example of one of these tools is found in “A Tkinter explorer” on page 334.

### 3.3 Examining the application structure

The calculator example derives its compact code from the fact that Tkinter provides much of the structure for the application. Importing Tkinter establishes the base objects for the system and it only requires a little extra code to display a GUI. In fact, the minimal Tkinter code that can be written is just four lines:

```
from Tkinter import *
aWidget = Label(None, text='How little code does it need?')
aWidget.pack()
aWidget.mainloop()
```

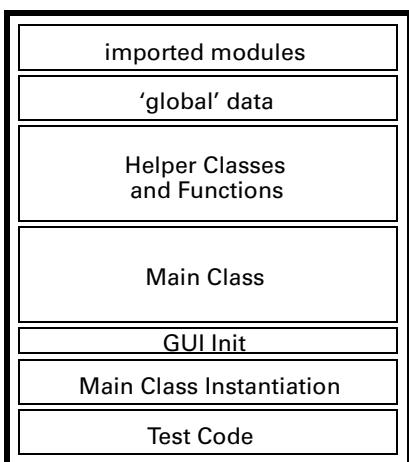
In this fragment, the label widget is realized with the pack method. A mainloop is necessary to start the Tkinter event loop. In our calculator example, the application structure is a little more complex:

```
from Tkinter import *
...
define helper classes
...
class Calculator:
```

```

...
create widgets
...
Calculator.mainloop()

```



**Figure 3.7 Application structure**

Calling `Calculator.mainloop()` creates a calculator instance and starts the mainloop.

As we develop more applications, you will see this structure repeatedly. For those of us that tend to think spatially, the diagram shown in figure 3.7 may help.

All we have to do is fill in the blocks and we're finished! Well, nearly finished. I believe that the most important block in the structure is the last one: "Test Code." The purpose of this section is to allow you to test a module that is part of a suite of modules without the whole application structure being in place. Writing Python code this way will save a great deal of effort in integrating the components of the application. Of course, this approach applies to any implementation.

## 3.4 Extending the application

I leave you now with an exercise to extend the calculator and complete the functions that have been left undefined. It would be a simple task to modify the `keys` list to remove unnecessary keys and produce a rather more focused calculator. It would also be possible to modify the keys to provide a business or hex calculator.

In subsequent examples, you will see more complex manifestations of the application structure illustrated by this example.

P A R T

2

## *Displays*

In this section of the book we are going to examine the components that are used to build an application. We will begin with Tkinter widgets in chapter 4 and an explanation of their key features and their relationship to the underlying Tk widgets they are driving. Remember that Tkinter provides an object-oriented approach to GUIs, so that even though the behavior of the widgets is the same as those widgets created within a Tcl/Tk program, the methods used to create and manipulate them are quite different from within a Tkinter program.

Once we have looked at the widgets and examined Pmw (Python MegaWidgets), which provides a valuable library of application-ready widgets, we will discuss laying out the screen using the various geometry managers that are defined in chapter 5.

Chapter 6 explains how to make your application react to external events. This is an important chapter, since it covers a variety of methods for handling user input.

Chapter 7 shows the application of *classes* and *inheritance* as they apply to Tkinter. This is important for programmers new to object-oriented programming and it may be useful for those who are used to OOP as it applies to C++ and Java, since there are some notable differences. Then, in chapter 8, I will introduce more advanced techniques to drive a variety of dialogs and other interaction models.

Chapter 9 introduces panels and machines; this may be a new idea to some readers. It shows how to construct innovative user interfaces which resemble (in most cases) the devices that they control or monitor.

Chapter 10 gives information on building interfaces that permit the user to draw objects on a screen. It then explains methods to change their properties. You will also find some example code which illustrates how Tcl/Tk programs from the demonstration programs distributed with the software can be converted to Tkinter quite easily. Chapter 11 explains how to draw graphs using fairly conventional two-dimensional plots along with some alternative three-dimensional graphics.





## C H A P T E R    4

---

# *Tkinter widgets*

- 4.1 Tkinter widget tour 31
- 4.2 Fonts and colors 47
- 4.3 Pmw Megawidget tour 49
- 4.4 Creating new megawidgets 73

In this chapter I'll present the widgets and facilities available to Tkinter. Pmw Python MegaWidgets, will also be discussed, since they provide valuable extensions to Tkinter. Each Tkinter and Pmw widget will be shown along with the source code fragment that produces the display. The examples are short and simple, although some of them illustrate how easy it is to produce powerful graphics with minimal code.

This chapter will not attempt to document all of the options available to a Tkinter programmer; complete documentation for the options and methods available for each widget is presented in appendix B. Similarly, Pmw options and methods are documented in Appendix C. Use these appendices to determine the full range of options for each widget.

### **4.1 Tkinter widget tour**

The following widget displays show typical Tkinter widget appearance and usage. The code is kept quite short, and it illustrates just a few of the options available for the widgets. Sometimes one or more of a widget's methods will be used, but this only scratches the surface. If

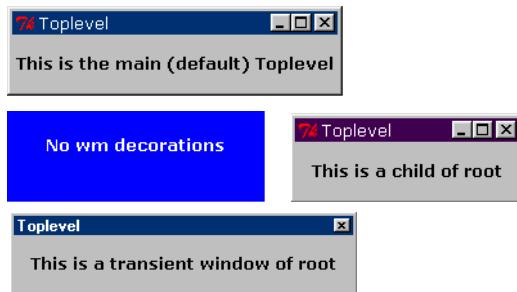
you need to look up a particular method or option, refer to appendix B. Each widget also has references to the corresponding section in the appendix.

With the exception of the first example, the code examples have been stripped of the boilerplate code necessary to import and initialize Tkinter. The constant code is shown **bolded** in the first example. Note that most of the examples have been coded as *functions*, rather than *classes*. This helps to keep the volume of code low. The full source code for all of the displays is available online.

### 4.1.1 Toplevel

The `Toplevel` widget provides a separate container for other widgets, such as a `Frame`. For simple, single-window applications, the *root* `Toplevel` created when you initialize Tk may be the only shell that you need. There are four types of `toplevels` shown in figure 4.1:

- 1 The main `toplevel`, which is normally referred to as the *root*.
- 2 A *child* `toplevel`, which acts independently to the root, unless the root is destroyed, in which case the child is also destroyed.
- 3 A *transient* `toplevel`, which is always drawn on top of its parent and is hidden if the parent is iconified or withdrawn.
- 4 A `Toplevel` which is undecorated by the window manager can be created by setting the `overrideredirect` flag to a nonzero value. This creates a window that cannot be resized or moved directly.



**Figure 4.1**  
**Toplevel widgets**

```
from Tkinter import *
root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
root.title('Toplevel')

Label(root, text='This is the main (default) Toplevel').pack(pady=10)
t1 = Toplevel(root)
Label(t1, text='This is a child of root').pack(padx=10, pady=10)
t2 = Toplevel(root)
Label(t2, text='This is a transient window of root').pack(padx=10, pady=10)
t2.transient(root)
t3 = Toplevel(root, borderwidth=5, bg='blue')
```

```

Label(t3, text='No wm decorations', bg='blue', fg='white').pack(padx=10,
pady=10)
t3.overrideredirect(1)
t3.geometry('200x70+150+150')

root.mainloop()

```

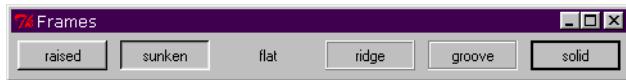
**Note** The use of the `option_readfile` call in each of the examples to set application-wide defaults for colors and fonts is explained in “Setting application-wide default fonts and colors” on page 49. This call is used to ensure that most examples have consistent fonts and predictable field sizes.

Documentation for the `Toplevel` widget starts on page 539.

#### 4.1.2 Frame

Frame widgets are *containers* for other widgets. Although you can bind mouse and keyboard events to callbacks, frames have limited options and no methods other than standard widget options.

One of the most common uses for a frame is as a *master* for a group of widgets which will be handled by a geometry manager. This is shown in figure 4.2. The second frame example, shown in figure 4.3 below, uses one frame for each row of the display.



**Figure 4.2 Frame widget**

```

for relief in [RAISED, SUNKEN, FLAT, RIDGE, GROOVE, SOLID]:
    f = Frame(root, borderwidth=2, relief=relief)
    Label(f, text=relief, width=10).pack(side=LEFT)
    f.pack(side=LEFT, padx=5, pady=5)

```

In a similar manner to buttons and labels, the appearance of the frame can be modified by choosing a relief type and applying an appropriate borderwidth. (See figure 4.3.) In fact, it can be hard to tell the difference between these widgets. For this reason, it may be a good idea to reserve particular decorations for single widgets and not allow the decoration for a label to be used for a button, for example:

```

class GUI:
    def __init__(self):
        of = [None]*5
        for bdw in range(5):
            of[bdw] = Frame(self.root, borderwidth=0)
            Label(of[bdw], text='borderwidth = %d' % bdw).pack(side=LEFT)
            ifx = 0
            iff = []
            for relief in [RAISED, SUNKEN, FLAT, RIDGE, GROOVE, SOLID]:

```

```

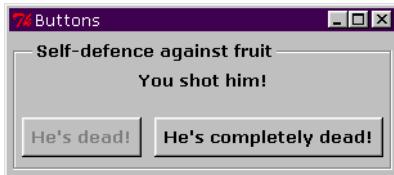
        iff.append(Frame(of[bdw], borderwidth=bdw, relief=relief))
        Label(iff[ifx], text=relief, width=10).pack(side=LEFT)
        iff[ifx].pack(side=LEFT, padx=7-bdw, pady=5+bdw)
        ifx = ifx+1
    of[bdw].pack()

```



**Figure 4.3 Frame styles combining relief type with varying borderwidths**

A common use of the GROOVE relief type is to provide a labelled frame (sometimes called a *panel*) around one or more widgets. There are several ways to do this; figure 4.4 illustrates just one example, using two frames. Note that the outer frame uses the *Placer* geometry manager to position the inner frame and label. The widgets inside the inner frame use the *Packer* geometry manager.



**Figure 4.4 Using a Frame widget to construct a panel**

```

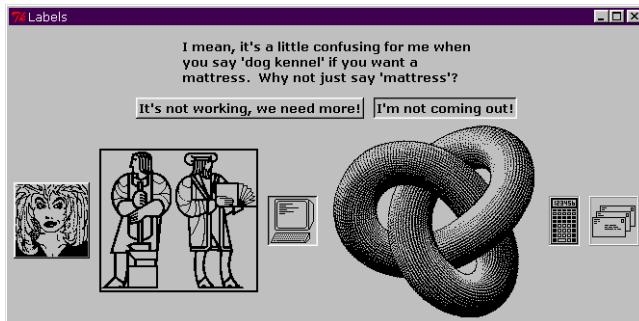
f = Frame(root, width=300, height=110)
xf = Frame(f, relief=GROOVE, borderwidth=2)
Label(xf, text="You shot him!").pack(pady=10)
Button(xf, text="He's dead!", state=DISABLED).pack(side=LEFT, padx=5,
                                                 pady=8)
Button(xf, text="He's completely dead!", command=root.quit).pack(side=RIGHT,
                                                               padx=5, pady=8)
xf.place(relx=0.01, rely=0.125, anchor=NW)
Label(f, text='Self-defence against fruit').place(relx=.06, rely=0.125,
                                                 anchor=W)
f.pack()

```

Documentation for the `Frame` widget starts on page 491.

### 4.1.3 Label

Label widgets are used to display text or images. Labels can contain text spanning multiple lines, but you can only use a single font. You can allow the widget to break a string of text fitting the available space or you can embed linefeed characters in the string to control breaks. Several labels are shown in figure 4.5.



**Figure 4.5 Label widget**

Although labels are not intended to be used for interacting with users, you can bind mouse and keyboard events to callbacks. This may be used as a “cheap” button for certain applications.

```
Label(root, text="I mean, it's a little confusing for me when you say "
    "'dog kennel' if you want a mattress. Why not just say 'mattress'?",
    wraplength=300, justify=LEFT).pack(pady=10)

f1=Frame(root)
Label(f1, text="It's not working, we need more!",
      relief=RAISED).pack(side=LEFT, padx=5)
Label(f1, text="I'm not coming out!", relief=SUNKEN).pack(side=LEFT,
                                                       padx=5)
f1.pack()

f2=Frame(root)
for bitmap,rlf in [ ('woman',RAISED),('mensetmanus',SOLID),
                    ('terminal',SUNKEN), ('escherknot',FLAT),
                    ('calculator',GROOVE),('letters',RIDGE)]:
    Label(f2, bitmap=@bitmaps/%s' % bitmap, relief=rlf).pack(side=LEFT,
                                                               padx=5)
f2.pack()
```

Documentation for the Label widget starts on page 495.

#### 4.1.4 Button

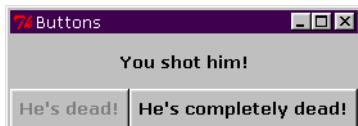


Figure 4.6 Button widgets

Strictly, *buttons* are *labels* that react to mouse and keyboard events. You bind a method call or callback that is invoked when the button is *activated*. Buttons may be *disabled* to prevent the user from activating a button. Button widgets can contain text (which can span multiple lines) or images. Buttons can be in the *tab group*, which means that you can navigate to them using the TAB key. Simple buttons are illustrated in figure 4.6.

```
Label(root, text="You shot him!").pack(pady=10)
Button(root, text="He's dead!", state=DISABLED).pack(side=LEFT)
Button(root, text="He's completely dead!",
       command=root.quit).pack(side=RIGHT)
```

Not all GUI programmers are aware that the relief option may be used to create buttons with different appearances. In particular, FLAT and SOLID reliefs are useful for creating toolbars where icons are used to convey functional information. However, some care must be exercised when using some relief effects. For example, if you define a button with a SUNKEN relief, the widget will not have a different appearance when it is activated, since the default behavior is to show the button with a SUNKEN relief; alternative actions must be devised such as changing the background color, font or wording within the button. Figure 4.7 illustrates the effect of combining the available relief types with increasing borderwidth. Note that increased borderwidth can be effective for some relief types (and RIDGE and GROOVE don't work unless borderwidth is 2 or more). However, buttons tend to become ugly if the borderwidth is too great.

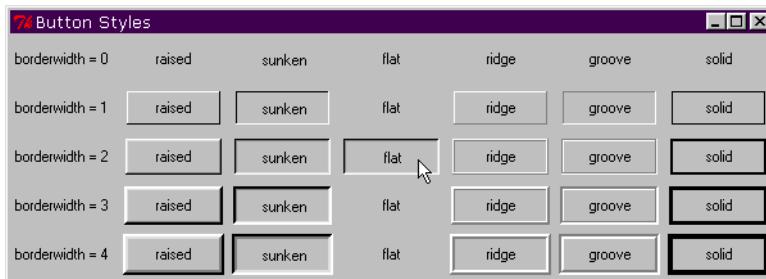


Figure 4.7 Combining relief and varying borderwidth

```
class GUI:
    def __init__(self):
        of = [None] * 5
        for bdw in range(5):
            of[bdw] = Frame(self.root, borderwidth=0)
            Label(of[bdw], text='borderwidth = %d' % bdw).pack(side=LEFT)
            for relief in [RAISED, SUNKEN, FLAT, RIDGE, GROOVE, SOLID]:
                Button(of[bdw], text=relief,
                       borderwidth=bdw, relief=relief, width=10,
                       command=lambda s=self, r=relief, b=bdw: s.prt(r,b))\
```

```

        .pack(side=LEFT, padx=7-bdw, pady=7-bdw)
        of[bdw].pack()
def prt(self, relief, border):
    print '%s:%d' % (relief, border)

```

Documentation for the Button widget starts on page 453.

### 4.1.5 Entry

Entry widgets are the basic widgets used to collect input from a user. They may also be used to display information and may be disabled to prevent a user from changing their values.

Entry widgets are limited to a single line of text which can be in only one font. A typical entry widget is shown in figure 4.8. If the text entered into the widget is longer than the available display space, the widget scrolls the contents. You may change the visible position using the arrow keys. You may also use the widget's scrolling methods to bind scrolling behavior to the mouse or to your application.



**Figure 4.8 Entry widget**

```

Label(root, text="Anagram:").pack(side=LEFT, padx=5, pady=10)
e = StringVar()
Entry(root, width=40, textvariable=e).pack(side=LEFT)
e.set("'A shroe! A shroe! My dingkom for a shroe!'")

```

Documentation for the Entry widget starts on page 484.

### 4.1.6 Radiobutton



**Figure 4.9  
Radiobutton widget**

The Radiobutton widget may need renaming soon! It is becoming unusual to see car radios with mechanical button selectors, so it might be difficult to explain the widget to future GUI designers. However, the idea is that all selections are *exclusive*, so that selecting one button deselects any button already selected.

In a similar fashion to Button widgets, Radiobuttons can display text or images and can have text which spans multiple lines, although in one font only. Figure 4.9 illustrates typical Radiobuttons.

You normally associate all of the radiobuttons in a group to a single variable.

```

var = IntVar()
for text, value in [('Passion fruit', 1), ('Loganberries', 2),
                    ('Mangoes in syrup', 3), ('Oranges', 4),
                    ('Apples', 5), ('Grapefruit', 6)]:
    Radiobutton(root, text=text, value=value, variable=var).pack(anchor=W)
var.set(3)

```

If the `indicatoron` flag is set to FALSE, the radiobutton group behaves as a button box, as shown in figure 4.10. The selected button is normally indicated with a SUNKEN relief.

```
var = IntVar()
for text, value in [('Red Leicester', 1), ('Tilsit', 2), ('Caerphilly', 3),
                    ('Stilton', 4), ('Emental', 5),
                    ('Roquefort', 6), ('Brie', 7)]:
    Radiobutton(root, text=text, value=value, variable=var,
                indicatoron=0).pack(anchor=W, fill=X, ipadx=18)
var.set(3)
```



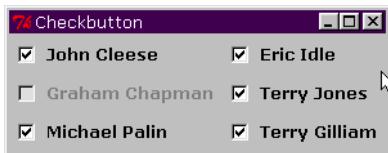
**Figure 4.10 Radiobuttons: `indicatoron=0`**

Documentation for the `Radiobutton` widget starts on page 519.

#### 4.1.7 Checkbutton

Checkbutton widgets are used to provide on/off selections for one or more items. Unlike radiobuttons (see “Radiobutton” on page 37) there is no interaction between checkbuttons. You may load checkbuttons with either text or images. Checkbuttons should normally have a variable (`IntVar`) assigned to the variable option which allows you to determine the state of the checkbutton. In addition (or alternately) you may bind a callback to the button which will be called whenever the button is pressed.

Note that the appearance of checkbuttons is quite different on UNIX and Windows; UNIX normally indicates selection by using a fill color, whereas Windows uses a checkmark. The Windows form is shown in figure 4.11.



**Figure 4.11 Checkbutton widget**

```
for castmember, row, col, status in [
    ('John Cleese', 0,0,NORMAL), ('Eric Idle', 0,1,NORMAL),
    ('Graham Chapman', 1,0,DISABLED), ('Terry Jones', 1,1,NORMAL),
```

```

('Michael Palin',2,0,NORMAL), ('Terry Gilliam', 2,1,NORMAL) ]:
    setattr(var, castmember, IntVar())
    Checkbutton(root, text=castmember, state=status, anchor=W,
                variable = getattr(var, castmember)).grid(row=row, col=col, sticky=W)

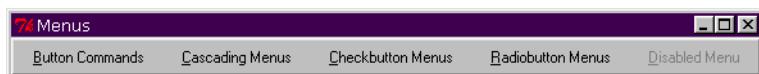
```

Documentation for the Checkbutton widget starts on page 481.

#### 4.1.8 Menu

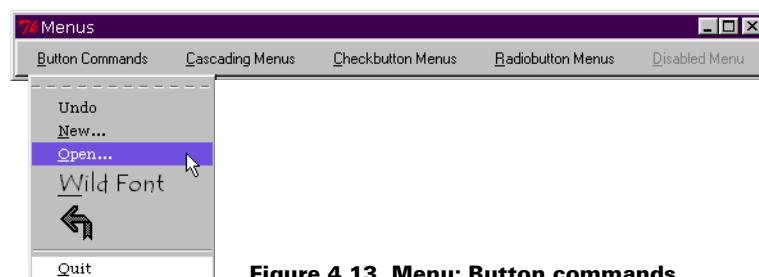
Menu widgets provide a familiar method to allow the user to choose operations within an application. Menus can be fairly cumbersome to construct, especially if the cascades *walk out* several levels (it is usually best to try design menus so that you do not need to walk out more than three levels to get to any functionality).

Tkinter provides flexibility for menu design, allowing multiple fonts, images and bitmaps, and checkbuttons and radiobuttons. It is possible to build the menu in several schemes. The example shown in figure 4.12 is one way to build a menu; you will find an alternate scheme to build the same menu online as altmenu.py.



**Figure 4.12 Menu widget**

Figure 4.13 illustrated adding Button commands to menu.



**Figure 4.13 Menu: Button commands**

```

mBar = Frame(root, relief=RAISED, borderwidth=2)
mBar.pack(fill=X)
CmdBtn = makeCommandMenu()
CasBtn = makeCascadeMenu()
ChkBn = makeCheckbuttonMenu()
RadBn = makeRadioButtonMenu()
NoMenu = makeDisabledMenu()
mBar.tk_menuBar(CmdBtn, CasBtn, ChkBn, RadBn, NoMenu)
def makeCommandMenu():
    CmdBtn = Menubutton(mBar, text='Button Commands', underline=0)

```

```

CmdBtn.pack(side=LEFT, padx="2m")
CmdBtn.menu = Menu(CmdBtn)

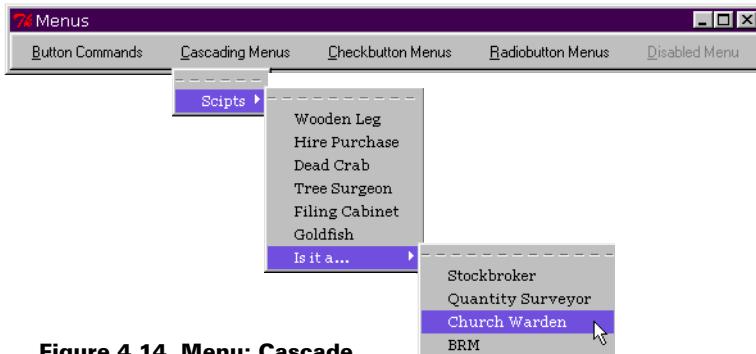
CmdBtn.menu.add_command(label="Undo")
CmdBtn.menu.entryconfig(0, state=DISABLED)

CmdBtn.menu.add_command(label='New...', underline=0, command=new_file)
CmdBtn.menu.add_command(label='Open...', underline=0, command=open_file)
CmdBtn.menu.add_command(label='Wild Font', underline=0,
                       font=('Tempus Sans ITC', 14), command=stub_action)
CmdBtn.menu.add_command(bitmap="@bitmaps/RotateLeft")
CmdBtn.menu.add('separator')
CmdBtn.menu.add_command(label='Quit', underline=0,
                       background='white', activebackground='green',
                       command=CmdBtn.quit)

CmdBtn['menu'] = CmdBtn.menu
return CmdBtn

```

Figure 4.14 shows the appearance of Cascade menu entries.



**Figure 4.14 Menu: Cascade**

```

def makeCascadeMenu():
    CasBtn = Menubutton(mBar, text='Cascading Menus', underline=0)
    CasBtn.pack(side=LEFT, padx="2m")
    CasBtn.menu = Menu(CasBtn)

    CasBtn.menu.choices = Menu(CasBtn.menu)
    CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones = Menu(CasBtn.menu.choices)

    CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones.add_command(label='Stockbroker')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones.add_command(label='Quantity Surveyor')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones.add_command(label='Church Warden')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones.add_command(label='BRM')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Wooden Leg')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Hire Purchase')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Dead Crab')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Tree Surgeon')
    CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Filing Cabinet')

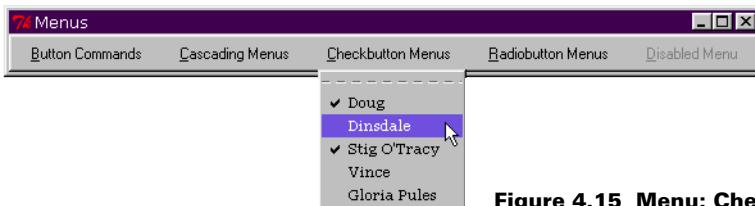
```

```

CasBtn.menu.choices.add_command(label='Goldfish')
CasBtn.menu.choices.add_cascade(label='Is it a...', menu=CasBtn.menu.choices.wierdones)
CasBtn.menu.add_cascade(label='Scripts', menu=CasBtn.menu.choices)
CasBtn['menu'] = CasBtn.menu
return CasBtn

```

Check buttons may be used within a menu, as shown in figure 4.15.



**Figure 4.15 Menu: Checkbuttons**

```

def makeCheckbuttonMenu():
    ChkBn = Menubutton(mBar, text='Checkbutton Menus', underline=0)
    ChkBn.pack(side=LEFT, padx='2m')
    ChkBn.menu = Menu(ChkBn)

    ChkBn.menu.add_checkbutton(label='Doug')
    ChkBn.menu.add_checkbutton(label='Dinsdale')
    ChkBn.menu.add_checkbutton(label="Stig O'Tracy")
    ChkBn.menu.add_checkbutton(label='Vince')
    ChkBn.menu.add_checkbutton(label='Gloria Pules')

    ChkBn.menu.invoke(ChkBn.menu.index('Dinsdale'))
    ChkBn['menu'] = ChkBn.menu
    return ChkBn

```

An alternative is to use Radiobuttons in a menu, as illustrated in figure 4.16.

```

def makeRadiobuttonMenu():
    RadBn = Menubutton(mBar, text='Radiobutton Menus', underline=0)
    RadBn.pack(side=LEFT, padx='2m')
    RadBn.menu = Menu(RdBn)

    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='metonymy')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='zeugmatists')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='synecdotists')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='axiomists')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='anagogists')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='catachresis')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='periphrastic')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='litotes')
    RadBn.menu.add_radiobutton(label='circumlocutors')

    RadBn['menu'] = RadBn.menu
    return RadBn

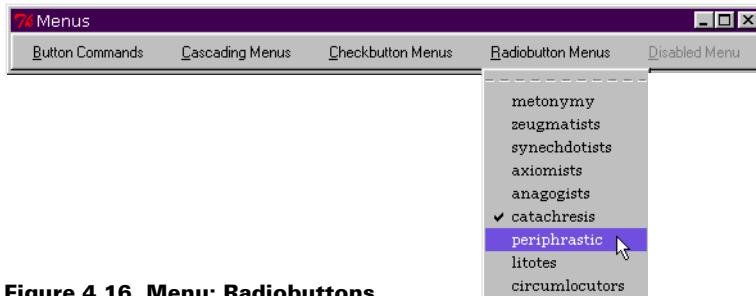
```

```

def makeDisabledMenu():
    Dummy_button = Menubutton(mBar, text='Disabled Menu', underline=0)
    Dummy_button.pack(side=LEFT, padx='2m')
    Dummy_button["state"] = DISABLED
    return Dummy_button

```

Documentation for the `Menu` widget starts on page 501.  
 Documentation for the `Menubutton` widget starts on page 506.  
 Documentation for the `OptionMenu` class starts on page 510.



**Figure 4.16 Menu: Radiobuttons**

### 4.1.9 Message

The `Message` widget provides a convenient way to present multi-line text. You can use one font and one foreground/background color combination for the complete message. An example using this widget is shown in figure 4.17.

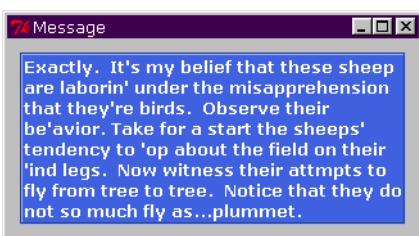
The widget has the standard widget methods.

```

Message(root, text="Exactly. It's my belief that these sheep are laborin' "
       "under the misapprehension that they're birds. Observe their "
       "be'avior. Take for a start the sheeps' tendency to 'op about "
       "the field on their 'ind legs. Now witness their attempts to "
       "fly from tree to tree. Notice that they do not so much fly "
       "as...plummet.", bg='royalblue', fg='ivory',
       relief=GROOVE).pack(padx=10, pady=10)

```

Documentation for the `Message` widget starts on page 508.



**Figure 4.17 Message widget**

#### 4.1.10 Text

The Text widget is a versatile widget. Its primary purpose is to display text, of course, but it is capable of multiple styles and fonts, embedded images and windows, and localized event binding.

The Text widget may be used as a simple editor, in which case defining multiple tags and markings makes implementation easy. The widget is complex and has many options and methods, so please refer to the full documentation for precise details. Some of the possible styles and embedded objects are shown in figure 4.18.



Figure 4.18 Text widget with several embedded objects

```
text = Text(root, height=26, width=50)
scroll = Scrollbar(root, command=text.yview)
text.configure(yscrollcommand=scroll.set)

text.tag_configure('bold_italics', font=('Verdana', 12, 'bold', 'italic'))
text.tag_configure('big', font=('Verdana', 24, 'bold'))
text.tag_configure('color', foreground='blue', font=('Tempus Sans ITC', 14))
text.tag_configure('groove', relief=GROOVE, borderwidth=2)

text.tag_bind('bite', '<1>',
             lambda e, t=text: t.insert(END, "I'll bite your legs off!"))

text.insert(END, 'Something up with my banter, chaps?\n')
text.insert(END, 'Four hours to bury a cat?\n', 'bold_italics')
text.insert(END, 'Can I call you "Frank"? \n', 'big')
text.insert(END, "What's happening Thursday then?\n", 'color')
text.insert(END, 'Did you write this symphony in the shed?\n', 'groove')

button = Button(text, text='I do live at 46 Horton terrace')
text.window_create(END, window=button)
```

```

photo=PhotoImage(file='lumber.gif')
text.image_create(END, image=photo)

text.insert(END, 'I dare you to click on this\n', 'bite')
text.pack(side=LEFT)
scroll.pack(side=RIGHT, fill=Y)

```

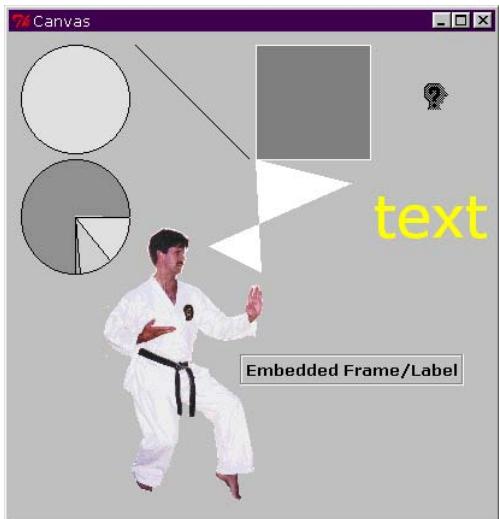
Documentation for the `Text` widget starts on page 528.

#### 4.1.11 Canvas

Canvases are versatile widgets. Not only can you use them to draw complex objects, using lines, ovals, polygons and rectangles, but you can also place images and bitmaps on the canvas with great precision. In addition to these features you can place any widgets within a canvas (such as buttons, listboxes and other widgets) and bind mouse or keyboard actions to them.

You will see many examples in this book where `Canvas` widgets have been used to provide a free-form container for a variety of applications. The example shown in figure 4.19 is a somewhat crude attempt to illustrate most of the available facilities.

One property of `Canvas` widgets, which can be either useful or can get in the way, is that objects are drawn on top of any objects already on the canvas. You can change the order of canvas items later, if necessary.



**Figure 4.19 Canvas widget**

```

canvas = Canvas(root, width =400, height=400)
canvas.create_oval(10,10,100,100, fill='gray90')
canvas.create_line(105,10,200,105, stipple='@bitmaps/gray3')
canvas.create_rectangle(205,10,300,105, outline='white', fill='gray50')
canvas.create_bitmap(355, 53, bitmap='questhead')

xy = 10, 105, 100, 200
canvas.create_arc(xy, start=0, extent=270, fill='gray60')

```

```

canvas.create_arc(xy, start=270, extent=5, fill='gray70')
canvas.create_arc(xy, start=275, extent=35, fill='gray80')
canvas.create_arc(xy, start=310, extent=49, fill='gray90')

canvas.create_polygon(205,105,285,125,166,177,210,199,205,105, fill='white')
canvas.create_text(350,150, text='text', fill='yellow', font=('verdana', 36))

img = PhotoImage(file='img52.gif')
canvas.create_image(145,280, image=img, anchor=CENTER)

frm = Frame(canvas, relief=GROOVE, borderwidth=2)
Label(frm, text="Embedded Frame/Label").pack()
canvas.create_window(285, 280, window=frm, anchor=CENTER)
canvas.pack()

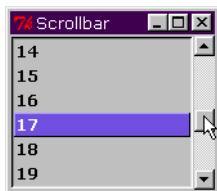
```

Documentation for the `Canvas` widget starts on page 456.

Documentation for the `Bitmap` class starts on page 452.

Documentation for the `PhotoImage` class starts on page 512.

## 4.1.12 Scrollbar



Scrollbar widgets can be added to any widget that supports scrolling such as `Text`, `Canvas` and `Listbox` widgets.

Associating a `Scrollbar` widget with another widget is as simple as adding callbacks to each widget and arranging for them to be displayed together. Of course, there is no requirement for them to be co-located but you may end up with some unusual GUIs if you don't! Figure 4.20 shows a typical application.

**Figure 4.20**  
**Scrollbar widget**

```

list = Listbox(root, height=6, width=15)
scroll = Scrollbar(root, command=list.yview)
list.configure(yscrollcommand=scroll.set)
list.pack(side=LEFT)
scroll.pack(side=RIGHT, fill=Y)
for item in range(30):
    list.insert(END, item)

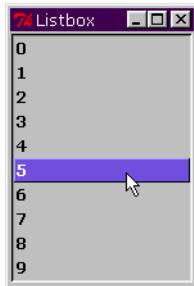
```

Documentation for the `Scrollbar` widget starts on page 525.

## 4.1.13 Listbox

`Listbox` widgets display a list of values that may be chosen by the user. The default behavior of the widget is to allow the user to select a single item in the list. A simple example is shown in figure 4.21. You may add additional bindings and use the `selectmode` option of the widget to allow multiple-item and other properties.

See “Scrollbar” above, for information on adding scrolling capability to the listbox.



```
list = Listbox(root, width=15)
list.pack()
for item in range(10):
    list.insert(END, item)
```

Documentation for the `Listbox` widget starts on page 497.

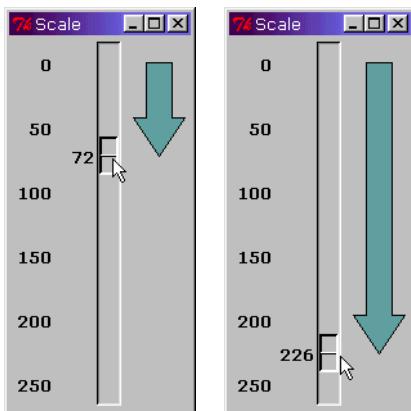
**Figure 4.21 List box widget**

#### 4.1.14 Scale

The `Scale` widget allows you to set linear values between selected lower and upper values and it displays the current value in a graphical manner. Optionally, the numeric value may be displayed.

The `Scale` widget has several options to control its appearance and behavior; otherwise it is a fairly simple widget.

The following example, shown in figure 4.22, is an adaptation of one of the demonstrations supplied with the Tcl/Tk distribution. As such, it may be useful for programmers in Tcl/Tk to see how a conversion to Tkinter can be made.



**Figure 4.22 Scale widget: application**

```
def setHeight(canvas, heightStr):
    height = string.atoi(heightStr)
    height = height + 21
    y2 = height - 30
    if y2 < 21:
        y2 = 21
    canvas.coords('poly',
        15,20,35,20,35,y2,45,y2,25,height,5,y2,15,y2,15,20)
```

```

    canvas.coords('line',
                  15,20,35,20,35,y2,45,y2,25,height,5,y2,15,y2,15,20)

    canvas = Canvas(root, width=50, height=50, bd=0, highlightthickness=0)
    canvas.create_polygon(0,0,1,1,2,2, fill='cadetblue', tags='poly')
    canvas.create_line(0,0,1,1,2,2,0,0, fill='black', tags='line')

    scale = Scale(root, orient=VERTICAL, length=284, from_=0, to=250,
                  tickinterval=50, command=lambda h, c=canvas:setHeight(c,h))
    scale.grid(row=0, column=0, sticky='NE')
    canvas.grid(row=0, column=1, sticky='NWSE')
    scale.set(100)

```

Documentation for the `Scale` widget starts on page 522.

## 4.2 Fonts and colors

The purpose of this section is to present the reader with an overview of fonts and colors as they apply to Tkinter. This will provide sufficient context to follow the examples that will be presented throughout the text.

### 4.2.1 Font descriptors

Those of us that have worked with X Window applications have become accustomed to the awkward and precise format of X window font descriptors. Fortunately, with release 8.0 and above of Tk, there is a solution: Tk defines *font descriptors*. Font descriptors are architecture independent. They allow the programmer to select a font by creating a tuple containing the family, pointsize and a string containing optional styles. The following are examples:

```
('Arial', 12, 'italic')
('Helvetica', 10)
('Verdana', 8, 'medium')
```

If the font family does not contain embedded spaces, you may pass the descriptor as a single string, such as:

```
'Verdana 8 bold italic'
```

### 4.2.2 X Window System font descriptors

Of course, the older font descriptors are available if you really want to use them. Most X Window fonts have a 14-field name in the form:

```
-foundry-family-weight-slant-setwidth-style-pixelSize-pointSize-
xresolution-yresolution-spacing-averageWidth-registry-encoding
```

Normally, we only care about a few of the fields:

```
-*-family-weight-slant-*-*-pointSize-*-*-registry-encoding
```

These fields are defined as follows:

- **family** A string that identifies the basic typographic style for example, `helvetica`, `arial`, etc.).

- **weight** A string that identifies the nominal blackness of the font, according to the *foundry's* judgment (for example, `medium`, `bold`, etc.).
  - **slant** A code string that indicates the overall posture of the typeface design used in the font—one of `roman` (R), `italic` (I) or `oblique` (O).
  - **pointSize** An unsigned integer-string typographic metric in device-independent units which gives the body size for which the font was designed.
  - **encoding** A registered name that identifies the coded character set as defined by the specified registry.

An example of an X font descriptor might be:

This describes an 8-point Verdana font, medium weight and roman (upright). Although the descriptor is somewhat ugly, most programmers get used to the format quickly. With X-servers, not all fonts scale smoothly if a specific pointsize is unavailable in a font; unfortunately it is a trial-and-error process to get exactly the right combination of font and size for optimal screen appearance.

### 4.2.3 Colors

Tkinter allows you to use the color names defined by the X-server. These names are quite florid, and do not always fully describe the color: `LavenderBlush1`, `LemonChiffon`, `LightSalmon`, `MediumOrchid3` and `OldLace` are just a few. Common names such as `red`, `yellow`, `blue` and `black` may also be used. The names and the corresponding RGB values are maintained in a Tk include file, so the names may be used portably on any Tkinter platform.\*

It is often easier to precisely define colors using *color strings*:

#RGB	for 4-bit values (16 levels for each color)
#RRGGBB	for 8-bit values (256 levels for each color)
#RRRRGGGGBBBB	for 16-bit values (65526 levels for each color)

Here is an example of how one might set up part of a color definition table for an application (incomplete code):

```

# These are the color schemes for xxx and yyy front panels
#           Panel      LED off      ON          Active          Warning
COLORS = [(['#545454','[#656565','LawnGreen', 'ForestGreen','DarkOrange', \
#           Alarm       Display     Inside     Chrome   InsideP   Chassis
#           '#ff342f','#747474','#343434','#efefef','#444444','#a0a0a0', \
#           DkChassis LtChassis VDkChassis VLtChassis Bronze
#           '#767600','#848400','#6c6c00','#909000','#7e5b41'), \
etc

```

\* X window color names are present in the standard X11 distribution but are not specified by the X11 Protocol or Xlib. It is permissible for X-server vendors to change the names or alter their interpretation. In rare cases you may find an implementation that will display different colors with Tkinter and X Window applications using the same color name.

#### 4.2.4 Setting application-wide default fonts and colors

When designing an application, you may find that the default colors, fonts and font-sizes supplied by the system are not appropriate for the particular layout that you have in mind. At such times you must set their values explicitly. The values *could* be put right in the code (you will see several examples in the book where this has been done). However, this prevents end users or system administrators from tailoring an application to their particular requirements or business standards. In this case the values should be set in an *external* option database. For X window programmers this is equivalent to the *resource database* which is usually tailored using a .Xdefaults file. In fact the format of the Tk option database is exactly like the .Xdefaults file:

```
*font: Verdana 10
*Label*font: Verdana 10 bold
*background: Gray80
*Entry*background: white
*foreground: black
*Listbox*foreground: RoyalBlue
```

The purpose of these entries is to set the font for all widgets *except* Labels to Verdana 10 (regular weight) and Labels to Verdana 10 bold. Similarly we set the default colors for background and foreground, modifying Entry backgrounds and Listbox foregrounds. If we place these entries in a file called *optionDB*, we can apply the values using an *option\_readfile* call:

```
root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
```

This call should be made *early* in the code to ensure that all widgets are created as intended.

### 4.3 Pmw Megawidget tour

Python megawidgets, *Pmw*, are composite widgets written entirely in Python using Tkinter widgets as base classes. They provide a convenient way to add functionality to an application without the need to write a lot of code. In particular, the *ComboBox* is a useful widget, along with the *Entry* field with several built-in validation schemes.

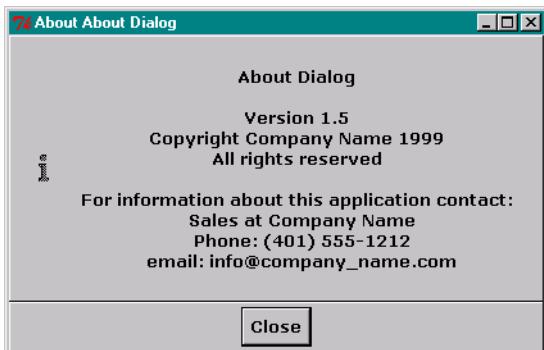
In a similar fashion to the Tkinter tour, above, the following displays show typical Pmw widget appearance and usage. The code is kept short and it illustrates some of the options available for the widgets. If you need to look up a particular method or option, refer to appendix C. Each widget also has references to the corresponding section in the appendix.

Pmw comes with extensive documentation in HTML format. Consequently this chapter will not repeat this information here. Additionally, there is example code for all of the widgets in the demos directory in the Pmw distribution. Most of the examples shown are simplifications derived from that code.

With the exception of the first example, the code examples have been stripped of the boilerplate code necessary to import and initialize Tkinter. The common code which is not shown in any sequences after the first is shown in **bold**. The full source code for all of the displays is available online.

### 4.3.1 AboutDialog

The AboutDialog widget provides a convenience dialog to present version, copyright and developer information. By providing a small number of data items the dialog can be displayed with minimal code. Figure 4.23 shows a typical AboutDialog.



**Figure 4.23 Pmw AboutDialog widget**

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
Pmw.initialise()

Pmw.aboutversion('1.5')
Pmw.aboutcopyright('Copyright Company Name 1999\nAll rights reserved')
Pmw.aboutcontact(
    'For information about this application contact:\n' +
    ' Sales at Company Name\n' +
    ' Phone: (401) 555-1212\n' +
    ' email: info@company_name.com'
)
about = Pmw.AboutDialog(root, applicationname='About Dialog')

root.mainloop()
```

This widget is used in the AppShell class which will be presented in “A standard application framework” on page 155 and it is used in several examples later in the book.

Documentation for the AboutDialog widget starts on page 542.

### 4.3.2 Balloon

The Balloon widget implements the now somewhat familiar *balloon help* motif (this is sometimes called *Tool Tips*). The purpose of the widget is to display help information when the cursor is placed over a widget on the screen, normally after a short delay. Additionally (or alternatively) information may be displayed in a status area on the screen. The information in this area is removed after a short delay. This is illustrated in figure 4.24.

Although balloon help can be very helpful to novice users, it may be annoying to experts. If you provide balloon help make sure that you provide an option to turn off output to the

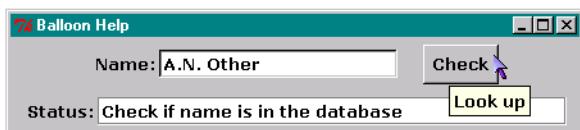
balloon and the status area, and make such choices persistent so that the user does not have to turn off the feature each time he uses the application.

```
balloon = Pmw.Balloon(root)
frame = Frame(root)
frame.pack(padx = 10, pady = 5)
field = Pmw.EntryField(frame, labelpos=W, label_text='Name:')
field.setentry('A.N. Other')
field.pack(side=LEFT, padx = 10)

balloon.bind(field, 'Your name', 'Enter your name')
check = Button(frame, text='Check')
check.pack(side=LEFT, padx=10)
balloon.bind(check, 'Look up', 'Check if name is in the database')
frame.pack()

messageBar = Pmw.MessageBar(root, entry_width=40,
                             entry_relief=GROOVE,
                             labelpos=W, label_text='Status:')
messageBar.pack(fill=X, expand=1, padx=10, pady=5)

balloon.configure(statuscommand = messageBar.helpmessage)
```



... After a few seconds



**Figure 4.24 Pmw Balloon widget**

Documentation for the Balloon widget starts on page 545.



**Figure 4.25  
Pmw ButtonBox widget**

### 4.3.3 ButtonBox

The ButtonBox widget provides a convenient way to implement a number of buttons and it is usually used to provide a *command area* within an application. The box may be laid out either horizontally or vertically and it is possible to define a default button. A simple ButtonBox is shown in figure 4.25.

```

def buttonPress(btn):
    print 'The "%s" button was pressed' % btn
def defaultKey(event):
    buttonBox.invoke()

buttonBox = Pmw.ButtonBox(root, labelpos='nw', label_text='ButtonBox:')
buttonBox.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=10, pady=10)

buttonBox.add('OK', command = lambda b='ok': buttonPress(b))
buttonBox.add('Apply', command = lambda b='apply': buttonPress(b))
buttonBox.add('Cancel', command = lambda b='cancel': buttonPress(b))

buttonBox.setdefault('OK')
root.bind('<Return>', defaultKey)
root.focus_set()
buttonBox.alignbuttons()

```

Documentation for the `Buttonbox` widget starts on page 546.

#### 4.3.4 **ComboBox**

The `ComboBox` widget is an important widget, originally found on Macintosh and Windows interfaces and later on Motif. It allows the user to select from a list of options, which, unlike an `OptionMenu`, may be scrolled to accommodate large numbers of selections. The list may be displayed permanently, such as the example at the left of figure 4.26 or as a dropdown list, shown at the right of figure 4.26. Using the dropdown form results in GUIs which require much less space to implement complex interfaces.

```

choice = None
def choseEntry(entry):
    print 'You chose "%s"' % entry
    choice.configure(text=entry)

asply = ("The Mating of the Wersh", "Two Netlemeng of Verona", "Twelfth
Thing", "The Chamrent of Venice", "Thamle", "Ring Kichard the Thrid")

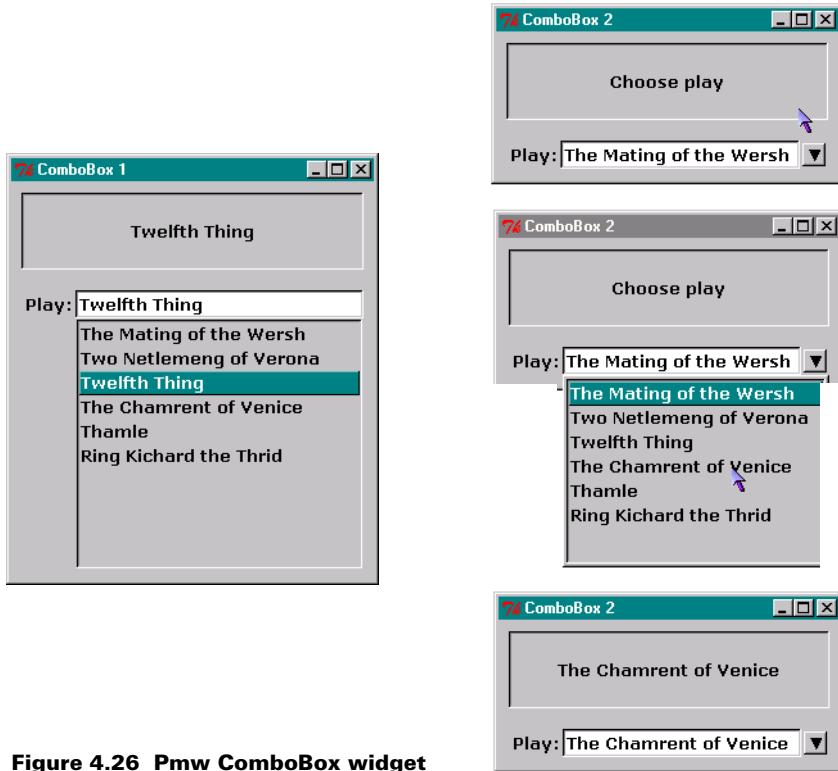
choice = Label(root, text='Choose play', relief='sunken', padx=20, pady=20)
choice.pack(expand=1, fill='both', padx=8, pady=8)

combobox = Pmw.ComboBox(root, label_text='Play:', labelpos='wn',
                       listbox_width=24, dropdown=0,
                       selectioncommand=choseEntry,
                       scrolledlist_items=asply)
combobox.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=8, pady=8)
combobox.selectitem(asply[0])

# =====
combobox = Pmw.ComboBox(root, label_text='Play:', labelpos='wn',
                       listbox_width=24, dropdown=1,
...

```

Documentation for the `ComboBox` widget starts on page 549.



**Figure 4.26 Pmw ComboBox widget**

### 4.3.5 ComboBoxDialog

The ComboBoxDialog widget provides a convenience dialog to allow the user to select an item from a ComboBox in response to a question. It is similar to a SelectionDialog widget except that it may allow the user to type in a value in the EntryField widget or select from a permanently displayed list or a dropdown list. An example is shown in figure 4.27.

```

choice = None
def choseEntry(entry):
    print 'You chose "%s"' % entry
    choice.configure(text=entry)

plays = ("The Taming of the Shrew", "Two Gentelmen of Verona", "Twelfth
Night", "The Merchant of Venice", "Hamlet", "King Richard the Third")

dialog = Pmw.ComboBoxDialog(root, title = 'ComboBoxDialog',
                            buttons=('OK', 'Cancel'), defaultbutton='OK',
                            combobox_labelpos=N, label_text='Which play?',
                            scrolledlist_items=plays, listbox_width=22)
dialog.tkraise()

result = dialog.activate()
print 'You clicked on', result, dialog.get()

```



Figure 4.27 Pmw ComboBoxDialog widget

Documentation for the ComboBoxDialog widget starts on page 551.

#### 4.3.6 Counter

The Counter widget is a versatile widget which allows the user to cycle through a sequence of available values. Pmw provides integer, real, time and date counters and it is possible to define your own function to increment or decrement the displayed value. There is no limitation on the value that is displayed as the result of incrementing the counter, so there is no reason that the counter cannot display “eine, zwei, drei” or whatever sequence is appropriate for the application. Some examples are shown in figure 4.28.

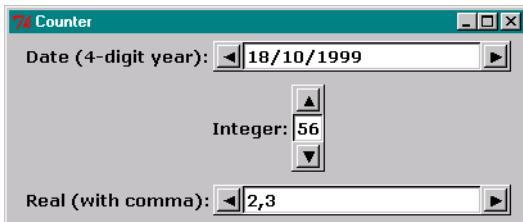


Figure 4.28 Pmw Counter widget

```
def execute(self):
    print 'Return pressed, value is', date.get()

date = Pmw.Counter(root, labelpos=W,
                   label_text='Date (4-digit year):',
                   entryfield_value=time.strftime('%d/%m/%Y'),
                   time.localtime(time.time())),
                   entryfield_command=execute,
                   entryfield_validate={'validator' : 'date', 'format' : 'dmy'},
                   datatype = {'counter' : 'date', 'format' : 'dmy', 'yyyy' : 1})

real = Pmw.Counter(root, labelpos=W,
                   label_text='Real (with comma):',
```

```

entryfield_value='1,5',
datatype={'counter' : 'real', 'separator' : ','},
entryfield_validate={'validator' : 'real',
    'min' : '-2,0', 'max' : '5,0',
    'separator' : ','},
increment= .1)

int = Pmw.Counter(root, labelpos=W,
    label_text='Integer:',
    orient=VERTICAL,
    entry_width=2,
    entryfield_value=50,
    entryfield_validate={'validator' : 'integer',
        'min' : 0, 'max' : 99})

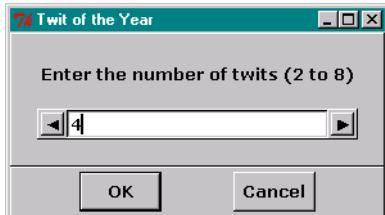
counters = (date, real)
Pmw.alignlabels(counters)
for counter in counters:
    counter.pack(fill=X, expand=1, padx=10, pady=5)
int.pack(padx=10, pady=5)

```

Documentation for the Counter widget starts on page 553.

#### 4.3.7 CounterDialog

The CounterDialog widget provides a convenience dialog requesting the user to select a value from a Counter widget. The counter can contain any data type that the widget is capable of cycling through, such as the unlikely sequence shown in figure 4.29.



**Figure 4.29 Pmw CounterDialog widget**

```

choice = None
dialog = Pmw.CounterDialog(root,
    label_text='Enter the number of twits (2 to 8)\n',
    counter_labelpos=N, entryfield_value=2,
    counter_datatype='numeric',
    entryfield_validate={'validator': 'numeric', 'min': 2, 'max': 8},
    buttons=('OK', 'Cancel'), defaultbutton='OK',
    title='Twit of the Year')
dialog.tkraise()

result = dialog.activate()
print 'You clicked on', result, dialog.get()

```

Documentation for the CounterDialog widget starts on page 556.

### 4.3.8 Dialog

The Dialog widget provides a simple way to create a toplevel containing a ButtonBox and a child site area. You may populate the child site with whatever your application requires. Figure 4.30 shows an example of a Dialog.



Figure 4.30 Pmw Dialog widget

```
dialog = Pmw.Dialog(root, buttons=('OK', 'Apply', 'Cancel', 'Help'),
                     defaultbutton='OK', title='Simple dialog')
w = Label(dialog.interior(), text='Pmw Dialog\nBring out your dead!',
           background='black', foreground='white', pady=20)
w.pack(expand=1, fill=BOTH, padx=4, pady=4)
dialog.activate()
```

Documentation for the Dialog widget starts on page 558.

### 4.3.9 EntryField

The EntryField widget is an Entry widget with associated validation methods. The built-in validation provides validators for integer, hexadecimal, alphabetic, alphanumeric, real, time and date data formats. Some of the controls that may be placed on the validation include checking conformity with the selected data format and checking that entered data is between minimum and maximum limits. You may also define your own validators. A few examples are shown in figure 4.31.

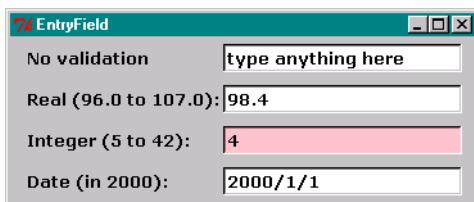


Figure 4.31 Pmw EntryField widget

```
noval = Pmw.EntryField(root, labelpos=W, label_text='No validation',
                       validate = None)

real = Pmw.EntryField(root, labelpos=W,value = '98.4',
                      label_text = 'Real (96.0 to 107.0):',
                      validate = {'validator' : 'real',
                                  'min' : 96, 'max' : 107, 'minstrict' : 0})
```

```

int    = Pmw.EntryField(root, labelpos=W, label_text = 'Integer (5 to 42):',
                       validate = {'validator' : 'numeric',
                                   'min' : 5, 'max' : 42, 'minstrict' : 0},
                       value = '12')

date = Pmw.EntryField(root, labelpos=W, label_text = 'Date (in 2000):',
                      value = '2000/1/1', validate = {'validator' : 'date',
                                                      'min' : '2000/1/1', 'max' : '2000/12/31',
                                                      'minstrict' : 0, 'maxstrict' : 0,
                                                      'format' : 'ymd'})

widgets = (noval, real, int, date)
for widget in widgets:
    widget.pack(fill=X, expand=1, padx=10, pady=5)
Pmw.alignlabels(widgets)

real.component('entry').focus_set()

```

Documentation for the `EntryField` widget starts on page 559.

### 4.3.10 Group

The `Group` widget provides a convenient way to place a labeled frame around a group of widgets. The label can be any reasonable widget such as a `Label` but it can also be an `EntryField`, `RadioButton` or `CheckButton` depending on the application requirements. It is also possible to use the widget as a graphic frame with no label. These examples are shown in figure 4.32.



**Figure 4.32 Pmw Group widget**

```

w = Pmw.Group(root, tag_text='place label here')
w.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=6, pady=6)
cw = Label(w.interior(), text='A group with a\nsimple Label tag')
cw.pack(padx=2, pady=2, expand=1, fill=BOTH)

w = Pmw.Group(root, tag_pyclass=None)
w.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=6, pady=6)
cw = Label(w.interior(), text='A group\nwithout a tag')
cw.pack(padx=2, pady=2, expand=1, fill=BOTH)

w = Pmw.Group(root, tag_pyclass=Checkbutton,
              tag_text='checkbutton', tag_foreground='blue')

```

```
w.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=6, pady=6)
cw = Frame(w.interior(), width=150, height=20)
cw.pack(padx=2, pady=2, expand=1, fill=BOTH)
```

Documentation for the Group widget starts on page 564.

#### 4.3.11 LabeledWidget

The LabeledWidget widget is a convenience container which labels a widget or collection of widgets. Options are provided to control the placement of the label and control the appearance of the graphic border. The child site can be populated with any combination of widgets. The example shown in figure 4.33 uses the widget as a frame which requires less code than using individual components.

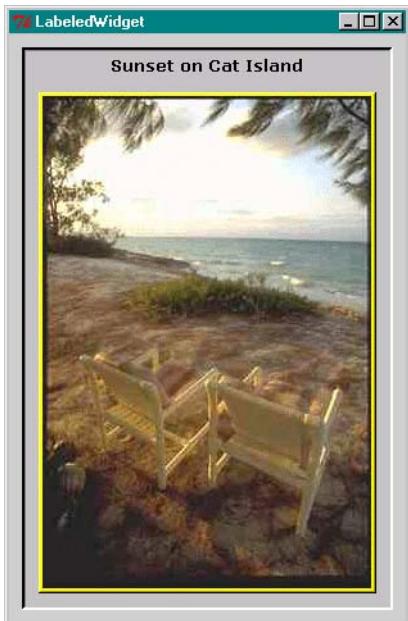


Figure 4.33 Pmw LabeledWidget widget

```
frame = Frame(root, background = 'gray80')
frame.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)

lw = Pmw.LabeledWidget(frame, labelpos='n',
                      label_text='Sunset on Cat Island')
lw.component('hull').configure(relief=SUNKEN, borderwidth=3)
lw.pack(padx=10, pady=10)

img = PhotoImage(file='chairs.gif')
cw = Button(lw.interior(), background='yellow', image=img)
cw.pack(padx=10, pady=10, expand=1, fill=BOTH)
```

Documentation for the LabeledWidget widget starts on page 565.

### 4.3.12MenuBar

The `MenuBar` widget is a manager widget which provides methods to add menu buttons and menus to the menu bar and to add menu items to the menus. One important convenience is that it is easy to add balloon help to the menus and menu items. Almost all of the menu options available with Tkinter `Menu` widgets (see “`Menu`” on page 39) are available through the `Pmw` `MenuBar`. Figure 4.34 illustrates a similar menu to the one shown in figure 4.13 using discrete Tkinter widgets.

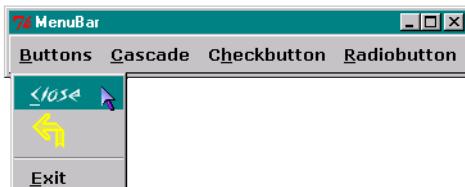


Figure 4.34 PmwMenuBar widget

```
balloon = Pmw.Balloon(root)
menuBar = Pmw.MenuBar(root, hull_relief=RAISED,hull_borderwidth=1,
                      balloon=balloon)
menuBar.pack(fill=X)

menuBar.addmenu('Buttons', 'Simple Commands')
menuBar.addmenuitem('Buttons', 'command', 'Close this window',
                    font=('StingerLight', 14), label='Close')
menuBar.addmenuitem('Buttons', 'command',
                    bitmap="@bitmaps/RotateLeft", foreground='yellow')
menuBar.addmenuitem('Buttons', 'separator')
menuBar.addmenuitem('Buttons', 'command',
                    'Exit the application', label='Exit')

menuBar.addmenu('Cascade', 'Cascading Menus')
menuBar.addmenu('Checkbutton', 'Checkbutton Menus')
menuBar.addmenu('Radiobutton', 'Radiobutton Menus')
```

Documentation for the `MenuBar` widget starts on page 572.

### 4.3.13MessageBar

The `MessageBar` widget is used to implement a status area for an application. Messages in several discrete categories may be displayed. Each message is displayed for a period of time which is determined by its category. Additionally, each category is assigned a priority so the message with the highest priority is displayed first. It is also possible to specify the number of times that the bell should be rung on receipt of each message category. Figure 4.35 shows how a system error would appear.

```
messagebar = box = None
def selectionCommand():
    sels = box.getcurselection()
    if len(sels) > 0:
```

```

messagetype = sels[0]
if messagetype == 'state':
    messagebar.message('state', 'Change of state message')
else:
    text = messages[messagetype]
    messagebar.message(messagetype, text)

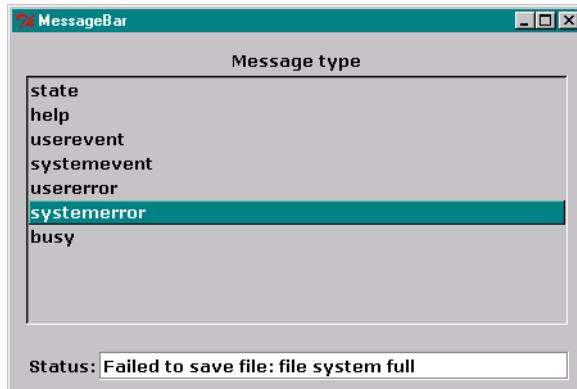
messages = { 'help' : 'Save current file',
            'userevent' : 'Saving file "foo"',
            'busy' : 'Busy deleting all files from file system ...',
            'systemevent': 'File "foo" saved',
            'usererror' : 'Invalid file name "foo/bar"',
            'systemerror': 'Failed to save file: file system full',
            }

messagebar = Pmw.MessageBar(root, entry_width=40, entry_relief=GROOVE,
                            labelpos=W, label_text='Status:')
messagebar.pack(side=BOTTOM, fill=X, expand=1, padx=10, pady=10)

box = Pmw.ScrolledListBox(root, listbox_selectmode=SINGLE,
                          items=('state', 'help', 'userevent', 'systemevent',
                                 'usererror', 'systemerror', 'busy'),
                          label_text='Message type', labelpos=N,
                          selectioncommand=selectionCommand)
box.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=10, pady=10)

```

Documentation for the `MessageBar` widget starts on page 574.



**Figure 4.35 Pmw MessageBar widget**

### 4.3.14 MessageDialog

The `MessageDialog` widget is a convenience dialog which displays a single message, which may be broken into multiple lines, and a number of buttons in a `ButtonBox`. It is useful for creating simple dialogs “on-the-fly.” Figure 4.36 shows an example.



**Figure 4.36 Pmw  
MessageDialog widget**

```
dialog = Pmw.MessageDialog(root, title = 'Simple Dialog',
                           defaultbutton = 0,
                           buttons = ('OK', 'Apply', 'Cancel', 'Help'),
                           message_text = 'This dialog box was constructed on demand')
dialog.iconname('Simple message dialog')

result = dialog.activate()
print 'You selected', result
```

Documentation for the `MessageDialog` widget starts on page 576.

### 4.3.15 NoteBookR

The `NoteBookR` widget implements the popular *property sheet* motif. Methods allow a number of pages or panes to be created. Any content may then be added to the panels. The user selects a panel by clicking on the tab at its top. Alternatively panels may be raised or lowered through instance methods. An example is shown in figure 4.37.

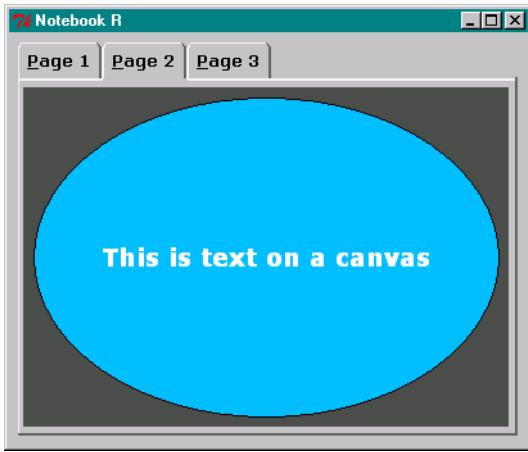
```
nb = Pmw.NoteBookR(root)

nb.add('p1', label='Page 1')
nb.add('p2', label='Page 2')
nb.add('p3', label='Page 3')

p1 = nb.page('p1').interior()
p2 = nb.page('p2').interior()
p3 = nb.page('p3').interior()

nb.pack(padx=5, pady=5, fill=BOTH, expand=1)
Button(p1, text='This is text on page 1', fg='blue').pack(pady=40)

c = Canvas(p2, bg='gray30')
w = c.winfo_reqwidth()
h = c.winfo_reqheight()
c.create_oval(10,10,w-10,h-10,fill='DeepSkyBlue1')
c.create_text(w/2,h/2,text='This is text on a canvas', fill='white',
              font=('Verdana', 14, 'bold'))
c.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)
```

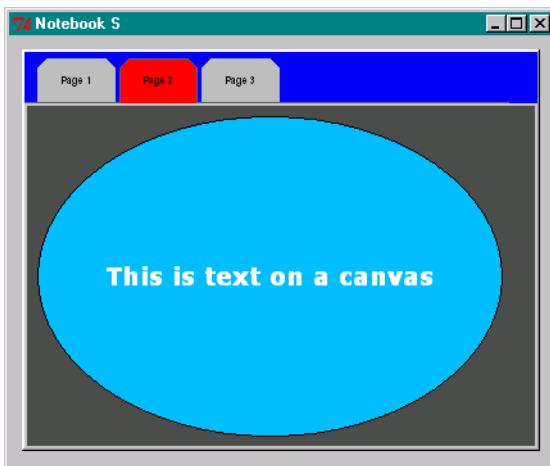


**Figure 4.37 Pmw NoteBookR widget**

Documentation for the `NotebookR` widget starts on page 580.

#### 4.3.16 NoteBookS

The `NoteBookS` widget implements an alternative style of `NoteBook`. `NoteBookS` provides additional options to control the color, dimensions and appearance of the tabs. Otherwise it is quite similar to `NoteBookR`. Figure 4.38 illustrates a similar layout using `NotebookS`.



**Figure 4.38 Pmw NoteBookS widget**

```
nb = Pmw.NoteBookS(root)

nb.addPage('Page 1')
nb.addPage('Page 2')
nb.addPage('Page 3')
```

```

f1 = nb.getPage('Page 1')
f2 = nb.getPage('Page 2')
f3 = nb.getPage('Page 3')

nb.pack(pady=10, padx=10, fill=BOTH, expand=1)
Button(f1, text='This is text on page 1', fg='blue').pack(pady=40)

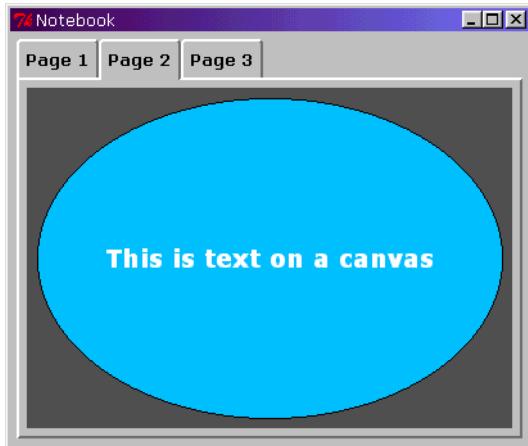
c = Canvas(f2, bg='gray30')
w = c.winfo_reqwidth()
h = c.winfo_reqheight()
c.create_oval(10,10,w-10,h-10,fill='DeepSkyBlue1')
c.create_text(w/2,h/2,text='This is text on a canvas', fill='white',
             font=('Verdana', 14, 'bold'))
c.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)

```

Documentation for the Notebooks widget starts on page 582.

#### 4.3.17 Notebook

Release 0.8.3 of Pmw replaces NoteBookR and NoteBooks with Notebook. While it is quite similar to the previous notebooks, there are some small changes. In fact, you will have to make changes to your code to use NoteBook with existing code. However, the changes are minor and the new form may be a little easier to use. Figure 4.39 illustrates the new widget.



**Figure 4.39 Pmw Notebook widget (version 0.8.3)**

```

from Tkinter import *
import Pmw

root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
root.title('Notebook')
Pmw.initialise()

nb = Pmw.NoteBook(root)
p1 = nb.add('Page 1')

```

```

p2 = nb.add('Page 2')
p3 = nb.add('Page 3')
nb.pack(padx=5, pady=5, fill=BOTH, expand=1)

Button(p1, text='This is text on page 1', fg='blue').pack(pady=40)
c = Canvas(p2, bg='gray30')
w = c.winfo_reqwidth()
h = c.winfo_reqheight()
c.create_oval(10,10,w-10,h-10,fill='DeepSkyBlue1')
c.create_text(w/2,h/2,text='This is text on a canvas', fill='white',
             font=('Verdana', 14, 'bold'))
c.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)

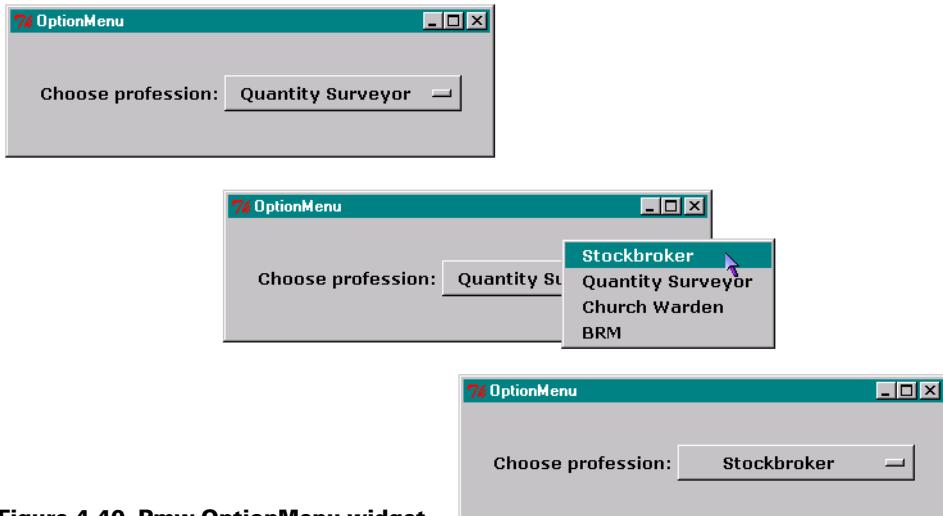
nb.setnaturalpagesize()
root.mainloop()

```

Documentation for the Notebook widget starts on page 578.

### 4.3.18 OptionMenu

The OptionMenu widget implements a classic popup menu motif familiar to Motif programmers. However, the appearance of the associated popup is a little different, as shown in figure 4.40. OptionMenus should be used to select limited items of data. If you populate the widget with large numbers of data the popup may not fit on the screen and the widget does not scroll.



**Figure 4.40 Pmw OptionMenu widget**

```

var = StringVar()
var.set('Quantity Surveyor')
opt_menu = Pmw.OptionMenu(root, labelpos=W,
                           label_text='Choose profession:', menubutton_textvariable=var,

```

```

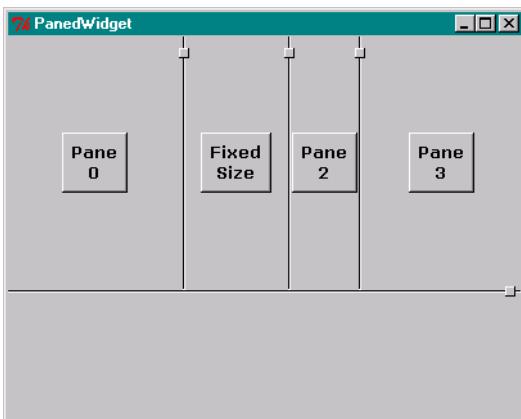
        items=('Stockbroker', 'Quantity Surveyor', 'Church Warden', 'BRM'),
        menubutton_width=16)
opt_menu.pack(anchor=W, padx=20, pady=30)

```

Documentation for the OptionMenu widget starts on page 584.

### 4.3.19 PanedWidget

The PanedWidget widget creates a manager containing multiple frames. Each frame is a container for other widgets and may be resized by dragging on its handle or separator line. The area within each pane is managed independently, so a single pane may be grown or shrunk to modify the layout of its children. Figure 4.41 shows an example.



**Figure 4.41 Pmw PanedWidget widget**

```

pane = Pmw.PanedWidget(root, hull_width=400, hull_height=300)
pane.add('top', min=100)
pane.add('bottom', min=100)

topPane = Pmw.PanedWidget(pane.pane('top'), orient=HORIZONTAL)
for num in range(4):
    if num == 1:
        name = 'Fixed\nSize'
        topPane.add(name, min=.2, max=.2)
    else:
        name = 'Pane\n' + str(num)
        topPane.add(name, min=.1, size=.25)
    button = Button(topPane.pane(name), text=name)
    button.pack(expand=1)
topPane.pack(expand=1, fill=BOTH)

pane.pack(expand=1, fill=BOTH)

```

Documentation for the PanedWidget widget starts on page 586.

### 4.3.20 PromptDialog

The `PromptDialog` widget is a convenience dialog which displays a single `EntryField` and a number of buttons in a `ButtonBox`. It is useful for creating a simple dialog on-the-fly. The example shown in figure 4.42 collects a password from a user.

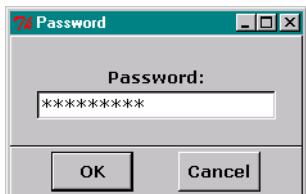


Figure 4.42 Pmw `PromptDialog` widget

```
dialog = Pmw.PromptDialog(root, title='Password', label_text='Password:',
                           entryfield_labelpos=N, entry_show='*', defaultbutton=0,
                           buttons=('OK', 'Cancel'))

result = dialog.activate()
print 'You selected', result
```

Documentation for the `PromptDialog` widget starts on page 587.

### 4.3.21 RadioSelect

The `RadioSelect` widget implements an alternative to the Tkinter `RadioButton` widget. `RadioSelect` creates a manager that contains a number of buttons. The widget may be configured to operate either in single-selection mode where only one button at a time may be activated, or multiple selection mode where any number of buttons may be selected. This is illustrated in figure 4.43.



Figure 4.43 Pmw `RadioSelect` widget

```
horiz = Pmw.RadioSelect(root, labelpos=W, label_text=HORIZONTAL,
                        frame_borderwidth=2, frame_relief=RIDGE)
horiz.pack(fill=X, padx=10, pady=10)

for text in ('Passion fruit', 'Loganberries', 'Mangoes in syrup',
            'Oranges', 'Apples', 'Grapefruit'):
    horiz.add(text)
```

```

horiz.invoke('Mangoes in syrup')

multiple = Pmw.RadioSelect(root, labelpos=W, label_text='Multiple\nselection',
                           frame_borderwidth=2, frame_relief=RIDGE, selectmode=MULTIPLE)
multiple.pack(fill=X, padx=10)

for text in ('Doug', 'Dinsdale', "Stig O'Tracy", 'Vince', 'Gloria Pules'):
    multiple.add(text)
multiple.invoke('Dinsdale')

```

Documentation for the RadioSelect widget starts on page 589.

### 4.3.22 ScrolledCanvas

The ScrolledCanvas widget is a convenience widget providing a Canvas widget with associated horizontal and vertical scrollbars. An example is shown in figure 4.44.



**Figure 4.44 Pmw  
ScrolledCanvas widget**

```

sc = Pmw.ScrolledCanvas(root, borderframe=1, labelpos=N,
                        label_text='ScrolledCanvas', usehullsize=1,
                        hull_width=400,hull_height=300)

for i in range(20):
    x = -10 + 3*i
    y = -10
    for j in range(10):
        sc.create_rectangle('%dc'%x,'%dc'%y,'%dc'%(x+2),'%dc'%(y+2),
                           fill='cadetblue', outline='black')
        sc.create_text('%dc'%(x+1),'%dc'%(y+1),text='%d,%d'%(i,j),
                      anchor=CENTER, fill='white')
    y = y + 3

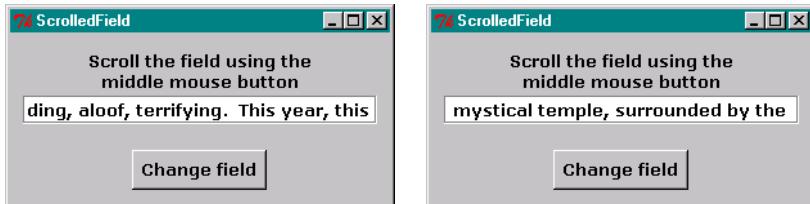
sc.pack()
sc.resizescrollregion()

```

Documentation for the ScrolledCanvas widget starts on page 592.

### 4.3.23 ScrolledField

The ScrolledField widget provides a labeled EntryField widget with bindings to allow the user to scroll through data which is too great to be displayed within the available space. This widget should be reserved for very special uses, since it contravenes many of the commonly considered human factors for GUI elements. Figure 4.45 shows the effect of scrolling the field using the keyboard arrow keys.



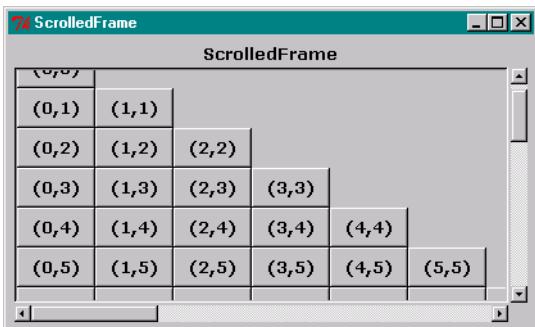
**Figure 4.45 Pmw ScrolledField widget**

```
lines = (
    "Mount Everest. Forbidding, aloof, terrifying. This year, this",
    "remote Himalayan mountain, this mystical temple, surrounded by the",
    "most difficult terrain in the world, repulsed yet another attempt to",
    "conquer it. (Picture changes to wind-swept, snowy tents and people)",
    "This time, by the International Hairdresser's Expedition. In such",
    "freezing, adverse conditions, man comes very close to breaking",
    "point. What was the real cause of the disharmony which destroyed",
    "their chances at success?")  
  
global index  
field = index = None  
def execute():  
    global index  
    field.configure(text=lines[index % len(lines)])  
    index = index + 1  
field = Pmw.ScrolledField(root, entry_width=30,  
                           entry_relief=GROOVE, labelpos=N,  
                           label_text='Scroll the field using the\nmiddle mouse button')  
field.pack(fill=X, expand=1, padx=10, pady=10)  
  
button = Button(root, text='Change field', command=execute)  
button.pack(padx=10, pady=10)  
  
index = 0  
execute()
```

Documentation for the ScrolledField widget starts on page 594.

### 4.3.24 ScrolledFrame

The `ScrolledFrame` widget is a convenience widget providing a `Frame` widget with associated horizontal and vertical scrollbars. An example is shown in figure 4.46.



**Figure 4.46 Pmw  
ScrolledFrame widget**

```
global row, col
row = col = 0
sf = frame = None
def addButton():
    global row, col
    button = Button(frame, text = '(%d,%d)' % (col, row))
    button.grid(row=row, col=col, sticky='nsew')
    frame.grid_rowconfigure(row, weight=1)
    frame.grid_columnconfigure(col, weight=1)
    sf.reposition()
    if col == row:
        col = 0
        row = row + 1
    else:
        col = col + 1

sf = Pmw.ScrolledFrame(root, labelpos=N, label_text='ScrolledFrame',
                      usehullsize=1, hull_width=400, hull_height=220)
sf.pack(padx=5, pady=3, fill='both', expand=1)
frame = sf.interior()

for i in range(250):
    addButton()
```

Documentation for the `ScrolledFrame` widget starts on page 595.

### 4.3.25 ScrolledListbox

The `ScrolledListbox` widget is a convenience widget providing a `ListBox` widget with associated horizontal and vertical scrollbars. Figure 4.47 shows a typical `ScrolledListbox`.



Figure 4.47 Pmw `ScrolledListbox` widget

```
box = None
def selectionCommand():
    sels = box.getcurselection()
    if len(sels) == 0:
        print 'No selection'
    else:
        print 'Selection:', sels[0]

box = Pmw.ScrolledListBox(root, listbox_selectmode=SINGLE,
                         items=('John Cleese', 'Eric Idle', 'Graham Chapman',
                                'Terry Jones', 'Michael Palin', 'Terry Gilliam'),
                         labelpos=NW, label_text='Cast Members',
                         listbox_height=5, vscrollmode='static',
                         selectioncommand=selectionCommand,
                         dblclickcommand=selectionCommand,
                         usehullsize=1, hull_width=200, hull_height=200,)
box.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=5, pady=5)
```

Documentation for the `ScrolledListbox` widget starts on page 598.

### 4.3.26 ScrolledText

The `ScrolledText` widget is a convenience widget providing a `Text` widget with associated horizontal and vertical scrollbars, as shown in figure 4.48.

```
st = Pmw.ScrolledText(root, borderframe=1, labelpos=N,
                      label_text='Blackmail', usehullsize=1,
                      hull_width=400, hull_height=300,
                      text_padx=10, text_pady=10,
                      text_wrap='none')
st.importfile('blackmail.txt')
st.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx=5, pady=5)
```

Documentation for the `ScrolledText` widget starts on page 600.

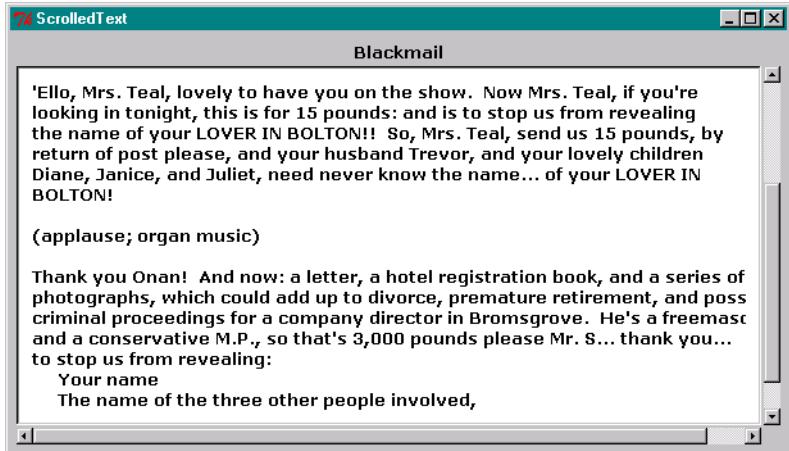


Figure 4.48 Pmw ScrolledText widget

### 4.3.27 SelectionDialog

The SelectionDialog widget provides a convenience dialog to allow the user to select an item from a ScrolledList in response to a question. It is similar to a ComboBoxDialog except that there is no provision for the user to type in a value. Figure 4.49 shows an example.



Figure 4.49 Pmw SelectionDialog widget

```
dialog = None
def execute(result):
    sels = dialog.getcurselection()
    if len(sels) == 0:
        print 'You clicked on', result, '(no selection)'
```

```

else:
    print 'You clicked on', result, sels[0]
    dialog.deactivate(result)

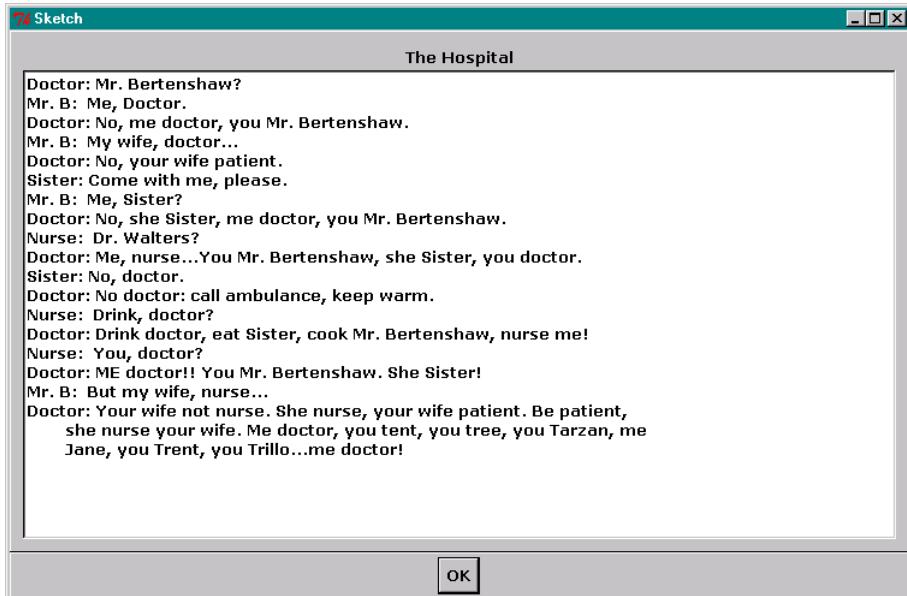
dialog = Pmw.SelectionDialog(root, title='String',
    buttons=('OK', 'Cancel'), defaultbutton='OK',
    scrolledlist_labelpos=N, label_text='Who sells string?',
    scrolledlist_items=('Mousebat', 'Follicle', 'Goosecreature',
        'Mr. Simpson', 'Ampersand', 'Spong', 'Wapcaplet',
        'Looseliver', 'Vendetta', 'Prang'),
    command=execute)
dialog.activate()

```

Documentation for the SelectionDialog widget starts on page 603.

### 4.3.28 TextDialog

The TextDialog widget provides a convenience dialog used to display multi-line text to the user. It may also be used as a simple text editor. It is shown in figure 4.50.



**Figure 4.50 Pmw.TextDialog widget**

```

sketch = """Doctor: Mr. Bertenshaw?
Mr. B: Me, Doctor.
# -----Lines removed-----
Jane, you Trent, you Trillo...me doctor!"""

dialog = Pmw.TextDialog(root, scrolledtext_labelpos='n',

```

```

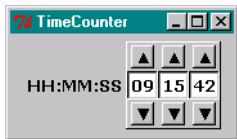
        title='Sketch',
        defaultbutton=0,
        label_text='The Hospital')
dialog.insert(END, sketch)
dialog.configure(text_state='disabled')
dialog.activate()
dialog.tkraise()

```

Documentation for the `TextDialog` widget starts on page 605.

### 4.3.29 TimeCounter

The `TimeCounter` widget implements a device to set hours, minutes and seconds using up and down arrows. The widget may be configured to autorepeat so that holding down a button will slew the value displayed in the widget. Figure 4.51 shows the widget's appearance.



**Figure 4.51 Pmw TimeCounter widget**

```

time = Pmw.TimeCounter(root, labelpos=W, label_text='HH:MM:SS',
                       min='00:00:00', max='23:59:59')
time.pack(padx=10, pady=5)

```

Documentation for the `TimeCounter` widget starts on page 607.

## 4.4 Creating new megawidgets

In addition to supplying useful widgets, Pmw provides a simple mechanism to allow you to develop new megawidgets. The documentation supplied with Pmw describes the process of coding a megawidget. This description is an adaptation of that material.

### 4.4.1 Description of the megawidget



This widget will implement a simple gauge which tracks an integer value supplied by a `Scale` widget, which selects a number from a range. The gauge indicates the setting as a percentage of the range. The completed megawidget will look like the one shown in figure 4.52.

The scale widget will be a component of the megawidget since the range may be set by the programmer; the size and color of the gauge may similarly be changed, as appropriate for the application, so we make this a component, too.

**Figure 4.52 Gauge widget**

## 4.4.2 Options

In addition to the options for the scale and gauge components, we will need to define some options for the megawidget. First, we define min and max to allow the programmer the range supported by the widget. Secondly, we define fill and size to control the color and size of the gauge. Lastly, we define value to allow us to set the initial value of the megawidget.

## 4.4.3 Creating the megawidget class

Pmw megawidgets inherit from either Pmw.MegaWidget, Pmw.MegaToplevel or Pmw.Dialog. The gauge widget is intended to be used within other code widgets so it inherits from Pmw.MegaWidget. Here is the code for the megawidget.

### pmw\_megawidget.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw

class Gauge(Pmw.MegaWidget):
    def __init__(self, parent=None, **kw):
        # Define the options for the megawidget
        optiondefs = (
            ('min',          0,      Pmw.INITOPT),
            ('max',          100,     Pmw.INITOPT),
            ('fill',         'red',   None),
            ('size',          30,     Pmw.INITOPT),
            ('value',         0,      None),
            ('showvalue',    1,      None),
        )

        self.defineoptions(kw, optiondefs)

        # Initialize the base class
        Pmw.MegaWidget.__init__(self, parent) ②

        interior = self.interior() ③

        # Create the gauge component
        self.gauge = self.createComponent('gauge',
                                         (), None,
                                         Frame, (interior,), 
                                         borderwidth=0)
        self.canvas = Canvas(self.gauge,
                           width=self['size'], height=self['size'],
                           background=interior.cget('background'))
        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, expand=1, fill=BOTH)
        self.gauge.grid() ④

        # Create the scale component
        self.scale = self.createComponent('scale',
                                         (), None,
                                         Scale, (interior,), 
                                         command=self._setGauge,
                                         length=200, ⑤
```

```

        from_ = self['min'],
        to   = self['max'],
        showvalue=self['showvalue'])
    self.scale.grid()

    value=self['value']
    if value is not None:
        self.scale.set(value)

    # Check keywords and initialize options
    self.initialiseoptions(Gauge)

def _setGauge(self, value):
    self.canvas.delete('gauge')
    ival = self.scale.get()
    ticks = self['max'] - self['min']
    arc = (360.0/ticks) * ival
    xy = 3,3,self['size'],self['size']
    start = 90-arc
    if start < 0:
        start = 360 + start
    self.canvas.create_arc(xy, start=start, extent=arc-.001,
                          fill=self['fill'], tags=('gauge',))

Pmw.forwardmethods(Gauge, Scale, 'scale')

root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
root.title('Gauge')
Pmw.initialise()

g1 = Gauge(root, fill='red', value=56, min=0, max=255)
g1.pack(side=LEFT, padx=1, pady=10)

g2 = Gauge(root, fill='green', value=60, min=0, max=255)
g2.pack(side=LEFT, padx=1, pady=10)

g3 = Gauge(root, fill='blue', value=36, min=0, max=255)
g3.pack(side=LEFT, padx=1, pady=10)

root.mainloop()

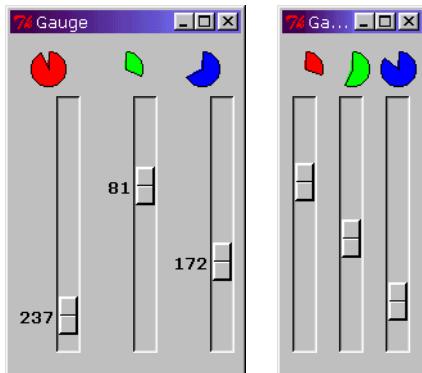
```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ Options for the megawidget are specified by a three-element sequence of the option name, default value and a final argument. The final argument can be either a callback function, Pmw.INITOPT or None. If it is Pmw.INITOPT then the option may only be provided as an initialization option and it cannot be set by calling configure. Calling self.defineoptions includes keyword arguments passed in the widget's constructor. These values may override any default values.
- ➋ Having set the options we call the constructor of the base class, passing the parent widget as the single argument.
- ➌ By convention, Pmw defines an `interior` attribute which is the container for components.

- ④ We then create the gauge's indicator, which is going to be drawn on a canvas contained in a frame. The `createcomponent` method has five standard arguments (`name`, `aliases`, `group`, `class` and arguments to the constructor) followed by any number of keyword arguments.
- ⑤ Then, we construct the scale component in a similar manner.
- ⑥ Having completed the constructor, we first call `initialiseoptions` to check that all of the keyword arguments we supplied have been used. It then calls any option callbacks that have been defined.
- ⑦ Once the megawidget's class has been defined we call the `Pmw.forwardmethods` method to direct any method calls from other widgets to the scale component.



**Figure 4.53 Using the gauge megawidget as a color mixer**

Figure 4.53 illustrates a possible application of the gauge megawidget as a color mixer. The widget may be reconfigured to show or hide the current value of each slider. It is an easy task to add more options to the widget.



## C H A P T E R    5

---

# *Screen layout*

5.1 Introduction to layout 77

5.2 Packer 79

5.3 Grid 86

5.4 Placer 90

5.5 Summary 94

GUI layout is an often-misunderstood area; a programmer could conceivably waste a lot of time on it. In this chapter, the three geometry managers, `Pack`, `Grid` and `Place` are covered in detail. Some advanced topics, including approaches to variable-size windows and the attendant problems of maintaining visually attractive and effective interfaces, will be presented.

## **5.1 *Introduction to layout***

Geometry managers are responsible for controlling the size and position of widgets on the screen. In Motif, widget placement is handled by one of several manager widgets. One example is the Constraint Widget class which includes the `XmForm` widget. Here, layout is controlled by attaching the widget by one, or more, of the top, bottom, left or right sides to adjacent widgets and containers. By choosing the appropriate combinations of attachments, the programmer can control a number of behaviors which determine how the widget will appear when the window is grown or shrunk.

Tk provides a flexible approach to laying out widgets on a screen. X defines several manager class widgets but in Tk, three geometry managers may be used. In fact, it is possible to

use the managers with each other (although there are some rather important rules about how one goes about this). Tk achieves this flexibility by exploiting the X behavior that says widget geometry is determined by the geometry managers and *not* by the widgets themselves. Like X, if you do not manage the widget, it will not be drawn on the screen, although it will exist in memory.

Geometry managers available to Tkinter are these: the Packer, which is the most commonly used manager; the Grid, which is a fairly recent addition to Tk; the Placer, which has the least popularity, but provides the greatest level of control in placing widgets. You will see examples of all three geometry managers throughout the book. The geometry managers are available on all architectures supported by Tkinter, so it is not necessary to know anything about the implementation of the architecture-dependent toolkits.

### 5.1.1 Geometry management

Geometry management is a quite complex topic, because a lot of negotiation goes on between widgets, their containers, windows and the supporting window manager. The aim is to lay out one or more *slave* widgets as subordinates of a *master* widget (some programmers prefer to refer to *child* widgets and *parents*). *Master* widgets are usually containers such as a Frame or a Canvas, but most widgets can act as masters. For example, place a button at the bottom of a frame. As well as simply locating slaves within masters, we want to control the behavior of the widget as more widgets are added or when the window is shrunk or grown.

The negotiation process begins with each slave widget requesting width and height adequate to display its contents. This depends on a number of factors. A button, for example, calculates its required size from the length of text displayed as the label and the selected font size and weight.

Next, the master widget, along with its geometry manager, determines the space available to satisfy the requested dimensions of the slaves. The available space may be more or less than the requested space, resulting in squeezing, stretching or overlapping of the widgets, depending on which geometry manager is being employed.

Next, depending on the design of the window, space within a master's *master* must be apportioned between all *peer* containers. The results depend on the geometry manager of the peer widgets.

Finally, there is negotiation between the toplevel widget (normally the toplevel shell) and the window manager. At the end of negotiations the available dimensions are used to determine the final size and location in which to draw the widgets. In some cases there may not be enough space to display all of the widgets and they may not be realized at all. Even after this negotiation has completed when a window is initialized, it starts again if any of the widgets change configuration (for example, if the text on a button changes) or if the user resizes the window. Fortunately, it is a lot easier to use the geometry managers than it is to discuss them!

A number of common schemes may be applied when a screen is designed. One of the properties of the Packer and to a lesser extent the Grid, is that it is possible to allow the geometry manager to determine the final size of a window. This is useful when a window is created dynamically and it is difficult to predict the population of widgets. Using this approach, the window changes size as widgets are added or removed from the display. Alternatively, the designer might use the Placer on a fixed-size window. It really depends on the effect that is wanted.

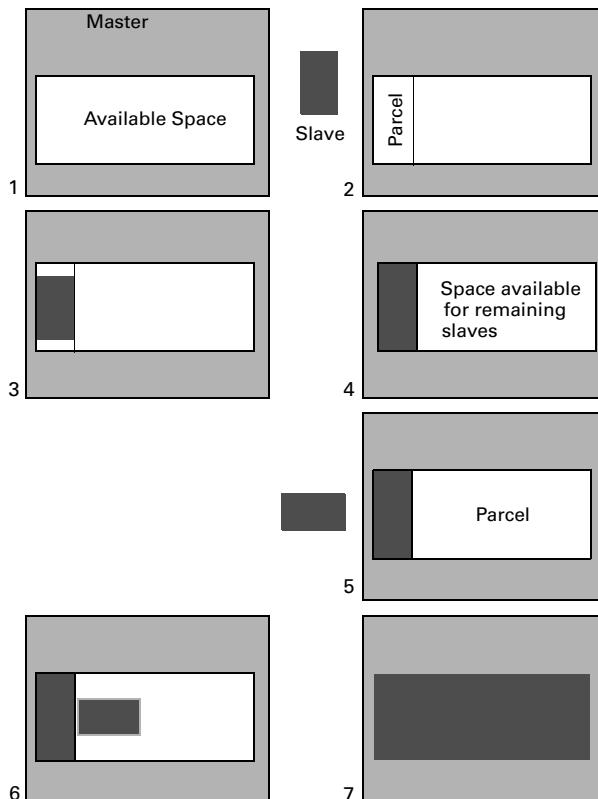
Let's start by looking at the Packer, which is the most commonly used manager.

## 5.2 Packer

The Packer positions slave widgets in the master by adding them one at a time from the outside edges to the center of the window. The Packer is used to manage rows, columns and combinations of the two. However, some additional planning may have to be done to get the desired effect.

The Packer works by maintaining a list of slaves, or the *packing list*, which is kept in the order that the slaves were originally presented to the Packer. Take a look at figure 5.1 (this figure is modeled after John Ousterhout's description of the Packer).

Figure 5.1(1) shows the space available for placing widgets. This might be within a frame or the space remaining after placing other widgets. The Packer allocates a parcel for the next slave to be processed by slicing off a section of the available space. Which side is allocated is determined by the options supplied with the pack request; in this example, the `side=LEFT` and `fill=Y` options have been specified. The actual size allocated by the Packer is determined by a number of factors. Certainly the size of the slave is a starting point, but the available space and any optional padding requested by the slave must be taken into account. The allocated parcel is shown in figure 5.1(2).



**Figure 5.1 Packer operation**



**Figure 5.2 Pack geometry manager**

Next, the slave is positioned within the parcel. If the available space results in a smaller parcel than the size of the slave, it may be squeezed or cropped, depending on the requested options. In this example, the slave is smaller than the available space and its height is increased to fill the available parcel. Figure 5.1(4) shows the available space for more slaves. In figure 5.1(5) we pack another slave with `side=LEFT` and `fill=BOTH` options. Again, the available parcel is larger than the size of the slave (figure 5.1(6)) so the widget is grown to fill the available space. The effect is shown in figure 5.1(7).

Here is a simple example of using the `pack` method, shown in figure 5.2:

### Example\_5\_1.py

```
from Tkinter import *

class App:
    def __init__(self, master):
        Button(master, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT)
        Button(master, text='Center').pack(side=LEFT)
        Button(master, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT)

root = Tk()
root.option_add('*font', ('verdana', 12, 'bold'))
root.title("Pack - Example 1")
display = App(root)
root.mainloop()
```

1

#### Code comments

- 1 The `side=LEFT` argument tells the Packer to start locating the widgets in the packing list from the left-hand side of the container. In this case the container is the default `Toplevel` shell created by the Tk initializer. The shell shrinks or expands to enclose the packed widgets.

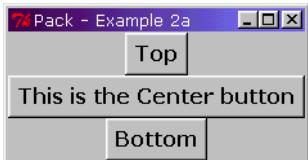


**Figure 5.3 Packer accommodates requested widget sizes**

Enclosing the widgets in a frame has no effect on the shrink-wrap effect of the Packer. In this example (shown in figure 5.3), we have increased the length of the text in the middle button and the frame is simply stretched to the requested size.

### Example\_5\_2.py

```
fm = Frame(master)
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm, text='This is the Center button').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT)
fm.pack()
```



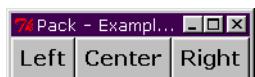
**Figure 5.4** Packing from the top side

### Example\_5\_2a.py

```
Button(fm, text='Top').pack(side=TOP)
Button(fm, text='This is the Center button').pack(side=TOP)
Button(fm, text='Bottom').pack(side=TOP)
```



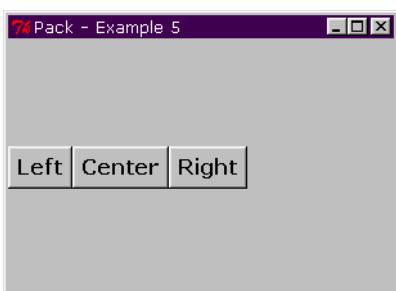
**Figure 5.5** Combining sides



**Figure 5.6** Effect of changing frame size

### Example\_5\_4.py

```
fm = Frame(master, width=300, height=200)
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT)
```



**Figure 5.6** Assigning the geometry of the Toplevel shell

Packing from the top of the frame generates the result shown in figure 5.4. Note that the Packer centers the widgets in the available space since no further options are supplied and since the window is stretched to fit the widest widget.

Combining `side` options in the Packer list may achieve the desired effect (although more often than not you'll end up with an effect you did not plan on!). Figure 5.5 illustrates how unusual layouts may be induced.

In all of these examples we have seen that the Packer negotiates the overall size of containers to fit the required space. If you want to control the size of the container, you will have to use `geometry` options, because attempting to change the Frame size (see example\_5\_4.py) has no effect as shown in figure 5.6.

Sizing windows is often a problem when programmers start to work with Tkinter (and most other toolkits, for that matter) and it can be frustrating when there is no response as `width` and `height` options are added to widget specifications.

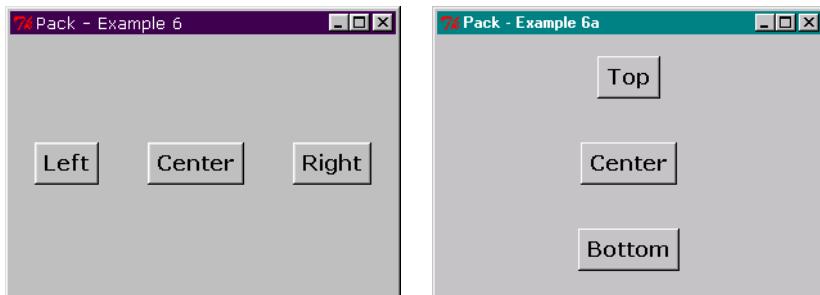
To set the size of the window, we have to make use of the `wm.geometry` option. Figure 5.7 shows the effect of changing the geometry for the root window.

### Example\_5\_5.py

```
master.geometry("300x200")
```

### 5.2.1 Using the expand option

The `expand` option controls whether the Packer expands the widget when the window is resized. All the previous examples have accepted the default of `expand=NO`. Essentially, if `expand` is true, the widget *may* expand to fill the available space within its parcel; whether it does expand is controlled by the `fill` option (see “Using the fill option” on page 82).



**Figure 5.7 Expand without fill options**

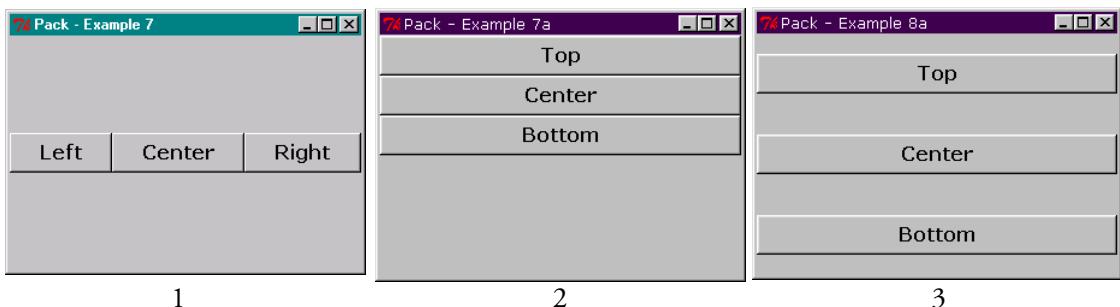
#### Example\_5\_6.py

```
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Center').pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES)
```

Figure 5.7 shows the effect of setting `expand` to true (YES) without using the `fill` option (see `Example_5_6.py`). The vertical orientation in the second screen is similar to `side=TOP` (see `Example_5_2a.py`).

### 5.2.2 Using the fill option

`Example_5_7.py` illustrates the effect of combining `fill` and `expand` options; the output is shown in figure 5.9(1)



**Figure 5.8 Using the fill option**

### Example\_5\_7.py

```
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Center').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=YES)
```

If the `fill` option *alone* is used in Example\_5\_7.py, you will obtain a display similar to figure 5.9(2). By using `fill` and `expand` we see the effect shown in figure 5.9(3).

Varying the combination of `fill` and `expand` options may be used for different effects at different times. If you mix `expand` options, such as in example\_5\_8.py, you can allow some of the widgets to react to the resizing of the window while others remain a constant size. Figure 5.10 illustrates the effect of stretching and squeezing the screen.

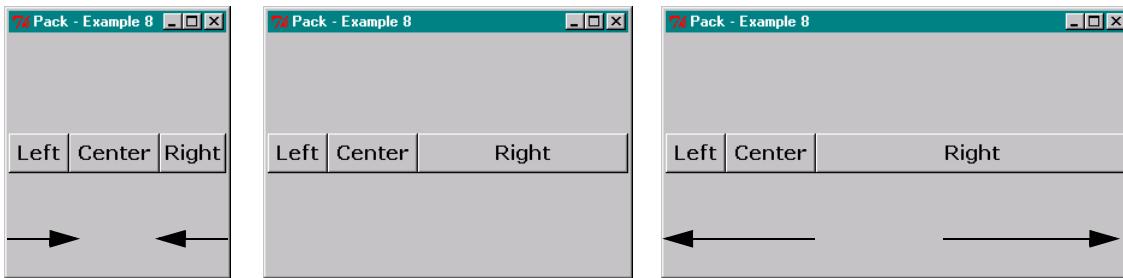


Figure 5.9 Allowing widgets to expand and fill independently

### Example\_5\_8.py

```
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=NO)
Button(fm, text='Center').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=NO)
Button(fm, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=YES)
```

Using `fill=BOTH` allows the widget to use all of its parcel. However, it might create some rather ugly effects, as shown in figure 5.11. On the other hand, this behavior may be exactly what is needed for your GUI.

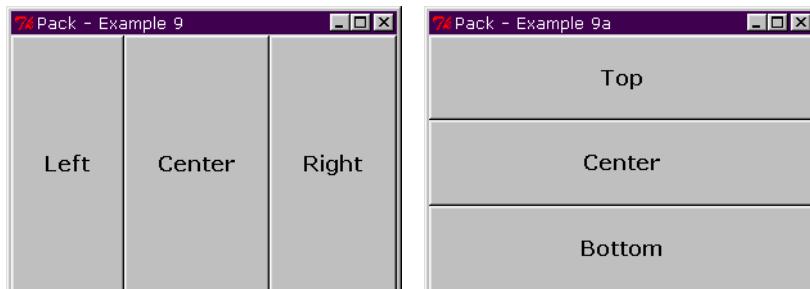


Figure 5.10 Using `fill=BOTH`

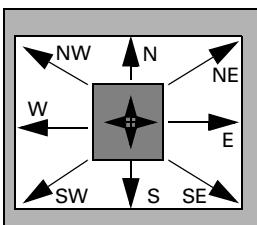
### 5.2.3 Using the padx and pady options



**Figure 5.11 Using padx to create extra space**

If you add `padx=10` to the pack request for the center button, padding is applied to the specified left/right or top/bottom sides for `padx` and `pady` respectively. This may not achieve the effect you want, since if you place two widgets side by side, each with a `padx=10`, there will be 20 pixels between the two widgets and 10 pixels to the left and right of the pair. This can result in some unusual spacing.

### 5.2.4 Using the anchor option



The `anchor` option is used to determine where a widget will be placed within its parcel when the available space is larger than the size requested and none or one `fill` direction is specified. Figure 5.13 illustrates how a widget would be packed if an anchor is supplied. The option `anchor=CENTER` positions the widget at the center of the parcel. Figure 5.14 shows how this looks in practice.

**Figure 5.12 Anchoring a widget within the available space**



**Figure 5.13 Using the anchor option to place widgets**

### 5.2.5 Using hierarchical packing

While it is relatively easy to use the Packer to lay out simple screens, it is usually necessary to apply a hierarchical approach and employ a design which packs groups of widgets within frames and then packs these frames either alongside one other or inside other frames. This allows much more control over the layout, particularly if there is a need to fill and expand the widgets.

Figure 5.15 illustrates the result of attempting to lay out two columns of widgets. At first glance, the code appears to work, but it does not create the desired layout. Once you have

packed a slave using side=TOP, the remaining space is below the slave, so you cannot pack alongside existing parcels.

### Example\_5\_12.py

```
fm = Frame(master)
Button(fm, text='Top').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Center').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Bottom').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm, text='This is the Center button').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT)
fm.pack()
```

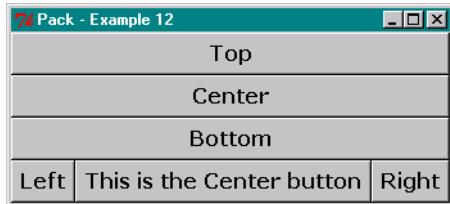


Figure 5.14 Abusing the Packer

All we have to do is to pack the two columns of widgets in separate frames and then pack the frames side by side. Here is the modified code:

### Example\_5\_13.py

```
fm = Frame(master)
Button(fm, text='Top').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Center').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
Button(fm, text='Bottom').pack(side=TOP, anchor=W, fill=X, expand=YES)
fm.pack(side=LEFT)
fm2 = Frame(master)
Button(fm2, text='Left').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm2, text='This is the Center button').pack(side=LEFT)
Button(fm2, text='Right').pack(side=LEFT)
fm2.pack(side=LEFT, padx=10)
```

Figure 5.16 shows the effect achieved by running Example\_5\_13.py.

This is an important technique which will be seen in several examples throughout the book. For an example which uses several embedded frames, take a look at Examples/chapter17/Example\_16\_9.py, which is available online.

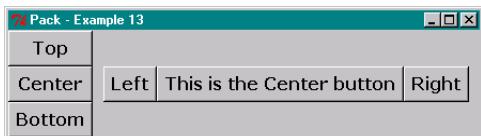
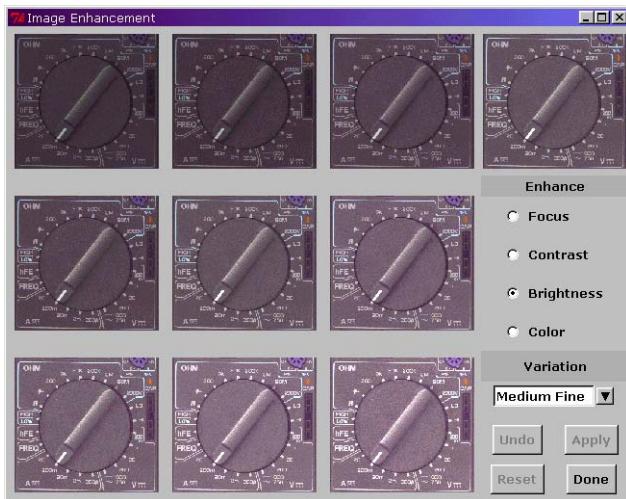


Figure 5.15 Hierarchical packing

## 5.3 Grid

Many programmers consider the Grid geometry manager the easiest manager to use. Personally, I don't completely agree, but you will be the final judge. Take a look at figure 5.17. This is a fairly complex layout task to support an image editor which uses a "by example" motif. Laying this out using the Packer requires a hierarchical approach with several nested Frames to enclose the target widgets. It also requires careful calculation of padding and other factors to achieve the final layout. It is much easier using the Grid.



**Figure 5.16 An image enhancer using Grid geometry management**



**Figure 5.17 A dialog laid out using Grid**

Before we tackle laying out the image editor, let's take a look at a simpler example. We'll create a dialog containing three labels with three entry fields, along with OK and Cancel buttons. The fields need to line up neatly (the example is a change-password dialog). Figure 5.18 shows what the Grid manager does for us. The code is quite simple, but I have removed some less-important lines for clarity:

### Example\_5\_14.py

```
class GetPassword(Dialog):
    def body(self, master):
        self.title("Enter New Password")

        Label(master, text='Old Password:').grid(row=0, sticky=W)
        Label(master, text='New Password:').grid(row=1, sticky=W)
        Label(master, text='Enter New Password Again:').grid(row=2,
sticky=W)
```

1

```

self.oldpw   = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')
self.newpw1  = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')
self.newpw2  = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')

self.oldpw.grid(row=0, column=1, sticky=W)
self.newpw1.grid(row=1, column=1, sticky=W)
self.newpw2.grid(row=2, column=1, sticky=W)

```

### Code comments

- ➊ First, we create the labels. Since we do not need to preserve a reference to the label, we can apply the `grid` method directly. We specify the `row` number but allow the `column` to default (in this case to column 0). The `sticky` attribute determines where the widget will be attached within its cell in the grid. The `sticky` attribute is similar to a combination of the `anchor` and `expand` options of the Packer and it makes the widget look like a packed widget with an `anchor=W` option.
- ➋ We *do* need a reference to the entry fields, so we create them separately.
- ➌ Finally, we add the entry fields to the grid, specifying both `row` and `column`.

Let's go back to the image editor example. If you plan the layout for the fields in a grid it is easy to see what needs to be done to generate the screen. Look at figure 5.19 to see how the areas are to be gridded. The important feature to note is that we need to span both rows and columns to set aside the space for each of the components. You may find it convenient to sketch out designs for complex grids before committing them to code. Here is the code for the image editor. I have removed some of the code, since I really want to focus on the layout and not the operation of the application. The full source code for this example is available online.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1							
2							
3							
4							
5						label	
6						radiobutton	
7						radiobutton	
8						radiobutton	
9						radiobutton	
10						label	
11						combobox	
12							
13						button	button
14						button	button

Figure 5.18 Designing the layout for a gridded display

## imageEditor.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import sys, Pmw, Image, ImageTk, ImageEnhance

class Enhancer:
    def __init__(self, master=None, imgfile=None):
        self.master = master
        self.masterImg = Image.open(imgfile)
        self.masterImg.thumbnail((150, 150))

        self.images = [None]*9
        self.imgs   = [None]*9
        for i in range(9):
            image = self.masterImg.copy()
            self.images[i] = image
            self.imgs[i] = ImageTk.PhotoImage(self.images[i].mode,
                                              self.images[i].size)

    i = 0
    for r in range(3):
        for c in range(3):
            lbl = Label(master, image=self.imgs[i])
            lbl.grid(row=r*5, column=c*2,
                      rowspan=5, columnspan=2, sticky=NSEW,
                      padx=5, pady=5)
            i = i + 1

    self.original = ImageTk.PhotoImage(self.masterImg)
    Label(master, image=self.original).grid(row=0, column=6,
                                             rowspan=5, columnspan=2)

    Label(master, text='Enhance', bg='gray70').grid(row=5, column=6,
                                                    columnspan=2, sticky=NSEW)

    self.radio = Pmw.RadioSelect(master, labelpos = None,
                                 buttontype = 'radiobutton', orient = 'vertical',
                                 command = self.selectFunc)

    self.radio.grid(row=6, column=6, rowspan=4, columnspan=2)

# --- Code Removed ----

    Label(master, text='Variation',
          bg='gray70').grid(row=10, column=6,
                            columnspan=2, sticky=NSWE)

    self.variation=Pmw.ComboBox(master, history=0, entry_width=11,
                                selectioncommand = self.setVariation,
                                scrolledlist_items=('Fine','Medium Fine','Medium',
                                'Medium Course','Course'))

    self.variation.selectitem('Medium')

    self.variation.grid(row=11, column=6, columnspan=2)
```

1

2

3

4

5

6

```

        Button(master, text='Undo',
               state='disabled').grid(row=13, column=6)

        Button(master, text='Apply',
               state='disabled').grid(row=13, column=7)
        Button(master, text='Reset',
               state='disabled').grid(row=14, column=6)
        Button(master, text='Done',
               command=self.exit).grid(row=14, column=7)

# --- Code Removed ----

root = Tk()
root.option_add('*font', ('verdana', 10, 'bold'))
root.title('Image Enhancement')
imgEnh = Enhancer(root, sys.argv[1])
root.mainloop()

```

### *Code comments*

- ➊ This example uses the Python Imaging Library (PIL) to create, display, and enhance images. See “Python Imaging Library (PIL)” on page 626 for references to documentation supporting this useful library of image methods.
- ➋ Although it’s not important in illustrating the grid manager, I left some of the PIL code in place to demonstrate how it facilitates handling images. Here, in the constructor, we open the master image and create a thumbnail within the bounds specified. PIL scales the image appropriately.

```

        self.masterImg = Image.open(imgfile)
        self.masterImg.thumbnail((150, 150))

```

- ➌ Next we create a copy of the image and create a Tkinter PhotoImage placeholder for each of the images in the 3x3 grid.
- ➍ Inside a double for loop we create a Label and place it in the appropriate cell in the grid, adding rowspan and colspan options.

```

lbl = Label(master, image=self.imgs[i])
lbl.grid(row=r*5, column=c*2,
         rowspan=5, colspan=2, sticky=NSEW, padx=5, pady=5)

```

Note that in this case the sticky option attaches the images to all sides of the grid so that the grid is sized to constrain the image. This means that the widget will stretch and shrink as the overall window size is modified.

- ➎ Similarly, we grid a label with a different background, using the sticky option to fill all of the available cell.

```

Label(master, text='Enhance', bg='gray70').grid(row=5, column=6,
                                               colspan=2, sticky=NSEW)

```

- ➏ The Pmw RadioSelect widget is placed in the appropriate cell with appropriate spans:

```

self.radio = Pmw.RadioSelect(master, labelpos = None,
                             buttontype = 'radiobutton', orient = 'vertical',
                             command = self.selectFunc)

self.radio.grid(row=6, column=6, rowspan=4, colspan=2)

```

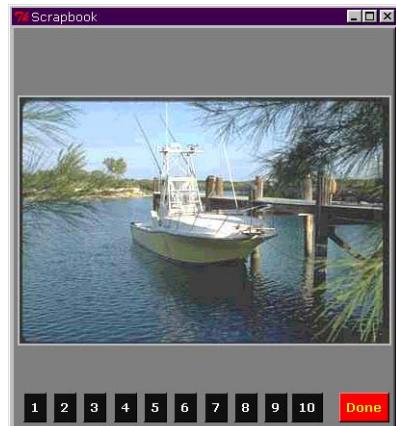
- ➐ Finally, we place the Button widgets in their allocated cells.

You have already seen one example of the ImageEditor in use (figure 5.17). The real advantage of the grid geometry manager becomes apparent when you run the application with another image with a different aspect. Figure 5.20 shows this well; the grid adjusts perfectly to the image. Creating a similar effect using the Packer would require greater effort.



**Figure 5.19 ImageEditor—scales for image size**

## 5.4 Placer



**Figure 5.20 A simple scrapbook tool**

The Placer geometry manager is the simplest of the available managers in Tkinter. It is considered difficult to use by some programmers, because it allows precise positioning of widgets within, or relative to, a window. You will find quite a few examples of its use in this book so I could take advantage of this precision. Look ahead to figure 9.5 on page 213 to see an example of a GUI that would be fairly difficult to implement using pack or grid. Because we will see so many examples, I am only going to present two simple examples here.

Let's start by creating the simple scrapbook window shown in figure 5.21. Its function is to display some images, which are scaled to fit the window. The images are selected by clicking on the numbered

buttons. It is quite easy to build a little application like this; again, we use PIL to provide support for images.

It would be possible to use `pack` to lay out the window (and, of course, `grid` would work if the image spanned most of the columns) but `place` provides some useful behavior when windows are *resized*. The Buttons in figure 5.21 are attached to *relative* positions, which means that they stay in the same relative position as the dimensions of the window change. You express relative positions as a real number with 0.0 representing *minimum* x or y and 1.0 representing *maximum* x or y. The minimum values for the axes are conventional for window coordinates with x0 on the left of the screen and y0 at the top of the screen. If you run `scrapbook.py`, test the effect of squeezing and stretching the window and you will notice how the buttons reposition. If you squeeze too much you will cause the buttons to collide, but somehow the effect using `place` is more acceptable than the clipping that occurs with `pack`. Here is the code for the scrapbook.

### scrapbook.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Image, ImageTk, os

class Scrapbook:
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        self.master = master
        self.frame = Frame(master, width=400, height=420, bg='gray50',
                           relief=RAISED, bd=4)

        self.lbl = Label(self.frame)
        self.lbl.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.48, anchor=CENTER)

        self.images = []
        images = os.listdir("images")

        xpos = 0.05
        for i in range(10):
            Button(self.frame, text='%d' % (i+1), bg='gray10',
                   fg='white', command=lambda s=self, img=i: \
                   s.getImg(img)).place(relx=xpos, rely=0.99, anchor=S)
            xpos = xpos + 0.08
            self.images.append(images[i])

        Button(self.frame, text='Done', command=self.exit,
               bg='red', fg='yellow').place(relx=0.99, rely=0.99, anchor=SE)
        self.frame.pack()
        self.getImg(0)

    def getImg(self, img):
        self.masterImg = Image.open(os.path.join("images",
                                                self.images[img]))
        self.masterImg.thumbnail((400, 400))
        self.img = ImageTk.PhotoImage(self.masterImg)
        self.lbl['image'] = self.img

    def exit(self):
        self.master.destroy()

root = Tk()
```

1

2

3

4

5

```

root.title('Scrapbook')
scrapbook = Scrapbook(root)
root.mainloop()

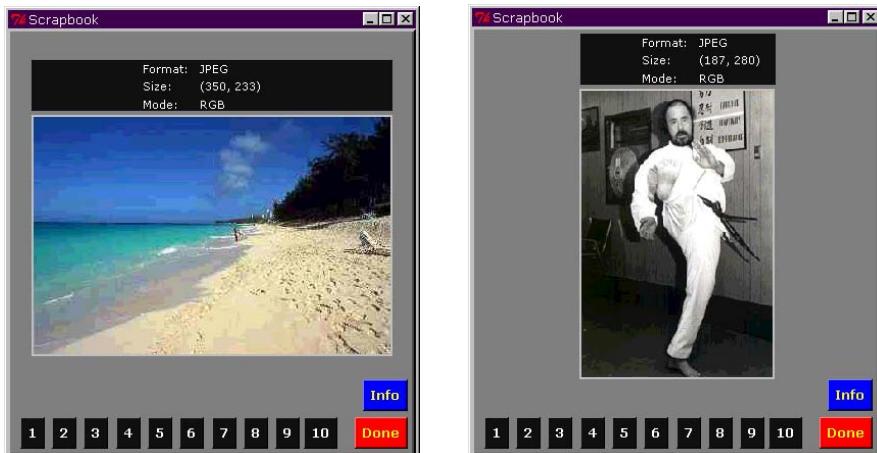
```

### Code comments

- ➊ We create the `Label` which will contain the image, placing it approximately in the center of the window and anchoring it at the center. Note that the relative placings are expressed as percentages of the width or height of the container.
 

```
self.lbl.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.48, anchor=CENTER)
```
- ➋ We get a list of files from the `images` directory
- ➌ `place` really lends itself to be used for *calculated* positioning. In the loop we create a `Button`, binding the index of the button to the `activate` callback and placing the button at the next available position.
- ➍ We put one button at the bottom right of the screen to allow us to `quit` the scrapbook. Note that we anchor it at the `SE` corner. Also note that we `pack` the outer frame. It is quite common to pack a group of widgets placed within a container. The Packer does all the work of negotiating the space with the outer containers and the window manager.
- ➎ `getImg` is the PIL code to load the image, create a thumbnail, and load it into the `Label`.

In addition to providing precise window placement, `place` also provides *rubber sheet* placement, which allows the programmer to specify the size and location of the slave window in terms of the dimensions of the master window. It is even possible to use a master window which is *not* the parent of the slave. This can be very useful if you want to track the dimensions of an arbitrary window. Unlike `pack` and `grid`, `place` allows you to position a window outside the master (or sibling) window. Figure 5.22 illustrates the use of a window to display some of an image's properties in a window above each of the images. As the size of the image changes, the information window scales to fit the width of the image.



**Figure 5.21 Adding a sibling window which tracks changes in attached window**

The Placer has another important property: unlike the other Tkinter managers, it does not attempt to set the geometry of the master window. If you want to control the dimensions of container widgets, you must use widgets such as Frames or Canvases that have a `configure` option to allow you to control their sizes. Let's take a look at the code needed to implement the information window.

### scrapbook2.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Image, ImageTk, os, string

class Scrapbook:
    def __init__(self, master=None):

# --- Code Removed -----

        Button(self.frame, text='Info', command=self.info,
               bg='blue', fg='yellow').place(relx=0.99, rely=0.90, anchor=SE)
        self.infoDisplayed = FALSE

    def getImg(self, img):

# --- Code Removed -----

        if self.infoDisplayed:
            self.info();self.info()

    def info(self):
        if self.infoDisplayed:
            self.fm.destroy()
            self.infoDisplayed = FALSE
        else:
            self.fm = Frame(self.master, bg='gray10')
            self.fm.place(in_=self.lbl, relx=0.5,
                          relwidth=1.0, height=50, anchor=S,
                          rely=0.0, y=-4, bordermode='outside')
            ypos = 0.15
            for lattr in ['Format', 'Size', 'Mode']:
                Label(self.fm, text='%s:\t%s' % (lattr,
                                                getattr(self.masterImg,
                                                       '%s' % string.lower(lattr))),
                      bg='gray10', fg='white',
                      font=('verdana', 8)).place(relx=0.3,
                                               rely= ypos, anchor=W)
                ypos = ypos + 0.35
            self.infoDisplayed = TRUE

# --- Code Removed -----
```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We add a button to display the image information.
- ❷ To force a refresh of the image info, we toggle the info display.

```
self.info();self.info()
```
- ❸ The `info` method toggles the information display.
- ❹ If the window is currently displayed, we destroy it.
- ❺ Otherwise, we create a new window, placing it above the image and setting its width to match that of the image. We also add a negative increment to the `y` position to provide a little whitespace.

```
self.fm.place(in_=self.lbl, relx=0.5,  
             relwidth=1.0, height=50, anchor=S,  
             rely=0.0, y=-4, bordermode='outside')
```
- ❻ The entries in the information window are placed programmatically.

## **5.5 Summary**

Mastering the geometry managers is an important step in developing the ability to produce attractive and effective GUIs. When starting out with Tkinter, most readers will find `grid` and `pack` to be easy to use and capable of producing the best results when a window is resized. For very precise placement of widgets, `place` is a better choice. However, this does take quite a bit more effort.

You will see many examples of using the three managers throughout the book. Remember that it is often appropriate to combine geometry managers within a single window. If you do, you must be careful to follow some rules; if things are just not working out, then you have probably broken one of those rules!



## C H A P T E R   6

---

# *Events, bindings and callbacks*

6.1 Event-driven systems: a review	95	6.6 Timers and background procedures	107
6.2 Tkinter events	98	6.7 Dynamic callback handlers	107
6.3 Callbacks	102	6.8 Putting events to work	108
6.4 Lambda expressions	103	6.9 Summary	119
6.5 Binding events and callbacks	104		

GUI applications rely heavily on events and binding callbacks to these events in order to attach functionality to widgets. I anticipate that many readers may have some familiarity with this topic. However, this may be a new area for some of you, so I will go into some detail to make sure that the subject has been fully covered. Advanced topics will be discussed, including dynamic callback handlers, data verification techniques and “smart” widgets.

## **6.1 Event-driven systems: a review**

It quite possible to build complex GUI applications without knowing anything about the underlying event-mechanism, regardless of whether the application is running in a UNIX, Windows or Macintosh environment. However, it is usually easier to develop an application that behaves the way *you* want it to if you know how to request and handle events within your application.

Readers familiar with events and event handlers in X or with Windows messages might wish to skip ahead to look at “Tkinter events” on page 98, since this information is specific to Tkinter.

### 6.1.1 What are events?

*Events* are notifications (*messages* in Windows parlance) sent by the windowing system (the X-server for X, for example) to the client code. They indicate that something has occurred or that the state of some controlled object has changed, either because of user input or because your code has made a request which causes the server to make a change.

In general, applications do not receive events automatically. However, you may not be aware of the events that have been requested by your programs indirectly, or the requests that widgets have made. For example, you may specify a *command callback* to be called when a button is pressed; the widget binds an *activate* event to the callback. It is also possible to request notification of an event that is normally handled elsewhere. Doing this allows your application to change the behavior of widgets and windows generally; this can be a good thing but it can also wreck the behavior of complex systems, so it needs to be used with care.

All events are placed in an event queue. Events are usually removed by a function called from the application’s *mainloop*. Generally, you will use Tkinter’s *mainloop* but it is possible for you to supply a specialized *mainloop* if you have special needs (such as a threaded application which needs to manage internal locks in a way which makes it impossible to use the standard scheme).

Tkinter provides implementation-independent access to events so that you do not need to know too much about the underlying event handlers and filters. For example, to detect when the cursor enters a frame, try the following short example:

#### Example\_6\_1.py

```
from Tkinter import *
root = Tk()

def enter(event):
    print 'Entered Frame: x=%d, y=%d' % (event.x, event.y)

frame = Frame(root, width=150, height=150)
frame.bind('<Any-Enter>', enter)           # Bind event
frame.pack()

root.mainloop()
```

The `bind` method of `Frame` is used to bind the `enter` callback to an `Any-Enter` event. Whenever the cursor crosses the frame boundary from the outside to the inside, the message will be printed.

---

**Note** This example introduces an interesting issue. Depending on the speed with which the cursor enters the frame, you will observe that the x and y coordinates show some variability. This is because the x and y values are determined at the time that the event is processed by the event loop not at the time the actual event occurs.

## 6.1.2 Event propagation

Events occur relative to a *window*, which is usually described as the *source window* of the event. If no client has registered for a particular event for the source window, the event is propagated up the window hierarchy until it either finds a window that a client has registered with, it finds a window that prohibits event propagation or it reaches the root window. If it does reach the root window, the event is ignored.

Only device events that occur as a result of a key, pointer motion or mouse click are propagated. Other events, such as exposure and configuration events, have to be registered for explicitly.

## 6.1.3 Event types

Events are grouped into several categories depending on X event masks. Tk maps Windows events to the same masks when running on a Windows architecture. The event masks recognized by Tk (and therefore Tkinter) are shown in table 6.1.

**Table 6.1 Event masks used to group X events**

NoEventMask	StructureNotifyMask	Button3MotionMask
KeyReleaseMask	SubstructureNotifyMask	Button5MotionMask
ButtonReleaseMask	FocusChangeMask	KeymapStateMask
LeaveWindowMask	ColormapChangeMask	VisibilityChangeMask
PointerMotionHintMask	KeyPressMask	ResizeRedirectMask
Button2MotionMask	ButtonPressMask	SubstructureRedirectMask
Button4MotionMask	EnterWindowMask	PropertyChangeMask
ButtonMotionMask	PointerMotionMask	OwnerGrabButtonMask
ExposureMask	Button1MotionMask	

### Keyboard events

Whenever a key is pressed, a `KeyPress` event is generated, and whenever a key is released, a `KeyRelease` event is generated. Modifier keys, such as SHIFT and CONTROL, generate keyboard events.

### Pointer events

If buttons on the mouse are pressed or if the mouse is moved, `ButtonPress`, `ButtonRelease` and `MotionNotify` events are generated. The window associated with the event is the lowest window in the hierarchy unless a pointer grab exists, in that case, the window that initiated the grab will be identified. Like keyboard events, modifier keys may be combined with pointer events.

### Crossing events

Whenever the pointer enters or leaves a window boundary, an `EnterNotify` or `LeaveNotify` event is generated. It does not matter whether the crossing was a result of moving the pointer or because of a change in the stacking order of the windows. For example, if a window containing the pointer is lowered behind another window, and the pointer now is in the top

window, the lowered window receives a `LeaveNotify` event and the top window receives an `EnterNotify` event.

### ***Focus events***

The window which receives keyboard events is known as the *focus window*. `FocusIn` and `FocusOut` events are generated whenever the focus window changes. Handling focus events is a little more tricky than handling pointer events because the pointer does not necessarily have to be in the window that is receiving focus events. You do not usually have to handle focus events yourself, because setting `takefocus` to `true` in the widgets allows you to move focus between the widgets by pressing the TAB key.

### ***Exposure events***

Whenever a window or a part of a window becomes visible, an `Exposure` event is generated. You will not typically be managing exposure events in Tkinter GUIs, but you do have the ability to receive these events if you have some very specialized drawing to support.

### ***Configuration events***

When a window's size, position or border changes, `ConfigureNotify` events are generated. A `ConfigureNotify` event will be created whenever the stacking order of the windows changes. Other types of configuration events include `Gravity`, `Map/Unmap`, `Reparent` and `Visibility`.

### ***Colormap events***

If a new colormap is installed, a `ColormapNotify` event is generated. This may be used by your application to prevent the annoying colormap flashing which can occur when another application installs a colormap. However, most applications do not control their colormaps directly.

## **6.2 Tkinter events**

In general, handling events in Tkinter applications is considerably easier than doing the same in X/Motif, Win32 or QuickDraw. Tkinter provides convenient methods to bind callbacks to specific events.

### **6.2.1 Events**

We express events as strings, using the following format:

```
<modifier-type-qualifier>
```

- `modifier` is optional and may be repeated, separated by spaces or a dash.
- `type` is optional if there is a `qualifier`.
- `qualifier` is either a *button-option* or a `keysym` and is optional if `type` is present.

Many events can be described using just `type`, so the `modifier` and `qualifier` may be left out. The `type` defines the class of event that is to be bound (in X terms it defines the

*event mask*). Many events may be entered in a shorthand form. For example, <Key-a>, <Key-Press-a>, and a are all acceptable event identifiers for pressing a lower-case a.

Here are some of the more commonly used events. You will find a complete list of events and keysyms in “Events and keysyms” on page 617

Event	Alt. 1	Alt2	Mod	Type	Qualifier	Action to generate event
<Any-Enter>			Any	Enter		Enter event regardless of mode.
<Button-1>	ButtonPress-1	1		Button	1	Left mouse button click.
<Button-2>	ButtonPress-2	2		ButtonPress	1	Middle mouse button click.
<B2-Motion>			B1	Motion		Mouse movement with middle mouse button down.
<ButtonRelease-3>				ButtonRe-lease	3	Release third mouse button 3.
<Configure>				Configure		Size stacking or position has changed.
<Control-Insert>			Control		Insert	Press INSERT key with CONTROL key down.
<Control-Shift-F3>			Control-Shift		F3	Press CONTROL-SHIFT and F3 keys simultaneously.
<Destroy>				Destroy		Window is being destroyed.
<Double-Button-1>			Double	Button	1	Double-click first mouse button 1.
<Enter>				Enter		Cursor enters window.
<Expose>				Expose		Window fully or partially exposed.
<FocusIn>				FocusIn		Widget gains focus.
<FocusOut>				FocusOut		Widget loses focus.
<KeyPress>	Key			KeyPress		Any key has been pressed.
<KeyRelease-back-slash>				KeyRelease	backslash	Backslash key has been released.
<Leave>				Leave		Cursor leaves window.
<Map>				Map		Window has been mapped.
<Print>					Print	PRINT key has been pressed.
Z					Z	Capital Z has been pressed.

Let’s take a look at some example code that allows us to explore the event mechanism as it’s supported by Tkinter.

### Example\_6\_2.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw

eventDict = {
```

```

'2': 'KeyPress', '3': 'KeyRelease', '4': 'ButtonPress',
'5': 'ButtonRelease', '6': 'Motion', '7': 'Enter',
'8': 'Leave', '9': 'FocusIn', '10': 'FocusOut',
'12': 'Expose', '15': 'Visibility', '17': 'Destroy',
'18': 'Unmap', '19': 'Map', '21': 'Reparent',
'22': 'Configure', '24': 'Gravity', '26': 'Circulate',
'28': 'Property', '32': 'Colormap', '36': 'Activate',
'37': 'Deactivate',
}

root = Tk()

def reportEvent(event):
    rpt = '\n\n%s' % (80*'=')
    rpt = '%s\nEvent: type=%s (%s)' % (rpt, event.type,
                                         eventDict.get(event.type, 'Unknown'))
    rpt = '%s\ntime=%s' % (rpt, event.time)
    rpt = '%s widget=%s' % (rpt, event.widget)
    rpt = '%s x=%d, y=%d' % (rpt, event.x, event.y)
    rpt = '%s x_root=%d, y_root=%d' % (rpt, event.x_root, event.y_root)
    rpt = '%s y_root=%d' % (rpt, event.y_root)
    rpt = '%s\nserial=%s' % (rpt, event.serial)
    rpt = '%s num=%s' % (rpt, event.num)
    rpt = '%s height=%s' % (rpt, event.height)
    rpt = '%s width=%s' % (rpt, event.width)
    rpt = '%s keysym=%s' % (rpt, event.keysym)
    rpt = '%s ksNum=%s' % (rpt, event.keysym_num)

    ##### Some event types don't have these attributes
    try:
        rpt = '%s focus=%s' % (rpt, event.focus)
    except:
        try:
            rpt = '%s send=%s' % (rpt, event.send_event)
        except:
            pass

    text2.yview(END)
    text2.insert(END, rpt)

frame = Frame(root, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2)
text = Entry(frame, width=10, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2)
text2 = Pmw.ScrolledText(frame)

for event in eventDict.values():
    frame.bind('<%s>' % event, reportEvent)
    text.bind('<%s>' % event, reportEvent)

text.pack()
text2.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
frame.pack()
text.focus_set()
root.mainloop()

```

1

2

3

4

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ `eventDict` defines all of the event types that Tkinter (strictly Tk) recognizes. Not all of the event masks defined by X are directly available to Tkinter applications, so you will see that the enumerated event type values are sparse.

```
'12': 'Expose', '15': 'Visibility', '17': 'Destroy',
```

The dictionary is also used to look up the event-type name when the event is detected.

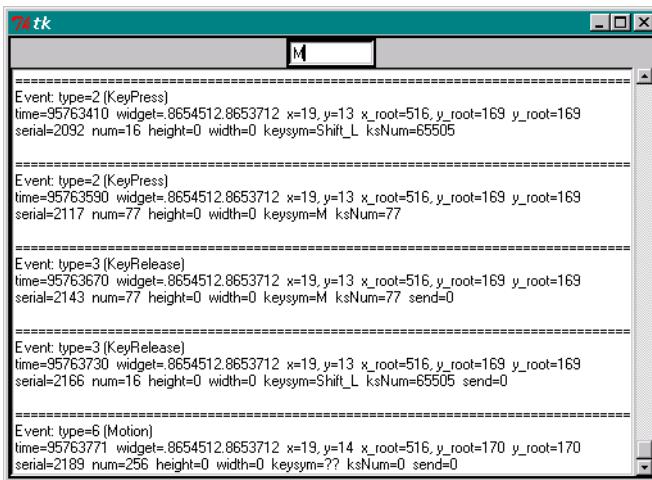
- ❷ `reportEvent` is our event handler. It is responsible for formatting data about the event. The event type is retrieved from `eventDict`; if an unrecognized event occurs, we will type it as Unknown.

```
def reportEvent(event):
    rpt = '\n\n%s' % (80*'=')
    rpt = '%s\nEvent: type=%s (%s)' % (rpt, event.type,
                                         eventDict.get(event.type, 'Unknown'))
```

- ❸ Not all events supply `focus` and `send_event` attributes, so we handle `AttributeErrors` appropriately.  
❹ Finally, we bind each of the events to the `reportEvent` callback for the `Frame` and `Entry` widgets:

```
for event in eventDict.values():
    frame.bind('<%s>' % event, reportEvent)
    text.bind('<%s>' % event, reportEvent)
```

Figure 6.1 shows the result of running `Example_6_2.py`. The displayed events show the effect of typing SHIFT-M. You can see the `KeyPress` for the SHIFT key, and the `KeyPress` for the M key, followed by the corresponding `KeyRelease` events.



**Figure 6.1 An event monitor**

---

**Note**

If you are new to handling events, you might find it useful to run Example\_6\_2.py to investigate the behavior of the system as you perform some simple tasks in the window. For example, holding the SHIFT key down creates a stream of events; moving the mouse creates a stream of motion events at an even greater frequency.

This may come as a surprise initially, since the events are normally invisible to the user (and to the programmer). It is important to be aware of this behavior and as you program to take account of how events will actually be generated. It is especially important to make sure that the callback does not do any intensive processing; otherwise, it is easy to cause severe performance problems.

---

## 6.3 Callbacks

Callbacks are simply functions that are called as the result of an event being generated. Handling arguments, however, can be problematic for beginning Tkinter programmers, and they can be a source of latent bugs, even for seasoned programmers.

The number of arguments depends on the type of event that is being processed and whether you bound a callback *directly* or *indirectly* to an event. Here is an example of an indirect binding:

```
btn = Button(frame, text='OK', command=buttonAction)
```

command is really a convenience function supplied by the `Button` widget which calls the `buttonAction` callback when the widget is activated. This is usually a result of a `<Button-Press-1>` event, but a `<KeyPress-space>` is also valid, if the widget has focus. However, be aware that many events have occurred as a result of moving and positioning the mouse before the button was activated.

We could get the same effect by binding directly:

```
btn.bind('<Button-1>', buttonAction)
btn.bind('<KeyPress-space>', buttonAction)
```

So what is the difference? Well, apart from the extra line of code to bind the events directly, the real difference is in the invocation of the callback. If the callback is invoked from the event, the event object will be passed as the first (in this case the only) argument of the callback.

---

**Note**

Event handlers can be a source of latent bugs if you don't completely test your applications. If an event is bound (intentionally or erroneously) to a callback and the callback does not expect the event object to be passed as an argument, then the application could potentially crash. This is more likely to happen if the event rarely occurs or is difficult to simulate in testing.

---

If you want to reuse `buttonAction` and have it called in response to both direct and indirect events, you will have to write the callback so that it can accept variable arguments:

```
def buttonAction(event=None):
    if event:
        print 'event in: %s' % event.type
```

```
        else:  
            print 'command in:'
```

Of course, this does increase complexity, particularly if the function already has arguments, since you will have to determine if the first argument is an event object or a regular argument.

## 6.4 Lambda expressions

Oh no! Not the *dreaded* lambda again!\* Although lambda has been mentioned earlier in the book, and has been used extensively in examples, before we go on to the next section we must take another look at the use of `lambda`.

The term *lambda* originally came from Alonzo Church's *lambda calculus* and you will now find *lambda* used in several contexts—particularly in the functional programming disciplines. *Lambda* in Python is used to define an anonymous function which appears to be a statement to the interpreter. In this way you can put a single line of executable code where it would not normally be valid.

Take a look at this code fragment:

```
var    = IntVar()  
value = 10  
...  
btn.bind('Button-1', (btn.flash(), var.set(value)))
```

A quick glance at the bolded line might not raise any alarms, but the line will fail at runtime. The intent was to flash the button when it was clicked and set a variable with some predetermined value. What is actually going to happen is that both of the calls will be called when the `bind` method executes. Later, when the button is clicked, we will not get the desired effect, since the callback list contains just the return values of the two method calls, in this case (`None`, `None`). Additionally, we would have missed the event object—which is always the first argument in the callback—and we could possibly have received a runtime error. Here is the correct way to bind this callback:

```
btn.bind('Button-1', lambda event, b=btn, v=var, i=value:  
        (b.flash(), v.set(i)))
```

Notice the `event` argument (which is ignored in this code fragment).

### 6.4.1 Avoiding lambdas altogether

If you don't like lambda expressions, there are other ways of delaying the call to your function. Timothy R. Evans posted a suggestion to the Python news group which defines a command class to wrap the function.

```
class Command:  
    def __init__(self, func, *args, **kw):  
        self.func = func  
        self.args = args
```

---

\* “Cardinal Fang! Bring me the lambda!”

```
self.kw = kw

def __call__(self, *args, **kw):
    args = self.args + args
    kw.update(self.kw)
    apply(self.func, args, kw)
```

Then, you define the callback like this:

```
Button(text='label', command=Command(function, arg [, moreargs...]))
```

The reference to the function and arguments (including keywords) that are passed to the Command class are stored by its constructor and then passed on to the function when the callback is activated. This format for defining the callbacks may be a little easier to read and maintain than the lambda expression. At least there are alternatives!

## 6.5 **Binding events and callbacks**

The examples so far have demonstrated how to bind an event handler to an instance of a widget so that its behavior on receiving an event will not be inherited by other instances of the widget. Tkinter provides the flexibility to bind at several levels:

- 1 At the *application* level, so that the same binding is available in all windows and widgets in the application, so long as one window in the application has focus.
- 2 At the *class* level, so that all instances of widgets have the same behavior, at least initially.
- 3 At the *shell* (`Toplevel` or `root`) level.
- 4 At the *instance* level, as noted already.

Binding events at the application and class level must be done carefully, since it is quite easy to create unexpected behavior in your application. In particular, indiscriminate binding at the class level may solve an immediate problem, but cause new problems when new functionality is added to the application.

---

**Note** It is generally good practice to avoid creating highly nonstandard behavior in widgets or interfaces with which the user is familiar. For example, it is easy to create bindings which allow an entry field to fill in reverse (so typing `123` is displayed as `321`), but this is not typical entry behavior and it might be confusing to the user.

---

### 6.5.1 **Bind methods**

You will find more information on `bind` and `unbind` methods in “Common options” on page 425, so in this section, I will just illustrate `bind` methods in the context of the four binding levels.

#### *Application level*

Applications frequently use F1 to deliver help. Binding this keysym at the application level means that pressing F1, when any of the application’s windows have focus, will bring up a help screen.

### *Class level*

Binding at the class level allows you to make sure that classes behave uniformly across an application. In fact, Tkinter binds this way to provide standard bindings for widgets. You will probably use class binding if you implement new widgets, or you might use class binding to provide audio feedback for entry fields across an application, for example.

### *Toplevel window level*

Binding a function at the root level allows an event to be generated if focus is in any part of a shell. This might be used to bind a print screen function, for example.

### *Instance level*

We have already seen several examples of this, so we will not say any more at this stage.

The following hypothetical example illustrates all four of the binding modes together.

#### **Example\_6\_3.py**

```
from Tkinter import *
def displayHelp(event):

    def displayHelp(event):
        print 'hlp', event.keysym
        ①

    def sayKey(event):
        print 'say', event.keysym, event.char

    def printWindow(event):
        print 'prt', event.keysym

    def cursor(*args):
        print 'cursor'

    def unbindThem(*args):
        root.unbind_all('<F1>')
        root.unbind_class('Entry', '<KeyPress>')
        root.unbind('<Alt_L>')
        frame.unbind('<Control-Shift-Down>')
        print 'Gone...'
        ②
        ③
        ④
        ⑤
        ⑥
        unbind all bindings

    root = Tk()
    frame = Frame(root, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2)
    text  = Entry(frame, width=10, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2)

    root.bind_all('<F1>', displayHelp)

    text.bind_class('Entry', '<KeyPress>', lambda e, x=101: sayKey(e,x))
    root.bind('<Alt_L>', printWindow)

    frame.bind('<Control-Shift-Down>', cursor)

    text.bind('<Control-Shift-Up>', unbindThem)
```

```
text.pack()
frame.pack()
text.focus_set()
root.mainloop()
```

---

### Code comments

- ➊ First, the callbacks are defined. These are all simple examples and all but the last one take account of the event object being passed as the callback's argument, from which we extract the keysym of the key generating the event.

```
def displayHelp(event):
    print 'hlp', event.keysym
```

- ➋ Although the class-level binding was made with a method call to an Entry widget, bind\_class is an inherited method, so any instance will work and root.unbind\_class is quite acceptable. This is not true for an instance binding, which is local to the instance.

- ➌ We make an application-level binding:

```
root.bind_all('<F1>', displayHelp)
```

- ➍ In this class-level binding we use a lambda function to construct an argument list for the callback:

```
text.bind_class('Entry', '<KeyPress>', lambda e, x=101: sayKey(e,x))
```

- ➎ Here we make a toplevel binding for a print-screen callback:

```
root.bind('<Alt_L>', printWindow)
```

- ➏ Finally, we make instance bindings with double modifiers:

```
frame.bind('<Control-Shift-Down>', cursor)
text.bind('<Control-Shift-Up>', unbindThem)
```

---

**Note** Be prepared to handle multiple callbacks for events if you use combinations of the four binding levels that have overlapping bindings.

Tkinter selects the best binding at each level, starting with any instance bindings, then toplevel bindings, followed by any class bindings. Finally, application level bindings are selected. This allows you to override bindings at any level.

---

## 6.5.2 Handling multiple bindings

As I mentioned in the note above, you can bind events at each of the four binding events. However, because events are propagated, that might not result in the behavior that you intended.

For a simple example, suppose you want to override the behavior of a widget, and rather than have BACKSPACE remove the previous character, you want to insert \h into the widget. So you set up the binding like this:

```
text.bind('<BackSpace>', lambda e: dobackspace(e))
```

and define the callback like this:

```
def dobackspace(event):
    event.widget.insert(END, '\\\\h')
```

Unfortunately this doesn't work, because the event is bound at the application level. The widget still has a binding for BACKSPACE, so after the application level has been invoked and \h has been inserted into the widget, the event is propagated to the class level and the h is removed.

There is a simple solution: return "break" from the last event handler that you want to propagate events from and the superior levels don't get the event. So, the callback looks like this:

```
def dobackspace(event):
    event.widget.insert(END, '\\\\h')
    return "break"
```

## 6.6 Timers and background procedures

The mainloop supports callbacks which are not generated from events. The most important result of this is that it is easy to set up timers which call callbacks after a predetermined delay or whenever the GUI is idle. Here is a code snippet from an example later in the book:

```
if self.blink:
    self.frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)

def update(self):
    # Code removed
    self.canvas.update_idletasks()
    if self.blink:
        self.frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)
```

This code sets up to call `self.update` after `self.blinkrate * 1000` milliseconds. The callback does what it does and then sets up to call itself again (these timers are called once only—if you want them to repeat you must set them up again).

For more information on timers, see “Common options” on page 425.

## 6.7 Dynamic callback handlers

A single callback is frequently bound to an event for the duration of an application. However, there are many cases where we need to change the bindings to the widget to support application requirements. One example might be attaching a callback to remove reverse video (that was applied as the result of a validation error) on a field when a character is input.

Getting dynamic callbacks to work is simply a matter of binding and unbinding events. We saw examples of this in Example\_6\_3.py on page 105, and there are other examples in the source code.

---

**Note** If you find that you are constantly binding and unbinding events in your code, it may be a good idea to review the reasons why you are doing this. Remember that events can be generated in rapid succession—mouse movement, for example, generates a slew of events. Changing bindings during an event storm may have unpredictable results and can be very difficult to debug. Of course, we burn CPU cycles as well, so it can have a considerable effect on application performance.

---

## 6.8 Putting events to work

In several of the early chapters, we saw examples of setting widgets with data and of getting that data and using it in our applications. In “Dialogs and forms” on page 140, we will see several schemes for presenting and getting data. This is an important topic that may require some ingenuity on your part to devise correct behavior. In the next few paragraphs, I’ll present some ideas to help you solve your own requirements.

### 6.8.1 Binding widgets to dynamic data

Tkinter provides a simple mechanism to bind a variable to a widget. However, it is not possible to use an arbitrary variable. The variable must be subclassed from the `Variable` class; several are predefined and you could define your own, if necessary. Whenever the variable changes, the widget’s contents are updated with the new value. Look at this simple example:

#### Example 6-4.py

```
from Tkinter import *
root = Tk()

class Indicator:
    def __init__(self, master=None, label='', value=0):
        self.var = BooleanVar()
        self.i = Checkbutton(master, text=label, variable = self.var,
                             command=self.valueChanged)
        self.var.set(value)
        self.i.pack()

    def valueChanged(self):
        print 'Current value = %s' % ['Off', 'On'][self.var.get()]

ind = Indicator(root, label='Furnace On', value=1)
root.mainloop()
```

This example defines `self.var` and binds it to the widget’s variable; it also defines a callback to be called whenever the value of the widget changes. In this example the value is changed by clicking the checkbutton—it could equally be set programmatically.

Setting the value as a result of an external change is a reasonable scenario, but it can introduce performance problems if the data changes rapidly. If our GUI contained many widgets that displayed the status and values of components of the system, and if these values changed asynchronously (for instance, each value arrived in the system as SNMP traps), the overhead of constantly updating the widgets could have an adverse effect on the application’s performance. Here is a possible implementation of a simple GUI to monitor the temperature reported by ten sensors.

#### Example 6-5.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import random
root = Tk()
```

```

class Indicator:

    def __init__(self, master=None, label='', value=0.0):
        self.var = DoubleVar()
        self.s = Scale(master, label=label, variable=self.var,
                      from_=0.0, to=300.0, orient=HORIZONTAL,
                      length=300)
        self.var.set(value)
        self.s.pack()

    def setTemp():
        slider = random.choice(range(10))
        value = random.choice(range(0, 300))
        slist[slider].var.set(value)
        root.after(5, setTemp)

slist = []
for i in range(10):
    slist.append(Indicator(root, label='Probe %d' % (i+1)))
setTemp()
root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ First we create a Tkinter variable. For this example we store a real value:  
`self.var = DoubleVar()`
- ➋ We then bind it to the Tk variable:  
`self.s = Scale(master, label=label, variable=self.var,`
- ➌ Then we set its value. This immediately updates the widget to display the new value:  
`self.var.set(value)`
- ➍ The purpose of the `setTemp` function is to create a value randomly for one of the “sensors” at 5 millisecond intervals.
- ➎ The variable is updated for each change:  
`slist[slider].var.set(value)`
- ➏ Since `after` is a one-shot timer, we must set up the next timeout:  
`root.after(5, setTemp)`
- ➐ The call to `setTemp` starts the simulated stream of sensor information.

The display for this example is not reproduced here (the code is available online, of course). However, the display’s behavior resembles Brownian motion, with widgets con-

stantly displaying new values. In a “real” application, the update rate would be annoying to the user, and it requires throttling to create a reasonable update rate. Additionally, constantly redrawing the widgets consumes an exceptionally high number of CPU cycles. Compare Example\_6\_5.py with the code for Example\_6\_6.py.

### Example\_6\_6.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import random
root = Tk()

class Indicator:
    def __init__(self, master=None, label='', value=0.0):
        self.var = DoubleVar()
        self.s = Scale(master, label=label, variable=self.var,
                       from_=0.0, to=300.0, orient=HORIZONTAL,
                       length=300)
        self.value = value
        self.var.set(value)
        self.s.pack()
        self.s.after(1000, self.update) ①

    def set(self, value):
        self.value = value ②

    def update(self):
        self.var.set(self.value)
        self.s.update_idletasks()
        self.s.after(1000, self.update) ③

def setTemp():
    slider = random.choice(range(10))
    value = random.choice(range(0, 300))
    slist[slider].set(value) ④
    root.after(5, setTemp)

slist = []
for i in range(10):
    slist.append(Indicator(root, label='Probe %d' % (i+1)))
setTemp()
root.mainloop()
```

---

#### Code comments

- ① In addition to the Tkinter variable, we create an instance variable for the widget’s current value:  

```
self.value = value
```
- ② An after timeout arranges for the update method to be called in one second:  

```
self.s.after(1000, self.update)
```
- ③ The class defines a set method to set the current value.

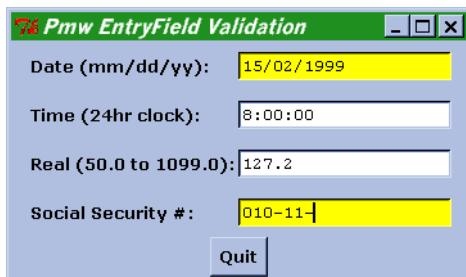
- ④ The update method sets the Tkinter variable with the current value, updating the widget's display. To redraw the widgets, we call update\_idletasks which processes events waiting on the event queue.

```
self.s.update_idletasks()
```

- ⑤ Now, when the value changes, we set the instance variable:

```
slist[slider].set(value)
```

The display now updates the widgets once a second, which results in a more relaxed display and noticeably lowers the CPU overhead. You can optimize the code more, if you wish, to further reduce the overhead. For example, the widgets could be updated from a single update timeout rather than from a one-per-widget call.



**Figure 6.2 Validating entry fields (Example\_6\_7.py)**

### 6.8.2 Data verification

An important part of a GUI, which performs data entry, is verifying appropriate input values. This area can consume a considerable amount of time and effort for the programmer. There are several approaches to validating input, but we will not attempt to cover all of them here.

Pmw EntryField widgets provide built-in validation routines for common entryfield types such as dates, times and numeric fields. Using these facilities can save you a considerable amount of time. Here is a simple example of using Pmw validation:

#### Example\_6\_7.py

```
import time, string
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw

class EntryValidation:
    def __init__(self, master):
        now = time.localtime(time.time())
        self._date = Pmw.EntryField(master,
                                   labelpos = 'w', label_text = 'Date (mm/dd/yy) :',
                                   value = '%d/%d/%d' % (now[1], now[2], now[0]),
                                   validate = {'validator':'date',
                                               'format':'mdy', 'separator':'/'}))
```

```

self._time = Pmw.EntryField(master,
    labelpos = 'w', label_text = 'Time (24hr clock):',
    value = '8:00:00',
    validate = {'validator':'time',
        'min':'00:00:00', 'max':'23:59:59',
        'minstrict':0, 'maxstrict':0}) ②

self._real = Pmw.EntryField(master,
    labelpos = 'w', value = '127.2',
    label_text = 'Real (50.0 to 1099.0):',
    validate = {'validator':'real',
        'min':50, 'max':1099,
        'minstrict':0},
    modifiedcommand = self.valueChanged)

self._ssn = Pmw.EntryField(master,
    labelpos = 'w', label_text = 'Social Security #:',
    validate = self.validateSSN, value = '') ③

fields = (self._date, self._time, self._real, self._ssn)
for field in fields:
    field.pack(fill='x', expand=1, padx=12, pady=8)

Pmw.alignlabels(fields) ④
self._date.component('entry').focus_set()

def valueChanged(self):
    print 'Value changed, value is', self._real.get()
def validateSSN(self, contents):
    result = -1
    if '-' in contents:
        ssnf = string.split(contents, '-')
        try:
            if len(ssnf[0]) == 3 and \
                len(ssnf[1]) == 2 and \
                len(ssnf[2]) == 4:
                result = 1
        except IndexError:
            result = -1
    elif len(contents) == 9:
        result = 1
    return result ⑤

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10 bold')
    root.option_add('*EntryField.Entry.Font', 'Courier 10')
    root.option_add('*EntryField.errorbackground', 'yellow')
    Pmw.initialise(root, useTkOptionDb=1) ⑥

    root.title('Pmw EntryField Validation')
    quit = Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.destroy)
    quit.pack(side = 'bottom')
    top = EntryValidation(root)
    root.mainloop() ⑦

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ① The date field uses the built-in date validator, specifying the format of the data and the separators:

```
validate = {'validator': 'date',
            'format': 'mdy', 'separator': '/'})
```

- ② The time field sets maximum and minimum options along with minstrict and maxstrict:

```
validate = {'validator': 'time',
            'min': '00:00:00', 'max': '23:59:59',
            'minstrict': 0, 'maxstrict': 0})
```

Setting minstrict and maxstrict to False (zero) allows values outside of the min and max range to be set. The background will be colored to indicate an error. If they are set to True, values outside the range cannot be input.

- ③ The Social Security field uses a user-supplied validator:

```
validate = self.validateSSN, value = '')
```

- ④ Pmw provides a convenience method to align labels. This helps to reduce the need to set up additional formatting in the geometry managers.

```
Pmw.alignlabels(fields)
self._date.component('entry').focus_set()
```

It is always a good idea to set input focus to the first editable field in a data-entry screen.

- ⑤ The validateSSN method is simple; it looks for three groups of characters separated by dashes.

- ⑥ Since the entry is cumulative, the string.split call will fail until the third group has been entered.

- ⑦ We set the Tk options database to override fonts and colors in all components used in the Pmw widgets.

```
root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10 bold')
root.option_add('*EntryField.Entry.Font', 'Courier 10')
root.option_add('*EntryField.errorbackground', 'yellow')
Pmw.initialise(root, useTkOptionDb=1)
```

This construct will be seen in many examples. However, this is a less-frequently used option to Pmw.initialise to force the use of the Tk option database.

Running Example\_6\_7 displays a screen similar to figure 6.2. Notice how the date and Social Security fields have a shaded background to indicate that they contain an invalid format.

Although validation of this kind is provided automatically by the Pmw Entryfield widget, it has some drawbacks.

- 1 There is no indication of the actual validation error. The user is required to determine the cause of the error himself.
- 2 Data which is valid, when complete, is indicated as being in error as it is being entered (the Social Security field in figure 6.2 is a good example).

- 3 Where validation requires complex calculations and access to servers and databases, etc., the processing load can be high. This could be a source of performance problems in certain environments.

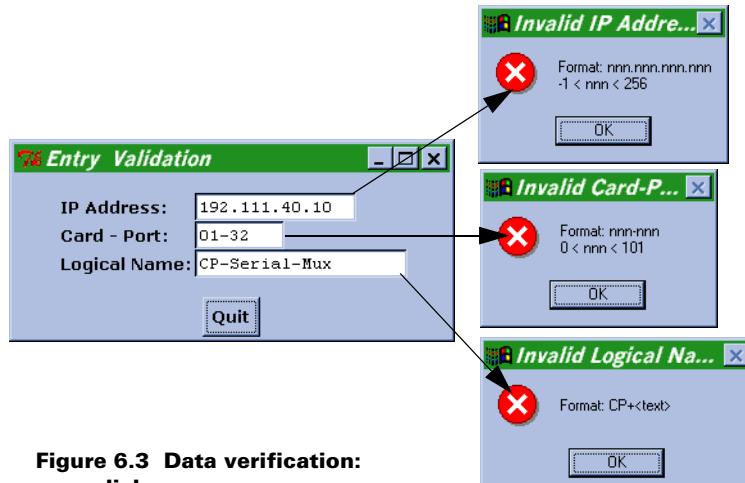
To circumvent these and other problems you may use alternative approaches. Of course, your application may not use Pmw widgets, so yet another approach may be required.

**Note** Personally, I prefer not to use the built-in validation in Pmw widgets. If the action of formatting the content of the widget requires a redraw, you may observe annoying display glitches, particularly if the system is heavily loaded; these may distract the user. The following method avoids these problems.

To avoid validating *every* keystroke (which is how the Pmw EntryField manages data input), we will arrange for validation to be done in the following cases:

- 1 When the user moves the mouse pointer out of the current field.
- 2 When the focus is moved from the field using the TAB key.
- 3 When the ENTER key is pressed.

Validating this way means that you don't get false errors as an input string is built up. In figure 6.3, for example, entering 192.311.40.10 would only raise a validation error when the field was left or if RETURN was pressed, thereby reducing operator confusion and CPU overhead..



**Figure 6.3 Data verification: error dialogs**

### Example\_6\_8.py

```
import string
from Tkinter import *
from validation import *
```

```

class EntryValidation:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self._ignoreEvent = 0
        self._ipAddrV = self._crdprtV = self._lnameV = ''

        frame = Frame(master)
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=3, sticky=W)

        self._ipaddr = self.createField(frame, width=15, row=0, col=2,
                                        label='IP Address:', valid=self.validate,
                                        enter=self.activate)
        self._crdprt = self.createField(frame, width=8, row=1, col=2,
                                        label='Card - Port:', valid=self.validate,
                                        enter=self.activate)
        self._lname = self.createField(frame, width=20, row=2, col=2,
                                       label='Logical Name:', valid=self.validate,
                                       enter=self.activate)

        self._wDict = {self._ipaddr: ('_ipAddrV', validIP),
                      self._crdprt: ('_crdprtV', validCP),
                      self._lname: ('_lnameV', validLName) }

        frame.pack(side=TOP, padx=15, pady=15)

    def createField(self, master, label='', text='', width=1,
                   valid=None, enter=None, row=0, col=0):
        Label(master, text=label).grid(row=row, column=col-1, sticky=W)
        id = Entry(master, text=text, width=width, takefocus=1)
        id.bind('<Any-Leave>', valid)
        id.bind('<FocusOut>', valid)
        id.bind('<Return>', enter)
        id.grid(row=row, column=col, sticky=W)
        return id

    def activate(self, event):
        print '<Return>: value is', event.widget.get()

    def validate(self, event):
        if self._ignoreEvent:
            self._ignoreEvent = 0
        else:
            currentValue = event.widget.get()
            if currentValue:
                var, validator = self._wDict[event.widget]
                nValue, replace, valid = validator(currentValue)

                if replace:
                    self._ignoreEvent = 1
                    setattr(self, var, nValue)
                    event.widget.delete(0, END)
                    event.widget.insert(0, nValue)
                if not valid:
                    self._ignoreEvent = 1
                    event.widget.focus_set()

root = Tk()

```

```

root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10 bold')
root.option_add('*Entry.Font', 'Courier 10')
root.title('Entry Validation')

top = EntryValidation(root)
quit = Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.destroy)
quit.pack(side = 'bottom')

root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The grid geometry manager sometimes needs a little help to lay out a screen. We use an empty *first* and *last* column in this example:

```

Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=3, sticky=W)

```

You cannot use the Grid manager's `minsize` option if the column (or row) is empty; you have to use the technique shown here. As an alternative, you can pack the gridded widget inside a Frame and use padding to add space at the sides.

- ❷ Since we are using native Tkinter widgets, we have to create a `Label` and `Entry` widget for each row of the form and place them in the appropriate columns. We use the `createField` method to do this.
- ❸ We create a dictionary to define a variable used to store the contents of each widget.

```

self._wDict = {self._ipaddr: ('_ipAddrV', validIP),
              self._crdpprt: ('_crdpprtV', validCP),
              self._lname: ('_lnameV', validLName) }

```

Using the dictionary enables us to use bindings to a single event-handler with multiple validators, which simplifies the code.

- ❹ The bindings for validation are when the cursor leaves the widget and when focus is lost (tabbing out of the field). We also bind the `activate` function called when the ENTER key is pressed.

```

id.bind('<Any-Leave>', valid)
id.bind('<FocusOut>', valid)
id.bind('<Return>', enter)

```

- ❺ One of the complications of using this type of validation scheme is that whenever a field loses focus, its validator is called—including when we return to a field to allow the user to correct an error. We provide a mechanism to ignore one event:

```

if self._ignoreEvent:
    self._ignoreEvent = 0

```

- ❻ We get the variable and validator for the widget creating the event:

```

var, validator = self._wDict[event.widget]
nValue, replace, valid = validator(currentValue)

```

and call the validator to check the widget's contents—possibly editing the content, as appropriate.

- ⑦ Finally, we react to the result of validation, setting the widget's content. In the case of a validation error, we reset focus to the widget. Here we set the flag to ignore the resulting focus event:

```
self._ignoreEvent = 1
```

### 6.8.3 Formatted (smart) widgets

Several data-entry formats benefit from widgets that format data as it is entered. Some examples include dates, times, telephone numbers, Social Security numbers and Internet (IP) addresses. Making this work may reintroduce some of the issues that were solved by the previous example, since the ideal behavior of the widget is to update the format continuously as opposed to the alternate scheme of reformatting the field after it has been entered. This introduces even more problems. Take entering a phone number, for example. Several number groupings are typical:

- 1 1-(401) 111-2222 Full number with area code
- 2 1-401-111-2222 Full number separated with dashes
- 3 401-111-2222 Area code and number without *I*
- 4 111-2222 Local number
- 5 017596-475222 International (United Kingdom)
- 6 3-1111-2222 International (Japan)

With so many combinations, it is important that the user is shown the format of the telephone number, or other data, in the label for the widget. If your application has requirements to accommodate a range of conflicting formats, it may be better to format the string after it has been entered completely or else leave the formatting to the user. For date and time fields, you might want to use Pmw widgets, which help the user get the input in the correct format.

For other formats, you are going to have to write code. This example demonstrates how to format phone numbers and Social Security numbers.

#### Example\_6\_9.py

```
import string
from Tkinter import *

class EntryFormatting:
    def __init__(self, master):
        frame = Frame(master)
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=3, sticky=W)

        self._ipaddr = self.createField(frame, width=16, row=0, col=2,
                                         label='Phone Number:\n(nnn)-nnn-nnn',
                                         format=self.fmtPhone, enter=self.activate)
        self._crdprt = self.createField(frame, width=11, row=1, col=2,
                                         label='SSN#: ', format=self.fmtSSN,
                                         enter=self.activate)
        frame.pack(side=TOP, padx=15, pady=15)

    def createField(self, frame, width, row, col, label, format, enter):
        entry = Entry(frame, width=width)
        entry.grid(row=row, column=col)
        label = Label(frame, text=label)
        label.grid(row=row, column=1)
        entry.config(validate='key', validatecommand=enter, format=format)
        return entry
```

```

def createField(self, master, label='', text='', width=1,
               format=None, enter=None, row=0, col=0):
    Label(master, text=label).grid(row=row, column=col-1,
                                    padx=15, sticky=W)
    id = Entry(master, text=text, width=width, takefocus=1)
    id.bind('<KeyRelease>', format) ❷
    id.bind('<Return>', enter)
    id.grid(row=row, column=col, pady=10, sticky=W)
    return id

def activate(self, event):
    print '<Return>: value is', event.widget.get()

def fmtPhone(self, event):
    current = event.widget.get()
    if len(current) == 1:
        current = '1-(%s' % current
    elif len(current) == 6:
        current = '%s)-' % current
    elif len(current) == 11:
        current = '%s-' % current
        event.widget.delete(0, END)
        event.widget.insert(0, current)

def fmtSSN(self, event):
    current = event.widget.get()
    if len(current) in [3, 6]:
        current = '%s-' % current
    event.widget.delete(0, END)
    event.widget.insert(0, current)

root = Tk()
root.title('Entry Formatting')

top = EntryFormatting(root)
quit = Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.destroy)
quit.pack(side = 'bottom')

root.mainloop()

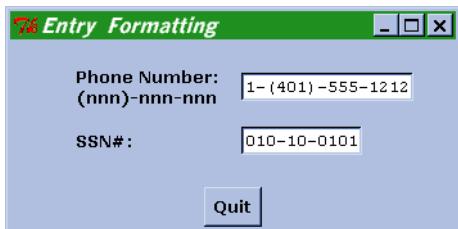
```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The `createField` method provides a wrapper to bind a formatting function that runs whenever the user presses a key.
- ❷ This is the binding that initiates the formatting.
- ❸ The `fmtPhone` method has to count the digits entered into the field to supply the additional separators.
- ❹ Similarly, `fmtSSN` inserts hyphens at the appropriate positions.

If you run Example\_6\_9.py, you will see output similar to figure 6.4.



**Figure 6.4 Simple formatted widgets**

## 6.9 ***Summary***

The material contained in this chapter is important to a GUI programmer. Almost all GUIs are event-driven and appropriate responses to what can be a deluge of events can be important for performance-sensitive applications.

The second half of the chapter introduced data input validation. This is also an important topic, since failure to identify values that are inappropriate can be infuriating to a user, especially if the user has to retype information into a data-entry screen.



## C H A P T E R   7

---

# *Using classes, composites and special widgets*

- 7.1 Creating a Light Emitting Diode class 120
- 7.2 Building a class library 129
- 7.3 Summary 139

The Object-Oriented Programming (OOP) capabilities of Python position the language as an ideal platform for developing prototypes and, in most cases, complete applications. One problem of OOP is that there is much argument over the methodologies (Object-Oriented Analysis and Design—OOAD) which lead to OOP, so many developers simply avoid OOP altogether and stay with structured programming (or unstructured programming in some case). There is nothing really magical about OOP; for really simple problems, it might not be worth the effort. However, in general, OOP in Python is an effective approach to developing applications. In this chapter, we are making an assumption that the reader is conversant with OOP in C++, Java or Python, so the basic concepts should be understood. For an extended discussion of this subject, Harms' & McDonald's *Quick Python* or Lutz and Ascher's *Learning Python*.

## **7.1 *Creating a Light Emitting Diode class***

The following example introduces an LED class to define Light Emitting Diode objects. These objects have status attributes of on, off, warn and alarm (corresponding to typical net-

work management alarm levels) along with the blink on/off state, which may be selected at instantiation. The LED class also defines the methods to set the status and blink state at run-time. Figure 7.1 demonstrates the wide range of LED formats that can be generated from this simple class.

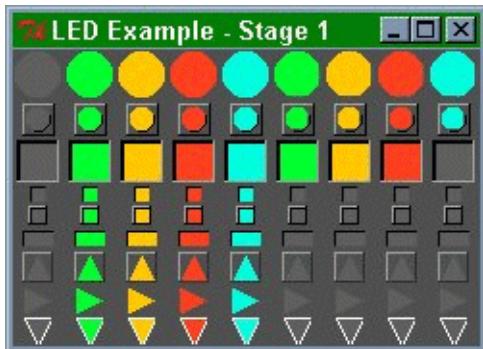


Figure 7.1 LED example

### Example\_7\_1.py

```
from Tkinter import *
 
SQUARE = 1
ROUND = 2
ARROW = 3

POINT_DOWN = 0
POINT_UP = 1
POINT_RIGHT = 2
POINT_LEFT = 3

STATUS_OFF = 1
STATUS_ON = 2
STATUS_WARN = 3
STATUS_ALARM = 4
STATUS_SET = 5

class StructClass:
    pass

Color = StructClass()

Color.PANEL = '#545454'
Color.OFF = '#656565'
Color.ON = '#00FF33'
Color.WARN = '#ffcc00'
Color.ALARM = '#ff4422'

class LED:
    def __init__(self, master=None, width=25, height=25,
                 appearance=FLAT,
```

Define constants

```

        status=STATUS_ON, bd=1,
        bg=None,
        shape=SQUARE, outline="",
        blink=0, blinkrate=1,
        orient=POINT_UP,
        takefocus=0):
    # Preserve attributes
    self.master = master
    self.shape = shape
    self.onColor = Color.ON
    self.offColor = Color.OFF
    self.alarmColor = Color.ALARM
    self.warningColor = Color.WARN
    self.specialColor = '#00ffdd'
    self.status = status
    self.blink = blink
    self.blinkrate = int(blinkrate)
    self.on = 0
    self.onState = None
    if not bg:
        bg = Color.PANEL

## Base frame to contain light
    self.frame=Frame(master, relief=appearance, bg=bg, bd=bd,
                     takefocus=takefocus)
    basesize = width
    d = center = int(basesize/2)
    if self.shape == SQUARE:
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, height=height, width=width,
                           bg=bg, bd=0, highlightthickness=0)
        self.light=self.canvas.create_rectangle(0, 0, width, height,
                                                fill=Color.ON)
    elif self.shape == ROUND:
        r = int((basesize-2)/2)
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, width=width, height=width,
                           highlightthickness=0, bg=bg, bd=0)
        if bd > 0:
            self.border=self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r,
                                              center+r, center+r)
            r = r - bd
            self.light=self.canvas.create_oval(center-r-1, center-r-1,
                                              center+r, center+r, fill=Color.ON,
                                              outline=outline)
    else: # Default is an ARROW
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, width=width, height=width,
                           highlightthickness=0, bg=bg, bd=0)
        x = d
        y = d

        if orient == POINT_DOWN: 1
            self.light=self.canvas.create_polygon(x-d,y-d, x,y+d,
                                                 x+d,y-d, x-d,y-d, outline=outline)
        elif orient == POINT_UP:
            self.light=self.canvas.create_polygon(x,y-d, x-d,y+d,
                                                 x+d,y+d, x,y-d, outline=outline)

```

```

        elif orient == POINT_RIGHT:
            self.light=self.canvas.create_polygon(x-d,y-d, x+d,y,
                                                x-d,y+d, x-d,y-d, outline=outline)
        elif orient == POINT_LEFT:
            self.light=self.canvas.create_polygon(x-d,y, x+d,y+d,
                                                x+d,y-d, x-d,y, outline=outline)

    self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=X, expand=NO)
    self.update()

def turnon(self):      ②
    self.status = STATUS_ON
    if not self.blink: self.update()
def turnoff(self):
    self.status = STATUS_OFF
    if not self.blink: self.update()
def alarm(self):
    self.status = STATUS_ALARM
    if not self.blink: self.update()
def warn(self):
    self.status = STATUS_WARN
    if not self.blink: self.update()
def set(self, color):
    self.status = STATUS_SET
    self.specialColor = color
    self.update()
def blinkon(self):
    if not self.blink:
        self.blink = 1
        self.onState = self.status
        self.update()
def blinkoff(self):
    if self.blink:
        self.blink = 0
        self.status = self.onState
        self.onState = None
        self.on = 0
        self.update()

def blinkstate(self, blinkstate):
    if blinkstate:
        self.blinkon()
    else:
        self.blinkoff()

def update(self):
    # First do the blink, if set to blink
    if self.blink:
        if self.on:
            if not self.onState:
                self.onState = self.status
                self.status = STATUS_OFF
                self.on = 0
        else:
            if self.onState:

```

```

        self.status = self.onState      # Current ON color
        self.on = 1

    if self.status == STATUS_ON:    ❸
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.onColor)
    elif self.status == STATUS_OFF:
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.offColor)
    elif self.status == STATUS_WARN:
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.warningColor)
    elif self.status == STATUS_SET:
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.specialColor)
    else:
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.alarmColor)
    self.canvas.update_idletasks() ❹
    if self.blink:
        self.frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    class TestLEDs(Frame):
        def __init__(self, parent=None):
            # List of Colors and Blink On/Off
            states = [(STATUS_OFF, 0),
                      (STATUS_ON, 0),
                      (STATUS_WARN, 0),
                      (STATUS_ALARM, 0),
                      (STATUS_SET, 0),
                      (STATUS_ON, 1),
                      (STATUS_WARN, 1),
                      (STATUS_ALARM, 1),
                      (STATUS_SET, 1)]
            # List of LED types to display,
            # with sizes and other attributes
            leds = [(ROUND, 25, 25, FLAT, 0, None, ""),
                     (ROUND, 15, 15, RAISED, 1, None, ""),
                     (SQUARE, 20, 20, SUNKEN, 1, None, ""),
                     (SQUARE, 8, 8, FLAT, 0, None, ""),
                     (SQUARE, 8, 8, RAISED, 1, None, ""),
                     (SQUARE, 16, 8, FLAT, 1, None, ""),
                     (ARROW, 14, 14, RIDGE, 1, POINT_UP, ""),
                     (ARROW, 14, 14, RIDGE, 0, POINT_RIGHT, ""),
                     (ARROW, 14, 14, FLAT, 0, POINT_DOWN, "white")]
            Frame.__init__(self) # Do superclass init
            self.pack()
            self.master.title('LED Example - Stage 1')

            # Iterate for each type of LED
            for shape, w, h, app, bd, orient, outline in leds:
                frame = Frame(self, bg=Color.PANEL)
                frame.pack(anchor=N, expand=YES, fill=X)
                # Iterate for selected states
                for state, blink in states:
                    LED(frame, shape=shape, status=state,
                         width=w, height=h, appearance=app,
                         orient=orient, blink=blink, bd=bd,

```

```

        outline=outline).frame.pack(side=LEFT,
                                    expand=YES, padx=1, pady=1)

TestLEDs().mainloop()

```

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We have some simple drawing constructs to draw a triangular area on the canvas.
  - ❷ The LED widget has a number of methods to change the appearance of the display, show several colors and turn blink on and off.
  - ❸ The selected state of the LED is updated:
- ```

if self.status == STATUS_ON:
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.onColor)

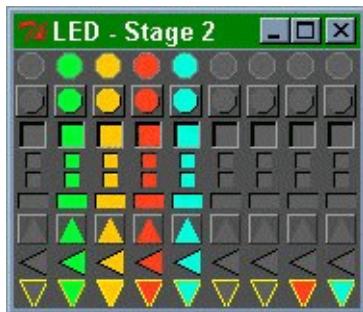
```
- ❹ We always flush the event queue to ensure that the widget is drawn with the current appearance.

**Note** Throughout this book I will encourage you to find ways to reduce the amount of code that you have to write. This does not mean that I am encouraging you to write obfuscated code, but there is a degree of elegance in well-constructed Python. The TestLEDs class in Example\_7\_1.py is a good example of code that illustrates Python economy. Here I intended to create a large number of LEDs, so I constructed two lists: one to contain the various statuses that I want to show and another to contain the LED shapes and attributes that I want to create. Put inside two nested loops, we create the LEDs with ease.

This technique of looping to generate multiple instances of objects will be exploited again in other examples. You can also expect to see other rather elegant ways of creating objects within loops, but more of that later.

Example\_7\_1.py produces the screen shown in figure 7.1. Although this might not seem to be very useful at this point, it illustrates the ability of Tkinter to produce some output that might be useful in an application.

Unfortunately, it is not possible to see the LEDs flashing on a printed page, so you will have to take my word that the four columns on the right flash on and off (you can obtain the examples online to see the example in action).



**Figure 7.2 LED example (shorter code)**

### 7.1.1 Let's try that again

One thing that most Python programmers quickly discover is that whenever they take a look at a piece of code they wrote some time before, it always seems possible to rewrite it in fewer lines of code. In addition, having written a segment of code, it is often possible to reuse that code in later segments.

To demonstrate the ability to reduce the amount of code required to support our example, let's take a look at how we can improve the code in it. First, we'll remove the constants that we defined at the start of the program and save the code in Common\_7\_1.py; I'm sure that we'll be using these constants again in later examples.

#### Common\_7\_1.py

```
SQUARE      = 1
ROUND       = 2
...
...
Color.WARN   = '#ffcc00'
Color.ALARM  = '#ff4422'
```

Now, we have an excellent opportunity to make the LED methods mixins, since we can readily reuse the basic methods of the LED class to construct other widgets.

#### GUICommon\_7\_1.py

```
from Common_7_1 import *

class GUICommon:
    def turnon(self):
        self.status = STATUS_ON
        if not self.blink: self.update()

    def turnoff(self):
        self.status = STATUS_OFF
        if not self.blink: self.update()

    def alarm(self):
        self.status = STATUS_ALARM
        if not self.blink: self.update()

    def warn(self):
        self.status = STATUS_WARN
        if not self.blink: self.update()

    def set(self, color):
        self.status      = STATUS_SET
        self.specialColor = color
        self.update()

    def blinkon(self):
        if not self.blink:
            self.blink   = 1
            self.onState = self.status
            self.update()
```

```

def blinkoff(self):
    if self.blink:
        self.blink = 0
        self.status = self.onState
        self.onState = None
        self.on=0
        self.update()

def blinkstate(self, blinkstate): ①
    if blinkstate:
        self.blinkon()
    else:
        self.blinkoff()

def update(self):
    raise NotImplementedError

# The following define drawing vertices for various
# graphical elements
ARROW_HEAD_VERTICES = [
    ['x-d', 'y-d', 'x', 'y+d', 'x+d', 'y-d', 'x-d', 'y-d'],
    ['x', 'y-d', 'x-d', 'y+d', 'x+d', 'y+d', 'x', 'y-d'],
    ['x-d', 'y-d', 'x+d', 'y', 'x-d', 'y+d', 'x-d', 'y-d'],
    ['x-d', 'y', 'x+d', 'y+d', 'x+d', 'y-d', 'x-d', 'y'] ②
]

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ① Note that although we have added methods such as `turnon` and `blinkoff`, we have defined an `update` method that raises a `NotImplementedError`. Since every widget will use very different display methods, this serves as a reminder to the developer that he is responsible for providing a method to override the base class.
- ② The previous code used a four-case `if-elif-else` statement to process the arrow direction. I like to remove these whenever possible, so we'll take a different approach to constructing the code. Instead of breaking out the individual vertices for the arrow graphic, we are going to store them in yet another list, `ARROW_HEAD_VERTICES`, for later use.

### **Example\_7\_2.py**

```

from Tkinter          import *
from Common_7_1       import *
from GUICommon_7_1    import *

class LED(GUICommon): ①
    def __init__(self, master=None, width=25, height=25,
                 appearance=FLAT,
                 status=STATUS_ON, bd=1,
                 bg=None,
                 shape=SQUARE, outline='',
                 blink=0, blinkrate=1,
                 orient=POINT_UP,
                 takefocus=0):
        # Preserve attributes
        self.master = master ②

```

```

    self.shape   = shape
    self.Colors  = [None, Color.OFF, Color.ON,
                   Color.WARN, Color.ALARM, '#00ffdd']
    self.status  = status
    self.blink   = blink
    self.blinkrate = int(blinkrate)
    self.on      = 0
    self.onState = None

    if not bg:
        bg = Color.PANEL

    ## Base frame to contain light
    self.frame=Frame(master, relief=appearance, bg=bg, bd=bd,
                      takefocus=takefocus)

    basesize = width
    d = center = int(basesize/2)

    if self.shape == SQUARE:
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, height=height, width=width,
                           bg=bg, bd=0, highlightthickness=0)

        self.light=self.canvas.create_rectangle(0, 0, width, height,
  fill=Color.ON)

    elif self.shape == ROUND:
        r = int((basesize-2)/2)
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, width=width, height=width,
                           highlightthickness=0, bg=bg, bd=0)

        if bd > 0:
            self.border=self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r,
  center+r, center+r)
            r = r - bd
            self.light=self.canvas.create_oval(center-r-1, center-r-1,
  center+r, center+r,
  fill=Color.ON,
  outline=outline)

    else: # Default is an ARROW
        self.canvas=Canvas(self.frame, width=width, height=width,
                           highlightthickness=0, bg=bg, bd=0)

        x = d
        y = d
        VL = ARROW_HEAD_VERTICES[orient] # Get the vertices for the arrow
        self.light=self.canvas.create_polygon(eval(VL[0]),
  eval(VL[1]), eval(VL[2]), eval(VL[3]),
  eval(VL[4]), eval(VL[5]), eval(VL[6]),
  eval(VL[7]), outline = outline)

        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=X, expand=NO)
        self.update()

def update(self):
    # First do the blink, if set to blink
    if self.blink:
        if self.on:

```

```

        if not self.onState:
            self.onState = self.status
            self.status = STATUS_OFF
            self.on     = 0
        else:
            if self.onState:
                self.status = self.onState    # Current ON color
                self.on     = 1

        # Set color for current status
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.light, fill=self.Colors[self.status])

        self.canvas.update_idletasks()

        if self.blink:
            self.frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ First, we import the newly-created constants file and the GUI mixins.
- ❷ We inherit from the `GUICommon` mixin. This mixin does not have a constructor so we do not need to call it.
- ❸ We build a list of colors, which act as an enumeration when we key by current status.
- ❹ We extract the appropriate list of x/y coordinate data and eval each value to calculate the offset based on the current location.

## **7.1.2 What has changed?**

Actually, we have not changed very much. We have removed some common code and created a mixin class to allow us to create a superclass to contain some of the reusable code. To eliminate at least one of the `if-elif-else` constructs we have made color attributes for the class into a list. The ugly code to draw arrowheads has been replaced by a list reference to the arrowhead vertices. Similarly, the references to statuses have been converted to a reference to a list. Finally, we've changed the appearance of some of the LEDs by changing sizes and outlines so that you know that we have not just copied figure 7.1!

If `Example_7_2.py` is run, we'll observe a screen similar to the one generated by the previous example (figure 7.2). I don't expect you to see any change in the execution of the example, but the Python code is somewhat more compact.

## **7.2 Building a class library**

Now that we have seen the concept of mixin classes and subclassing at work, we can start to build our class library of useful objects for our GUIs. There is often a need to create a series of coordinated colors in our displays, so let's create a routine to create a range of coordinated shades from a base color.

First, we have to extend our `GUICommon` class to add some color transformation methods. Here are the mixin methods that we will add to `GUICommon_7_1.py` to create `GUICommon_7_2.py`:

## GUICommon\_7\_2.py (modifications only)

```
# This routine modifies an RGB color (returned by winfo_rgb),  
# applies a factor, maps -1 < Color < 255, and returns a new RGB string  
def transform(self, rgb, factor):  
    retval = "#"  
    for v in [rgb[0], rgb[1], rgb[2]]:  
        v = (v*factor)/256  
        if v > 255: v = 255  
        if v < 0: v = 0  
        retval = "%s%02x" % (retval, v)  
    return retval  
  
# This routine factors dark, very dark, light, and very light colors  
# from the base color using transform  
def set_colors(self):  
    rgb = self.winfo_rgb(self.base)  
    self.dbase = self.transform(rgb, 0.8)  
    self.vdbase = self.transform(rgb, 0.7)  
    self.lbase = self.transform(rgb, 1.1)  
    self.vlbase = self.transform(rgb, 1.3)
```

- 1
- 2

### Code comments

- ➊ We calculate color variations derived from the base color. `winfo_rgb` returns a tuple for the RGB values.
- ➋ We set arbitrary values for each of the color transformations.

The following example illustrates the use of these routines:

## Example\_7\_3.py

```
from Tkinter import *  
from GUICommon_7_2 import *  
  
import string  
  
class TestColors(Frame, GUICommon):  
    def __init__(self, parent=None):  
        Frame.__init__(self)  
        self.base = "#848484"  
        self.pack()  
        self.set_colors()  
        self.make_widgets()  
  
    def make_widgets(self):  
        for tag in ['VDBase', 'DBase', 'Base', 'LBase', 'VLBase']:  
            Button(self, text=tag, bg=getattr(self, '%s'% string.lower(tag)),  
                   fg='white', command=self.quit).pack(side=LEFT)  
  
if __name__ == '__main__':  
    TestColors().mainloop()
```

- **Init base class**
- **Set base color**
- **Spread colors**



Figure 7.3 Transforming colors

### 7.2.1 Adding a hex nut to our class library

Now let's make use of the color transformations to add some visual effects to a drawn object. In this example we are going to create hex nuts. As you'll see later, these simple objects can be used in many different ways.

We will begin by extending some of the definitions in Common\_7\_1.py, which will be saved as Common\_7\_2.py:

#### Common\_7\_2.py

```
NUT_FLAT      = 0
NUT_POINT     = 1

Color.BRONZE   = '#7e5b41'
Color.CHROME    = '#c5c5b8'
Color.BRASS    = '#cdb800'
```

Here is the code for our HexNut class. This example is a little more complex and has options for instantiating a variety of nuts. The test routine illustrates some of the possible variations. Running this code displays the window shown in figure 7.4.



Figure 7.4 Basic nuts

#### Example\_7\_4.py

```
from Tkinter           import *
from GUICommon_7_2     import *
from Common_7_2         import *
```

```

class HexNut(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, frame=1, mount=1, outside=70, inset=8,
                 bg=Color.PANEL, nutbase=Color.BRONZE,
                 top=NUT_FLAT, takefocus=0, x=-1, y=-1):
        points = [ '%d-r2,%d+r,%d+r2,%d+r,%d+r+2,%d,%d+r2,%d-r,\n'
                   '%d-r2,%d-r,%d-r-2,%d,%d-r2,%d+r',\n
                   '%d,%d-r-2,%d+r,%d-r2,%d+r,%d+r2,%d,%d+r+2,\n'
                   '%d-r,%d+r2,%d-r,%d-r2,%d,%d-r-2' ]
        self.base = nutbase
        self.status = STATUS_OFF
        self.blink = 0
        self.set_colors()
        basesize = outside+4
        if frame:
            self.frame = Frame(master, relief="flat", bg=bg, bd=0,
                               highlightthickness=0,
                               takefocus=takefocus)
            self.frame.pack(expand=0)
            self.canv=Canvas(self.frame, width=basesize, bg=bg,
                             bd=0, height=basesize,
                             highlightthickness=0)
        else:
            self.canv = master # it was passed in...
        center = basesize/2
        if x >= 0:
            centerx = x
            centery = y
        else:
            centerx = centery = center
        r = outside/2
        ## First, draw the mount, if needed
        if mount:
            self.mount=self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
  centerx+r, centery+r,
  fill=self.dbase,
  outline=self.vdbase)

        ## Next, draw the hex nut
        r = r - (inset/2)
        r2 = r/2
        pointlist = points[top] % (centerx,centery,centerx,centery,
                                   centerx,centery,centerx,centery,
                                   centerx,centery,centerx,centery,
                                   centerx,centery)

        setattr(self, 'hexnut', self.canv.create_polygon(pointlist,
   outline=self.dbase, fill=self.lbase))

        ## Now, the inside edge of the threads
        r = r - (inset/2)
        self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
                            centerx+r, centery+r,
                            fill=self.lbase, outline=self.vdbase)
        ## Finally, the background showing through the hole
        r = r - 2
        self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,

```

```

        centerx+r, centery+r,
        fill=bg, outline="")
    self.canv.pack(side="top", fill='x', expand='no')

class Nut(Frame, HexNut):
    def __init__(self, master, outside=70, inset=8, frame=1, mount=1,
                 bg="gray50", nutbase=Color.CHROME, top=NUT_FLAT):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        HexNut.__init__(self, master=master, outside=outside,
                        inset=inset, frame=frame, mount=mount,
                        bg=bg, nutbase=nutbase, top=top)

class TestNuts(Frame, GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, parent=None):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        self.pack()
        self.make_widgets()
    def make_widgets(self):
        # List of Metals to create
        metals = [Color.BRONZE, Color.CHROME, Color.BRASS]
        # List of nut types to display,
        # with sizes and other attributes
        nuts = [(70, 14, NUT_POINT, 0), (70, 10, NUT_FLAT, 1),
                (40, 8, NUT_POINT, 0), (100, 16, NUT_FLAT, 1)]
        # Iterate for each metal type
        for metal in metals:
            mframe = Frame(self, bg="slategray2")
            mframe.pack(anchor=N, expand=YES, fill=X)
            # Iterate for each of the nuts
            for outside, inset, top, mount in nuts:
                Nut(mframe, outside=outside, inset=inset,
                     mount=mount, nutbase=metal,
                     bg="slategray2",
                     top=top).frame.pack(side=LEFT,
   expand=YES,
   padx=1, pady=1)

    if __name__ == '__main__':
        TestNuts().mainloop()

```

---

**Note** *Another way of handling variable data:* In Example 7\_2.py, we used a mechanism to allow us to draw the vertices of the polygon used for the arrowheads. In this example we employ another technique which will be used repeatedly in other examples. Because of the relative complexity of the polygon used to depict the hex nut and the fact that we have to calculate the vertices for both the point and flat forms of the nut, we use the `setattr` function. This allows us to set the value of an attribute of an object using a reference to the object and a string representation of the attribute.

---

### 7.2.2 Creating a switch class

It's time for something more interesting than LEDs and nuts. Once you get started creating classes it really is hard to stop, so now let's create some switches. Although these could be

pretty boring, we can add some pizzazz to any GUI that represents any device which has on/off controls. We are also going to introduce some animation, albeit simple.

---

**Note** In subsequent examples, `GUICommon.py` and `Common.py` will be edited directly, rather than creating new versions each time.

---

We need to define two more constants in `Common.py` because switches point up when on in the U.S., but point down when on in the UK (I know that this is an arcane property of switches in these countries, but it is important to the locals!):

### Common.py

```
MODE_UK      = 0
MODE_US      = 1
```

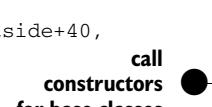
Here is the code to draw a toggle switch:

### Example\_7\_5.py

```
from Tkinter      import *
from GUICommon   import *
from Common       import *
from Example_7_4 import HexNut

class ToggleSwitch(Frame, HexNut):
    def __init__(self, master, outside=70, inset=8, bg=Color.PANEL,
                 nutbase=Color.CHROME, mount=1, frame=1,
                 top=NUT_POINT, mode=MODE_US, status=STATUS_ON):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        HexNut.__init__(self, master=master, outside=outside+40,
                        inset=35, frame=frame, mount=mount,
                        bg=bg, nutbase=nutbase, top=top)
        self.status = status
        self.mode   = mode
        self.center = (outside+44)/2
        self.r     = (outside/2)-4
        ## First Fill in the center
        self.rl=self.canv.create_oval(self.center-self.r,
                                      self.center-self.r, self.center+self.r,
                                      self.center+self.r, fill=self.vdbase,
                                      outline=self.dbase, width=1)
        self.update()  ## The rest is dependent on the on/off state

    def update(self):
        self.canv.delete('lever')    ## Remove any previous toggle lever
        direction = POINT_UP
        if (self.mode == MODE_UK and self.status == STATUS_ON) or \
           (self.mode == MODE_US and self.status == STATUS_OFF):
            direction = POINT_DOWN
        # Now update the status
        if direction == POINT_UP:   ①
            ## Draw the toggle lever
```



```

        self.p1=self.canvas.create_polygon(self.center-self.r,
   self.center, self.center-self.r-3,
   self.center-(4*self.r), self.center+self.r+3,
   self.center-(4*self.r), self.center+self.r,
   self.center, fill=self.dbase,
   outline=self.vdbase, tags="lever")
    centerx = self.center
    centery = self.center - (4*self.r)
    r = self.r + 2
    ## Draw the end of the lever
    self.r2=self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
                                 centerx+r, centery+r, fill=self.base,
                                 outline=self.vdbase, width=1, tags="lever")
    centerx = centerx - 1
    centery = centery - 3
    r = r / 3
    ## Draw the highlight
    self.r2=self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
                                 centerx+r, centery+r, fill=self.vlbase,
                                 outline=self.lbase, width=2, tags="lever")
else:
    ## Draw the toggle lever
    self.p1=self.canv.create_polygon(self.center-self.r,
                                     self.center, self.center-self.r-3,
                                     self.center+(4*self.r), self.center+self.r+3,
                                     self.center+(4*self.r), self.center+self.r,
                                     self.center, fill=self.dbase,
                                     outline=self.vdbase, tags="lever")
    centerx = self.center
    centery = self.center + (4*self.r)
    r = self.r + 2
    ## Draw the end of the lever
    self.r2=self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
                                 centerx+r, centery+r, fill=self.base,
                                 outline=self.vdbase, width=1, tags="lever")
    centerx = centerx - 1
    centery = centery - 3
    r = r / 3
    ## Draw the highlight
    self.r2=self.canv.create_oval(centerx-r, centery-r,
                                 centerx+r, centery+r, fill=self.vlbase,
                                 outline=self.lbase, width=2, tags="lever")
    self.canv.update_idletasks()

class TestSwitches(Frame, GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, parent=None):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        self.pack()
        self.make_widgets()

    def make_widgets(self):
        # List of metals to create
        metals = (Color.BRONZE, Color.CHROME, Color.BRASS)
        # List of switches to display, with sizes and other attributes
        switches = [(NUT_POINT, 0, STATUS_OFF, MODE_US),

```

```

        (NUT_FLAT,1, STATUS_ON, MODE_US),
        (NUT_FLAT,0, STATUS_ON, MODE_UK),
        (NUT_POINT, 0, STATUS_OFF, MODE_UK) ]
    # Iterate for each metal type
    for metal in metals:
        mframe = Frame(self, bg="slategray2")
        mframe.pack(anchor=N, expand=YES, fill=X)
        # Iterate for each of the switches
        for top, mount, state, mode in switches:
            ToggleSwitch(mframe,
                          mount=mount, outside=20,
                          nutbase=metal, mode=mode,
                          bg="slategray2", top=top,
                          status=state).frame.pack(side=LEFT,
  expand=YES,
  padx=2, pady=6)
    if __name__ == '__main__':
        TestSwitches().mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ direction determines if the toggle is up or down. Since this may be changed programmatically, it provides simple animation in the GUI.

Running this code displays the window in figure 7.5.



**Figure 7.5 Toggle switches**

### **7.2.3 Building a MegaWidget**

Now that we have mastered creating objects and subclassing to create new behavior and appearance, we can start to create some even more complex widgets, which will result ultimately in more efficient GUIs, since the code required to generate them will be quite compact. First, we need to collect all of the class definitions for LED, HexNut, Nut and ToggleSwitch in a single class library called Components.py.

Next, we are going to create a new class, SwitchIndicator, which displays a toggle switch with an LED indicator above the switch, showing the on/off state of the switch. Everything is contained in a single frame that can be placed simply on a larger GUI. Here is the code to construct the composite widget:

## Example\_7\_6.py

```
from Tkinter      import *
from Common       import *
from Components   import *

class SwitchIndicator:
    def __init__(self, master, outside=70, bg=Color.PANEL,
                 metal=Color.CHROME, mount=1, frame=1,
                 shape=ROUND, top=NUT_POINT, mode=MODE_US, status=1):
        self.frame = Frame(master, bg=bg)
        self.frame.pack(anchor=N, expand=YES, fill=X)

        self.led = LED(self.frame, width=outside, height=outside,
                       status=status, bg=bg, shape=shape,
                       outline=metal)
        self.led.frame.pack(side=TOP)

        self.switch = ToggleSwitch(self.frame, mount=mount,
                                   outside=outside, nutbase=metal,
                                   mode=mode, bg=bg, top=top,
                                   status=status)
        self.switch.frame.pack(side=TOP)
        self.update()

    def update(self):
        self.led.update()
        self.switch.update()

class TestComposite(Frame):
    def __init__(self, parent=None):
        Frame.__init__(self)
        self.pack()
        self.make_widgets()

    def make_widgets(self):
        # List of switches to display,
        # with sizes and other attributes
        switches = [(NUT_POINT, 0, STATUS_OFF, MODE_US),
                    (NUT_FLAT, 1, STATUS_ON,  MODE_US),
                    (NUT_FLAT, 0, STATUS_ON,  MODE_UK),
                    (NUT_POINT, 0, STATUS_OFF, MODE_UK)]

        frame = Frame(self, bg="gray80")
        frame.pack(anchor=N, expand=YES, fill=X)

        for top, mount, state, mode in switches:
            SwitchIndicator(frame,
                            mount=mount,
                            outside=20,
                            metal=Color.CHROME,
                            mode=mode,
                            bg="gray80",
                            top=top,
                            status=state).frame.pack(side=LEFT,
```

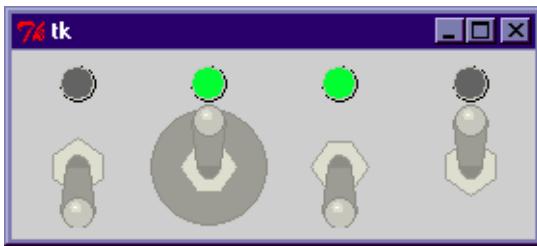
```

        expand=YES,
        padx=2,
        pady=6)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    TestComposite().mainloop()

```

You can see from this example that the test code is beginning to exceed the size of the code needed to construct the widget; this is not an unusual situation when building Python code! If you run Example\_7\_6.py the following switches shown in figure 7.6 are displayed:



**Figure 7.6 Composite Switch/Indicator Widgets**

---

**Note** The two switches on the left are US switches while the two on the right are UK switches. American and British readers may be equally confused with this if they have never experienced switches on the opposite side of the Atlantic Ocean.

---

In the preceding examples we have simplified the code by omitting to save the instances of the objects that we have created. This would not be very useful in real-world applications. In future examples we will save the instance in the class or a local variable. Changing our code to save the instance has a side effect that requires us to separate the instantiation and the call to the Packer in our examples. For example, the following code:

```

for top, mount, state, mode in switches:
    SwitchIndicator(frame, mount=mount, outside=20, metal=Color.CHROME,
                    mode=mode, bg="gray80", top=top,
                    status=state).frame.pack(side=LEFT,
   expand=YES, padx=2, pady=6)

```

becomes:

```

idx = 0
for top, mount, state, mode in switches:
    setattr(self, 'swin%d' % idx, None)
    var = getattr(self, 'swin%d' % idx)
    var = SwitchIndicator(frame,
                          mount=mount,
                          outside=20,
                          metal=Color.CHROME,
                          mode=mode,
                          bg="gray80",

```

```
    top=top,
    status=status)
var.frame.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES,
               padx=2, pady=6)
idx = idx + 1
```

This code is not quite so elegant, but it allows access to the methods of the instance:

```
self.swin0.turnon()
self.swin3.blinkon()
```

There will be several examples of using composite widgets and inherited methods in examples in later chapters.

## 7.3 ***Summary***

In this chapter we have seen how we can build classes to define quite complex GUI objects and that these can be instantiated so that they exhibit quite different appearance even though the underlying behavior of the objects is quite similar. I have demonstrated the use of mixin classes to encapsulate common properties within related classes, and I have given you some insight into the way that Python handles multiple-inheritance.



## CHAPTER 8

---

# *Dialogs and forms*

|                                      |     |                |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|----------------|-----|
| 8.1 Dialogs                          | 141 | 8.5 Browsers   | 175 |
| 8.2 A standard application framework | 155 | 8.6 Wizards    | 184 |
| 8.3 Data dictionaries                | 165 | 8.7 Image maps | 191 |
| 8.4 Notebooks                        | 172 | 8.8 Summary    | 198 |

This chapter presents examples of a wide range of designs for dialogs and forms. If you are not in the business of designing and developing forms for data entry, you could possibly expend a lot of extra energy. It's not that this subject is difficult, but as you will see in “Designing effective graphics applications” on page 338, small errors in design quickly lead to ineffective user interfaces.

The term *dialog* is reasonably well understood, but *form* can be interpreted in several ways. In this chapter the term is used to describe any user interface which collects or displays information and which may allow modification of the displayed values. The way the data is formatted depends very much on the type of information being processed. A dialog may be interpreted as a simple form. We will see examples from several application areas; the volume of example code may seem a little overwhelming at first, but it is unlikely that you would ever need to use *all* of the example types within a single application—pick and choose as appropriate.

We begin with standard dialogs and typical fill-in-the-blank forms. More examples demonstrate ways to produce effective forms without writing a lot of code. The examples will

provide you with some readily-usable templates that may be used in your own applications. Many of the standard form methods will be used again in examples in later chapters.

Pmw widgets will be used extensively in the examples since these widgets encapsulate a lot of functionality and allow us to construct quite complex interfaces with a relatively small amount of code. The use and behavior of these widgets are documented in more detail in “Pmw reference: Python megawidgets” on page 542.

## 8.1 **Dialogs**

Dialogs are really just special cases of *forms*. In general, dialogs present warning or error messages to the user, ask questions or collect a limited number of values from the user (typically one value). You could argue that all forms are dialogs, but we don’t need an argument! Normally dialogs are *modal*: they remain displayed until dismissed. Modality can be application-wide or system-wide, although you must take care to make sure that system-modal dialogs are reserved for situations that must be acknowledged by the user before any other interaction is possible.

---

**Note** Exercise care in selecting when to use a modal dialog to get input from the user.

You’ll have many opportunities to use other methods to get input from the user and using too many dialogs can be annoying to the user. A typical problem is an application that always asks “Are you sure you want to...” on almost every operation. This can be a valuable technique for novice users, but an expert soon finds the dialogs frustrating. It is important to provide a means to switch off such dialogs for expert users.

---

Tkinter provides a `Dialog` module, but it has the disadvantage of using X bitmaps for error, warning and other icons, and these icons do not look right on Windows or MacOS. The `tkSimpleDialog` module defines `askstring`, `askinteger` and `askfloat` to collect strings, integers and floats respectively. The `tkMessageBox` module defines convenience functions such as `showinfo`, `showwarning`, `showerror` and `askyesno`. The icons used for `tkMessageBox` are architecture-specific, so they look right on all the supported platforms.

### 8.1.1 **Standard dialogs**

Standard dialogs are simple to use. Several convenience functions are available in `tkMessageBox`, including `showerror`, `showwarning` and `askretrycancel`. The example shown here illustrates the use of just one form of available dialogs (`askquestion`). However, figure 8.1 shows all of the possible formats both for UNIX and Windows.

#### **Example\_8\_1.py**

```
from Tkinter import *
from tkMessageBox import askquestion
import Pmw

class App:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self.result = Pmw.EntryField(master, entry_width=8,
                                     value=' ',
```

```

        label_text='Returned value:   ',
        labelpos=W, labelmargin=1)
    self.result.pack(padx=15, pady=15)

root = Tk()
question = App(root)

button = askquestion("Question:",
                     "Oh Dear, did somebody\nsay mattress to Mr Lambert?", 1
                     default=YES)
                     2

question.result.setentry(button)
                     3

root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ The first two arguments set the title and prompt (since this is a question dialog).
- ➋ `default` sets the button with the selected string to be the default action (the action associated with pressing the RETURN key).
- ➌ The standard dialogs return the button pressed as a string—for example, `ok` for the OK button, `cancel` for the CANCEL button.

For this example, all of the standard dialogs are presented, both for Windows and UNIX architectures (the UNIX screens have light backgrounds); the screen corresponding to `Example_8_1.py` is the first screen in figure 8.1.

## 8.1.2 Data entry dialogs

A dialog can be used to request information from the user. Let's take a quick look at how we query the user for data using the `tkSimpleDialog` module. Unlike many of our examples, this one is short and to the point:

### **Example\_8\_2.py**

```

from Tkinter import *
from tkSimpleDialog import askinteger
import Pmw

class App:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self.result = Pmw.EntryField(master, entry_width=8,
                                     value='',
                                     label_text='Returned value:   ',
                                     labelpos=W, labelmargin=1)
        self.result.pack(padx=15, pady=15)

root = Tk()
display = App(root)

retVal = askinteger("The Larch", 1
                    "What is the number of The Larch?", 2
                    minvalue=0, maxvalue=50)

```



**Figure 8.1 Standard dialogs**

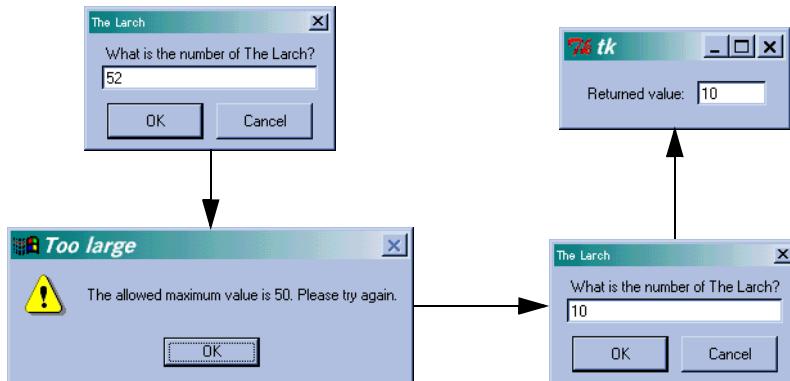
```
display.result.setentry(retval)
root.mainloop()
```

### Code comments

- ❶ askinteger can be used with just two arguments: title and prompt.
- ❷ In this case, a minimum and maximum value have been added. If the user types a value outside this range, a dialog box is displayed to indicate an error (see figure 8.1).

**Note** Avoid popping up dialogs whenever additional information is required from the user. If you find that the current form that is displayed frequently requires the user to supply additional information, it's very possible that your original form design is inadequate. Reserve popup dialogs for situations which occur infrequently or for near-boundary conditions.

Running Example\_8\_2.py displays screens similar to those shown in figure 8.2.



**Figure 8.2** tkSimpleDialog: askinteger

Despite the warning in the note above, if you have just a few fields to collect from the user, you can use dialog windows. This is especially true if the application doesn't require the information every time it is run; adding the information to screens in the application adds complexity and clutters the screen. Using a dialog saves quite a bit of work, but it may not be particularly attractive, especially if you need to have more than two or three entry fields or if you need several widget types. However, this example is quite short and to the point.

### Example\_8\_3.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from tkSimpleDialog import Dialog
import tkMessageBox
```

```

import Pmw

class GetPassword(Dialog):
    def body(self, master):
        self.title("Enter New Password")

        Label(master, text='Old Password:').grid(row=0, sticky=W) | ①
        Label(master, text='New Password:').grid(row=1, sticky=W)
        Label(master, text='Enter New Password Again:').grid(row=2,
        sticky=W)

        self.oldpw = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*') | ②
        self.newpw1 = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')
        self.newpw2 = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')

        self.oldpw.grid(row=0, column=1, sticky=W)
        self.newpw1.grid(row=1, column=1, sticky=W)
        self.newpw2.grid(row=2, column=1, sticky=W)
        return self.oldpw

    def apply(self):
        opw = self.oldpw.get()
        npw1 = self.newpw1.get()
        npw2 = self.newpw2.get()

        if not npw1 == npw2:
            tkMessageBox.showerror('Bad Password',
                                  'New Passwords do not match')
        else:
            # This is where we would set the new password...
            pass

root = Tk()
dialog = GetPassword(root)

```

---

### Code comments

- ① This example uses the `grid` geometry manager. The `sticky` attribute is used to make sure that the labels line up at the left of their grid cells (the default is to center the text in the cell). See “Grid” on page 86 for more details.

```
Label(master, text='Old Password:').grid(row=0, sticky=W)
```

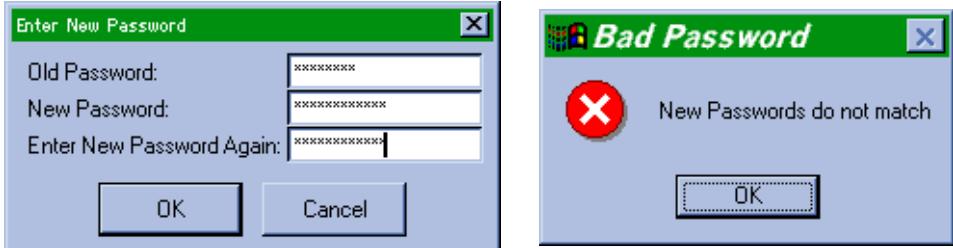
- ② Since we are collecting passwords from the user, we do not echo the characters that are typed. Instead, we use the `show` attribute to display an asterisk for each character.

```
self.oldpw = Entry(master, width = 16, show='*')
```

- ③ When the user clicks the OK button, the `apply` callback gets the current data from the widgets. In a full implementation, the original password would be checked first. In our case we’re just checking that the user typed the same *new* password twice and if the passwords do not match we pop up an error dialog, using `showerror`.

```
tkMessageBox.showerror('Bad Password',
                      'New Passwords do not match')
```

Figure 8.3 illustrates the output of Example\_8\_3.py.



**Figure 8.3 A tkSimpleDialog that is used to collect passwords. The error dialog is displayed for bad entries.**

### 8.1.3 Single-shot forms

If your application has simple data requirements, you may need only simple forms. Many user interfaces implement a simple model:

- 1 Display some fields, maybe with default values.
- 2 Allow the user to fill out or modify the fields.
- 3 Collect the values from the screen.
- 4 Do *something* with the data.
- 5 Display the results obtained with the values collected.

If you think about the applications you're familiar with, you'll see that many use pretty simple, repetitive patterns. As a result, building forms has often been viewed as a rather tedious part of developing GUIs; I hope that I can make the task a little more interesting.

There *is* a problem in designing screens for applications that do not need many separate screens; developers tend to write a lot more code than they need to satisfy the needs of the application. In fact, code that supports forms often consumes more lines of code than we might prefer. Later, we will look at some techniques to reduce the amount of code that has to be written, but for now let's write the code in full.

This example collects basic information about a user and displays some of it. The example uses Pmw widgets and is a little bit longer than it needs to be, so that we can cover the basic framework now; we will leave those components out in subsequent examples.

#### Example\_8\_4.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import string

class Shell:
    def __init__(self, title=''):
        self.root = Tk()
        Pmw.initialise(self.root)
        self.root.title(title)
```

```

def doBaseForm(self, master):
    # Create the Balloon.
    self.balloon = Pmw.Balloon(master)
    ②

    self.menuBar = Pmw.MenuBar(master, hull_borderwidth=1,
                               hull_relief = RAISED,
                               hotkeys=1, balloon = self.balloon)
    self.menuBar.pack(fill=X)
    ③

    self.menuBar.addmenu('File', 'Exit')
    self.menuBar.addmenuitem('File', 'command',
                           'Exit the application',
                           label='Exit', command=self.exit)
    self.menuBar.addmenu('View', 'View status')
    self.menuBar.addmenuitem('View', 'command',
                           'Get user status',
                           label='Get status',
                           command=self.getStatus)
    self.menuBar.addmenu('Help', 'About Example 8-4', side=RIGHT)
    self.menuBar.addmenuitem('Help', 'command',
                           'Get information on application',
                           label='About...', command=self.help)
    ④

    self.dataFrame = Frame(master)
    self.dataFrame.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)
    ⑤

    self.infoFrame = Frame(self.root, bd=1, relief='groove')
    self.infoFrame.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1, padx = 10)

    self.statusBar = Pmw.MessageBar(master, entry_width = 40,
                                    entry_relief='groove',
                                    labelpos = W,
                                    label_text = '')
    ⑥

    self.statusBar.pack(fill = X, padx = 10, pady = 10)
    ⑦

    # Add balloon text to statusBar
    self.balloon.configure(statuscommand = self.statusBar.helpmessage)

    # Create about dialog.
    Pmw.aboutversion('8.1')
    Pmw.aboutcopyright('Copyright My Company 1999'
                       '\nAll rights reserved')
    Pmw.aboutcontact(
        'For information about this application contact:\n' +
        ' My Help Desk\n' +
        ' Phone: 800 555-1212\n' +
        ' email: help@my.company.com'
    )
    ⑧

    self.about = Pmw.AboutDialog(master,
                                 applicationname = 'Example 8-4')
    self.about.withdraw()
    ⑨

def exit(self):
    import sys
    sys.exit(0)

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The constructor initializes both Tk and Pmw:

```
self.root = Tk()
Pmw.initialise(self.root)
```

Note that `Pmw.initialise` is not a typo; Pmw comes from Australia!

- ❷ We create an instance of the `Pmw.Balloon` to implement Balloon Help. Naturally, this bit could have been left out, but it is easy to implement, so we might as well include it.

```
self.balloon = Pmw.Balloon(master)
```

Actions are bound later.

- ❸ The next few points illustrate how to construct a simple menu using Pmw components. First we create the `MenuBar`, associating the `balloon` and defining `hotkey` as true (this creates mnemonics for menu selections).

```
self.menuBar = Pmw.MenuBar(master, hull_borderwidth=1,
                           hull_relief = RAISED,
                           hotkeys=1, balloon = self.balloon)
self.menuBar.pack(fill=X)
```

---

### *Note*

It is important to pack each form component in the order that they are to be displayed—having a menu at the bottom of a form might be considered a little strange!

---

- ❹ The File menu button is created with an `addmenu` call:

```
self.menuBar.addmenu('File', 'Exit')
```

The second argument to `addmenu` is the balloon help to be displayed for the menu button. We then add an item to the button using `addmenuitem`:

```
self.menuBar.addmenuitem('File', 'command',
                        'Exit the application',
                        label='Exit', command=self.exit)
```

`addmenuitem` creates an entry within the specified menu. The third argument is the help to be displayed.

- ❺ We create a `Frame` to contain the data-entry widgets and a second frame to contain some display widgets:

```
self.dataFrame = Frame(master)
self.dataFrame.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)
```

- ❻ At the bottom of the form, we create a `statusBar` to display help messages and other information:

```
self.statusBar = Pmw.MessageBar(master, entry_width = 40,
                                 entry_relief=GROOVE,
                                 labelpos = W,
                                 label_text = '')
self.statusBar.pack(fill = X, padx = 10, pady = 10)
```

- ❼ We bind the balloon's `statuscommand` to the `MessageBar` widget:

```
self.balloon.configure(statuscommand = self.statusBar.helpmessage)
```

- ❸ We create an About... dialog for the application. This is definitely something we could have left out, but now that you have seen it done once, I won't need to cover it again. First, we define the data to be displayed by the dialog:

```
Pmw.aboutversion('8.1')
Pmw.aboutcopyright('Copyright My Company 1999'
                    '\nAll rights reserved')
Pmw.aboutcontact(
    'For information about this application contact:\n' +
    ' My Help Desk\n' +
    ' Phone: 800 555-1212\n' +
    ' email: help@my.company.com')
```

- ❹ Then the dialog is created and withdrawn (unmapped) so that it remains invisible until required:

```
self.about = Pmw.AboutDialog(master, applicationname = 'Example 8-1')
self.about.withdraw()
```

### Example\_8\_4.py (continued)

```
def getStatus(self):
    username = self.userName.get()
    cardnumber = self.cardNumber.get()

    self.img = PhotoImage(file='%s.gif' % username)
    self.pictureID['image'] = self.img

    self.userInfo.importfile('%s.txt' % username)
    self.userInfo.configure(label_text = username)

def help(self):
    self.about.show()

def doDataForm(self):
    self.userName=Pmw.EntryField(self.dataFrame, entry_width=8,
                                 value='',
                                 modifiedcommand=self.upd_username,
                                 label_text='User name:',
                                 labelpos=W, labelmargin=1)
    self.userName.place(relx=.20, rely=.325, anchor=W)

    self.cardNumber = Pmw.EntryField(self.dataFrame, entry_width=8,
                                     value='',
                                     modifiedcommand=self.upd_cardnumber,
                                     label_text='Card number: ',
                                     labelpos=W, labelmargin=1)
    self.cardNumber.place(relx=.20, rely=.70, anchor=W)

def doInfoForm(self):
    self.pictureID=Label(self.infoFrame, bd=0)
    self.pictureID.pack(side=LEFT, expand=1)

    self.userInfo = Pmw.ScrolledText(self.infoFrame,
                                    borderframe=1,
                                    labelpos=N,
                                    usehullsize=1,
```

```

        hull_width=270,
        hull_height=100,
        text_padx=10,
        text_pady=10,
        text_wrap=NONE)
    self.userInfo.configure(text_font = ('verdana', 8))
    self.userInfo.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=1)

def upd_username(self):
    upname = string.upper(self.userName.get())
    if upname:
        self.userName.setentry(upname) 15

def upd_cardnumber(self):
    valid = self.cardNumber.get()
    if valid:
        self.cardNumber.setentry(valid)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    shell=Shell(title='Example 8-4')
    shell.root.geometry("%dx%d" % (400,350))
    shell.doBaseForm(shell.root)
    shell.doDataForm()
    shell.doInfoForm()
    shell.root.mainloop() 16

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ⑩ `getStatus` is a placeholder for a more realistic function that can be applied to the collected data. First, we use the `get` methods of the Pmw widgets to obtain the content of the widgets:

```

username = self.userName.get()
cardnumber = self.cardNumber.get()

```

- ⑪ Using `username`, we retrieve an image and load it into the `label` widget we created earlier:

```

self.img = PhotoImage(file='%s.gif' % username)
self.pictureID['image'] = self.img

```

- ⑫ Then we load the contents of a file into the `ScrolledText` widget and update its title:

```

self.userInfo.importfile('%s.txt' % username)
self.userInfo.configure(label_text = username)

```

- ⑬ Using the About dialog is simply a matter of binding the widget's `show` method to the menu item:

```

def help(self):
    self.about.show()

```

- ⑭ The form itself uses two Pmw `EntryField` widgets to collect data:

```

self.userName=Pmw.EntryField(self.dataFrame, entry_width=8,
                             value='',
                             modifiedcommand=self.upd_username,
                             label_text='User name:',
                             labelpos=W, labelmargin=1)
self.userName.place(relx=.20, rely=.325, anchor=W)

```

- 15 The `modifiedcommand` in the previous code fragment binds a function to the widget to be called whenever the content of the widget changes (a `valuechanged` callback). This allows us to implement one form of validation or, in this case, to change each character to upper case:

```
upname = string.upper(self.userName.get())
if upname:
    self.userName.setentry(upname)
```

- 16 Finally, we create the root shell and populate it with the subcomponents of the form:

```
shell=Shell(title='Example 8-4')
shell.root.geometry("%dx%d" % (400, 350))
shell.doBaseForm(shell.root)
shell.doDataForm()
shell.doInfoForm()
shell.root.mainloop()
```

Note that we delay calling the `doBaseForm`, `doDataForm` and `doInfoForm` methods to allow us flexibility in exactly how the form is created from the base classes.

If you run `Example_8-4.py`, you will see screens similar to the one in figure 8.4. Notice how the `ScrolledText` widget automatically adds scroll bars as necessary. In fact, the overall layout changes slightly to accommodate several dimension changes. The title to the `ScrolledText` widget, for example, adds a few pixels to its containing frame; this has a slight effect on the layout of the entry fields. This is one reason why user interfaces need to be completely tested.

---

**Note** Automatic scroll bars can introduce some bothersome side effects. In figure 8.4, the vertical scroll bar was added because the number of lines exceeded the height of the widget. The horizontal scroll bar was added because the vertical scroll bar used space needed to display the longest line. If I had resized the window about 10 pixels wider, the horizontal scroll bar would not have been displayed.

---

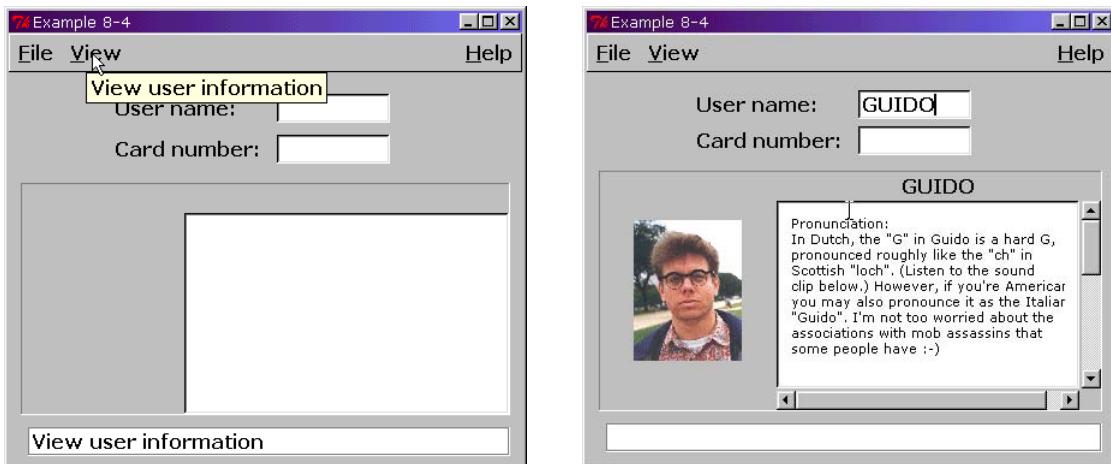


Figure 8.4 Single-shot form

## 8.1.4 Tkinter variables

The previous example used Pmw widgets to provide setentry and get methods to give access to the widget's content. Tk provides the ability to link the current value of many widgets (such as text, toggle and other widgets) to an application variable. Tkinter does not support this mode, instead it provides a Variable class which may be subclassed to give access to the variable, textvariable, value, and other options within the widget. Currently, Tkinter supports StringVar, IntVar, DoubleVar and BooleanVar. These objects define get and set methods to access the widget.

### Example\_8\_5.py

```
from Tkinter import *

class Var(Frame):
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        Frame.__init__(self, master)
        self.pack()

        self.field = Entry()
        self.field.pack()

        self.value = StringVar()
        self.value.set("Jean-Paul Sartre")
        self.field["textvariable"] = self.value

        self.field.bind('<Key-Return>', self.print_value)

    def print_value(self, event):
        print 'Value is "%s" % self.value.get()'

test = Var()
test.mainloop()
```

1  
2  
3

4

---

### Code comments

- ➊ Remember that you cannot get directly at the Tk widget's variable; you must create a Tkinter variable. Here we create an instance of StringVar.
- ➋ Set the initial value.
- ➌ Bind the variable to the textvariable option in the widget.
- ➍ Extract the current value using the get method of the string variable.



**Figure 8.5 Using Tkinter variables**

If you run this example, you will see a dialog similar to figure 8.5. This is as simple a dialog as you would want to see; on the other hand, it really is not very effective, because the only way to get anything from the entry field is to press the RETURN key, and we do not give the user any information on how to use the dialog. Nevertheless, it does illustrate Tkinter variables!

Pmw provides built-in methods for setting and getting values within widgets, so you do not need to use Tkinter variables directly. In addition, validation, valuechanged (modified) and selection callbacks are defined as appropriate for the particular widget.

## Example\_8\_6.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from tkSimpleDialog import Dialog
import Pmw

class MixedWidgets(Dialog):
    def body(self, master):
        Label(master, text='Select Case:').grid(row=0, sticky=W)
        Label(master, text='Select Type:').grid(row=1, sticky=W)
        Label(master, text='Enter Value:').grid(row=2, sticky=W)

        self.combo1 = Pmw.ComboBox(master,
                                   scrolledlist_items=("Upper", "Lower", "Mixed"),
                                   entry_width=12, entry_state="disabled",
                                   selectioncommand = self.ripple)
        self.combo1.selectitem("Upper")
        self.combo1.component('entry').config(bg='gray80')

        self.combo2 = Pmw.ComboBox(master, scrolledlist_items=(),
                                   entry_width=12, entry_state="disabled")
        self.combo2.component('entry').config(background='gray80')

        self.entry1 = Entry(master, width = 12)

        self.combo1.grid(row=0, column=1, sticky=W)
        self.combo2.grid(row=1, column=1, sticky=W)
        self.entry1.grid(row=2, column=1, sticky=W)

        return self.combo1

    def apply(self):
        c1 = self.combo1.get()
        c2 = self.combo2.get()
        e1 = self.entry1.get()
        print c1, c2, e1

    def ripple(self, value):
        lookup = {'Upper': ("ANIMAL", "VEGETABLE", "MINERAL"),
                  'Lower': ("animal", "vegetable", "mineral"),
                  'Mixed': ("Animal", "Vegetable", "Mineral")}
        items = lookup[value]
        self.combo2.setlist(items)
        self.combo2.selectitem(items[0])

root = Tk()
dialog = MixedWidgets(root)
```

①

②

③

④

⑤

⑥

### Code comments

- ① Comboboxes are important widgets for data entry and selection. One of their most valuable attributes is that they occupy little space, even though they may give the user access to an unlimited number of selectable values.

```
self.combo1 = Pmw.ComboBox(master,
                           scrolledlist_items=("Upper", "Lower", "Mixed"),
```

In this case, we are just loading three values into the combo's list. Typically data may be either loaded from databases or calculated.

- ❷ We do not intend for the values selected in this ComboBox to be editable, so we need to disable the entry field component of the widget.

```
entry_width=12, entry_state="disabled",
self.combo1.component('entry').config(bg='gray80')
```

We set the background of the Entry widget to be similar to the background to give the user a clear indication that the field is not editable.

- ❸ This one is an unusual one. Frequently, fields on a screen are dependent on the values contained within other fields on the same screen (on other screens in some cases). So, if you change the value in the combobox, you *ripple* the values within other widgets. (Ripple is a term that I invented, but it somewhat conveys the effect you can see as the new values ripple through the interface.)

```
selectioncommand = self.ripple)
```

---

**Note** Careless use of the ripple technique can be dangerous! Using ripple must be considered carefully, since it is quite easy to design a system which results in constant value modification if several fields are dependent on each other. Some sort of control flag is necessary to prevent a continuous loop of selectioncommand callbacks consuming CPU cycles.

See “Tkinter performance” on page 350 for other important factors you should consider when designing an application.

---

- ❹ We select default value from the lists or else the entry would be displayed as blank, which is probably not appropriate for a non-editable combobox.

```
self.combo1.selectitem("Upper")
```

- ❺ This is our ripple callback function. The selectioncommand callback returns the value of the item selected as an argument. We use this to look up the list to be applied to the second combobox:

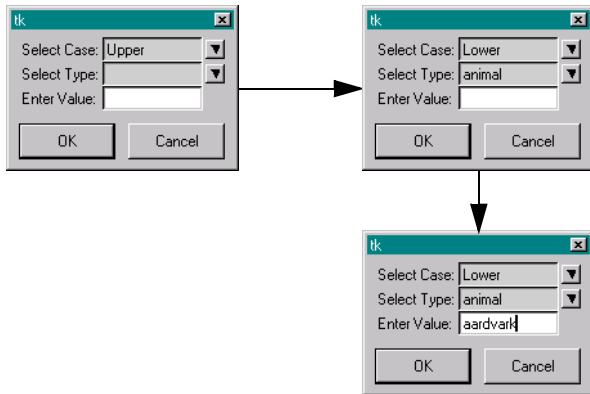
```
def ripple(self, value):
    lookup = {'Upper': ("ANIMAL", "VEGETABLE", "MINERAL"),
              'Lower': ("animal", "vegetable", "mineral"),
              'Mixed': ("Animal", "Vegetable", "Mineral")}
    items = lookup[value]
```

- ❻ The list obtained from the lookup replaces the current list.

```
self.combo2.setlist(items)
self.combo2.selectitem(items[0])
```

As before, you need to select one of the values in the lists to be displayed in the widget.

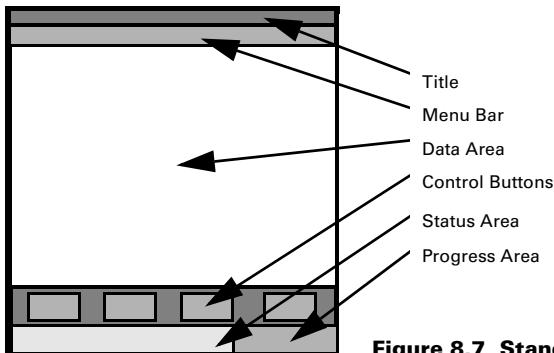
If you run Example\_8\_6.py, you will see this simple example of rippled widgets. Part of the effect can be seen in figure 8.6.



**Figure 8.6 Handling dependencies between widgets—Ripple**

## 8.2 A standard application framework

One of the problems with designing forms is that some features are common to most applications. What we need is a standard application framework which can be adapted to each application; this should result in moderate code reuse. Many applications fit the general form shown in figure 8.7. In addition, we need the ability to provide *busy cursors* \*, attach balloon



**Figure 8.7 Standard application framework**

help and help messages to fields, supply an `about...` message and add buttons with appropriate callbacks. To support these needs, I'll introduce `AppShell.py`, which is a fairly versatile application framework capable of supporting a wide range of interface needs. Naturally, this framework cannot be applied to all cases, but it can go a long way to ease the burden of developing effective interfaces.

---

\* A busy cursor is normally displayed whenever an operation takes more than a few hundred milliseconds, it is often displayed as a watch or hourglass. In some cases the application may also inhibit button-presses and other events until the operation has completed.

Since AppShell is an important feature of several of our examples, we are going to examine the source code in detail; additionally, if you are going to use AppShell directly, or adapt it for your own needs, you need to understand its facilities and operations.

## AppShell.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import sys, string
import ProgressBar
```

1

```
class AppShell(Pmw.MegaWidget):
    appversion= '1.0'
    appname   = 'Generic Application Frame'
    copyright= 'Copyright YYYY Your Company. All Rights Reserved'
    contactname= 'Your Name'
    contactphone= '(999) 555-1212'
    contactemail= 'youremail@host.com'
```

2

```
frameWidth= 450
frameHeight= 320
padx      = 5
pady      = 5
usecommandarea= 0
balloonhelp= 1
```

3

```
busyCursor = 'watch'
```

```
def __init__(self, **kw):
    optiondefs = (
        ('padx',     1,          Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('pady',     1,          Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('framewidth', 1, Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('frameheight', 1, Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('usecommandarea', self.usecommandarea, Pmw.INITOPT))
    self.defineoptions(kw, optiondefs)
```

4

```
self.root = Tk()
self.initializeTk(self.root)
Pmw.initialise(self.root)
self.root.title(self.appname)
self.root.geometry('%dx%d' % (self.frameWidth,
                             self.frameHeight))
```

5

```
# Initialize the base class
Pmw.MegaWidget.__init__(self, parent=self.root)
```

6

```
# Initialize the application
self.appInit()
```

```
# Create the interface
self.__createInterface()
```

```
# Create a table to hold the cursors for
# widgets which get changed when we go busy
```

```

        self.preBusyCursors = None

        # Pack the container and set focus
        # to ourselves
        self._hull.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
        self.focus_set()
        # Initialize our options
        self.initialiseoptions(AppShell)

    def appInit(self):
        # Called before interface is created (should be overridden).
        pass

    def initializeTk(self, root): 7
        # Initialize platform-specific options
        if sys.platform == 'mac':
            self.__initializeTk_mac(root)
        elif sys.platform == 'win32':
            self.__initializeTk_win32(root)
        else:
            self.__initializeTk_unix(root)

    def __initializeTk_colors_common(self, root):
        root.option_add('*background', 'grey')
        root.option_add('*foreground', 'black')
        root.option_add('*EntryField.Entry.background', 'white')
        root.option_add('*MessageBar.Entry.backgroud', 'gray85')
        root.option_add('*Listbox*background', 'white')
        root.option_add('*Listbox*selectBackground', 'dark slate blue')
        root.option_add('*Listbox*selectForeground', 'white')

    def __initializeTk_win32(self, root):
        self.__initializeTk_colors_common(root)
        root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10 bold')
        root.option_add('*EntryField.Entry.Font', 'Courier 10')
        root.option_add('*Listbox*Font', 'Courier 10')

    def __initializeTk_mac(self, root):
        self.__initializeTk_colors_common(root)

    def __initializeTk_unix(self, root):
        self.__initializeTk_colors_common(root)

```

### *Code comments*

- ① AppShell imports ProgressBar. Its code is not shown here, but is available online.

```
import ProgressBar
```

- ② AppShell inherits Pmw.MegaWidget since we are constructing a megawidget.

```

class AppShell(Pmw.MegaWidget):
    appversion= '1.0'
    appname   = 'Generic Application Frame'
    copyright= 'Copyright YYYY Your Company. All Rights Reserved'
    contactname= 'Your Name'
    contactphone= '(999) 555-1212'
    contactemail= 'youremail@host.com'

```

We then define several class variables which provide default data for the version, title and about... information. We assume that these values will be overridden.

- ❸ Default dimensions and padding are supplied. Again we expect that the application will override these values.

```
frameWidth= 450
frameHeight= 320
padx       = 5
pady       = 5
usecommandarea= 0
balloonhelp= 1
```

`usecommandarea` is used to inhibit or display the command (button) area.

- ❹ In the `__init__` for AppShell, we build the options supplied by the megawidget.

```
def __init__(self, **kw):
    optiondefs = (
        ('padx',     1,           Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('pady',     1,           Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('framewidth', 1, Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('frameheight', 1, Pmw.INITOPT),
        ('usecommandarea', self.usecommandarea, Pmw.INITOPT))
    self.defineoptions(kw, optiondefs)
```

`Pmw.INITOPT` defines an option that is available only at initialization—it cannot be set with a `configure` call. (See “Pmw reference: Python megawidgets” on page 542 for more information on defining options.)

- ❺ Now we can initialize Tk and Pmw and set the window’s title and geometry:

```
self.root = Tk()
self.initializeTk(self.root)
Pmw.initialise(self.root)
self.root.title(self.appname)
self.root.geometry('%dx%d' % (self.frameWidth,
                             self.frameHeight))
```

- ❻ After defining the options and initializing Tk, we call the constructor for the base class:

```
Pmw.MegaWidget.__init__(self, parent=self.root)
```

- ❼ AppShell is intended to support the major Tkinter architectures; the next few methods define the colors and fonts appropriate for the particular platform.

## AppShell.py (continued)

```
def busyStart(self, newcursor=None):
    if not newcursor:
        newcursor = self.busyCursor LLLLLLLLLL
    newPreBusyCursors = {}

    for component in self.busyWidgets:
        newPreBusyCursors[component] = component['cursor']
        component.configure(cursor=newcursor)
```

❽

```

        component.update_idletasks()
        self.preBusyCursors = (newPreBusyCursors, self.preBusyCursors)

    def busyEnd(self):
        if not self.preBusyCursors:
            return
        oldPreBusyCursors = self.preBusyCursors[0]
        self.preBusyCursors = self.preBusyCursors[1]

        for component in self.busyWidgets:
            try:
                component.configure(cursor=oldPreBusyCursors[component])
            except KeyError:
                pass
            component.update_idletasks()

    def __createAboutBox(self): 9
        Pmw.aboutversion(self.appversion)
        Pmw.aboutcopyright(self.copyright)
        Pmw.aboutcontact(
            'For more information, contact:\n %s\n Phone: %s\n Email: %s' %\
            (self.contactname, self.contactphone,
             self.contactemail))
        self.about = Pmw.AboutDialog(self._hull,
                                     applicationname=self.appname)
        self.about.withdraw()
        return None

    def showAbout(self):
        # Create the dialog to display about and contact information.
        self.about.show()
        self.about.focus_set()

    def toggleBalloon(self): 10
        if self.toggleBalloonVar.get():
            self.__balloon.configure(state = 'both')
        else:
            self.__balloon.configure(state = 'status')

    def __createMenuBar(self): 11
        self.menuBar = self.createComponent('menubar', (), None,
   Pmw.MenuBar,
   (self._hull,), ,
   hull_relief=RAISED,
   hull_borderwidth=1,
   balloon=self.balloon())
        self.menuBar.pack(fill=X)
        self.menuBar.addmenu('Help', 'About %s' % self.appname, side='right')
        self.menuBar.addmenu('File', 'File commands and Quit')

    def createMenuBar(self):

```

```

        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('Help', 'command',
            'Get information on application',
            label='About...', command=self.showAbout)
    self.toggleBalloonVar = IntVar()
    self.toggleBalloonVar.set(1)
    self.menuBar.addMenuItem('Help', 'checkbutton',
        'Toggle balloon help',
        label='Balloon help',
        variable = self.toggleBalloonVar,
        command=self.toggleBalloon)

    self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'Quit this application',
        label='Quit',
        command=self.quit)

```

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ❸ The next few methods support setting and unsetting the busy cursor:

```

def busyStart(self, newcursor=None):
    ...

```

- ❹ Next we define methods to support the About... functionality. The message box is created before it is used, so that it can be popped up when required.

```

def __createAboutBox(self):
    ...

```

- ❺ Balloon help can be useful for users unfamiliar with an interface, but annoying to expert users. AppShell provides a menu option to turn off balloon help, leaving the regular status messages displayed, since they do not tend to cause a distraction.

```

def toggleBalloon(self):
    if self.toggleBalloonVar.get():
        self.__balloon.configure(state = 'both')
    else:
        self.__balloon.configure(state = 'status')

```

- ❻ Menu bar creation is split into two member functions. \_\_createMenuBar creates a Pmw MenuBar component and createMenuBar populates the menu with standard options, which you may extend as necessary to support your application.

### **AppShell.py (continued)**

```

def __createBalloon(self):          ❾
    # Create the balloon help manager for the frame.
    # Create the manager for the balloon help
    self.__balloon = self.createComponent('balloon', (), None,
   Pmw.Balloon, (self._hull,))

def balloon(self):
    return self.__balloon

def __createDataArea(self):          ❿
    # Create a data area where data entry widgets are placed.
    self.dataArea = self.createComponent('dataarea',
   (), None,
   Pmw.ScrolledText, (self._hull,))

def __createFrame(self):
    # Create a frame to hold the data area and scroll bars.
    self._frame = Frame(self._hull)
    self._frame.pack(expand=1, fill=BOTH)

```

```

        Frame, (self._hull,),
        relief=GROOVE,
        bd=1)
    self.dataArea.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=YES,
                      padx=self['padx'], pady=self['pady'])

def __createCommandArea(self):          14
    # Create a command area for application-wide buttons.
    self.__commandFrame = self.createComponent('commandframe', (), None,
  Frame,
  (self._hull,),
  relief=SUNKEN,
  bd=1)
    self.__buttonBox = self.createComponent('buttonbox', (), None,
   Pmw.ButtonBox,
   (self.__commandFrame,), None,
   padx=0, pady=0)
    self.__buttonBox.pack(side=TOP, expand=NO, fill=X)
    if self['usecommandarea']:
        self.__commandFrame.pack(side=TOP,
                                  expand=NO,
                                  fill=X,
                                  padx=self['padx'],
                                  pady=self['pady'])

def __createMessageBar(self):          15
    # Create the message bar area for help and status messages.
    frame = self.createComponent('bottomtray', (), None,
                                 Frame, (self._hull,), relief=SUNKEN)
    self.__messageBar = self.createComponent('messagebar',
  (), None,
  Pmw.MessageBar,
  (frame,), None,
  entry_width = 40,
  entry_relief=SUNKEN,
  entry_bd=1,
  labelpos=None)
    self.__messageBar.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=X)

    self.__progressBar = ProgressBar.ProgressBar(frame,           16
  fillColor='slateblue',
  doLabel=1,
  width=150)
    self.__progressBar.frame.pack(side=LEFT, expand=NO, fill=NONE)

    self.updateProgress(0)
    frame.pack(side=BOTTOM, expand=NO, fill=X)

    self.__balloon.configure(statuscommand = \
                             self.__messageBar.helpmessage)

def messageBar(self):
    return self.__messageBar

def updateProgress(self, newValue=0, newLimit=0):
    self.__progressBar.updateProgress(newValue, newLimit)

```

```

def bind(self, child, balloonHelpMsg, statusHelpMsg=None):
    # Bind a help message and/or status message to a widget.
    self.__balloon.bind(child, balloonHelpMsg, statusHelpMsg)

def interior(self):
    # Retrieve the interior site where widgets should go. 17
    return self.dataArea

def buttonBox(self):
    # Retrieve the button box.
    return self.__buttonBox

def buttonAdd(self, buttonName, helpMessage=None,
             statusMessage=None, **kw):
    # Add a button to the button box.
    newBtn = self.__buttonBox.add(buttonName)
    newBtn.configure(kw)
    if helpMessage:
        self.bind(newBtn, helpMessage, statusMessage)
    return newBtn

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- 12** The balloon component is created:

```

def __createBalloon(self):
    self.__balloon = self.createComponent('balloon', (), None,
   Pmw.Balloon, (self._hull,))

```

- 13** The dataarea component is simply a frame to contain whatever widget arrangement is needed for the application:

```

def __createDataArea(self):
    self.dataArea = self.createComponent('dataarea',
  (), None,
  Frame, (self._hull,),
  relief=GROOVE,
  bd=1)

```

- 14** The commandarea is a frame containing a Pmw ButtonBox:

```

def __createCommandArea(self):
    self.__commandFrame = self.createComponent('commandframe', (), None,
  Frame,
  (self._hull,),
  relief=SUNKEN,
  bd=1)
    self.__buttonBox = self.createComponent('buttonbox', (), None,
  Pmw.ButtonBox,
  (self.__commandFrame,),
  padx=0, pady=0)

```

- 15** Similarly, the messagebar is a frame containing a Pmw MessageBox:

```

def __createMessageBar(self):
    ...

```

- 16** To complete our major components, we create a progressbar component next to the messagebar:

```
    self.__progressBar = ProgressBar.ProgressBar(frame,
        ...
```

- 17 It is a Pmw convention to provide a method to return a reference to the container where widgets should be created; this method is called `interior`:

```
def interior(self):
    return self.dataArea
```

- 18 It also provides a method to create buttons within the `commandarea` and to bind balloon and status help to the button:

```
def buttonAdd(self, buttonName, helpMessage=None,
              statusMessage=None, **kw):
    newBtn = self.__buttonBox.add(buttonName)
    newBtn.configure(kw)
    if helpMessage:
        self.bind(newBtn, helpMessage, statusMessage)
    return newBtn
```

### AppShell.py (continued)

```
def __createInterface(self):      19
    self.__createBalloon()
    self.__createMenuBar()
    self.__createDataArea()
    self.__createCommandArea()
    self.__createMessageBar()
    self.__createAboutBox()
    #
    # Create the parts of the interface
    # which can be modified by subclasses.
    #
    self.busyWidgets = ( self.root, )
    self.createMenuBar()
    self.createInterface()

def createInterface(self):
    # Override this method to create the interface for the app.
    pass

def main(self):
    self.pack()
    self.mainloop()

def run(self):
    self.main()

class TestAppShell(AppShell):
    usecommandarea=1

    def createButtons(self):          20
        self.buttonAdd('Ok',
                        helpMessage='Exit',
                        statusMessage='Exit',
                        command=self.quit)

    def createMain(self):            21
```

```

        self.label = self.createComponent('label', (), None,
   Label,
   (self.interior(),),
   text='Data Area')
        self.label.pack()
        self.bind(self.label, 'Space taker')

    def createInterface(self):
        AppShell.createInterface(self)
        self.createButtons()
        self.createMain()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    test = TestAppShell(balloon_state='both')
    test.run()

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ⑯ `__createInterface` creates each of the standard areas and then calls the `createInterface` method (which is overridden by the application) to complete the population of the various areas:

```

def __createInterface(self):
    self.__createBalloon()
    self.__createMenuBar()
    self.__createDataArea()
    self.__createCommandArea()
    self.__createMessageBar()
    self.__createAboutBox()
    self.busyWidgets = ( self.root, )
    self.createMenuBar()
    self.createInterface()

```

- ⑰ For this example, we define just one button to exit the application; you would add all of your buttons to this method for your application.

```

def createButtons(self):
    self.buttonAdd('Ok',
                  helpMessage='Exit',
                  statusMessage='Exit',
                  command=self.quit)

```

- ㉑ Again, for the purpose of illustration, the `dataarea` has not been populated with any more than a simple label:

```

def createMain(self):
    self.label = self.createComponent('label', (), None,
                                    Label,
                                    (self.interior(),),
                                    text='Data Area')
    self.label.pack()
    self.bind(self.label, 'Space taker')

```

Notice how we define balloon help for the label.

- ㉒ Finally, here is the `createInterface` method which extends AppShells method:

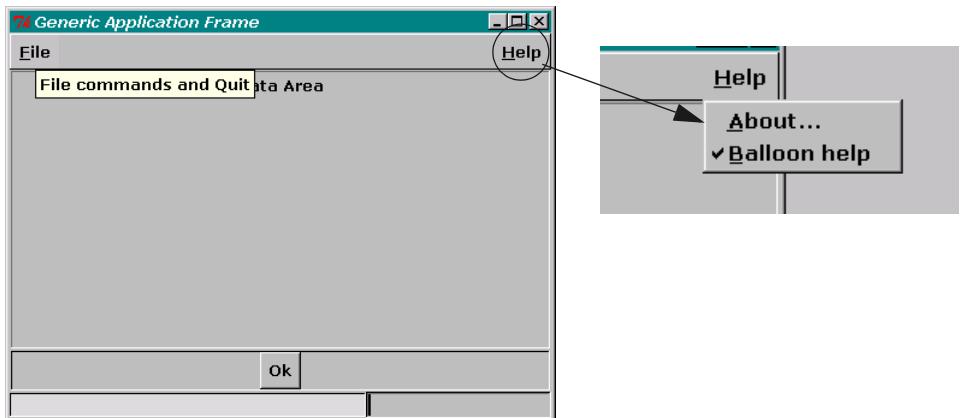
```

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.createInterface(self)

```

```
    self.createButtons()  
    self.createMain()
```

If you run AppShell.py, you will see a shell similar to the one in figure 8.8. Look for the toggle menu item in the Help menu to enable or disable balloon help.



**Figure 8.8 AppShell—A standard application framework**

### 8.3 Data dictionaries

The forms that I have presented as examples have been coded explicitly for the material to be displayed; this becomes cumbersome when several forms are required to support an application. The solution is to use a *data dictionary* which defines fields, labels, widget types and other information. In addition, it may provide translation from database to screen and back to database, and define validation requirements, editable status and other behavior. We will see some more complete examples in “Putting it all together...” on page 311. However, the examples presented here will certainly give you a clear indication of their importance in simplifying form design.

First let's take a look at a simple data dictionary; in this case it really *is* a Python dictionary, but other data structures could be used.

#### datadictionary.py

```
LC      = 1      # Lowercase Key ❶  
UC      = 2      # Uppercase Key  
XX      = 3      # As Is  
DT      = 4      # Date Insert  
ND      = 5      # No Duplicate Keys  
ZP      = 6      # Pad Zeroes  
ZZ      = 7      # Do Not Display  
ZS      = 8      # Do Not display, but fill in with key if blank  
  
BLANKOK = 0      # Blank is valid in this field
```

```

NONBLANK = 1      # Field cannot be blank

dataDict  = {
    'crewmembers': ('crewmembers', 0.11, 0.45, 0.05, [
        ('Employee #', 'employee_no', 9, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),  

        ('PIN', 'pin', 4, XX, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Category', 'type', 1, UC, 'valid_category', NONBLANK),
        ('SSN #', 'ssn', 9, XX, 'valid_ssn', BLANKOK),
        ('First Name', 'firstname', 12, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),
        ('Middle Name', 'middlename', 10, XX, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Last Name', 'lastname', 20, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),
        ('Status', 'status', 1, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('New Hire', 'newhire', 1, UC, 'valid_y_n_blank', BLANKOK),
        ('Seniority Date', 'senioritydate', 8, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),
        ('Seniority', 'seniority', 5, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),
        ('Base', 'base', 3, UC, 'valid_base', NONBLANK),
        ('Language 1', 'lang1', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK),
        ('Language 2', 'lang2', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK),
        ('Language 3', 'lang3', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK),
        ('Language 4', 'lang4', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK),
        ('Language 5', 'lang5', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK),
        ('Language 6', 'lang6', 2, UC, 'valid_lang', BLANKOK)],
        'Crew Members', [0]),  

    'crewqualifications': ('crewqualification', 0.25, 0.45, 0.075, [
        ('Employee #', 'employee_no', 9, XX, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Equipment', 'equipment', 3, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Eqpt. Code', 'equipmentcode', 1, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Position', 'position', 2, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Pos. Code', 'positioncode', 2, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Reserve', 'reserve', 1, UC, 'valid_r_blank', BLANKOK),
        ('Date of Hire', 'hiredate', 8, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('End Date', 'enddate', 8, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Base Code', 'basecode', 1, UC, '', BLANKOK),
        ('Manager', 'manager', 1, UC, 'valid_y_n_blank', BLANKOK)],
        'Crew Qualifications', [0]) }

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We define several constants to characterize the behavior of entry fields, controlling case-changing, for example:

```

LC      = 1      # Lowercase Key
UC      = 2      # Uppercase Key
XX      = 3      # As Is
...

```

- ❷ The first section of each entry in the dictionary defines the key, database table and layout data to customize the position of the first line, label/field position and the line spacing respectively.

```
'crewmembers': ('crewmembers', 0.11, 0.45, 0.05, [
```

- ❸ Each entry in the dictionary defines the label, database key, field length, entry processing, validation and whether the field may be left blank.

```

('Employee #', 'employee_no', 9, XX, 'valid_blank', NONBLANK),
('PIN', 'pin', 4, XX, '', BLANKOK),
('Category', 'type', 1, UC, 'valid_category', NONBLANK),

```

- ④ The final entry in each table defines the title and a list of indices for the primary and secondary keys (in this case, we are only using a single key):

```
'Crew Members', [0]),
```

Now let's use datadictionary.py to create an interface. We will also use AppShell to provide the framework.

### Example\_8\_7.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import os
import AppShell
from datadictionary import *

class DDForm(AppShell.AppShell):   ❶
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname        = 'Update Crew Information'
    dictionary     = 'crewmembers'
    frameWidth     = 600
    frameHeight    = 590

    def createButtons(self):   ❷
        self.buttonAdd('Save',
                       helpMessage='Save current data',
                       statusMessage='Write current information to database',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Undo',
                       helpMessage='Ignore changes',
                       statusMessage='Do not save changes to database',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('New',
                       helpMessage='Create a New record',
                       statusMessage='Create New record',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Delete',
                       helpMessage='Delete current record',
                       statusMessage='Delete this record',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Print',
                       helpMessage='Print this screen',
                       statusMessage='Print data in this screen',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Prev',
                       helpMessage='Previous record',
                       statusMessage='Display previous record',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Next',
                       helpMessage='Next record',
                       statusMessage='Display next record',
                       command=self.unimplemented)
        self.buttonAdd('Close',
                       helpMessage='Close Screen',
                       statusMessage='Exit',
```

```

        command=self.unimplemented)

def createForm(self):
    self.form = self.createComponent('form', (), None,
                                    Frame, (self.interior(),))
    self.form.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
    self.formwidth = self.root.winfo_width()

def createFields(self):
    self.table, self.top, self.anchor, self.incr, self.fields, \
        self.title, self.keylist = dataDict[self.dictionary] ❸
    self.records= []
    self.dirty= FALSE
    self.changed= []
    self.newrecs= []
    self.deleted= []
    self.checkDupes = FALSE
    self.delkeys= []

    self.ypos = self.top ❹
    self.recrows = len(self.records)
    if self.recrows < 1: # Create one!
        self.recrows = 1
        trec = []
        for i in range(len(self.fields)):
            trec.append(None)
            self.records.append((trec))

    Label(self.form, text=self.title, width=self.formwidth-4, ❺
          bd=0).place(relx=0.5, rely=0.025, anchor=CENTER)
    self.lmarker = Label(self.form, text="", bd=0, width=10)
    self.lmarker.place(relx=0.02, rely=0.99, anchor=SW)
    self.rmarker = Label(self.form, text="", bd=0, width=10)
    self.rmarker.place(relx=0.99, rely=0.99, anchor=SE) ❻

    self.current = 0
    idx = 0
    for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in self.fields: ❼
        pstr = 'Label(self.form,text="%s").place(relx=%f,rely=%f,' \
               'anchor=E)\n' % (label, (self.anchor-0.02), self.ypos)
        if idx == self.keylist[0]:
            pstr = '%sself.%s=Entry(self.form,text="",'\ \
                   'insertbackground="yellow", width=%d+1,' \
                   'highlightthickness=1)\n' % (pstr,field,width)
        else:
            pstr = '%sself.%s=Entry(self.form,text="",'\ \
                   'insertbackground="yellow",' \
                   'width=%d+1)\n' % (pstr,field,width)
        pstr = '%sself.%s.place(relx=%f, rely=%f,' \
               'anchor=W)\n' % (pstr,field,(self.anchor+0.02),self.ypos)
        exec '%sself.%sV=StringVar()\n' \
        'self.%s["textvariable"] = self.%sV' % \
               (pstr,field,field,field)
        self.ypos = self.ypos + self.incr
        idx = idx + 1
    self.update_display()

```

```

def update_display(self):
    idx = 0
    for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in self.fields:
        v=self.records[self.current][idx]
        if not v:v=""
            exec 'self.%sV.set(v)' % field
        idx = idx + 1
    if self.current in self.deleted:
        self.rmarker['text'] = 'Deleted'
    elif self.current in self.newrecs:
        self.rmarker['text'] = 'New'
    else:
        self.rmarker['text'] = ''
    if self.dirty:
        self.lmarker['text'] = "Modified"
        self.lmarker['foreground'] = "#FF3333"
    else:
        self.lmarker['text'] = ""
        self.lmarker['foreground'] = "#00FF44"
    # We'll set focus on the first widget
    label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank = self.fields[0]
    exec 'self.%s.focus_set()' % field

def unimplemented(self):
    pass

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.createForm()
    self.createFields()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    ddform = DDForm()
    ddform.run()

```

### *Code comments*

- ➊ First we define the Application class, inheriting from AppShell and overriding its class variables to set the title, width, height and other values:

```

class DDForm(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname       = 'Update Crew Information'
    dictionary    = 'crewmembers'
    frameWidth   = 600
    frameHeight  = 590

```

- ➋ In this example, we are defining a more realistic complement of control buttons:

```

def createButtons(self):
    self.buttonAdd('Save',
                  helpMessage='Save current data',
                  statusMessage='Write current information to database',
                  command=self.save)
    ...

```

- ③ Rather than use the default megawidget `interior`, we create our own `form` component:

```
def createForm(self):
    self.form = self.createComponent('form', (), None,
                                    Frame, (self.interior(),))
    self.form.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
    self.formwidth = self.root.winfo_width()
```

- ④ We extract the data from the selected data dictionary element and initialize data structures:

```
def createFields(self):
    self.table, self.top, self.anchor, self.incr, self.fields, \
        self.title, self.keylist = dataDict[self.dictionary]
    self.records= []
    self.dirty= FALSE
```

- ⑤ This example does not interface with any database, but we still need to create a single empty record even for this case. We create one empty entry for each field:

```
self.ypos = self.top
self.recrows = len(self.records)
if self.recrows < 1: # Create one!
    self.recrows = 1
    trec = []
    for i in range(len(self.fields)):
        trec.append(None)
    self.records.append((trec))
```

- ⑥ Although we are not going to be able to save any information input to the form, we still define markers at the left- and right-bottom of the screen to indicate when a record has been modified or added:

```
Label(self.form, text=self.title, width=self.formwidth-4,
      bd=0).place(relx=0.5, rely=0.025, anchor=CENTER)
self.lmarker = Label(self.form, text="", bd=0, width=10)
self.lmarker.place(relx=0.02, rely=0.99, anchor=SW)
self.rmarker = Label(self.form, text="", bd=0, width=10)
self.rmarker.place(relx=0.99, rely=0.99, anchor=SE)
```

- ⑦ This is where we create the label/field pairs which make up our interface. We give the user a visual clue that a field is the key by increasing the highlight thickness:

```
for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in self.fields:
    pstr = 'Label(self.form, text="%s").place(relx=%f, rely=%f, '\
           'anchor=E)\n' % (label, (self.anchor-0.02), self.ypos)
    if idx == self.keylist[0]:
        pstr = '%sself.%s=Entry(self.form, text="", '\
               'insertbackground="yellow", width=%d+1, '\
               'highlightthickness=1)\n' % (pstr, field, width)
    else:
        ...
        ...
```

**Note** In this application we have chosen to use `highlightthickness` to provide a visual clue to the user that the field contains the key to the data. You might choose one of several other methods to get this effect, such as changing the background color or changing the borderwidth.

- 8 The update\_display method is responsible for setting the markers to indicate new, deleted and modified records:

```
def update_display(self):
    idx = 0
    for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in self.fields:
        v=self.records[self.current][idx]
        if not v:v=""
        exec 'self.%sV.set(v)' % field
        idx = idx + 1
    if self.current in self.deleted:
        ...

```

- 9 The methods bound to the control buttons do nothing in our example, but they are required for Python to run the application:

```
def unimplemented(self):
    pass
```

Running Example\_8\_7.py will display a screen similar to figure 8.9. Notice that the layout could be improved if the fields were individually placed, or if more than one field were placed on a single line, but that would obviate the simplicity of using a data dictionary.

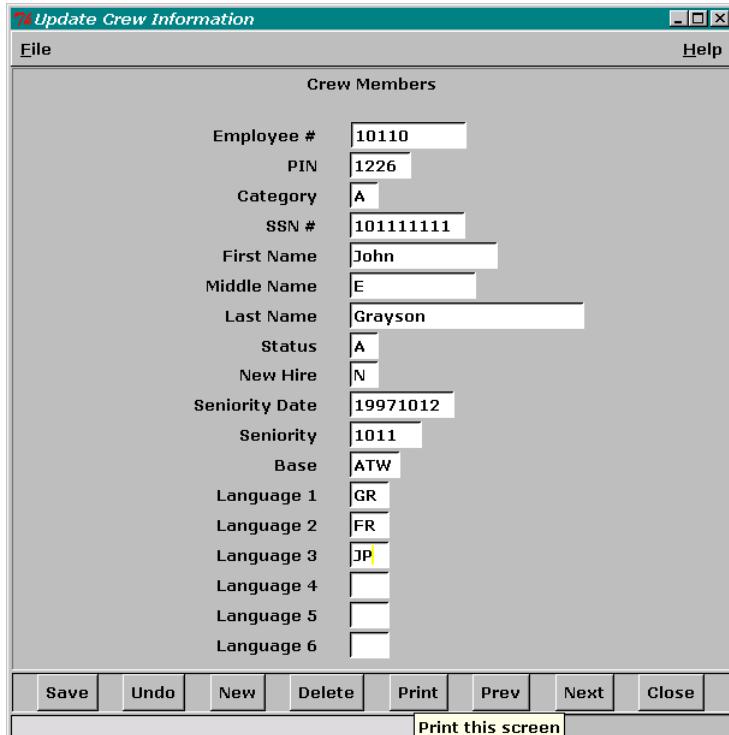


Figure 8.9 A screen created from a data dictionary

## 8.4 Notebooks

Notebooks (sometimes referred to as *style* or *property sheets*) have become a common motif for user interfaces. One large advantage is that they allow the form designer to display a large number of entry fields without overwhelming the user. Additionally, the fields can be arranged in related groupings, or less-important fields can be separated from fields which are frequently changed.

The next example demonstrates the use of notebooks, data dictionaries and AppShell to present the same basic data in Example\_8\_7.py on three separate notebook panes. *datadictionary.py* has been rearranged as *datadictionary2.py*, but it will not be presented here (the previous dictionary has been divided into one section for each pane of the notebook).

### Example\_8\_9.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import os
import AppShell
from datadictionary2 import *

class DDNotebook(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname        = 'Update Crew Information'
    dictionary     = 'crewmembers'
    frameWidth     = 435
    frameHeight    = 520

    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Save',
                       helpMessage='Save current data',
                       statusMessage='Write current information to database',
                       command=self.save)
        self.buttonAdd('Close',
                       helpMessage='Close Screen',
                       statusMessage='Exit',
                       command=self.close)

    def createNotebook(self):
        self.notebook = self.createComponent('notebook', (), None,
  Pmw.NoteBookR, (self.interior(),))
        self.notebook.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH, padx=5, pady=5)
        self.formwidth = self.root.winfo_width()

    def addPage(self, dictionary):
        table, top, anchor, incr, fields, \
            title, keylist = dataDict[dictionary]
        self.notebook.add(table, label=title)
        self.current = 0
        ypos = top
        idx = 0

        for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in fields:
            pstr = 'Label(self.notebook.page(table).interior(),' \

```



```

        'text="%s").place(relx=%f,rely=%f, anchor=E)\n' % \
        (label, (anchor-0.02), ypos)
    if idx == keylist[0]:
        pstr = '%ssself.%s=Entry(self.notebook.page(table).\\
            'interior(), text="", insertbackground="yellow", \\
            'width=%d+1, highlightthickness=1)\n' % \
            (pstr,field,width)
    else:
        pstr = '%ssself.%s=Entry(self.notebook.page(table).\\
            'interior(), text="", insertbackground="yellow", \\
            'width=%d+1)\n' % (pstr,field,width)
    pstr = '%ssself.%s.place(relx=%f, rely=%f, \\
            'anchor=W)\n' % (pstr,field,(anchor+0.02),ypos)
    exec '%ssself.%sV=StringVar()\n' %
        'self.%s["textvariable"] = self.%sV' % (pstr,field,field,field)
    ypos = ypos + incr
    idx = idx + 1

def createPages(self):
    self.addPage('general')
    self.addPage('language')
    self.addPage('crewqualifications')
    self.update_display() ④

def update_display(self):
    pass

def save(self):
    pass
def close(self):
    self.quit()

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.createNotebook()
    self.createPages()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    ddnotebook = DDNotebook()
    ddnotebook.run()

```

### *Code comments*

- ❶ Creating a notebook within the AppShell is simply a case of creating a Pmw NoteBookR component.

```

def createNotebook(self):
    self.notebook = self.createComponent('notebook', (), None,
   Pmw.NoteBookR, (self.interior(),))
    self.notebook.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH, padx=5, pady=5)

```

Pmw provides an alternate notebook widget, NoteBookS (see figure 8.10 on page 174 for an example). I do not recommend that you use this widget since it has a generally inferior layout.

- ② The name and text displayed in the notebook tab comes directly from the data dictionary:

```
def addPage(self, dictionary):
    table, top, anchor, incr, fields, \
    title, keylist = dataDict[dictionary]
    self.notebook.add(table, label=title)
```

- ③ Loading the fields from the data dictionary is similar to the previous example:

```
for label, field, width, proc, valid, nonblank in fields:
    pstr = 'Label(self.notebook.page(table).interior(),\'\
    text="%s").place(relx=%f,rely=%f, anchor=E)\n' % \
    (label, (anchor-0.02), ypos)
    ...
    ...
```

- ④ The pages are tagged with the dictionary key:

```
def createPages(self):
    self.addPage('general')
    self.addPage('language')
    self.addPage('crewqualifications')
    self.update_display()
```

Figure 8.10 shows the result of running Example\_8\_9.py. Notice how the fields are much less cluttered and that they now have clear logical groupings.

The figure displays two side-by-side screenshots of a Windows application window titled "Update Crew Information". The window has a standard title bar with minimize, maximize, and close buttons. Below the title bar is a menu bar with "File" and "Help" options. The main area of the window contains three tabs at the top: "General Information", "Languages", and "Crew Qualifications".

**Left Screenshot (General Information Tab):**

- Employee #: 12345
- PIN: 8866
- Category: P
- SSN #: 010111234
- First Name: Michael
- Middle Name: A
- Last Name: Marston
- Status: A
- New Hire: N
- Seniority Date: 19910521
- Seniority: 1221
- Base: ATW

**Right Screenshot (Crew Qualifications Tab):**

- Employee #: 12345
- Equipment: 747
- Eqpt. Code: 4
- Position: CA
- Pos. Code: 1
- Reserve: N
- Date of Hire: 19910521
- End Date: 20001231
- Base Code: A
- Manager: N

At the bottom of each screenshot is a horizontal toolbar with "Save" and "Close" buttons.

**Figure 8.10 Notebooks**

## 8.5 Browsers

Browsers have become a popular motif for navigating information that is, or can be, organized as a hierarchy. Good examples of browsers include the Preferences editor in Netscape and Windows Explorer. The advantage of browsers is that branches of the typical tree display can be expanded and collapsed, resulting in an uncluttered display, even though the volume of data displayed can be quite high.

As an example, we are going to develop a simple image browser which will display all of the images in a particular directory. Tk, and therefore Tkinter, supports three image formats: GIF, PPM (truecolor), and XBM. To extend the capability of the example, we will use PIL from Secret Labs A.B. to build the images. This does not add a great deal of complexity to the example, as you will see when we examine the source code.

The browser uses several icons to represent various file types; for the purpose of this example we are using a mixture of icons created for this application. They are similar in style to those found in most current window systems.

The tree browser class is quite general and can readily be made into a base class for other browsers.

### Example\_8\_10.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import os
import AppShell
import Image, ImageTk
path = "./icons/"
imgs = "./images/"

class Node:
    def __init__(self, master, tree, icon=None,
                 openicon=None, name=None, action=None):
        self.master, self.tree = master, tree
        self.icon = PhotoImage(file=icon)
        if openicon:
            self.openicon = PhotoImage(file=openicon)
        else:
            self.openicon = None
        self.width, self.height = 1.5*self.icon.width(), \
                               1.5*self.icon.height()
        self.name = name
        self.var = StringVar()          ③
        self.var.set(name)
        self.text = Entry(tree, textvariable=self.var, bg=tree.bg,
                         bd=0, width=len(name)+2, font=tree.font,
                         fg=tree.textcolor, insertwidth=1,
                         highlightthickness=1,
                         highlightbackground=tree.bg,
                         selectbackground="#044484",
                         selectborderwidth=0,
                         selectforeground='white')
```

```

        self.action = action
        self.x = self.y = 0 #drawing location
        self.child = []
        self.state = 'collapsed'
        self.selected = 0

    def addChild(self, tree, icon=None, openicon=None, name=None,
                action=None):
        child = Node(self, tree, icon, openicon, name, action)
        self.child.append(child)
        self.tree.display()
        return child

    def deleteChild(self, child):
        self.child.remove(child)
        self.tree.display()

    def textForget(self):
        self.text.place_forget()
        for child in self.child:
            child.textForget()

    def deselect(self):
        self.selected = 0
        for child in self.child:
            child.deselect()

    def boxpress(self, event=None): 6
        if self.state == 'expanded':
            self.state = 'collapsed'
        elif self.state == 'collapsed':
            self.state = 'expanded'
        self.tree.display()

    def invoke(self, event=None): 7
        if not self.selected:
            self.tree.deselectall()
            self.selected = 1
            self.tree.display()
        if self.action:
            self.action(self.name)
        self.name = self.text.get()
        self.text.config(width=len(self.name)+2)

```

### *Code comments*

- 1** We begin by importing PIL modules:

```
import Image, ImageTk
```

- 2** The Node class defines the subordinate tree and the open and closed icons associated with the node.

```

class Node:
    def __init__(self, master, tree, icon=None,
                 openicon=None, name=None, action=None):
        ...

```

- ③ Each node has a Tkinter variable assigned to it since we are going to allow the nodes to be renamed (although code to use the new name is not provided in the example):

```
    self.name = name
    self.var = StringVar()
    self.var.set(name)
    self.text = Entry(tree, textvariable=self.var, bg=tree.bg,
```

- ④ The Entry widget does not display a highlight by default. To indicate that we are editing the filename, we add a highlight.

- ⑤ When we construct the hierarchy of nodes later, we will use the addChild method in the Node class:

```
def addChild(self, tree, icon=None, openicon=None, name=None,
            action=None):
    child = Node(self, tree, icon, openicon, name, action)
    self.child.append(child)
    self.tree.display()
    return child
```

This creates an instance of Node and appends it to the child list.

- ⑥ The boxpress method toggles the state of nodes displayed in the browser; clicking on + expands the node, while clicking on – collapses the node.

```
def boxpress(self, event=None):
    if self.state == 'expanded':
        self.state = 'collapsed'
    elif self.state == 'collapsed':
        self.state = 'expanded'
    self.tree.display()
```

- ⑦ If the node is not currently selected, invoke supports an action assigned to either clicking or double-clicking on a node in the tree. For example, it might open the file using an appropriate target.

```
def invoke(self, event=None):
    if not self.selected:
        self.tree.deselectall()
        self.selected = 1
        self.tree.display()
    if self.action:
        self.action(self.name)
    self.name = self.text.get()
    self.text.config(width=len(self.name)+2)
```

### Example 8 10.py (continued)

```
def displayIconText(self):  
    tree, text = self.tree, self.text  
    ⑧  
    if self.selected and self.openicon:  
        self.pic = tree.create_image(self.x, self.y,  
                                     image=self.openicon)  
    else:  
        self.pic = tree.create_image(self.x, self.y,  
                                     image=self.icon)  
  
    text.place(x=self.x+self.width/2, y=self.y, anchor=W)
```

```

text.bind("<ButtonPress-1>", self.invoke)
tree.tag_bind(self.pic, "<ButtonPress-1>", self.invoke, "+")
text.bind("<Double-Button-1>", self.boxpress)
tree.tag_bind(self.pic, "<Double-Button-1>",
              self.boxpress, "+")

def displayRoot(self):
    if self.state == 'expanded':
        for child in self.child:
            child.display()
    self.displayIconText()

def displayLeaf(self): ❾
    self.tree.hline(self.y, self.master.x+1, self.x)
    self.tree.vline(self.master.x, self.master.y, self.y)
    self.displayIconText()

def displayBranch(self): ❿
    master, tree = self.master, self.tree
    x, y = self.x, self.y
    tree.hline(y, master.x, x)
    tree.vline(master.x, master.y, y)
    if self.state == 'expanded' and self.child != []:
        for child in self.child:
            child.display()
        box = tree.create_image(master.x, y,
                               image=tree.minusnode)
    elif self.state == 'collapsed' and self.child != []:
        box = tree.create_image(master.x, y,
                               image=tree.plusnode)
    tree.tag_bind(box, "<ButtonPress-1>", self.boxpress, "+")
    self.displayIconText()

def findLowestChild(self, node): ❻
    if node.state == 'expanded' and node.child != []:
        return self.findLowestChild(node.child[-1])
    else:
        return node

def display(self):
    master, tree = self.master, self.tree
    n = master.child.index(self)
    self.x = master.x + self.width
    if n == 0:
        self.y = master.y + (n+1)*self.height
    else:
        previous = master.child[n-1]
        self.y = self.findLowestChild(previous).y + self.height

    if master == tree:
        self.displayRoot()
    elif master.state == 'expanded':
        if self.child == []:
            self.displayLeaf()
        else:
            self.displayBranch()

```

```

tree.lower('line')

class Tree(Canvas):
    def __init__(self, master, icon, openicon, treename, action,
                 bg='white', relief='sunken', bd=2,
                 linecolor="#808080", textcolor='black',
                 font=('MS Sans Serif', 8)):
        Canvas.__init__(self, master, bg=bg, relief=relief, bd=bd,
                        highlightthickness=0)
        self.pack(side='left', anchor=NW, fill='both', expand=1)

        self.bg, self.font = bg, font
        self.linecolor, self.textcolor = linecolor, textcolor
        self.master = master
        self.plusnode = PhotoImage(file=os.path.join(path, 'plusnode.gif'))
        self.minusnode = PhotoImage(file=os.path.join(path, 'minusnode.gif'))
        self.inhibitDraw = 1 12
        self.imageLabel = None
        self.imageData = None
        self.child = []
        self.x = self.y = -10

        self.child.append( Node( self, self, action=action,
                               icon=icon, openicon=openicon, name=treename) )

    def display(self):
        if self.inhibitDraw: return
        self.delete(ALL)
        for child in self.child:
            child.textForget()
            child.display()

    def deselectall(self):
        for child in self.child:
            child.deselect()

    def vline(self, x, y, y1): 13
        for i in range(0, abs(y-y1), 2):
            self.create_line(x, y+i, x, y+i+1, fill=self.linecolor,
                             tags='line')

    def hline(self, y, x, x1):
        for i in range(0, abs(x-x1), 2):
            self.create_line(x+i, y, x+i+1, y, fill=self.linecolor,
                             tags='line')

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- 8** `displayIconText` displays the open or closed icon and the text associated with the node, and it binds single- and double-button-clicks to the text field:

```

def displayIconText(self):
    tree, text = self.tree, self.text
    if self.selected and self.openicon:
        self.pic = tree.create_image(self.x, self.y,
                                     image=self.openicon)

```

```

...
text.bind("<ButtonPress-1>", self.invoke)
tree.tag_bind(self.pic, "<ButtonPress-1>", self.invoke, "+")
text.bind("<Double-Button-1>", self.boxpress)
tree.tag_bind(self.pic, "<Double-Button-1>",
              self.boxpress, "+")

```

- 9 displayLeaf draws a horizontal and vertical line connecting the icon with the current place in the tree:

```

def displayLeaf(self):
    self.tree.hline(self.y, self.master.x+1, self.x)
    self.tree.vline(self.master.x, self.master.y, self.y)
    self.displayIconText()

```

- 10 Similarly, displayBranch draws the lines and an open or closed box:

```

def displayBranch(self):
    master, tree = self.master, self.tree
    x, y = self.x, self.y
    tree.hline(y, master.x, x)
    tree.vline(master.x, master.y, y)
    if self.state == 'expanded' and self.child != []:
        for child in self.child:
            child.display()
        box = tree.create_image(master.x, y,
                               image=tree.minusnode)
    elif self.state == 'collapsed' and self.child != []:
        box = tree.create_image(master.x, y,
                               image=tree.plusnode)
    tree.tag_bind(box, "<ButtonPress-1>", self.boxpress, "+")
    self.displayIconText()

```

- 11 findLowestChild is a recursive method that finds the lowest terminal child in a given branch:

```

def findLowestChild(self, node):
    if node.state == 'expanded' and node.child != []:
        return self.findLowestChild(node.child[-1])
    else:
        return node

```

- 12 We define a flag called inhibitDraw to prevent the tree from being redrawn every time we add a node. This speeds up the time it takes to construct a complex tree by saving many CPU cycles:

```
self.inhibitDraw = 1
```

- 13 vline and hline are simple routines to draw vertical and horizontal lines:

```

def vline(self, x, y, y1):
    for i in range(0, abs(y-y1), 2):
        self.create_line(x, y+i, x, y+i+1, fill=self.linecolor,
                         tags='line')

```

### **Example\_8\_10.py (continued)**

```

class ImageBrowser(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea=1

```

```

appname = 'Image Browser'
def createButtons(self):
    self.buttonAdd('Ok',
                   helpMessage='Exit',
                   statusMessage='Exit',
                   command=self.quit)

def createMain(self):
    self.panes = self.createComponent('panes', (), None,
                                      Pmw.PanedWidget,
                                      (self.interior(),),
                                      orient='horizontal')
    self.panes.add('browserpane', min=150, size=160)
    self.panes.add('displaypane', min=.1)

    f = os.path.join(path, 'folder.gif')
    of = os.path.join(path, 'openfolder.gif')
    self.browser = self.createComponent('browse', (), None,
                                       Tree,
                                       (self.panes.pane('browserpane'),),
                                       icon=f,
                                       openicon=of,
                                       treename='Multimedia',
                                       action=None)
    self.browser.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=Y)

    self.datasite = self.createComponent('datasite', (), None,
   Frame,
   (self.panes.pane('displaypane'),))

    self.datasite.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

    f = os.path.join(path, 'folder.gif')                                ⑯
    of = os.path.join(path, 'openfolder.gif')
    gf = os.path.join(path, 'gif.gif')
    jf = os.path.join(path, 'jpg.gif')
    xf = os.path.join(path, 'other.gif')

    self.browser.inhibitDraw = 1

    top=self.browser.child[0]
    top.state='expanded'
    jpeg=top.addChild(self.browser, icon=f, openicon=of,
                      name='Jpeg',action=None)
    gif=top.addChild(self.browser, icon=f, openicon=of,
                     name='GIF', action=None)
    other=top.addChild(self.browser, icon=f, openicon=of,
                       name='Other', action=None)

    imageDir = { '.jpg': (jpeg, jf), '.jpeg': (jpeg, jf),
                 '.gif': (gif, gf), '.bmp': (other, xf),
                 '.ppm': (other, xf) }   ⑯

    files = os.listdir(imgs)
    for file in files:
        r, ext = os.path.splitext(file)                                ⑰

```

```

        cont, icon = imageDir.get(ext, (None, None))
        if cont:
            cont.addChild(self.browser, icon=icon,
                          name=file, action=self.showMe)
    self.browser.inhibitDraw = 0
    self.browser.display()
    self.panes.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

def createImageDisplay(self):
    self.imageDisplay = self.createComponent('image', (), None,
   Label,
   (self.datasite,))
    self.browser.imageLabel = self.imageDisplay
    self.browser.imageData= None
    self.imageDisplay.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.createMain()
    self.createImageDisplay()

def showMe(self, dofile):
    if self.browser.imageData: del self.browser.imageData
    self.browser.imageData = ImageTk.PhotoImage(\n
        Image.open('%s%s' % \
                   (imgs, dofile)))
    self.browser.imageLabel['image'] = self.browser.imageData

if __name__ == '__main__':
    imageBrowser = ImageBrowser()
    imageBrowser.run()

```

18

### *Code comments (continued)*

- 14 We define all of the icons that may be displayed for each file type:

```

f  = os.path.join(path, 'folder.gif')
of = os.path.join(path, 'openfolder.gif')
gf = os.path.join(path, 'gif.gif')
jf = os.path.join(path, 'jpg.gif')
xf = os.path.join(path, 'other.gif')

```

- 15 Now the root of the tree is created and we populate the root with the supported image types:

```

top=self.browser.child[0]
top.state='expanded'
jpeg=top.addChild(self.browser, icon=f, openicon=of,
                  name='Jpeg',action=None)
...

```

- 16 We create a dictionary to provide translation from file extensions to an appropriate image type and icon (dictionaries are an efficient way of determining properties of an object which have varied processing requirements).

```

imageDir = { '.jpg': (jpeg, jf), '.jpeg': (jpeg, jf),
            '.gif': (gif, gf), '.bmp': (other, xf),
            '.ppm': (other, xf)}

```

- ⑯ We scan the disk, finding all files with recognizable extensions and add the nodes to the tree:

```
files = os.listdir(imgs)
for file in files:
    r, ext = os.path.splitext(file)
    cont, icon = imageDir.get(ext, (None, None))
    if cont:
        cont.addChild(self.browser, icon=icon,
                      name=file, action=self.showMe)
```

This code would probably be a little more complex in reality; I can see a couple of potential problems as I'm writing this (I could write "I leave this as an exercise for you to identify problems with this code").

- ⑰ Once the tree has been built, we reset the `inhibitDraw` flag and display the tree:

```
self.browser.inhibitDraw = 0
self.browser.display()
```

That probably seems like a lot of code, but the resulting browser provides a highly-acceptable interface. In addition, users will understand the interface's navigation and it is readily adaptable to a wide range of data models.

Running Example\_8\_10.py (with a Python built with PIL) will display a screen similar to the one in figure 8.11.

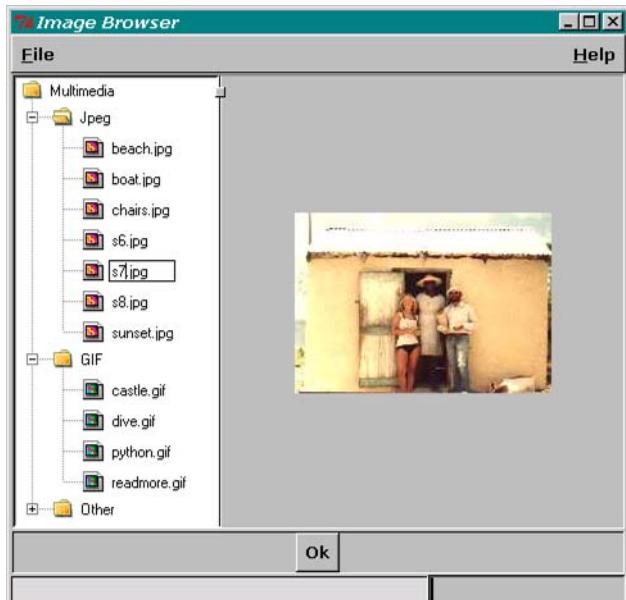


Figure 8.11 Image browser

## 8.6 Wizards

Windows 95/98/NT users have become familiar with wizard interfaces since they have become prevalent with installation and configuration tools. Wizards guide the user through a sequence of steps, and they allow forward and backward navigation. In many respects they are similar to Notebooks, except for their ordered access as opposed to the random access of the Notebook.

This example illustrates a wizard that supports software installation. WizardShell.py is derived from AppShell.py, but it has sufficient differences to preclude inheriting AppShell's properties. However, much of the code is similar to AppShell and is not presented here; the complete source is available online.

### WizardShell.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import sys, string

class WizardShell(Pmw.MegaWidget):
    wizversion= '1.0'
    wizname   = 'Generic Wizard Frame'
    wizimage= 'wizard.gif'

    panes      = 4 ❶

    def __init__(self, **kw):
        optiondefs = (
            ('framewidth',    1,           Pmw.INITOPT),
            ('frameheight',   1,           Pmw.INITOPT))
        self.defineoptions(kw, optiondefs)

        # setup panes ❷
        self.pCurrent = 0
        self.pFrame = [None] * self.panes

    def wizardInit(self):
        # Called before interface is created (should be overridden).
        pass ❸

    def __createWizardArea(self):
        self.__wizardArea = self.createComponent('wizard', (), None,
  Frame, (self._hull,),)
        self.__illustration = self.createComponent('illust', (), None,
  Label, (self.__wizardArea,))
        self.__illustration.pack(side=LEFT, expand=NO, padx=20)
        self.__wizimage = PhotoImage(file=self.wizimage)
        self.__illustration['image'] = self.__wizimage

        self.__dataArea = self.createComponent('dataarea', (), None,
  Frame, (self.__wizardArea,),)
        self.__dataArea['relief']=FLAT, bd=1

        self.__dataArea.pack(side=LEFT, fill = 'both', expand = YES)
```

```

        self.__wizardArea.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)

    def __createSeparator(self):
        self.__separator = self.createComponent('separator', (), None,
  Frame,(self._hull,),,
  relief=SUNKEN,
  bd=2, height=2)
        self.__separator.pack(fill=X, expand=YES)

    def __createCommandArea(self):
        self.__commandFrame = self.createComponent('commandframe', (), None,
  Frame,(self._hull,),,
  relief=FLAT, bd=1)
        self.__commandFrame.pack(side=TOP, expand=NO, fill=X)

    def interior(self):
        return self.__dataArea

    def changePicture(self, gif):
        self.__wizimage = PhotoImage(file=gif)
        self.__illustration['image'] = self.__wizimage

    def buttonAdd(self, buttonName, command=None, state=1): ❸
        frame = Frame(self.__commandFrame)
        newBtn = Button(frame, text=buttonName, command=command)
        newBtn.pack()
        newBtn['state'] = [DISABLED,NORMAL][state]
        frame.pack(side=RIGHT, ipadx=5, ipady=5)
        return newBtn

    def __createPanes(self): ❹
        for i in range(self.panes):
            self.pFrame[i] = self.createComponent('pframe', (), None,
  Frame,(self.interior(),),
  relief=FLAT, bd=1)
            if not i == self.pCurrent:
                self.pFrame[i].forget()
            else:
                self.pFrame[i].pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)

    def pInterior(self, idx): ❺
        return self.pFrame[idx]

    def next(self): ❻
        cpane = self.pCurrent
        self.pCurrent = self.pCurrent + 1
        self.prevB['state'] = NORMAL
        if self.pCurrent == self.panes - 1:
            self.nextB['text'] = 'Finish'
            self.nextB['command'] = self.done
        self.pFrame[cpane].forget()
        self.pFrame[self.pCurrent].pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)

    def prev(self): ❼
        cpane = self.pCurrent
        self.pCurrent = self.pCurrent - 1

```

```

        if self.pCurrent <= 0:
            self.pCurrent = 0
            self.prevB['state'] = DISABLED
        if cpane == self.panes - 1:
            self.nextB['text'] = 'Next'
            self.nextB['command'] = self.next
        self.pFrame[cpane].forget()
        self.pFrame[self.pCurrent].pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)

    def done(self):
        #to be Overridden
        pass

    def __createInterface(self):
        self.__createWizardArea()
        self.__createSeparator()
        self.__createCommandArea()
        self.__createPanes()
        self.busyWidgets = (self.root, )
        self.createInterface()

class TestWizardShell(WizardShell):
    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Cancel', command=self.quit)          ❸
        self.nextB = self.buttonAdd('Next', command=self.next)
        self.prevB = self.buttonAdd('Prev', command=self.prev, state=0)

    def createMain(self):
        self.w1 = self.createComponent('w1', (), None,
                                      Label, (self.pInterior(0),),
                                      text='Wizard Area 1')
        self.w1.pack()
        self.w2 = self.createComponent('w2', (), None,
                                      Label, (self.pInterior(1),),
                                      text='Wizard Area 2')
        self.w2.pack()

    def createInterface(self):
        WizardShell.createInterface(self)
        self.createButtons()
        self.createMain()

    def done(self):          ❹
        print 'All Done'

if __name__ == '__main__':
    test = TestWizardShell()
    test.run()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ WizardShell uses AppShell's class variables, adding panes to define the number of discrete steps to be presented in the wizard.

```

class WizardShell(Pmw.MegaWidget):
    panes      = 4

```

- ② We initialize an empty pane for each step and initialize for the first step:

```
    self.pCurrent = 0
    self.pFrame = [None] * self.panes
```

- ③ The main WizardArea is created:

```
def __createWizardArea(self):
    ...
def __createSeparator(self):
    ...
def __createCommandArea(self):
    ...
    ...
```

Then, a Separator and a CommandArea are added.

- ④ buttonAdd is slightly more comprehensive than AppShell's since we have to enable and disable the next and prev buttons as we move through the sequence:

```
def buttonAdd(self, buttonName, command=None, state=1):
    frame = Frame(self.__commandFrame)
    newBtn = Button(frame, text=buttonName, command=command)
    newBtn.pack()
    newBtn['state'] = [DISABLED, NORMAL][state]
    frame.pack(side=RIGHT, ipadx=5, ipady=5)
    return newBtn
```

- ⑤ Now we create a pane for each step, packing the current frame and forgetting all others so that they are not displayed:

```
def __createPanes(self):
    for i in range(self.panes):
        self.pFrame[i] = self.createComponent('pframe', (), None,
   Frame, (self.interior(),),
   relief=FLAT, bd=1)
        if not i == self.pCurrent:
            self.pFrame[i].forget()
        else:
            self.pFrame[i].pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
```

- ⑥ Similar to the convention to define an interior method, we define the pInterior method to give access to individual panes in the wizard:

```
def pInterior(self, idx):
    return self.pFrame[idx]
```

- ⑦ The next and prev methods forget the current pane and pack the next pane, changing the state of buttons as appropriate and changing the labels as necessary:

```
def next(self):
    cpane = self.pCurrent
    self.pCurrent = self.pCurrent + 1
    self.prevB['state'] = NORMAL
    if self.pCurrent == self.panes - 1:
        self.nextB['text'] = 'Finish'
        self.nextB['command'] = self.done
    self.pFrame[cpane].forget()
    self.pFrame[self.pCurrent].pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
```

- ⑧ Unlike AppShell, we have to store references to the control buttons so that we can manipulate their state and labels:

```

class TestWizardShell(WizardShell):
    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Cancel', command=self.quit)
        self.nextB = self.buttonAdd('Next', command=self.next)
        self.prevB = self.buttonAdd('Prev', command=self.prev, state=0)

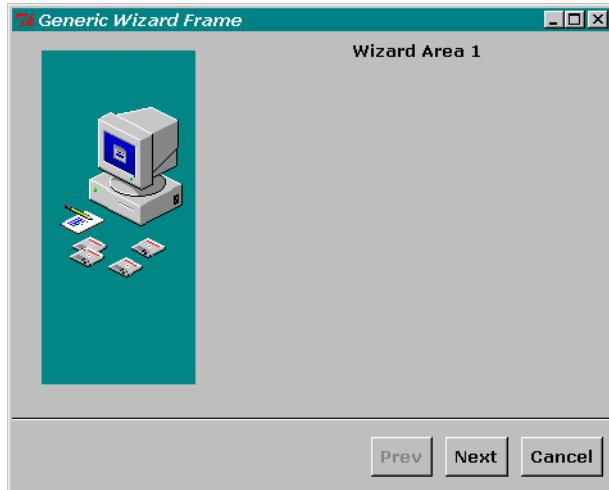
```

- ➊ The done method is clearly intended to be overridden!

```

    def done(self):
        print 'All Done'

```



**Figure 8.12 Wizard**

If you run wizardshell.py, you'll see the basic shell shown in figure 8.12. Now we need to populate the wizard. Here is an example installation sequence:

### Example\_8\_11.py

```

from Tkinter import *
import Pmw
import sys, string
import WizardShell

class Installer(WizardShell.WizardShell):
    wizname = 'Install Widgets'
    panes= 4

    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Cancel', command=self.quit, state=1)
        self.nextB = self.buttonAdd('Next', command=self.next, state=1)
        self.prevB = self.buttonAdd('Prev', command=self.prev, state=0)

    def createTitle(self, idx, title):
        ①
        label = self.createComponent('l%d' % idx, (), None,
                                     Label,(self.pInterior(idx),),
                                     text=title,

```

```

        font=('verdana', 18, 'bold', 'italic'))
label.pack()
return label

def createExplanation(self, idx):
    text = self.createComponent('t%d' % idx, (), None,
                               Text, (self.pInterior(idx),),
                               bd=0, wrap=WORD, height=6)
    fd = open('install%d.txt' % (idx+1))
    text.insert(END, fd.read())
    fd.close()
    text.pack(pady=15)

def createPanelOne(self):
    self.createTitle(0, 'Welcome!')
    self.createExplanation(0)

def createPanelTwo(self):
    self.createTitle(1, 'Select Destination\nDirectory')
    self.createExplanation(1)
    frame = Frame(self.pInterior(1), bd=2, relief=GROOVE)
    self.entry = Label(frame, text='C:\\Widgets\\WidgetStorage',
                       font=('Verdana', 10))
    self.entry.pack(side=LEFT, padx=10)
    self.btn = Button(frame, text='Browse...')
    self.btn.pack(side=LEFT, ipadx=5, padx=5, pady=5)
    frame.pack()

def createPanelThree(self):
    self.createTitle(2, 'Select Components')
    self.createExplanation(2)
    frame = Frame(self.pInterior(2), bd=0)
    idx = 0
    for label, size in [ ('Monkey', '526k'), ('Aardvark', '356k'),
                         ('Warthog', '625k'),
                         ('Reticulated Python', '432k') ]:
        ck = Checkbutton(frame).grid(row=idx, column=0)
        lbl = Label(frame, text=label).grid(row=idx, column=1,
   columnspan=4, sticky=W)
        siz = Label(frame, text=size).grid(row=idx, column=5)
        idx = idx + 1
    frame.pack()

def createPanelFour(self):
    self.createTitle(3, 'Finish Installation')
    self.createExplanation(3)

def createInterface(self):
    WizardShell.WizardShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.createPanelOne()
    self.createPanelTwo()
    self.createPanelThree()
    self.createPanelFour()

def done(self):

```

```

print 'This is where the work starts!'

if __name__ == '__main__':
    install = Installer()
    install.run()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We begin by defining some routines to perform common tasks. Each of the wizard panes has a title:

```

def createTitle(self, idx, title):
    label = self.createComponent('l%d' % idx, (), None,
                                Label, (self.pInterior(idx),),
                                text=title,
                                font=('verdana', 18, 'bold', 'italic'))
    label.pack()
    return label

```

- ❷ Wizards need to supply concise and clear directions to the user; this routine formats the information appropriately using a regular Tkinter `Text` widget—the text is read from a file:

```

def createExplanation(self, idx):
    text = self.createComponent('t%d' % idx, (), None,
                               Text, (self.pInterior(idx),),
                               bd=0, wrap=WORD, height=6)
    fd = open('install%d.txt' % (idx+1))
    text.insert(END, fd.read())
    fd.close()
    text.pack(pady=15)

```

- ❸ Each pane in the wizard is constructed separately—here is an example:

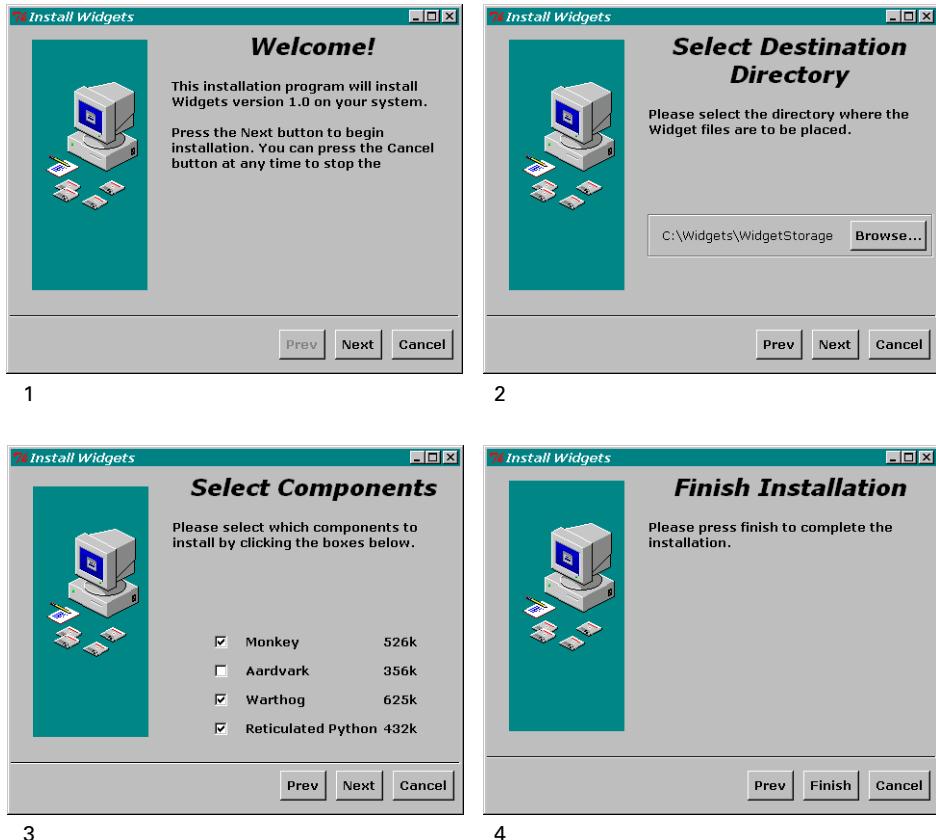
```

def createPanelTwo(self):
    self.createTitle(1, 'Select Destination\nDirectory')
    self.createExplanation(1)
    frame = Frame(self.pInterior(1), bd=2, relief=GROOVE)
    self.entry = Label(frame, text='C:\\Widgets\\WidgetStorage',
                      font=('Verdana', 10))
    self.entry.pack(side=LEFT, padx=10)
    self.btn = Button(frame, text='Browse...')
    self.btn.pack(side=LEFT, ipadx=5, padx=5, pady=5)
    frame.pack()

```

- ❹ This example is still a bit of a cheat because the `done` function still does not do very much! (However, I'm sure that you've got the idea by now!)

Figure 8.13 shows the sequence supported by the wizard. Screens such as these will clearly give a polished image for an installation program.



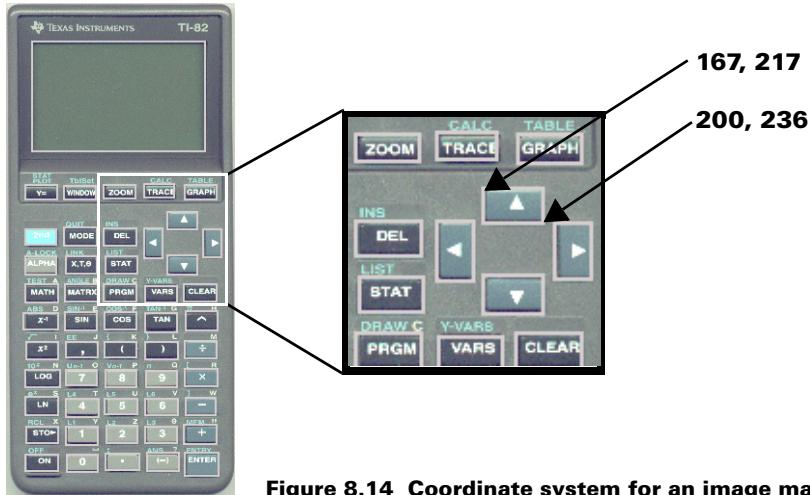
**Figure 8.13 An installation wizard**

## 8.7 Image maps

The final topic in this chapter presents an input technique which is typically used with web pages; image maps associate actions with clickable areas on an image. You could argue that this topic belongs in “Panels and machines” on page 199, but I am including it here since it is a viable method for getting input from the user.

If you take a look at “Building an application” on page 18 again, you will remember how a simple calculator was constructed using button widgets to bind user input to calculator functions. The application could be reworked using an image map; the major motivation for this would be to increase the realism of the interface by presenting an image of the calculator rather than a drawing.

One of the problems of creating image maps is that without a tool to define the targets for the map, it can be a time-consuming task to measure and input all of the coordinates. Take a look at figure 8.14. The area around each of the buttons (the targets for this case) have been out-



**Figure 8.14 Coordinate system for an image map**

lined in gray. The enlarged section shows the arrow keys in a little more detail. For each target, we need to determine the x-y coordinate of the top-left-hand corner and the x-y coordinate of the bottom-right-hand corner; together they define the rectangular area containing the button.

The next example demonstrates how a simple tool can be constructed to first collect the coordinates of rectangular areas on an image, and then to generate a simple program to test the image map. This example supports only rectangular targets; you may wish to extend it to support polygonal and other target shapes.

### Example\_8\_12.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import sys, string
class MakeImageMap:

    def __init__(self, master, file=None):
        self.root = master
        self.root.title("Create Image Map")
        self.rubberbandBox = None
        self.coordinatedata = []
        self.file = file

        self.img = PhotoImage(file=file)
        self.width  = self.img.width()
        self.height = self.img.height()

        self.canvas = Canvas(self.root, width=self.width,
                             height=self.height)
        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=0)
        self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW, image=self.img)

        self.frame1 = Frame(self.root, bd=2, relief=Raised)
        self.frame1.pack(fill=X)
```

1

```

        self.reference = Entry(self.frame1, width=12)
        self.reference.pack(side=LEFT, fill=X, expand=1)
        self.add = Button(self.frame1, text='Add', command=self.addMap)
        self.add.pack(side=RIGHT, fill=None, expand=0)
        self.frame2 = Frame(self.root, bd=2, relief=Raised)
        self.frame2.pack(fill=X)
        self.done = Button(self.frame2, text='Build ImageMap',
                           command=self.buildMap)
        self.done.pack(side=TOP, fill=None, expand=0)

    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button-1>", self.mouseDown) ②
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-Motion>", self.mousePosition)
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-ButtonRelease>", self.mouseUp)

def mouseDown(self, event): ③
    self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)

def mouseMotion(self, event): ④
    x = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    y = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)

    if (self.startx != event.x) and (self.starty != event.y) :
        self.canvas.delete(self.rubberbandBox)
        self.rubberbandBox = self.canvas.create_rectangle(
            self.startx, self.starty, x, y, outline='white', width=2)
        self.root.update_idletasks() ⑤

def mouseUp(self, event): ⑥
    self.endx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.endy = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    self.reference.focus_set()
    self.reference.selection_range(0, END)

def addMap(self): ⑦
    self.coordinatedata.append(self.reference.get(),
                                self.startx, self.starty,
                                self.endx, self.endy)

def buildMap(self): ⑧
    filename = os.path.splitext(self.file)[0]
    ofd = open('%s.py' % filename, 'w')
    ifd = open('image1.inp') ⑨
    lines = ifd.read()
    ifd.close()
    ofd.write(lines)

    for ref, sx,sy, ex,ey in self.coordinatedata:
        ofd.write("    self.iMap.addRegion(((%5.1f,%5.1f), "
                  " (%5.1f,%5.1f)), '%s')\n" % (sx,sy, ex,ey, ref)) ⑩

    ofd.write('\n%s\n' % ('#'*70))
    ofd.write('if __name__ == "__main__":\n')
    ofd.write('    root = Tk()\n')
    ofd.write('    root.title("%s")\n' % self.file)
    ofd.write('    imageTest = ImageTest(root, width=%d, height=%d, '

```

```

        'file="%s")\n' % (self.width, self.height, self.file))
        ofd.write('    imageTest.root.mainloop()\n')
        ofd.close()
        self.root.quit()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    file = sys.argv[1]
    root = Tk()
    makeImageMap = MakeImageMap(root, file=file)
    makeImageMap.root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- 1 The first task is to determine the size of the image to be mapped. Since we want to display the image on a canvas, we cannot just load the image, because the canvas will not resize to fit the image. Therefore, get the size of the image and size the canvas appropriately:

```

self.img = PhotoImage(file=file)
self.width = self.img.width()
self.height = self.img.height()

```

- 2 Our tool implements a simple graphic selection rectangle to show the selected target area. We bind functions to mouse button press and release and also to mouse motion:

```

Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button-1>", self.mouseDown)
Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-Motion>", self.mousePosition)
Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-ButtonRelease>", self.mouseUp)

```

- 3 `mouseDown` converts the x- and y-screen coordinates of the mouse button press to coordinates relative to the canvas, which corresponds to the image coordinates:

```

def mouseDown(self, event):
    self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)

```

- 4 `mouseMotion` continuously updates the size of the selection rectangle with the current coordinates:

```

def mouseMotion(self, event):
    x = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    y = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)

    if (self.startx != event.x) and (self.starty != event.y) :
        self.canvas.delete(self.rubberbandBox)
        self.rubberbandBox = self.canvas.create_rectangle(
            self.startx, self.starty, x, y, outline='white', width=2)

```

- 5 Each time we update the selection rectangle, we have to call `update_idletasks` to display the changes. Doing a drag operation such as this causes a flood of events as the mouse moves, so we need to make sure that the screen writes get done in a timely fashion:

```
    self.root.update_idletasks()
```

- 6 When the mouse button is released, we convert the coordinates of the finishing location and set focus to the entry widget to collect the identity of the map:

```

def mouseUp(self, event):
    self.endx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.endy = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    self.reference.focus_set()
    self.reference.selection_range(0, END)

```

- 7 Once the map ID has been entered, clicking the Add button adds the ID and the map coordinates to the list of map entries:

```
def addMap(self):
    self.coordinatedata.append(self.reference.get(),
                                self.startx, self.starty,
                                self.endx, self.endy)
```

- 8 When the Build button is pressed, we generate a Python file to test the image map:

```
def buildMap(self):
    filename = os.path.splitext(self.file)[0]
    ofd = open('%s.py' % filename, 'w')
```

- 9 The first section of the code is boilerplate, so it can be read in from a file:

```
ifd = open('image1.inp', 'r')
lines = ifd.readlines()
ifd.close()
ofd.writelines(lines)
```

- 10 Then we generate an entry for each map collected previously:

```
for ref, sx,sy, ex,ey in self.coordinatedata:
    ofd.write("    self.iMap.addRegion(((%5.1f,%5.1f),"
              " (%5.1f,%5.1f)), '%s')\n" % (sx,sy, ex,ey, ref))
```

- 11 Finally, we add some code to launch the image map:

```
ofd.write('\n%s\n' % ('#'*70))
ofd.write('if __name__ == "__main__":\n')
ofd.write('    root = Tk()\n')
ofd.write('    root.title("%s")\n' % self.file)
ofd.write('    imageTest = ImageTest(root, width=%d, height=%d,"
              'file="%s")\n' % (self.width, self.height, self.file))
ofd.write('    imageTest.root.mainloop()\n')
ofd.close()
```

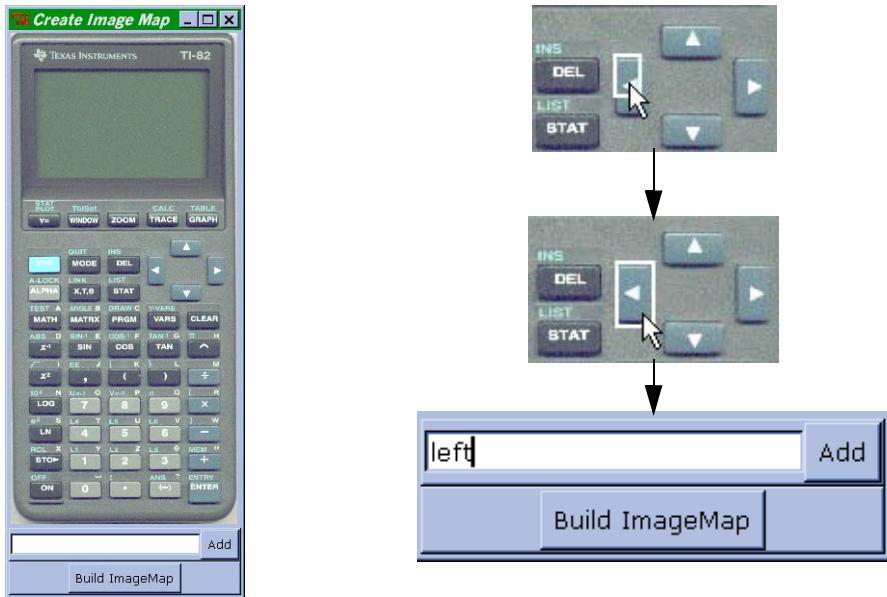
All you have to do is supply a GIF file and then drag the selection rectangle around each of the target regions. Give the region an identity and click the Add button. When you have identified all of the regions, click the Build button.

---

**Note**

This example illustrates how Python can be used to generate code from input data. Python is so easy to use and debug that it can be a valuable tool in building complex systems. If you take a little time to understand the structure of the target code, you can write a program to generate that code. Of course, this only works if you have to produce lots of replicated code segments, but it can save you a lot of time and effort!

---



**Figure 8.15 Creating an image map**

Let's take a quick look at the code generated by the tool.

### Calculator.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from imagemap import *
class ImageTest:

    def hit(self, event):
        self.infoVar.set(self.iMap.getRegion(event.x, event.y))

    def __init__(self, master, width=0, height=0, file=None):
        self.root = master
        self.root.option_add('*font', ('verdana', 12, 'bold'))
        self.iMap = ImageMap()

        self.canvas = Canvas(self.root, width=width, height=height)
        self.canvas.pack(side="top", fill=BOTH, expand='no')

        self.img = PhotoImage(file=file)
        self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW, image=self.img)
        self.canvas.bind('<Button-1>', self.hit)
        self.infoVar = StringVar()
        self.info = Entry(self.root, textvariable=self.infoVar)
        self.info.pack(fill=X)

        self.iMap.addRegion((( 61.0,234.0),( 96.0,253.0)), 'mode')
        self.iMap.addRegion(((104.0,234.0),(135.0,250.0)), 'del')
```

```

        self.iMap.addRegion((( 19.0,263.0),( 55.0,281.0)), 'alpha')
        self.iMap.addRegion(((-63.0,263.0),(-96.0,281.0)), 'x-t-phi')
        self.iMap.addRegion((-105.0,263.0),(-134.0,281.0)), 'stat')
# ----- Some lines removed for brevity-----
        self.iMap.addRegion((-24.0,467.0),(-54.0,488.0)), 'on')
        self.iMap.addRegion((-64.0,468.0),(-97.0,486.0)), '0')
        self.iMap.addRegion((-104.0,469.0),(-138.0,486.0)), '.')
        self.iMap.addRegion((-185.0,469.0),(-220.0,491.0)), 'enter')

if __name__ == "__main__":
    root = Tk()
    root.title("calculator.gif")
    imageTest = ImageTest(root, width=237, height=513,file="calculator.gif")
    imageTest.root.mainloop()

```

It's really quite simple. The image map uses the `ImageMap` class. This class can be readily extended to support regions other than rectangles:

### imagemap.py

```

class Region:
    def __init__(self, coords, ref):
        self.coords = coords
        self.ref    = ref

    def inside(self, x, y):
        isInside = 0
        if self.coords[0][0] <= x <= self.coords[1][0] and \
           self.coords[0][1] <= y <= self.coords[1][1]:
            isInside = 1
        return isInside

class ImageMap:
    def __init__(self):
        self.regions = []
        self.cache   = {}

    def addRegion(self, coords, ref):
        self.regions.append(Region(coords, ref))

    def getRegion(self, x, y):
        try:
            return self.cache[(x,y)]
        except KeyError:
            for region in self.regions: ④
                if region.inside(x, y) == 1:
                    self.cache[(x,y)] = region
                    return region.ref
            return None

```

---

### Code comments

- ① The `Region` class provides a container for the target regions:

```

class Region:
    def __init__(self, coords, ref):

```

```
    self.coords = coords
    self.ref     = ref
```

- ② Detecting when a button press occurs within a region is a simple test:

```
def inside(self, x, y):
    isInside = 0
    if self.coords[0][0] <= x <= self.coords[1][0] and \
       self.coords[0][1] <= y <= self.coords[1][1]:
        isInside = 1
    return isInside
```

- ③ When we attempt to find a region, we first look in the cache that is accumulated from previous lookups:

```
def getRegion(self, x, y):
    try:
        return self.cache[(x,y)]
```

- ④ If it is not in the cache, we have to search each of the regions in turn; we cache the map if we find it:

```
except KeyError:
    for region in self.regions:
        if region.inside(x, y) == 1:
            self.cache[(x,y)] = region
    return region.ref
```

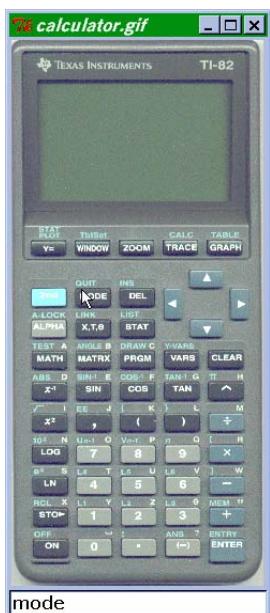


Figure 8.16 shows calculator.py in action.

## 8.8 Summary

This chapter has covered several types of forms and dialogs, ranging from simple fill-in-the-blank dialogs through browsers and wizards to image-mapping techniques. I hope that you will find sufficient material here so you can create forms appropriate for your own applications.

**Figure 8.16 Running calculator.py**



## C H A P T E R   9

---

# *Panels and machines*

|                                  |     |                                         |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1 Building a front panel       | 199 | 9.5 And now for a more complete example | 220 |
| 9.2 Modularity                   | 201 | 9.6 Virtual machines using POV-Ray      | 232 |
| 9.3 Implementing the front panel | 201 | 9.7 Summary                             | 236 |
| 9.4 GIF, BMP and overlays        | 215 |                                         |     |

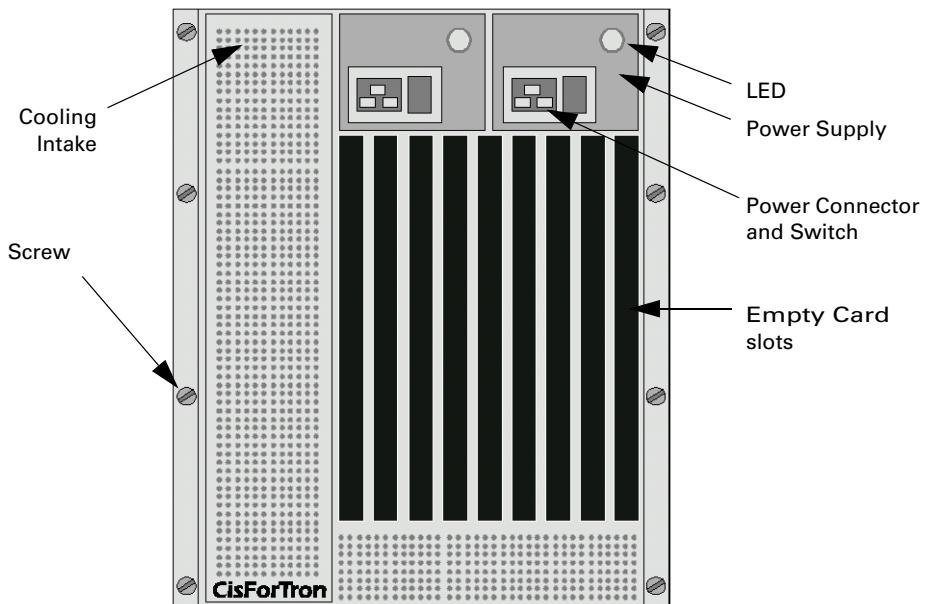
This chapter is where Tkinter gets to be FUN! (Maybe I should find a hobby!) Network management applications have set a standard for graphical formats; many hardware device manufacturers supply a software front-panel display showing the current state of LEDs, connectors and power supply voltages—anything that has a measurable value. In general, such devices are SNMP-capable, although other systems exist. This model may be extended to subjects which have no mechanical form—even database applications can have attractive interfaces. The examples presented in this chapter should be useful for an application developer needing a framework for alternative user interfaces.

### **9.1 *Building a front panel***

Let's construct a hypothetical piece of equipment. The task is to present a front-panel display of a switching system (perhaps an ATM switch or a router) to an administrator. The display will show the current state of the interfaces, line cards, processors and other components. For the purposes of the example, we shall assume that the device is SNMP-capable

and that the code to poll the devices agent and to receive and process traps will be developed independently from the GUI.

If this were not a hypothetical device, you would have either the equipment itself or some technical specifications for the device to work from. For this example, we can dream up almost anything! Figure 9.1 shows a line drawing for the equipment. The device has two power supplies, each with a power connector and an on/off switch along with an LED showing the status of the power supply (off, on or failed). There are nine empty card slots, which will be populated with a variety of cards, and there are passive decorations such as the air-intake screens and chassis-mounting screws. The card slots will be populated with a switch card, a processor card, an eight-port 10Base-T Ethernet card\*, a four-port FDDI card†, a two-channel T3 access card‡ and four high-speed serial cards. I'm not sure what this device is going to do, who will be configuring it, or who will be paying for it, but it should be fun conjuring it up!



**Figure 9.1 Hypothetical router/switch chassis**

---

\* The most widely installed Ethernet local area networks (LANs) use ordinary telephone twisted-pair wire. When used on Ethernet, this carrier medium is known as 10BASE-T. 10BASE-T supports Ethernet's 10 Mbps transmission speed.

† FDDI is a standard for data transmission on fiber optic lines in a local area network that can extend in range up to 200 km (124 miles).

‡ The T-3 line, a variant of the T-carrier system introduced by the Bell System in the USA in the 1960s, provides 44.736 Mbps. It is commonly used by internet service providers (ISPs).

Each of the cards has LEDs, connectors and passive components such as buttons, card-pullers and locking screws. Sounds like a lot? It is not as difficult as it may seem, on first analysis, and once the basic components have been built, you will observe a great deal of code reuse.

## 9.2 Modularity

In section 7.2 on page 129 we started to develop a class library of components such as LEDs, switches and other devices. In this chapter we are going to use an expanded library of indicators, connectors and panel devices. We will also make use of the built-in status methods of the composite widgets, which was only briefly noted in the previous examples. We will also introduce the topic of *navigation* in the GUI, (see “Navigation” on page 300) since our front panel should provide the administrator access to functionality bound to each of the graphical elements on the panel. A good example of such a binding is to warp the user to the list of alarms associated with an LED on the display or a configuration screen to allow him to set operational parameters for a selected port.

If you look again at figure 9.1, it is possible to identify a number of graphical components that must be developed to build the front panel. Although the configuration of each of the cards has not been revealed at this point, there are some “future” requirements for components to be displayed on the card which drives the following list:

- 1 A chassis consisting of the rack-mount extensions and base front panel along with passive components such as mounting screws.
- 2 Card slots which may be populated with a variety of cards.
- 3 A number of cards consisting of LEDs, connectors and other active devices along with the card front to mount the devices and other passive components such as card pullers and labels.
- 4 Power supply modules containing connectors, switches and LEDs.
- 5 Passive components such as the air-intake screens and the logo.
- 6 LEDs, connectors (J-45\*, BNC†, FDDI‡, J-25, J-50 and power) and power switches.

## 9.3 Implementing the front panel

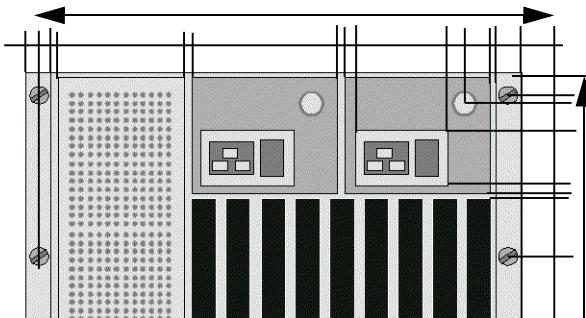
Some preparation work needs to be done to convert the notional front panel to a working system. In particular, it is necessary to calculate the sizes of screen components based on some scaling factors, since the majority of panels are much larger than typical computer screens. As the reader will observe in the following example code, the author tends to work with relative positioning on a *canvas*. This is a somewhat more difficult approach to widget placement

---

\* J connectors are typically used for serial connections. The number of pins available for connection is indicated by the suffix of the connector. Common connectors are J-9, J-25, and J-50.

† A Bayonet Neil-Concelman (BNC) connector is a type of connector used to connect using coaxial cable.

‡ FDDI connectors are used to connect fiber-optic lines and to normally connect a pair of cables, one for reception and one for transmission.



**Figure 9.2 Making router/switch chassis measurements**

When contrasted with using the *pack* or *grid* geometry managers. However, precise placement of graphical objects requires the precision of the *place* geometry manager.

The approach I took to implement this panel was to take a drawing of the panel and to perform some basic measurements. In figure 9.2, lines have been drawn marking the key dimensions that are needed to recreate a graphic representation. Making measurements on a drawing can be easier than performing the measurements on a real device. Overall width and height are measured in some standard units (such as inches or centimeters) and then the relative size of each of the rectangular objects and the relative offset of one corner of the object must be calculated. The offset is used for the placer calls in the code. The selected corner is the anchor for this call. It may appear to be a lot of work, but it takes just a few minutes to get the required information.

The example extends the class library to provide a number of new graphical elements; in the listings that follow, elements that have already been presented have been eliminated.

### Components\_1.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from GUICommon import *
from Common import *

class Screen(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, bg=Color.PANEL, height=1, width=1):
        self.screen_frame = Frame(master, width=width, height=height,
                                  bg=bg, bd=0)
        self.base = bg
        self.set_colors(self.screen_frame)
        radius = 4 # radius of an air hole
        ssize = radius*3 # spacing between holes

        rows = int(height/ssize)
        cols = int(width/ssize)

        self.canvas = Canvas(self.screen_frame, height=height, width=width,
                             bg=bg, bd=0, highlightthickness=0)

        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=NO)

        y = ssize - radius#
        for r in range(rows):
            x0 = ssize -radius
            for c in range(cols):
                x = x0 + (ssize*c)
```

1 creating an instance

2 Optimizing performance

```

        self.canvas.create_oval(x-radius, y-radius,
                               x+radius, y+radius,
                               fill=self.dbase,
                               outline=self.lbase)

y = y + ssize

class PowerConnector:
    def __init__(self, master, bg=Color.PANEL):
        self.socket_frame = Frame(master, relief="raised", width=60,
                                  height=40, bg=bg, bd=4)

        inside=Frame(self.socket_frame, relief="sunken", width=56,
                     height=36, bg=Color.INSIDE, bd=2)
        inside.place(relx=.5, rely=.5, anchor=CENTER)

        ground=Frame(inside, relief="raised", width=6, height=10,
                     bg=Color.CHROME, bd=2)
        ground.place(relx=.5, rely=.3, anchor=CENTER)

        p1=Frame(inside, relief="raised", width=6, height=10,
                  bg=Color.CHROME, bd=2)
        p1.place(relx=.25, rely=.7, anchor=CENTER)

        p2=Frame(inside, relief="raised", width=6, height=10,
                  bg=Color.CHROME, bd=2)
        p2.place(relx=.75, rely=.7, anchor=CENTER)

class PowerSwitch(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, label='I 0', base=Color.PANEL):
        self.base = base
        self.set_colors(master)

        self.switch_frame = Frame(master, relief="raised", width=45,
                                  height=28, bg=self.vlbase, bd=4)
        switch = Frame(self.switch_frame, relief="sunken", width=32,
                      height=22, bg=self.base, bd=2)
        switch.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)

        lbl=Label(switch, text=label, font=("Verdana", 10, "bold"),
                  fg='white', bd=0, bg=self.dbase)
        lbl.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)

class PowerSupply(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, width=160, height=130, bg=Color.PANEL,
                 status=STATUS_ON):
        self.base = bg
        self.set_colors(master)

        self.psu_frame = Frame(master, relief=SUNKEN, bg=self.dbase, bd=2,
                               width=width, height=height)

        Label(self.psu_frame, text='DC OK', fg='white',
              bg=self.dbase, font=('Verdana', 10, 'bold'), bd=0).place(relx=.8,
              rely=.15, anchor=ENTER)

        self.led = LED(self.psu_frame, height=12, width=12, shape=ROUND,
                      bg=self.dbase)

```

 **Calculating colors**

```

        self.led.led_frame.place(relx=0.8, rely=0.31, anchor=CENTER)

    lsub = Frame(self.psu_frame, width=width/1.2, height=height/2,
                 bg=self.dbase, bd=1, relief=GROOVE)
    lsub.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.68, anchor=CENTER)

    pwr=PowerConnector(lsub)
    pwr.socket_frame.place(relx=0.30, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)
    sw=PowerSwitch(lsub)
    sw.switch_frame.place(relx=0.75, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)

class Screw(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, diameter=18, base="gray40", bg=Color.PANEL):
        self.base = base

        basesize = diameter+6
        self.screw_frame = Frame(master, relief="flat", bg=bg, bd=0,
                               highlightthickness=0)
        self.set_colors(self.screw_frame)

        canvas=Canvas(self.screw_frame, width=basesize, height=basesize,
                      highlightthickness=0, bg=bg, bd=0)
        center = basesize/2
        r = diameter/2
        r2 = r - 4.0

        canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r, center+r, center+r,
                           fill=self.base, outline=self.lbase)
        canvas.create_rectangle(center-r2, center-0.2,
                               center+r2, center+0.2,
                               fill=self.dbase, width=0)
        canvas.create_rectangle(center-0.2, center-r2,
                               center+0.2, center+r2,
                               fill=self.dbase, width=0)
        canvas.pack(side="top", fill='x', expand='no')

class CardBlank(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master=None, width=20, height=396,
                 appearance="raised", bd=2, base=Color.CARD):
        self.base = base
        self.set_colors(master)
        self.card_frame=Frame(master, relief=appearance, height=height,
                              width=width, bg=base, bd=bd)

        top_pull = CardPuller(self.card_frame, CARD_TOP, width=width)
        top_pull.puller_frame.place(relx=.5, rely=0, anchor=N)

        bottom_pull = CardPuller(self.card_frame, CARD_BOTTOM, width=width)
        bottom_pull.puller_frame.place(relx=.5, rely=1.0, anchor=S)

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ In some of the earlier examples we used Tkinter's internal reference to the instance of the widgets, so the following was possible:

```
Button(parent, text='OK').pack(side=LEFT)
```

The structure of the code for this example requires that we make sure that instances of objects are unique. Each widget must keep references to its child widgets.

```
self.screen_frame = Frame(master, width=width, height=height,
                           bg=bg, bd=0)
```

This creates a specific instance of `screen_frame` within `self`.

- ② The air-intake screen illustrates the ease with which repeated graphical objects may be created. It also highlights the importance of careful code construction—it is easy to forget that Python is an interpreted language and it is important to ensure that code is constructed in a way that optimizes execution.

```
y = ssize - radius
for r in range(rows):
    x0 = ssize -radius
    for c in range(cols):
        x = x0 + (ssize*c)
        self.canvas.create_oval(x-radius, y-radius,
                               x+radius, y+radius,
                               fill=self.dbase,
                               outline=self.lbase)

    y = y + ssize
```

Some additional code might be appropriate here, since the first air intake is the “tall” by “narrow” case, but the lower intake has an opposite aspect. The loop could be improved by having the outer loop iterate over largest dimension to reduce some of the math operations in the inner loop. Of course, this would increase the code complexity and for many operations might be unnecessary, but is worth considering. Remember that a good C or C++ would optimize loops for you; *you* are Python’s optimizer!

- ③ `GUICommon.set_colors` has been extended to pass a widget to provide access to `winfo` early in the initializer.

```
def __init__(self, master, label='I 0', base=Color.PANEL):
    self.base = base
    self.set_colors(master)
```

In this case, the master container widget and base color have been passed in the constructor and are used to set the color variants for the object.

### Components\_1.py (continued)

```
class CardPuller(GUICommon):

    def __init__(self, master, torb, width=20):
        self.base = master['background']
        self.set_colors(master)
        self.puller_frame=Frame(master, width=width, height=32,
                               bg=self.lbase, relief='flat')

        Frame(self.puller_frame, width=width/8, height=8,
              bg=self.dbase).place(relx=1.0, rely=[1.0,0][torb],
                                    anchor=[SE,NE][torb])

        Frame(self.puller_frame, width=width/3, height=24,
              bg=self.vdbase).place(relx=1.0, rely=[0,1.0][torb],
```

4

5

```

        anchor=[NE,SE][torb])

Screw(self.puller_frame, diameter=10, base=self.base,
      bg=self.lbase).screw_frame.place(relx=0.3, rely=[0.2,0.8][torb],
      anchor=CENTER)

class Chassis:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self.outer=Frame(master, width=540, height=650,
                         borderwidth=2, bg=Color.PANEL)
        self.outer.forget()

        self.inner=Frame(self.outer, width=490, height=650,
                         borderwidth=2, relief=RAISED, bg=Color.PANEL)
        self.inner.place(relx=0.5, rely=0.5, anchor=CENTER)

        self.rack = Frame(self.inner, bd=2, width=325, height=416,
                           bg=Color.CHASSIS)
        self.rack.place(relx=0.985, rely=0.853, anchor=SE)

        incr = 325/9
        x = 0.0
        for i in range(9):
            card =CardBlank(self.rack, width=incr-1, height=414)
            card.card_frame.place(x=x, y=0, anchor=NW)
            x = x + incr

        self.img = PhotoImage(file='images/logo.gif')
        self.logo=Label(self.outer, image=self.img, bd=0)
        self.logo.place(relx=0.055, rely=0.992, anchor=SW)

        for x in [0.02, 0.98]:
            for y in [0.0444, 0.3111, 0.6555, 0.9711]:
                screw = Screw(self.outer, base="gray50")
                screw.screw_frame.place(relx=x, rely=y, anchor=CENTER)

        self.psul = PowerSupply(self.inner)
        self.psul.psu_frame.place(relx=0.99, rely=0.004, anchor=NE)
        self.ps2 = PowerSupply(self.inner)
        self.ps2.psu_frame.place(relx=0.65, rely=0.004, anchor=NE)

        self.ps2.led.turnoff()                                ❸ Deactivating LED

        screen1 = Screen(self.inner, width=150, height=600, bg=Color.PANEL)
        screen1.screen_frame.place(relx=0.16, rely=0.475, anchor=CENTER)
        screen2 = Screen(self.inner, width=330, height=80, bg=Color.PANEL)
        screen2.screen_frame.place(relx=0.988, rely=0.989, anchor=SE)

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ❹ In the CardPuller class we obtain the base color from the parent widget, rather than passing it in the constructor.

```

def __init__(self, master, torb, width=20):
    self.base = master['background']
    self.set_colors(master)

```

❻

❼

### Creating blank cards

❽

### Deactivating LED

- ⑤ We index into a list to obtain the y-coordinate and the anchor-position for the place call. This valuable technique is used in many examples throughout the book.

```
bg=self.dbase).place(relx=1.0, rely=[1.0,0][torb],
                     anchor=[SE,NE][torb])
```

- ⑥ If widgets are created in a complex GUI, there can be some somewhat ugly effects to the display if the window is realized. One of these effects is that with the pack or grid geometry managers, the widgets are readjusted several times as additional widgets are created. Another effect is that it takes longer to draw the widgets, since the system redraws the widgets several times as widget configurations change. The solution is to delay the realization of the outer container of the widget hierarchy:

```
self.outer.forget()
```

- ⑦ The loop populates the card rack with blank cards:

```
incr = 325/9
x = 0.0
for i in range(9):
    card =CardBlank(self.rack, width=incr-1, height=414)
    card.card_frame.place(x=x, y=0, anchor=NW)
    x = x + incr
```

- ⑧ Finally, we change the state of one of the LEDs on the display. You'll learn more about this later.

```
self.psu2.led.turnoff()
```

Since the front panel will be built incrementally, for the purpose of illustration, a separate module, FrontPanel\_1.py, is used to create the device.

## FrontPanel.py

```
#!/bin/env/python

from Tkinter import *
from Components_1 import *
from GUICommon import *
from Common import *

class Router(Frame):
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        Frame.__init__(self, master)
        Pack.config(self)
        self.createChassis()

    def createChassis(self):
        self.chassis = Chassis(self)
        # Realize the outer frame (which
        # was forgotten when created)
        self.chassis.outer.pack(expand=0)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Router()
    root.master.title("CisForTron")
    root.master.iconname("CisForTron")
    root.mainloop()
```

### ① Realize the frame

---

### *Code comments*

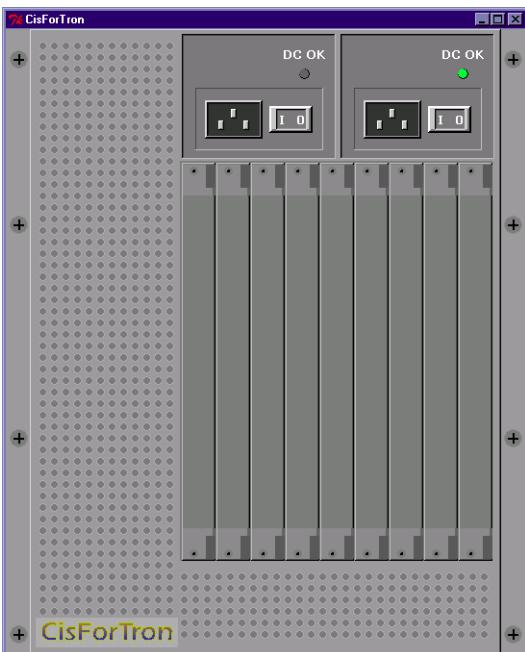
- ❶ If you examine the `__init__` method for each of the frames in the various classes in Components\_1.py, you will notice that there are no geometry-management calls. It would have been possible to pass the location to place the object or simply pack the object within the constructor, but the style of coding used here allows the user to have more control over widget geometry. This is especially true for the chassis frame; this widget was explicitly forgotten so that the screen updates are made before the chassis is realized. This improves performance considerably when a large number of graphic objects need to be drawn.

```
self.chassis.outer.pack(expand=0)
```

Here, the chassis frame is packed, realizing the widget and drawing the contained widgets. It does make a difference!

When FrontPanel.py is run, the screen shown in figure 9.3 is displayed. This display draws remarkably fast, even though we have to construct each of the air-screen holes individually. For highly computational or memory-intensive graphics which depict purely passive components, it is probably better to use GIF or bitmap images. Some aspects of this are discussed in “GIF, BMP and overlays” on page 215. Notice how we use the intrinsic three-dimensional properties of the widgets to create some depth in the display. In general, it is best to avoid trying to totally mimic the actual device and produce some level of abstraction.

Let’s create one of the cards that will populate the chassis. The T3 Access card has four BNC connectors (two pairs of Rx/Tx connectors), four LEDs for each pair of BNC connectors, and some identifying labels. Every card in the chassis has a power (PWR) and fault (FLT) LED.



**Figure 9.3 Basic router chassis**

Here is the code to construct a BNC connector:

### Components.py (fragment)

```
class BNC(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master, status=0, diameter=18,
                 port=-1, fid=''):
        self.base = master['background']
        self.hitID = fid
        self.status=status
        self.blink      = 0
        self.blinkrate   = 1
        self.on         = 0
        self.onState     = None
        self.Colors     = [None, Color.CHROME, Color.ON,
                           Color.WARN, Color.ALARM, '#00ffdd']

        basesize = diameter+6
        self.bnc_frame = Frame(master, relief="flat", bg=self.base,
                               bd=0, highlightthickness=0, takefocus=1)
        self.bnc_frame.pack(expand=0)
        self.bnc_frame.bind('<FocusIn>', self.focus_in) ①
        self.bnc_frame.bind('<FocusOut>', self.focus_out) ②

        self.canvas=Canvas(self.bnc_frame, width=basesize,
                           height=basesize, highlightthickness=0,
                           bg=self.base, bd=0)
        center = basesize/2
        r = diameter/2
        self.pins=self.canvas.create_rectangle(0, center+2, basesize-1,
   10, fill=Color.CHROME)
        self.bnc=self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r,
   center+r, center+r,
   fill=Color.CHROME,
   outline="black")
        r = r-3
        self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r, center+r, center+r,
                               fill=Color.INSIDE, outline='black')
        r = r-2
        self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r, center+r, center+r,
                               fill=Color.CHROME)
        r = r-3
        self.canvas.create_oval(center-r, center-r, center+r, center+r,
                               fill=Color.INSIDE, outline='black')

        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=X, expand=0)
        if self.hitID:
            self.hitID = '%s.%d' % (self.hitID, port)
            for widget in [self.bnc_frame]:
                widget.bind('<KeyPress-space>', self.panelMenu)
                widget.bind('<Button-1>', self.panelMenu)
            for widget in [self.canvas]:
                widget.bind('<1>', self.panelMenu)

    def focus_in(self, event):
        self.last_bg= self.canvas.itemcget(self.bnc, 'fill')
```

```

        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=Color.HIGHLIGHT)
        self.update()

    def focus_out(self, event):
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=self.last_bg)
        self.update()

    def update(self):
        # First do the blink, if set to blink
        if self.blink:
            if self.on:
                if not self.onState:
                    self.onState = self.status
                    self.status = STATUS_OFF
                    self.on = 0
                else:
                    if self.onState:
                        self.status = self.onState      # Current ON color
                        self.on = 1
            # now update the status
            self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=self.Colors[self.status])
            self.canvas.itemconfig(self.pins, fill=self.Colors[self.status])
            self.bnc_frame.update_idletasks()
            if self.blink:
                self.bnc_frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)

```

### *Code comments*

- ❶ This example uses the `GUICommon` mixin class to define basic methods for widget state manipulation.

```
class BNC(GUICommon):
```

- ❷ Here we bind callbacks to `FocusIn` and `FocusOut` events.

```
self.bnc_frame.bind('<FocusIn>', self.focus_in)
self.bnc_frame.bind('<FocusOut>', self.focus_out)
```

This binds the `focus_in` and `focus_out` functions to the widget so that if we tab into the widget or click the widget, we highlight it and enable the functions to be accessed.

- ❸ All of the graphical objects (LEDs, BNC, J and FDDI connectors) define a specific update method to change the appearance of the widget based upon current status. We need specialized methods to allow us to update the color of particular areas within the composite. This method is also responsible for blinking the widget at one-second intervals.

```

    def update(self):
        # First do the blink, if set to blink
        if self.blink:
            if self.on:
                if not self.onState:
                    self.onState = self.status
                    self.status = STATUS_OFF
                    self.on = 0
                else:
                    if self.onState:
                        self.status = self.onState      # Current ON color

```

```

        self.on = 1
    # now update the status
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=self.Colors[self.status])
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.pins, fill=self.Colors[self.status])
    self.bnc_frame.update_idletasks()
    if self.blink:
        self.bnc_frame.after(self.blinkrate * 1000, self.update)

```

Now, we complete the example by defining the layout of the T3 Access card:

```

class StandardLEDs(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master=None, bg=Color.CARD):
        for led, label, xpos, ypos, state in [ ('flt', 'Flt', 0.3, 0.88, 1),
  ('pwr', 'Pwr', 0.7, 0.88, 2)]:
            setattr(self, led, LED(self.card_frame, shape=ROUND, width=8,
                                   status=state, bg=bg))
            getattr(self, led).led_frame.place(relx=xpos, rely=ypos,
  anchor=CENTER)
            Label(self.card_frame, text=label, font=("verdana", 4),
                  fg="white", bg=bg).place(relx=xpos, rely=(ypos+0.028),
   anchor=CENTER)

class T3AccessCard(CardBlank, StandardLEDs):
    def __init__(self, master, width=1, height=1):
        CardBlank.__init__(self, master=master, width=width, height=height)
        bg=master['background']
        StandardLEDs.__init__(self, master=master, bg=bg)
        for port, lbl, tag, ypos in [ (1,'RX1','T3AccessRX', 0.30),
                                      (2,'TX1','T3AccessTX', 0.40),
                                      (3,'RX2','T3AccessRX', 0.65),
                                      (4,'TX2','T3AccessRX', 0.75)]:
            setattr(self, 'bnc%d' % port, BNC(self.card_frame,
  fid=tag, port=port))
            getattr(self, 'bnc%d' % port).bnc_frame.place(relx=0.5,
  rely=ypos, anchor=CENTER)
            Label(self.card_frame, text=lbl,
                  font=("verdana", 6), fg="white",
                  bg=bg).place(relx=0.5, rely=(ypos+0.045), anchor=CENTER)

        for led, lbl, xpos, ypos, state in [ ('rxc', 'RXC', 0.3, 0.18, 2),
   ('oos', 'OOS', 0.7, 0.18, 1),
   ('flt', 'FLT', 0.3, 0.23, 1),
   ('syn', 'SYN', 0.7, 0.23, 2),
   ('rxc', 'RXC', 0.3, 0.53, 2),
   ('oos', 'OOS', 0.7, 0.53, 1),
   ('flt', 'FLT', 0.3, 0.58, 1),
   ('syn', 'SYN', 0.7, 0.58, 2)]:
            setattr(self, led, LED(self.card_frame, shape=ROUND, width=8,
                                   status=state, bg=bg))
            getattr(self, led).led_frame.place(relx=xpos, rely=ypos,
  anchor=CENTER)
            Label(self.card_frame, text=lbl,
                  font=("verdana", 4), fg="white",
                  bg=bg).place(relx=xpos, rely=(ypos+0.028), anchor=CENTER)

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We add one class to draw the LEDs that appear on each card in the rack:

```
class StandardLEDs(GUICommon):
```

- ❷ The T3 access card inherits from the CardBlank and StandardLEDs classes which are explicitly constructed:

```
class T3AccessCard(CardBlank, StandardLEDs):
    def __init__(self, master, width=1, height=1):
        CardBlank.__init__(self, master=master, width=width,
                           height=height) bg=master['background']
        StandardLEDs.__init__(self, master=master, bg=bg)
```

- ❸ Readers who have been observing my coding style will have noticed a definite pattern; I like to create objects from lists of tuples! This example is no exception:

```
for port, lbl, tag, ypos in [(1,'RX1','T3AccessRX', 0.30),
                             (2,'TX1','T3AccessTX', 0.40),
                             (3,'RX2','T3AccessRX', 0.65),
                             (4,'TX2','T3AccessRX', 0.75)]:
```

Python's ability to unpack a tuple contained in a list of tuples provides a mechanism to compress the amount of code required to achieve a desired effect.

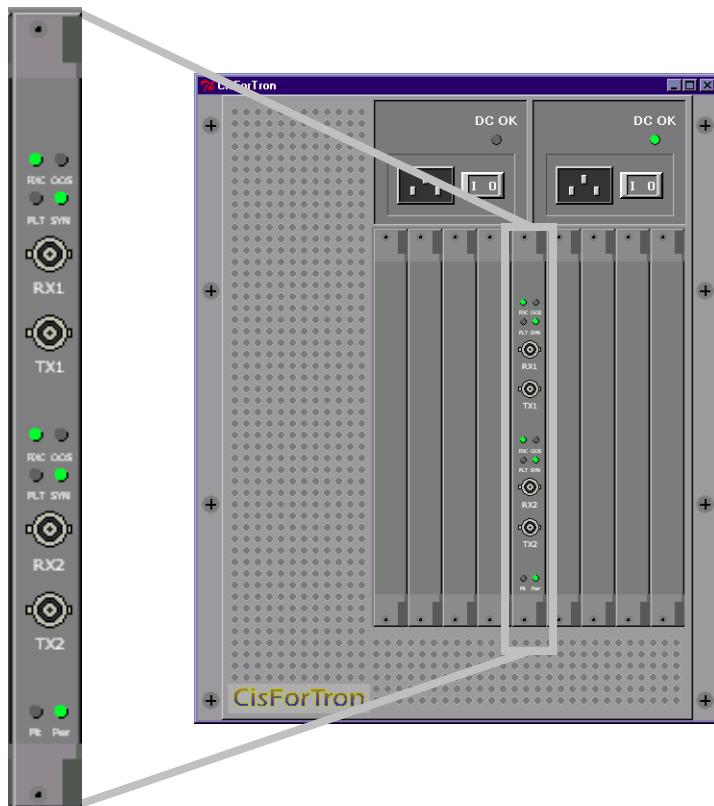
- ❹ The arguments unpacked from the tuple are substituted in `setattr` and `getattr` calls:

```
setattr(self, 'bnc%d' % port, BNC(self.card_frame,
                                    fid=tag, port=port))
getattr(self, 'bnc%d' % port).bnc_frame.place(relx=0.5,
   rely=ypos, anchor=CENTER)
Label(self.card_frame, text=lbl,
      font=("verdana", 6), fg="white",
      bg=bg).place(relx=0.5, rely=(ypos+0.045), anchor=CENTER) |
```

This style of coding results in tight code. It may be a little difficult to read initially, but it is still an efficient way of creating graphic elements in a loop.

As the last step to adding the T3 card, we must modify the loop that generates blank cards to add one of the T3 Access cards:

```
for i in range(9):
    if i == 4:
        card =T3AccessCard(self.rack, width=incr-1, height=414)
    else:
        card =CardBlank(self.rack, width=incr-1, height=414)
    card.card_frame.place(x=x, y=0, anchor=NW)
    x = x + incr
```



**Figure 9.4**  
**T3 access card**



**Figure 9.5** **Populated chassis**

Running `FrontPanel2.py` will display the screen shown in figure 9.4. The next step is a little scary. Creating the additional graphic elements and placing them on the cards does not require a lot of code. The code will not be presented here, it may be obtained online. If you run `FrontPanel_3.py`, you will see the screen in figure 9.5.

A few more words of explanation about the code presented earlier: We are attaching a menu operation to the widget. Access to the menu will be from the keyboard, using the *spacebar* or by clicking with the mouse.

```

if self.hitID:
    self.hitID = '%s.%d' % (self.hitID, port)
    for widget in [self.bnc_frame]:
        widget.bind('<KeyPress-space>', self.panelMenu)
        widget.bind('<Button-1>', self.panelMenu)
    for widget in [self.canvas]:
        widget.bind('<1>', self.panelMenu)

```

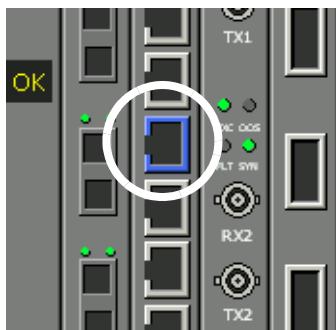
We define the `focus_in` and `focus_out` methods.

```

def focus_in(self, event):
    self.last_bg= self.canvas.itemcget(self.bnc, 'fill')
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=Color.HIGHLIGHT)
    self.update()

def focus_out(self, event):
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.bnc, fill=self.last_bg)
    self.update()

```



**Figure 9.6 Widget focus**

management systems which required the user to click on graphic elements no more than 2mm square!

Components\_3.py contains some additional code to animate the display to show the effect of status changes. Basically, each class that defines objects which can display status appends the instance to a widget list:

```
st_wid.append(self)      # register for animation
```

We then bind the `animate` function to the logo:

```

self.img = PhotoImage(file='logo.gif')
self.logo=Label(self.outer, image=self.img, bd=0)
self.logo.place(relx=0.055, rely=0.992, anchor=SW)
self.logo.bind('<Button-1>', self.animate)

```

The `animate` function is quite simple:

```

def animate(self, event):
    import random
    choice = random.choice(range(0, len(st_wid)-1))

```

The purpose of these methods is to change the highlight color of the widgets as we either click on them with the mouse or navigate to them using the tab key. As we navigate from widget to widget, we display a highlight to show the user where the focus is. Figure 9.6 shows the effect of tabbing through the field. Although it's less obvious without color, the selected connector is blue; in contrast, the other connectors are gray.

This method of navigation is somewhat alien to users who have been conditioned to using the mouse to navigate GUIs. However, the ability to select tiny graphic objects is valuable and it can change a user's opinion of a product markedly. Without naming names, I have seen network

```

op      = random.choice(range(0, len(ops)-1))

pstr = 'st_wid[%d].%s()' % (choice, ops[op])
self.cobj = compile(pstr, 'inline', 'exec')
self.rack.after(50, self.doit)

def doit(self):
    exec(self.cobj)
    self.rack.after(50, self.animate(None))

```



**Figure 9.7 Animated widgets**

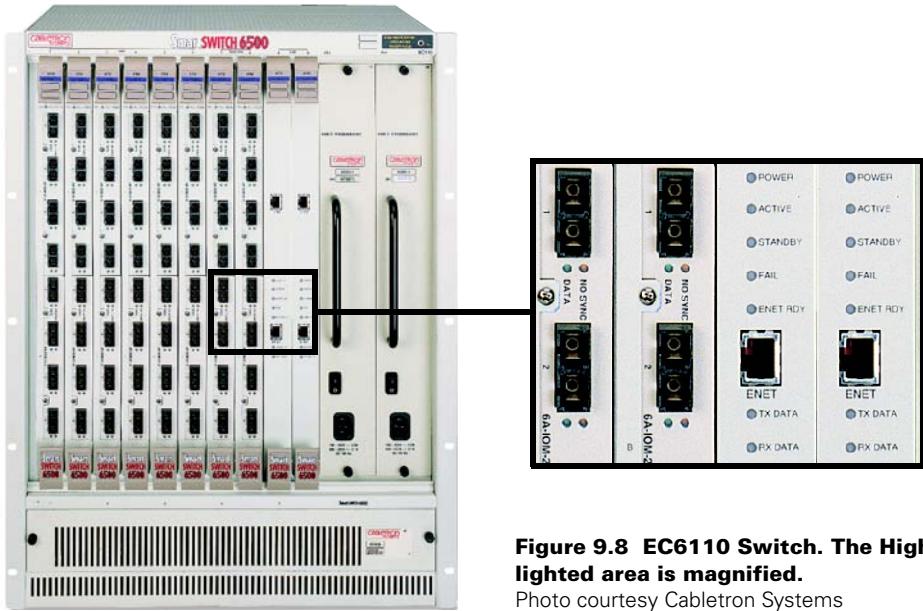
If you run `FrontPanel_3.py` and click on the logo, you will activate the animation. Of course, it is difficult to depict the result of this in a black-and-white printed image, but you should be able to discern differences in the shading of the controls on the panels—especially the J45 connectors on the fourth panel from the left in figure 9.7.

Of course, there is quite a lot of work to turn a panel such as this into a functional system. You would probably use a periodic SNMP poll of the device to get the state of each of the components and set the LEDs appropriately. In addition, you might monitor the content of the card rack to detect changes in hardware, if the device supports “hot pull” cards. Finally, menus might be added to the ports to give access to configuration utilities.

## 9.4 *GIF, BMP and overlays*

The panels and machines introduced in the previous section used *drawn* interfaces. With a little effort, it is possible to produce a panel or machine that closely resembles the actual device. In some cases, it is necessary to have a little artistic flair to produce a satisfactory result, so an alternate approach must be used. Sometimes, it can be easier to use photographs of the device to produce a totally accurate representation of it; this is particularly true if the device is large. In this section I will provide you with a number of techniques to merge photographic images with GUIs.

Let’s begin by taking a look at the front panel of the Cabletron SmartSwitch 6500 shown in figure 9.8. If you contrast the magnified section in this figure with the components in figure 9.6, you may notice that the drawn panel shows clearer detail, particularly for text labels. However, if you consider the amount of effort required to develop code to precisely place the components on the panels, the photo image is much easier. In addition, the photo image reproduces every detail, no matter how small or complex, and it has strong three-dimensional features which are time-consuming to recreate with drawn panels.



**Figure 9.8 EC6110 Switch. The Highlighted area is magnified.**

Photo courtesy Cabletron Systems

The task of creating modular panels is somewhat easier than creating similar panels with drawn components. Constructing a system with images requires the following steps:

- 1 Photograph the device with an empty card rack, if possible.
- 2 Photograph the device with cards inserted (singly, if possible) at the same scale.
- 3 Crop the card images so that they *exactly* define a card face.
- 4 Create a class for each card type, loading appropriate graphics and overlays for active components (LEDs, annunciators, etc.) and navigable components (connectors, buttons, etc.).
- 5 Create a chassis population based on configuration.
- 6 Write the rest of the supporting code.

In the following code, just a sample of the code will be presented. The full source code may be obtained online.

### Components\_4.py

```

class C6C110_CardBlank(GUICommon):
    def __init__(self, master=None, width=10, height=10,
                 appearance=FLAT, bd=0):
        self.card_frame=Frame(master, relief=appearance, height=height,
                             width=width, bd=bd, highlightthickness=0)

class C6C110_ENET(C6C110_CardBlank):
    def __init__(self, master, slot=0):

```

```

    self.img = PhotoImage(file='images/6c110_enet.gif')
    setattr(glb, 'img%d' % slot, self.img)
    self.width = self.img.width()
    self.height = self.img.height()

    C6C110_CardBlank.__init__(self, master=master, width=self.width,
                             height=self.height)

    x ypos = [(10,180), (10,187),
               (10,195), (10,203),
               (10,210), (10,235),
               (10,242)]

    self.canvas = Canvas(self.card_frame, width=self.width,
                         bd=0, highlightthickness=0,
                         height=self.height, selectborderwidth=0)
    self.canvas.pack(side="top", fill=BOTH, expand='no')
    self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW,
                           image=eval('glb.img%d' % slot))

    for i, y in [(0, 0.330), (1, 0.619)]:
        setattr(self, 'j%d' % i, Enet10baseT(self.card_frame,
  fid="10Base-T-%d" % i, port=i, orient=HW_LEFT,
  status=STATUS_OFF, xwidth=15, xheight=12))
        setattr(self, 'j%d' % i).j45_frame.place(relx=0.52,
  rely=y, anchor=CENTER)

    for i in range(len(x ypos)):
        xpos,ypos = x ypos[i]
        setattr(self, 'led%d' % (i+1), CLED(self.card_frame,
  self.canvas, shape=ROUND, width=4, status=STATUS_ON,
  relx=xpos, rely=ypos))

class C6C110_Chassis:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self.outer=Frame(master, borderwidth=0, bg=Color.PANEL)
        self.outer.forget()

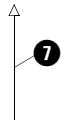
        self.img = PhotoImage(file='images/6c110_chassis.gif')
        self.width = self.img.width()
        self.height = self.img.height()

        self.canvas = Canvas(self.outer, width=self.width,
                            height=self.height, selectborderwidth=0)
        self.canvas.pack(side="top", fill=BOTH, expand='no')
        self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW, image=self.img)

        self.rack = Frame(self.outer, bd=0, width=self.width-84,
                          height=self.height-180,
                          bg=Color.CHASSIS, highlightthickness=0)
        self.rack.place(relx=0.081, rely=0.117, anchor=NW)

        x = 0.0
        for i in range(12):
            if i in [0,1,2,3,4,5]:
                card =C6C110_FDDI(self.rack, slot=i)

```



```
        elif i in [6,7,8,9]:
            card =C6C110_ENET(self.rack, slot=i)
        else:
            card =C6C110_PSU(self.rack, slot=i)
        card.card_frame.place(x=x, y=0, anchor=NW)
        x = x + card.width
```

---

### Code comments

- ➊ Most of the code resembles that for drawn panel components. The code is a little shorter, since it is not necessary to build as many components.

```
    self.img = PhotoImage(file='images/6c110_enet.gif')
    setattr(glb, 'img%d' % slot, self.img)
    self.width = self.img.width()
    self.height = self.img.height()
```

In the `__init__` method, we create a `PhotoImage` instance. It is important that this reference remains within scope. If the image gets garbage-collected, you'll see an empty background field where you had hoped to have an image. The size of the image is obtained (in pixels) in order to construct the panels.

- ➋ As might be expected, we build a list of tuples to contain the calculated positions of the LEDs.

```
x ypos = [(10,180), (10,187),
...]
```

- ➌ All borders, highlights, and selectionborders must be zero-width to ensure that the panels can be butted together.

```
self.canvas = Canvas(self.card_frame, width=self.width,
                     bd=0, highlightthickness=0,
                     height=self.height, selectborderwidth=0)
```

- ➍ The image is created on the base canvas using the stored `PhotoImage`.

```
self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW,
                        image=eval('glb.img%d' % slot))
```

- ➎ The J45 connectors are drawn *over* the connectors depicted in the image; this adds navigation and status properties to the otherwise passive devices.

```
for i, y in [(0, 0.330), (1, 0.619)]:
    setattr(self, 'j%d' % i, Enet10baseT(self.card_frame,
   fid="10Base-T-%d" % i, port=i, orient=HW_LEFT,
   status=STATUS_OFF, xwidth=15, xheight=12))
    getattr(self, 'j%d' % i).j45_frame.place(relx=0.52,
  rely=y, anchor=CENTER)
```

The size of the connector is passed in the constructor; this adds functionality to the J45 connectors shown earlier in the chapter.

- ➏ The LEDs are drawn on the canvas at their designated location. Note that these use the `CLED` class, not the `LED` class, because these LEDs are drawn directly on the canvas and not within a `Frame`. If the `LED` class had been used, we would have experienced problems in attempting to fill the rectangular frame associated with the widget and the background color.

```
for i in range(len(x ypos)):
    xpos,ypos = x ypos[i]
    setattr(self, 'led%d' % (i+1), CLED(self.card_frame,
```

```
        self.canvas, shape=ROUND, width=4, status=STATUS_ON,
        relx=xpos, rely=ypos))
```

Note also that we pass both the enclosing `card_frame` and the canvas to the constructor. This facilitates accessing the `after` method of the Widget base class to implement flashing.

- 7 Finally, we populate the card rack. For the purpose of illustration, two of the FDDI cards have been replaced with Ethernet cards. Although this does not make much sense for this ATM switch, it demonstrates the ease with which the cards may be arranged.

```
x = 0.0
for i in range(12):
    if i in [0,1,2,3,4,5]:
        card =C6C110_FDDI(self.rack, slot=i)
    elif i in [6,7,8,9]:
        card =C6C110_ENET(self.rack, slot=i)
    else:
        card =C6C110_PSW(self.rack, slot=i)
    card.card_frame.place(x=x, y=0, anchor=NW)
    x = x + card.width
```

Note that the actual card width is used to determine the placement of the next card, and not a calculated increment, as in the earlier example.

Running `EC6110.py` displays the screen shown at the right of figure 9.9. The screen at the left of this figure illustrates the unpopulated rack. As in the earlier example, provision has been made to animate the components. Clicking anywhere on the enclosing chassis activates the animated display; this is not presented here and is left for you to try.



**Figure 9.9 Cardrack implemented with GIF panels and overlaid components**

## 9.5 And now for a more complete example



**Figure 9.10**  
**Digital multimeter**

of work, but, as you will see later, it results in an attractive GUI.

These are the steps that we will go through to prepare a series of overlaid GIF images for the selector, as illustrated in figure 9.11:

- 1 Obtain the base image with the selector at one position.
- 2 Crop the selector as a rectangular selection.
- 3 Retouch the image to remove the pixels surrounding the selector.
- 4 Fill the background with a distinct color.
- 5 Rotate the image 15 degrees.
- 6 Crop the image to the same size as the original selection.
- 7 Save the image as a transparent GIF image, using the colormap entry corresponding to the surroundings of the selector as the transparent color (the last image in the series, figure 9.11(7), demonstrates the effect of displaying the overlaid image).

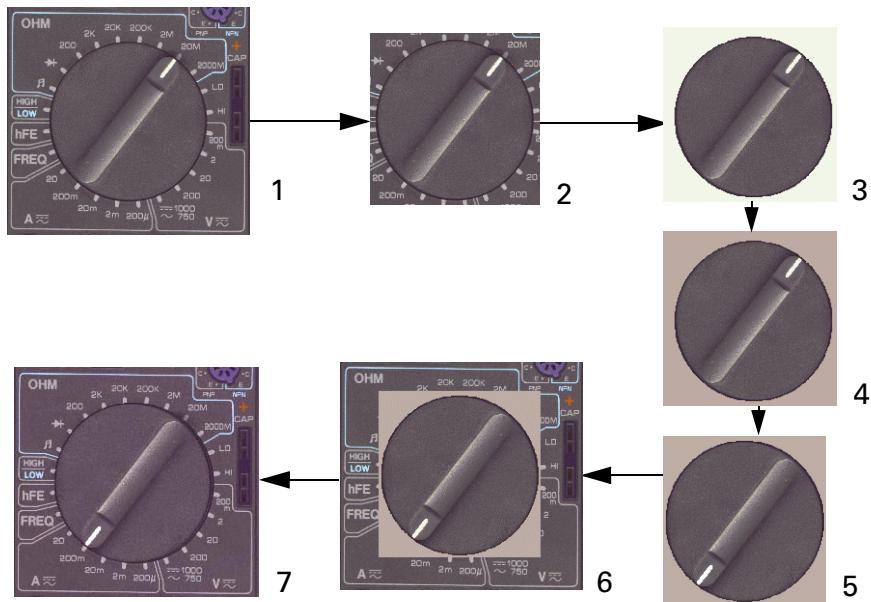
You have probably judged me as criminally insane to propose generating 24 rotated GIF images simply to show an accurate view of the actual multimeter. Perhaps you are right, but please reserve your final judgement until after you have seen the finished result!

The previous examples have illustrated the overall methods for developing GUI representation of panels and other devices. To further develop this theme we will look at a simple but quite useful example.

Many digital multimeters have serial interfaces which allow connection to a computer. I own a RadioShack 22-168A multimeter, which is shown in figure 9.10. The meter has 24 ranges that provide AC/DC voltage and current measurements, resistance, capacitance, frequency counting and other functions. The meter implements a simple serial protocol which allows the currently-displayed value to be polled. Using a simple encoding scheme the current range selection can be deduced.

Implementing a GUI to display the current state of the meter's display is not particularly difficult. It is displaying the range that has been selected that introduces a challenge. One solution would be to display just the LCD panel at the top of the meter and then display the current range as text, either in the LCD or elsewhere. However this does not attempt to achieve photorealism and does not make for a particularly interesting example for you, the reader!

The solution we are going to implement is to animate the selector knob on the meter so that it reflects the actual appearance of the meter to the user. This requires quite a lot



**Figure 9.11 Steps to generate rotated selector images**

---

**Note** As I began to develop this example, I encountered a problem with the serial communications to the multimeter. While investigating this problem I wanted to continue developing the GUI. I did this by building a simple test harness to simulate input from the device. I am going to present development of this example by showing the test version first and then adding serial communications later. This technique is valuable to get an application started, since it is possible to simulate input from devices even if they are not available for your use (or too expensive for your boss to sign a purchase requisition so that you can get your hands on one!).

---

Here is the code to implement the test version of the multimeter. First, we begin with the data file, defining the meter's ranges, control tables, labels, and other key data.

### Example\_9\_1\_data.py

```
# Tag    Run   RFlag   Units   Key
PRIMARY_DATA = [
    ('DI', 1, 'OL', 'mV', 'di'),
    ('DI', 0, '', 'mV', 'di'),
    ('OH', 1, 'OL.', 'Ohm', 'oh200o'),
    ('OH', 0, '4', 'Ohm', 'oh200o'),
    ('OH', 1, '.OL', 'KOhm', 'oh2ko'),
    ('OH', 0, '2', 'KOhm', 'oh2ko'),
    ('OH', 1, 'O.L', 'KOhm', 'oh20ko'),
    ...
    ('CA', 0, '2', 'nF', 'calo'),
```

```

('CA', 0, '2', 'uF', 'cahi'),
('DC', 0, '4', 'mV', 'dc200mv'),
('DC', 0, '2', 'V', 'dc2v'),
('DC', 0, '3', 'V', 'dc20v'),
('DC', 0, '4', 'V', 'dc200v'),
('DC', 0, '', 'V', 'dc1000v'),
...
('AC', 0, '4', 'V', 'ac200v'),
...
('FR', 0, '2', 'Hz', 'frh'),
('FR', 0, '2', 'KHz', 'frk'),
('FR', 0, '2', 'MHz', 'frm'),
('HF', 0, '', '', 'hfe'),
('LO', 0, '', '', 'logic'),
('XX', 0, '', '', 'cont'))]

SECONDARY_DATA = {
# Key      m u A m V k M O n u F M K Hz AC Control, Label
'di':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 'diode', 'DIO'),
'oh200o':   (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '200Ohm', ''),
'oh2ko':    (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '2KOhm', ''),
'oh20ko':   (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '20KOhm', ''),
'oh200ko':  (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '200KOhm', ''),
'oh2mo':    (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '2MOhm', ''),
'oh20mo':   (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '20MOhm', ''),
...
'frh':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 'freq', 'FREQ'),
'frk':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 'freq', 'FREQ'),
'frm':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 'freq', 'FREQ'),
'hfe':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 'hfe', 'HFE'),
'logic':    (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 'logic', 'LOGI'),
'cont':     (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 'cont', '')}

TESTDATA = [
'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV',
'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV',
'DI 0422  mV', 'DI 0022  mV', 'DI 0003  mV',
'DI 0001  mV', 'DI 0004  mV', 'DI 0001  mV',
'DI 0001  mV', 'DI 0001  mV', 'DI 0892  mV',
...
'OH      OL.  Ohm', 'OH      OL.  Ohm', 'OH      OL.  Ohm',
'OH      OL.  Ohm', 'OH      OL.  Ohm', 'OH 007.8 Ohm',
'OH 014.7 Ohm', 'OH 001.1 Ohm', 'OH 116.3 Ohm',
'OH 018.3 Ohm', 'OH 002.9 Ohm', 'OH 003.0 Ohm',
'OH      OL.  Ohm', 'OH      .OL KOhm', 'OH      .OL KOhm',
'OH      .OL KOhm', 'OH      .OL KOhm', 'OH -0.010KOhm',
'OH 0.085KOhm', 'OH 0.001KOhm', 'OH 0.001KOhm',
'OH 0.047KOhm', 'OH 0.410KOhm', 'OH 0.277KOhm',
...
'CA 0.000  nF', 'CA 0.000  nF', 'CA 0.000  nF',
'CA 0.000  nF', 'CA 0.000  nF', 'CA 0.000  uF',
'CA 0.000  uF', 'CA 0.000  uF', 'CA 0.000  uF',
'DC 034.1  mV', 'DC 025.6  mV', 'DC 063.5  mV',
'DC 072.3  mV', 'DC 040.7  mV', 'DC 017.5  mV',
'DC 005.2  mV', 'DC 0.005  V', 'DC 0.002  V',
'DC 0.001  V', 'DC 0.001  V', 'DC 0.001  V',
]

```

```

...
'FR 0.000 KHz', 'FR 0.001 KHz', 'FR 0.001 KHz',
'FR 0.002 KHz', 'FR 0.000 KHz', 'FR 0.001 KHz',
'FR 0.001 KHz', 'FR 0.000 KHz', 'HF 0000  ',
'HF 0000  ', 'HF 0000  ', 'HF 0000  ',
'HF 0000  ', 'HF 0000  ', 'HF 0000  ',
'HF 0000  ', 'LO rdy  ', 'LO rdy  ',
'LO rdy  ', 'LO - rdy  '
]

PANEL_LABELS = [(225, 80, 'Arial', 'M', 'mhz'),
(240, 80, 'Arial', 'K', 'khz'),
(255, 80, 'Arial', 'Hz', 'hz'),
(225, 95, 'Arial', 'm', 'ma'),
(240, 95, 'Symbol', 'm', 'ua'),
(255, 95, 'Arial', 'A', 'a'),
(240, 110, 'Arial', 'm', 'mv'),
(255, 110, 'Arial', 'V', 'v'),
(225, 125, 'Arial', 'K', 'ko'),
(240, 125, 'Arial', 'M', 'mo'),
(255, 125, 'Symbol', 'W', 'o'),
(225, 140, 'Arial', 'n', 'nf'),
(240, 140, 'Symbol', 'm', 'uf'),
(255, 140, 'Arial', 'F', 'f'),
(50, 110, 'Arial', 'AC', 'ac')]

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ① The first list defines the ranges that the meter is capable of supporting, stored as tuples. The Tag determines the category of the reading:

```
# Tag Run RFlag Units Key
PRIMARY_DATA = [
    ('DI', 1, 'OL', 'mV', 'di'),
    ('DI', 0, '', 'mV', 'di'),
```

The Key is used to get the data that controls annunciators on the screen.

- ② The over limit indicator is encoded (by changing the decimal point) to indicate the range that is currently selected.

```
('OH', 1, '.OL', 'KOhm', 'oh2ko'),
('OH', 1, 'O.L', 'KOhm', 'oh20ko'),
```

Most of the ranges have an over limit value.

- ③ The Key in PRIMARY\_DATA is used to access a row in the SECONDARY\_DATA dictionary which defines which of the annunciators are to be “turned on” on the display:

```
# Key      m u A m V k M O n u F M K Hz AC Control, Label
'di':      (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 'diode', 'DIO'),
'oh200o':  (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, '2000Ohm', '')
```

- ④ TESTDATA captures data in the format defined by the serial protocol for the meter. This data was captured directly from the meter using a data capture program (which was also used to debug the problem mentioned above).

```
TESTDATA = ['DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV',
'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV', 'DI      OL      mV',
```

```
'DI 0422 mV', 'DI 0022 mV', 'DI 0003 mV',
'DI 0001 mV', 'DI 0004 mV', 'DI 0001 mV',
'DI 0001 mV', 'DI 0001 mV', 'DI 0892 mV',
```

The data is sent as a 14-character string. The first two characters (Tag) determine the category. The position of the decimal point, in conjunction with the units, determines the range.

Here is the main code to support the application:

### Example\_9\_1.py

```
from Common import *
from Tkinter import *
from Example_9_1_data import *
import sys, time, string

class MeterServer:
    def __init__(self):
        # Open up the serial port
        pass

    def poll(self):
        import random
        choice = random.choice(range(0, len(TESTDATA)-1))
        return TESTDATA[choice]

class MultiMeter:
    def __init__(self, master):
        self.root = master
        self.root.title("Digital Multimeter")
        self.root.iconname('22-168a')

        self.holdVal = '0.0'
        self.curRange = None
        self.lineOpen = FALSE

        self.canvas = Canvas(self.root, width=300, height=694)
        self.canvas.pack(side="top", fill=BOTH, expand='no')

        self.img = PhotoImage(file='images/multimeter.gif')
        self.canvas.create_image(0,0,anchor=NW, image=self.img)
        self.buildRule()

        self.root.update()
        self.root.after(5, self.buildSymbols)
        self.dataReady = FALSE
        self.root.after(5, self.buildScanner)
        self.multimeter = MeterServer()
        self.root.after(500, self.doPoll)

    def buildSymbols(self):
        for x, y, font, txt, tag in PANEL_LABELS:
            self.canvas.create_text(x, y, text=txt,
                                   font=(font, 12),
                                   fill="gray75",
```

```

        anchor = CENTER,
        tags=tag)

def buildRule(self):
    self.canvas.create_line(75,150, 213,150,
                           width=1,fill="#333377")
    self.Xincr = 140.0/40.0
    self.X = x = 75
    self.X1 = 213
    y = 150
    lbl1 = 0

    for i in range(40):
        lbl = ''
        if i in [0,9,19,29,39]:
            h = 6
            lbl = `lbl1`
            lbl1 = lbl1 + 5
        elif i in [5,14,24,34]:
            h = 4
        else:
            h = 2
        self.canvas.create_line(x,y, x,y-h,
                               width=1,fill="#333377")

        if lbl:
            self.canvas.create_text(x, y-5, text=lbl,
                                   font=("Arial", 6),
                                   fill="#333377",
                                   anchor = S),
        x = x + self.Xincr

def startAnimation(self):
    self.animX = self.X
    self.action = TRUE
    self.root.after(30, self.animate)

```

4

---

### *Code comments*

- ① The test version of our code does not initialize the serial interface:

```

def __init__(self):
    # Open up the serial port
    pass

```

- ② The poll method retrieves a random entry from the TESTDATA list, simulating a poll of the meter:

```

def poll(self):
    import random
    choice = random.choice(range(0, len(TESTDATA)-1))
    return TESTDATA[choice]

```

- ③ This section of code illustrates how to arrange for an operation to occur as a background task. The methods buildSymbols and buildScanner are set up to run as callbacks after a few milliseconds.

```

    self.root.after(5, self.buildSymbols)

```

```

        self.dataReady = FALSE
self.root.after(5, self.buildScanner)
        self.multimeter = MeterServer()
self.root.after(500, self.doPoll)

```

`buildScanner` converts the GIF files to photo images and this is a time-consuming task. By moving the initialization to the background, we can display the base GUI immediately (although the user has to wait for all of the images to load before proceeding).

- ❸ `buildRule` constructs tickmarks used by the multimeter to indicate the currently measured value relative to full-scale deflection of the selected range and to animate a graphic when the value is over range.

### Example 9\_1.py (continued)

```

def animate(self):
    if self.action:
        self.canvas.create_line(self.animX,155, self.animX,167,
                               width=2,fill="#333377",
                               tags='anim')
        self.animX = self.animX + self.Xincr
        if self.animX > self.X1:
            self.animX= self.X
            self.canvas.delete('anim')
            self.root.after(30, self.animate)
    else:
        self.canvas.delete('anim')

def stopAnimation(self):
    self.action = FALSE

def buildScanner(self):
    self.primary_lookup = {}
    for key, hasr, rfmt, un, sec in PRIMARY_DATA:
        if not self.primary_lookup.has_key(key):
            self.primary_lookup[key] = []
            self.primary_lookup[key].append((hasr, rfmt, un, sec))

    keys = SECONDARY_DATA.keys()
    for key in keys:
        img = SECONDARY_DATA[key][-2]
        try:
            if getattr(self, 'i%s' % key):
                pass      # Already done...
        except:
            setattr(self, 'i%s' % key,
                    PhotoImage(file="images/%s.gif" % img))
    self.dataReady = TRUE

def doPoll(self):
    if self.dataReady:
        result = self.multimeter.poll()
        if result:
            self.updateDisplay(result)
    self.root.after(1000, self.doPoll)

def getRange(self, tag, val, units):

```

```

matchlist = self.primary_lookup[tag]
if not matchlist: return None
gotIndex = None
gotOpenLine = FALSE
for hasr, rfmt, un, sec in matchlist:
    if hasr and (string.find(val, 'L') >= 0):
        if rfmt == string.strip(val):
            gotIndex = sec
            gotOpenLine = TRUE
    else:
        decimal = string.find(val, '.')
        if decimal > 0:
            if rfmt == `decimal`:
                gotIndex = sec
            else:
                if not rfmt: # No decimals
                    gotIndex = sec
        else:
            if not rfmt: # No decimals
                gotIndex = sec
if gotIndex:
    if not string.strip(units) == string.strip(un):
        gotIndex = None
if gotIndex:
    break
return (gotIndex, gotOpenLine)

def updateDisplay(self, result):
    self.canvas.delete('display')
    tag = result[:2]
    val = result[3:9]
    units = result [9:13]
    # display the hold value
    redraw = FALSE
    try:
        hold = string.atof(self.holdVal)
        nval = string.atof(val)
        if hold <= 0.0:
            if nval < 0.0:
                if nval < hold:
                    self.holdVal = val
                    redraw = TRUE
            else:
                hold = 0.0
        if hold >= 0.0 and not redraw:
            if nval >= 0.0:
                if nval > hold:
                    self.holdVal = val
                    redraw = TRUE
            else:
                self.holdVal = '0.0'
                redraw = TRUE
    except ValueError:
        self.holdVal = '0.0'
        redraw = TRUE
    if redraw:
        self.canvas.delete('holdval')

```

8

```

        self.canvas.create_text(263, 67, text=self.holdVal,
                               font=("Digiface", 16),
                               fill="#333377",
                               anchor = E,
                               tags="holdval")

    range, openline = self.getRange(tag, val, units)
    if range:      # Change the control to reflect the range
        if not self.curRange == range:
            self.curRange = range
            self.canvas.delete('control')
            self.canvas.create_image(146, 441, anchor=CENTER,
                                      image=getattr(self, 'i%s' % range),
                                      tags="control")
            self.holdVal = '0.0'  # reset
    if openline:
        self.startAnimation()
    else:
        self.stopAnimation()

    # Now we will update the units symbols on the display
    ma,ua,a,mv,v,ko,mo,o,nf,uf,f,mhz,khz,hz,ac, ctrl, lbl = \
        SECONDARY_DATA[range]

    for tag in ['ma', 'ua', 'a', 'mv', 'v', 'ko', 'mo', 'o',
               'nf', 'uf', 'f', 'mhz', 'khz', 'hz', 'ac']:
        self.canvas.itemconfig(tag,
                               fill=['gray75', '#333377'][eval(tag)])
    # Update the label field if there is one
    self.canvas.delete('label')
    if lbl:
        self.canvas.create_text(55, 150, text=lbl,
                               font=("Arial", 12),
                               fill="#333377",
                               anchor = CENTER,
                               tags="label")

    # Finally, display the value
    self.canvas.create_text(214, 100, text=val,
                           font=("Digiface", 48),
                           fill="#333377",
                           anchor = E,
                           tags="display")

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    multimeter = MultiMeter(root)
    multimeter.root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ➊ The animate method displays a rapidly increasing row of vertical bars which reset when they reach the right-hand side of the display.
- ➋ buildScanner builds a dictionary from PRIMARY\_DATA to provide the primary lookup for the messages received from the meter. The GIF images are also loaded as PhotoImages.

- 7 getRange parses the message received from the meter to determine the range and value to be displayed.
- 8 The meter holds the highest (or lowest) value measured. This code displays this data. The code is longer than we might expect because we have to be able to detect the most positive or the most negative value.
- 9 In this section of code, we change the overlaid selector knob position if the range has changed. Note that the previous image, tagged as control, is deleted first.
- 10 Finally, we update the annunciators according to the currently selected range. To simplify this, we fill the text stroke with either a very light or dark gray.

If we run Example\_9\_1.py we will observe the display shown in figure 9.12. As each value is displayed, the range selector is animated to indicate the range for the value. An example of the display is shown in figure 9.13.

To complete the example, we simply need to add asynchronous support to connect the multimeter. This makes use of a Python extension module, siomodule, which is readily available from the Python language site (<http://www.python.org>), with one small change to support an idiosyncrasy of the meter's hand-shake protocol, but more about that in a moment. Extension modules are covered in detail in a later section, "Putting it all together..." on page 311. This module makes use of a commercial dll, which has been made available for general use (see "Siomodule" on page 625 for details). The necessary code changes are in Example\_9\_2.py:



**Figure 9.12 Simulating measurements**



**Figure 9.13 Range selector animation**



### Example\_9\_2.py

```
from crilib import *
import sys, regex, serial, time, string, os
IGNORE = '\n\r'

class RS232(serial.Port):
    def __init__(self):
        serial.Port.__init__(self)
```

① Load serial

② Init UART

```

def open(self, cfg):
    self.debug = cfg['debug']
    self._trace('RS232.open')
    cfg['cmdsEchoed'] = FALSE
    cfg['cmdTerm'] = '\r'
    cfg['rspTerm'] = '\r'
    cfg['rspType'] = serial.RSP_TERMINATED
    serial.Port.open(self, cfg)

class MeterServer:
    def __init__(self):
        # Open up the serial port
        try:
            d = serial.PortDict()
            d['port'] = serial.COM1
            d['baud'] = serial.Baud1200
            d['parity'] = serial.NoParity
            d['dataBits'] = serial.WordLength7
            d['stopBits'] = serial.TwoStopBits
            d['timeOutMs'] = 1500
            d['rspTerm'] = IGNORE
            d['rtsSignal'] = 'C'
            d['debug'] = FALSE
            self.fd = RS232()
            self.fd.open(d)
        except:
            print 'Cannot open serial port (COM1)'
            sys.exit()

    def poll(self):
        try:
            line = self.fd.write('D\r')
            # OK, read the serial line (wait maximum of 1500 mSec)
            inl = self.fd.readTerminated()
            return inl
        except:
            return 'XX Off'

```

**3 Setup params**

**4 Connection**

5

6

7

8

---

### Code comments

- 1** The serial module wraps the sio module, which is a dll.

```

from crilib import *
import sys, serial, time, string, os
crilib contains simple constants.

```

- 2** This time we have to initialize the UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter):

```

def __init__(self):
    serial.Port.__init__(self)

```

- 3** The terminators for the serial protocol are defined. Although we are not turning debug on for this example, the necessary initializers are given to help you reuse the code.

- 4** The communication parameters for the UART are set.

```

d['port'] = serial.COM1
d['baud'] = serial.Baud1200

```

```

d['parity']      = serial.NoParity
d['dataBits']    = serial.WordLength7
d['stopBits']    = serial.TwoStopBits

```

Note the somewhat unusual format and slow communication speed. However, the meter is a quite simple device, and not very expensive, so we can make an exception here.

- ➅ The read is blocking, which is unusual for a GUI. Since there are no user controls on the display, we do not need to worry about exposing the event loop. So, if the meter failed to respond to a request for data, we might lock up for a second or so.
- ➆ This is where the meter's unusual handshaking protocol is handled. This is the reason I constructed the test version of the code, because I could not get the device to respond to the poll request initially. I had to use a software datascope to monitor the control lines on the serial interface to determine what the device needed to communicate. Unusually, it required Request-To-Send (RTS) to go *low* before it would send anything. The serial module, as obtained from the Python FTP site, has RTS strapped high. A simple change fixes this problem. Here we force RTS low.

```
d['rtsSignal'] = 'C'
```

- ➇ The meter has to be polled to get the current value measured.

```
line = self.fd.write('D\r')
```

- ➈ If the poll times out, we assume that the multimeter is switched off and we fabricate a message to show an appropriate value on the display.

```
return 'XX Off '
```

The minimal changes to `serial.py` are shown here:

### serial.py (changes only)

```

def __init__(self):
    self._dict = {}

...
    self._dict['rspType'] = RSP_BEST EFFORT
    self._dict['rspFixedLen'] = 0
    self._dict['rtsSignal'] = 'S'
    self._dict['dtrSignal'] = 'S'

...
def __setitem__(self, key, value):
...
    elif key == 'debug' or key == 'cmdsEchoed':
        if type(value) != IntType:
            raise AttributeError, 'must be a boolean value'
    elif key == 'rtsSignal':
        if not value[:1] in 'CS':
            raise AttributeError, 'Illegal rtsSignal value'
    elif key == 'dtrSignal':
        if not value[:1] in 'CS':
            raise AttributeError, 'Illegal dtrSignal value'

    self._dict[key] = value
...
def open(self, cfg):

```

```

...
    self._chkSioExec(SioRxClear, (port,))
    self._chkSioExec(SioDTR, (port, cfg['dtrSignal'][1]))
    self._chkSioExec(SioRTS, (port, cfg['rtsSignal'][1]))
    self._chkSioExec(SioFlow, (port, 'N'))

```

Running Example\_9\_2.py displays the multimeter. Since there are no changes to the display methods, the display is indistinguishable from the one shown in figure 9.12, so it will not be shown here.

## 9.6 Virtual machines using POV-Ray

Of course, some applications may not have a physical device; for these cases, it is possible to create ray-traced images (using Persistence of Vision POV-Ray, or other rendering systems, for example) to create virtual machines.

Figure 9.14 shows an example of a ray-traced GUI which has been used in a commercial application. This employs the same overlay technique used to develop the front panel shown in figure 9.9, except that the image was completely fabricated. The application that this GUI supported was intended to be used by airline pilots, and so the display is constructed to be similar to some of the radio stacks encountered in aircraft. The GUI has a strong three-dimensional content, with shadows and highlights. All of this is computer generated by POV-Ray. The text, LEDs and navigable buttons are overlaid Tkinter widgets. The important feature to note is that the application has nothing to do with radio stacks; it is really a database access application. This is an application with punch!



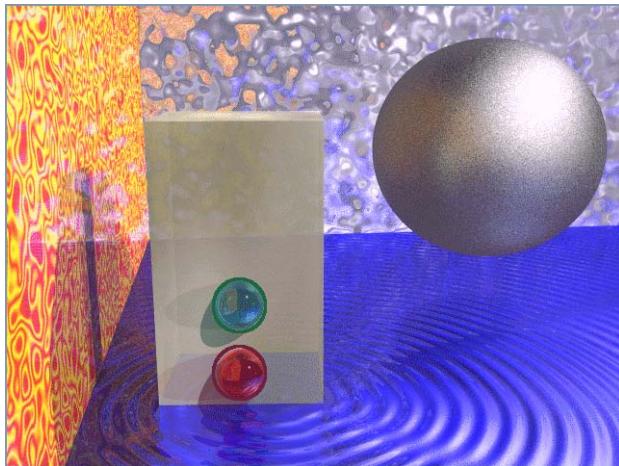
**Figure 9.14 Ray-traced user interface**

Photo courtesy INVOTEC, Inc.

## 9.6.1 And now for something completely different...

### #10 The Example

I'm sorry! I had to use that title. The last example is going to illustrate just how unusual a user interface can become. Readers who are familiar with popular computer games such as *Myst* and *Riven* will share with me their love of ray-traced user interfaces. This is a simplistic version of such an interface. I'm not going to detail the development of ray-traced images, as many texts cover the subject. Let's start with the basic image shown in figure 9.15.



**Figure 9.15 Base scene generated with POV-Ray**

The figure looks best in color, so you may want to obtain the image online. Since you may wish to solve the simple puzzle presented by this example, I will present only a fragment of the code for the application. We are using the overlay techniques presented in this chapter to bind functionality to the two “buttons” in the display. This requires special handling, since the two “buttons” need to take focus, show a highlight when they have focus, and receive button-down events. The following code excerpt manages these buttons.

#### Example\_9\_3.py

```
class Machine:  
    def __init__(self, master):  
        self.root = master  
        ...  
        self.b1 = self.canvas.create_oval(216,285, 270,340, fill="",  
   outline="#226644", width=3, tags='b_1')  
        self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b1, "<Any-Enter>", self.mouseEnter)  
        self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b1, "<Any-Leave>", self.mouseLeave)  
  
        self.b2 = self.canvas.create_oval(216,355, 270,410, fill="",  
   outline="#772244", width=3, tags='b_2')
```

1

```

    self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b2, "<Any-Enter>", self.mouseEnter)
    self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b2, "<Any-Leave>", self.mouseLeave)
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<1>", self.mouseDown) | ②

    self.buttonAction = {'b_1': self.b1_action,
                        'b_2': self.b2_action} | ③

def mouseDown(self, event):
    # See if we're on a button. If we are, it
    # gets tagged as CURRENT for by Tk.
    if event.widget.find_withtag(CURRENT):
        tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
        if '_' in tags[0]:
            self.buttonAction[tags[0]]() | ④

def mouseEnter(self, event):
    # The CURRENT tag is applied to
    # The object the cursor is over.
    tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
    usetag= tags[0]
    self.lastcolor = self.canvas.itemcget(usetag, 'outline')
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,outline=Color.HIGHLIGHT)
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,fill=self.lastcolor) | ⑤

def mouseLeave(self, event):
    tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
    usetag= tags[0]
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag, outline=self.lastcolor)
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,fill="") | ⑥

def b1_action(self):
    if self.inSet:
        value = eval(self.digits[self.curDigit])
        value = value + 1
        exec('%s = value' % self.digits[self.curDigit])
        self.makeText()
        self.displaySet()

def b2_action(self):
    if not self.inSet:
        self.inSet = TRUE
        self.displaySet()
        self.root.after(1000, self.displayTime)
    else:
        self.curDigit = self.curDigit + 1
        if self.curDigit > 3:
            self.inSet = FALSE
            self.canvas.delete('settag')
            self.mouseLeave(None)
            self.doCountdown() | ⑦

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ① We create two circles surrounding the spheres on the display, colored to match the existing display. Note that the circle has no fill color, and is thus transparent.

```
        self.b1 = self.canvas.create_oval(216,285, 270,340, fill="",
   outline='#226644', width=3, tags='b_1')
```

- ② The transparent fill on the circle has a side effect: a transparent object does not receive button events, so we bind enter and leave events to the line drawn for the circle.

```
        self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b2, "<Any-Enter>", self.mouseEnter)
        self.canvas.tag_bind(self.b2, "<Any-Leave>", self.mouseLeave)
Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<1>", self.mouseDown)
```

We also bind left-mouse-button to the whole canvas. Note that we use the bind method of the mixin Widget to bind the event.

- ③ self.buttonAction is a very simple dispatcher:

```
    self.buttonAction = {'b_1': self.b1_action,
                         'b_2': self.b2_action}
```

- ④ mouseDown dispatches to the appropriate function using the tag of the canvas item receiving the event:

```
def mouseDown(self, event):
    if event.widget.find_withtag(CURRENT):
        tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
        if '_' in tags[0]:
            self.buttonAction[tags[0]]()
```

- ⑤ mouseEnter fills the circle with a color so that it can receive button events:

```
def mouseEnter(self, event):
    tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
    usetag= tags[0]
    self.lastcolor = self.canvas.itemcget(usetag, 'outline')
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,outline=Color.HIGHLIGHT)
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,fill=self.lastcolor)
```

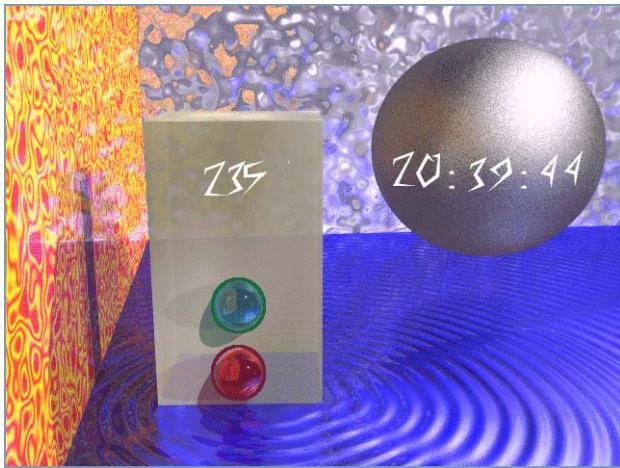
- ⑥ mouseLeave removes the fill as the cursor leaves the button:

```
def mouseLeave(self, event):
    tags = self.canvas.gettags('current')
    usetag= tags[0]
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag, outline=self.lastcolor)
    self.canvas.itemconfig(usetag,fill="")
```

- ⑦ Finally, when certain conditions have been met, we call mouseLeave directly to remove the highlight, even if the cursor is over the canvas item:

```
        self.canvas.delete('settag')
        self.mouseLeave(None)
```

If you run Example\_9\_3.py and work out the sequence, you should see a display similar to the one shown in figure 9.16.



**Figure 9.16** Running  
the puzzle

## 9.7 Summary

The material in this chapter may seem to be very inappropriate for uses other than mechanical devices. Yet there is no reason that information about a system which has no real “front panel” cannot be given an abstract interface. If combinations of the techniques presented in this chapter are used, quite complex devices can be displayed to present status indicators and input devices for users. I hope that you have fun with these examples—there is something very satisfying about generating representations of devices.



## C H A P T E R   1 0

---

# *Drawing blobs and rubber lines*

|                                      |     |                                |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|-----|
| 10.1 Drawing on a canvas             | 238 | 10.5 Stretching canvas objects | 258 |
| 10.2 A more complete drawing program | 244 | 10.6 Some finishing touches    | 262 |
| 10.3 Scrolled canvases               | 251 | 10.7 Speed drawing             | 271 |
| 10.4 Ruler-class tools               | 254 | 10.8 Summary                   | 275 |

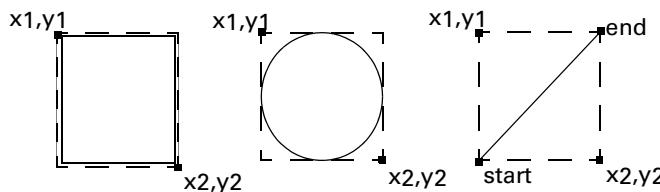
Despite the title, this chapter covers some of the techniques used to build drawing tools and interfaces which allow the user to create and move objects around in a GUI. The chapter is not meant to be a *complete* guide to developing a new “paint” tool, but I will provide you with some useful templates for drawing objects on a canvas, using rubber lines and rearranging objects on a canvas. You have already seen the effect of drawing items on a canvas in earlier chapters—this chapter reveals a little more detail on how to create and maintain drawn objects.

Some of the examples are Tkinter adaptations of Tk demonstration programs; they may be used as an additional guide to converting Tcl/Tk scripts to Tkinter. I have avoided the temptation to completely rework the code, since a side-by-side comparison would reveal how well Tkinter supports Tk.

## 10.1 Drawing on a canvas

We have already encountered several examples of objects drawn on canvases. However, these objects were drawn to represent physical objects on front panels and to create images programmatically. Now we need to allow the user to create drawn objects on the canvas.

Almost all drawing operations define a *bounding box* which encloses the object. The bounding box is expressed as a pair of *x/y* coordinates at the top-left and bottom-right corners. Lines are special cases; they have a *start* and *end* coordinate which does not have to correspond to the coordinates of its bounding box. The bounding box for a line will always be the top-left and bottom-right coordinates. It is important to note that Tk does not guarantee that the bounding box *exactly* bounds the object, so some allowances may have to be made in critical code. This is illustrated in figure 10.1.



**Figure 10.1 Bounding boxes for rectangles, ovals, and lines**

Curved lines (not arcs) are defined as a series of straight lines, each with its own bounding box. Although we will see the application of these object types in some of the examples, they really require special consideration.

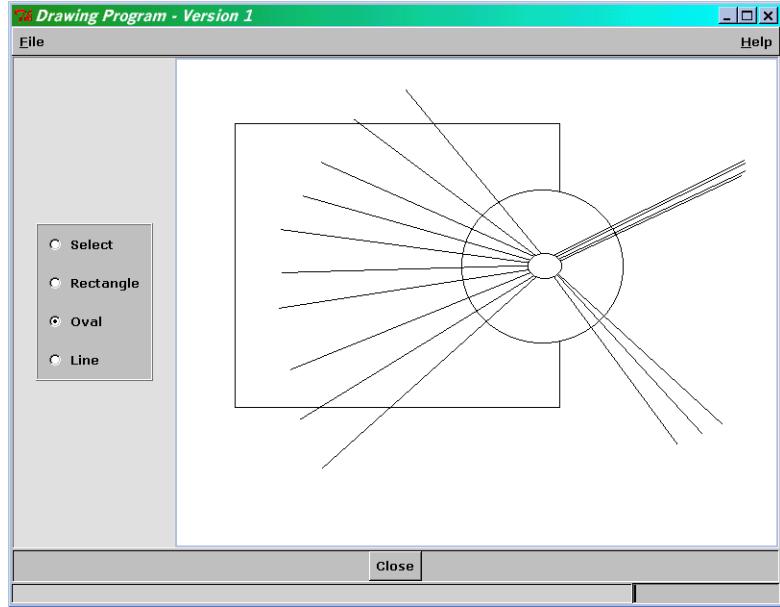
Let's start with a very simple drawing program, inspired by one of the examples in Douglas A. Young's *The X Window System: Programming and Applications with Xt*. This example allows the user to draw lines, rectangles and ovals on a canvas and then select each of these objects. The original example was written in C using X Window, so I have obviously Tkinterized it. It does not allow editing of the resulting drawn objects, so it is somewhat akin to drawing on soft paper with a very hard pencil!

### draw.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw, AppShell, math

class Draw(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname      = 'Drawing Program - Version 1'
    frameWidth   = 800
    frameHeight  = 600

    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Close', helpMessage='Close Screen',
                      statusMessage='Exit', command=self.close)
```



**Figure 10.2 A very simple drawing program**

```

def createBase(self):
    self.width = self.root.winfo_width()-10
    self.height = self.root.winfo_height()-95
    self.command= self.createcomponent('command', (), None,
                                      Frame, (self.interior(),), width=self.width*0.25,
                                      height=self.height, background="gray90")
    self.command.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

    self.canvas = self.createcomponent('canvas', (), None,
                                      Canvas, (self.interior(),), width=self.width*0.73,
                                      height=self.height, background="white")
    self.canvas.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button-1>", self.mouseDown)
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-Motion>", self.mousePosition)
    Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-ButtonRelease>", self.mouseUp)

    self.radio = Pmw.RadioSelect(self.command, labelpos = None,
                                buttontype = 'radiobutton', orient = VERTICAL,
                                command = self.selectFunc, hull_borderwidth = 2,
                                hull_relief = RIDGE,)
    self.radio.pack(side = TOP, expand = 1)

    self.func = {}
    for text, func in (('Select', None),
                      ('Rectangle', self.drawRect),
                      ('Oval', self.drawOval),
                      ('Line', self.drawLine)):

```

```

        self.radio.add(text)
        self.func[text] = func
    self.radio.invoke('Rectangle')

def selectFunc(self, tag):
    self.currentFunc = self.func[tag]

def mouseDown(self, event):
    self.currentObject = None
    self.lastx = self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.lasty = self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    if not self.currentFunc:
        self.selObj = self.canvas.find_closest(self.startx,
  self.starty)[0]
        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj, width=2)
        self.canvas.lift(self.selObj)

def mouseMotion(self, event):
    self.lastx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.lasty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    if self.currentFunc:
        self.canvas.delete(self.currentObject)
        self.currentFunc(self.startx, self.starty,
                         self.lastx, self.lasty,
                         self.foreground, self.background)

def mouseUp(self, event):
    self.lastx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.lasty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    self.canvas.delete(self.currentObject)
    self.currentObject = None
    if self.currentFunc:
        self.currentFunc(self.startx, self.starty,
                         self.lastx, self.lasty,
                         self.foreground, self.background)
    else:
        if self.selObj:
            self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj, width=1)

def drawLine(self, x, y, x2, y2, fg, bg):
    self.currentObject = self.canvas.create_line(x,y,x2,y2,
  fill=fg)

def drawRect(self, x, y, x2, y2, fg, bg):
    self.currentObject = self.canvas.create_rectangle(x, y,
  x2, y2, outline=fg, fill=bg)

def drawOval(self, x, y, x2, y2, fg, bg):
    self.currentObject = self.canvas.create_oval(x, y, x2, y2,
  outline=fg, fill=bg)

def initData(self):
    self.currentFunc = None
    self.currentObject = None
    self.selObj = None
    self.foreground = 'black'

```

3

4

5

6

```

        self.background    = 'white'

def close(self):
    self.quit()

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.initData()
    self.createBase()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    draw = Draw()
    draw.run()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ① This example is completely pointer-driven so it relies on binding functionality to mouse events. We bind click, movement and release to appropriate member functions.

```

Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button-1>", self.mouseDown)
Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-Motion>", self.mousePosition)
Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-ButtonRelease>", self.mouseUp)

```

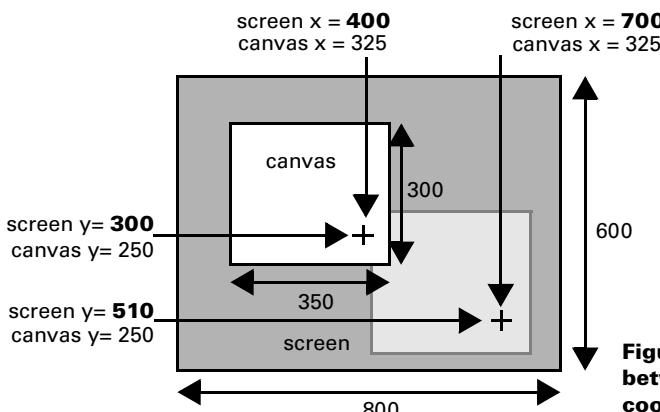
- ② This simple example supports three basic shapes. We build `Pmw.RadioSelect` buttons to link each of the shapes with an appropriate drawing function. Additionally, we define a selection option which allows us to click on the canvas without drawing.
- ③ The `mouseDown` method deselects any currently selected object. The event returns x- and y-coordinates for the mouse-click as screen coordinates. The `canvasx` and `canvasy` methods of the `Canvas` widget convert these screen coordinates into coordinates relative to the canvas.

```

def mouseDown(self, event):
    self.currentObject = None
    self.lastx = self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    self.lasty = self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)

```

Converting the x- and y-coordinates to canvas coordinates is a step that is often forgotten when first coding canvas-based applications. Figure 10.3 illustrates what this means.



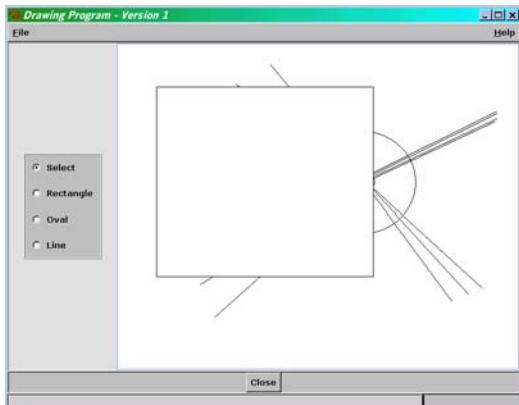
**Figure 10.3 Relationship between screen and canvas coordinates**

When the user clicks on the canvas, the click effectively goes through to the desktop and these coordinates are returned in the event. Converting to canvas coordinates returns the coordinates relative to the canvas origin, regardless of where the canvas is on the screen.

- 4 If no drawing function is selected, we are in select mode, and we search to locate the nearest object on the canvas and select it. This method of selection may not be appropriate for all drawing applications, since the method will always find an object, no matter where the canvas is clicked. This can lead to some confusing behavior in certain complex diagrams, so the selection model might require direct clicking on an object to select it.

```
if not self.currentFunc:  
    self.selObj = self.canvas.find_closest(self.startx,  
   self.starty)  
    self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj, width=2)  
    self.canvas.lift(self.selObj)
```

Having selected the object, we thicken its outline and raise (lift) it to the top of the drawing stack, as shown in figure 10.4.



**Figure 10.4 Selecting an object on a canvas**

- 5 As the mouse is moved (with the button down), we receive a stream of motion events. Each of these represents a change in the bounding box for the object. Having converted the x- and y-coordinates to canvas points, we delete the existing canvas object and redraw it using the current function and the new bounding box.

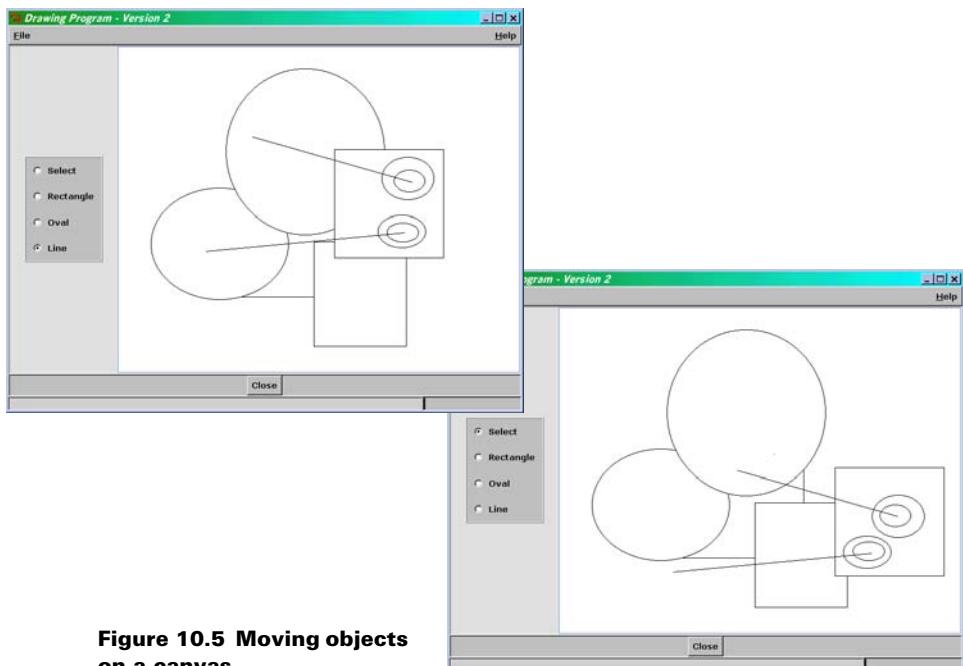
```
self.canvas.delete(self.currentObject)  
self.currentFunc(self.startx, self.starty,  
                  self.lastx, self.lasty,  
                  self.foreground, self.background)
```

- 6 The drawing methods are quite simple; they're just creating canvas primitives within the bounding box.

```
def drawLine(self, x, y, x2, y2, fg, bg):  
    self.currentObject = self.canvas.create_line(x,y,x2,y2,  
  fill=fg)
```

### 10.1.1 Moving canvas objects

The selection of objects in the first example simply raises them in the display stack. If you were to raise a large object above smaller objects you could quite possibly prevent access to those objects. Clearly, we need to provide a more useful means of manipulating the drawn objects. Typically, draw tools move objects in response to a mouse drag. Adding this to the example is very easy. Here are the modifications which have been applied to draw.py:



**Figure 10.5 Moving objects on a canvas**

#### draw2.py

```
def mouseMotion(self, event):
    cx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    cy = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    if self.currentFunc:
        self.lastx = cx
        self.lasty = cy
        self.canvas.delete(self.currentObject)
        self.currentFunc(self.startx, self.starty,
                         self.lastx, self.lasty,
                         self.foreground, self.background)
    else:
        if self.selObj:
```

①

②

```

    self.canvas.move(self.selObj, cx-self.lastx,
                     cy-self.lasty)
    self.lastx = cx
    self.lasty = cy

```

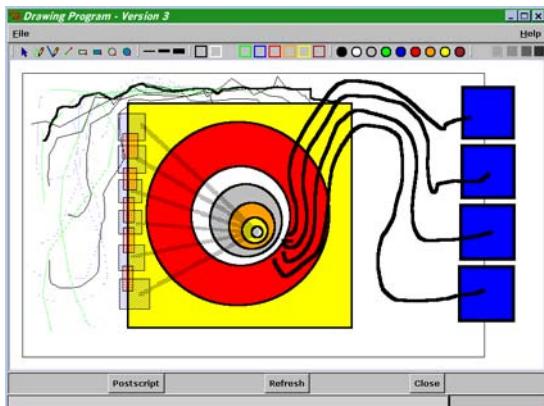
3

#### *Code comments*

- ❶ We need to store the x- and y-coordinates in intermediate variables, since we need to determine how far the mouse moved since the last time we updated the screen.
- ❷ If we are drawing the object, we use the x- and y-coordinates as the second coordinate of the bounding box.
- ❸ If we are moving the object, we calculate the difference between the current location and the last bounding box location.

## **10.2 A more complete drawing program**

The examples so far demonstrate basic drawing methods, but a realistic drawing program must supply many more facilities. Let's take a look at some of the features that we are adding in this example before studying the code:



**Figure 10.6 Drawing program:  
extended features**

- 1 A Toolbar to give access to a number of specific drawing tools and options:
  - Drawing tools for freehand curves, smoothed curves, straight (rubber) lines, open and filled rectangles, and open and filled ovals.
  - Provision to set the color of the line or outline of a drawn object.
  - Provision to set the width of the line or outline of a drawn object.
  - Provision to set the fill color of an object.
  - A limited number of stipple masks (to allow variable transparency).
- 2 Holding down the SHIFT key draws rectangles and ovals as squares and circles respectively.
- 3 An option to generate a PostScript file rendering the current content of the canvas.

- 4 A refresh option to repaint the screen.
- 5 Balloon help (provided through AppShell, which was introduced on page 155).

Here is the source to support the functionality:

### draw3.py

```

from Tkinter import *
import Pmw, AppShell, math, time, string

class ToolBarButton(Label):
    def __init__(self, top, parent, tag=None, image=None, command=None,
                 statushelp='', balloonhelp='', height=21, width=21,
                 bd=1, activebackground='lightgrey', padx=0, pady=0,
                 state='normal', bg='grey'):
        Label.__init__(self, parent, height=height, width=width,
                      relief='flat', bd=bd, bg=bg)
        self.bg = bg
        self.activebackground = activebackground
        if image != None:
            if string.split(image, '.') [1] == 'bmp':
                self.Icon = BitmapImage(file='icons/%s' % image)
            else:
                self.Icon = PhotoImage(file='icons/%s' % image)
        else:
            self.Icon = PhotoImage(file='icons/blank.gif')
        self.config(image=self.Icon)

        self.tag = tag
        self.icommand = command
        self.command = self.activate
        self.bind("<Enter>", self.buttonEnter)
        self.bind("<Leave>", self.buttonLeave)
        self.bind("<ButtonPress-1>", self.buttonDown)
        self.bind("<ButtonRelease-1>", self.buttonUp)
        self.pack(side='left', anchor=NW, padx=padx, pady=pady)

        if balloonhelp or statushelp:
            top.balloon().bind(self, balloonhelp, statushelp)
            self.state = state

    def activate(self):
        self.icommand(self.tag)

    def buttonEnter(self, event):
        if self.state != 'disabled':
            self.config(relief='raised', bg=self.bg)

    def buttonLeave(self, event):
        if self.state != 'disabled':
            self.config(relief='flat', bg=self.bg)

    def buttonDown(self, event):
        if self.state != 'disabled':
            self.config(relief='sunken', bg=self.activebackground)

```

①

②

```

def buttonUp(self, event):
    if self.state != 'disabled':
        if self.command != None:
            self.command()
            time.sleep(0.05)
            self.config(relief='flat', bg=self.bg)

class Draw(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname       = 'Drawing Program - Version 3'
    frameWidth   = 840
    frameHeight  = 600

    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Postscript',
                       helpMessage='Save current drawing (as PostScript)',
                       statusMessage='Save drawing as PostScript file',
                       command=self.ipostscript)
        self.buttonAdd('Refresh', helpMessage='Refresh drawing',
                      statusMessage='Redraw the screen', command=self.redraw)
        self.buttonAdd('Close', helpMessage='Close Screen',
                      statusMessage='Exit', command=self.close)

    def createBase(self):
        self.toolbar = self.createComponent('toolbar', (), None,
   Frame, (self.interior(),), background="gray90")
        self.toolbar.pack(fill=X)

        self.canvas = self.createComponent('canvas', (), None,
   Canvas, (self.interior(),), background="white")
        self.canvas.pack(side=LEFT, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

        Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button-1>", self.mouseDown)
        Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-Motion>", self.mousePosition)
        Widget.bind(self.canvas, "<Button1-ButtonRelease>", self.mouseUp)
        self.root.bind("<KeyPress>", self.setRegular)
        self.root.bind("<KeyRelease>", self.setRegular)

    def setRegular(self, event):
        if event.type == '2' and event.keysym == 'Shift_L':
            self.regular = TRUE
        else:
            self.regular = FALSE

    def createTools(self):
        self.func = {}
        ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, 'sep', 'sep.gif',
                      width=10, state='disabled')
        for key, func, balloon in [
            ('pointer',    None,                 'Edit drawing'),
            ('draw',        self.drawFree,       'Draw freehand'),
            ('smooth',     self.drawSmooth,     'Smooth freehand'),
            ('line',        self.drawLine,      'Rubber line'),
            ('rect',        self.drawRect,      'Unfilled rectangle'),
            ('frect',      self.drawFilledRect, 'Filled rectangle'),
            ('oval',        self.drawOval,      'Unfilled oval'),
```

```

        ('foval', self.drawFilledOval, 'Filled oval')):
    ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, key, '%s.gif' % key,
                  command=self.selectFunc, balloonhelp=balloon,
                  statushelp=balloon)
    self.func[key] = func
    4

def createLineWidths(self):
    ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, 'sep', 'sep.gif', width=10,
                  state='disabled')
    5
    for width in ['1', '3', '5']:
        ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, width, 'tline%s.gif' % \
                      width, command=self.selectWidth,
                      balloonhelp='%s pixel linewidth' % width,
                      statushelp='%s pixel linewidth' % width)

def createLineColors(self):
def createFillColors(self):
def createPatterns(self):

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The ToolBarButton class implements a simple iconic button. A bitmap or PhotoImage may be used for the icon.
- ❷ We establish bindings for the Label widget, since we have to create our own button-press animation when the user clicks on the button or places the cursor over the button.
- ❸ Forcing rectangles to be squares and ovals to be circles is achieved by binding a <KeyPress> event to the root window. When we receive the callback, we have to check that the SHIFT key is pressed and set a flag accordingly.

```

        self.root.bind("<KeyPress>", self.setRegular)
        self.root.bind("<KeyRelease>", self.setRegular)
    def setRegular(self, event):
        if event.type == '2' and event.keysym == 'Shift_L':
            self.regular = TRUE

```

- ❹ We create a dispatch table for the various drawn object types, with a display name, function, and Balloon help text.
- ❺ The method to create each group of toolbar buttons is essentially the same, so some of the code has been removed for brevity.

### **draw3.py (continued)**

```

    def selectFunc(self, tag):
        self.curFunc = self.func[tag]
        if self.curFunc:
            self.canvas.config(cursor='crosshair')
        else:
            self.canvas.config(cursor='arrow')

    def selectWidth(self, tag):
    def selectBackground(self, tag):
    def selectForeground(self, tag):

```

```

def selectPattern(self, tag):
# --- Code Removed ----

    def mouseDown(self, event):
        self.curObject = None
        self.canvas.dtag('drawing')
        self.lineData = []
        self.lastx = self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
        self.lasty = self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
        if not self.curFunc:
            self.selObj = self.canvas.find_closest(self.startx,
   self.starty)[0]
            self.savedWidth = string.atoi(self.canvas.itemcget( \
                self.selObj, 'width'))
            self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj,
                                   width=self.savedWidth + 2)
            self.canvas.lift(self.selObj)

    def mouseMotion(self, event):
        curx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
        cury = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
        prevx = self.lastx
        prevy = self.lasty
        if self.curFunc:
            self.lastx = curx
            self.lasty = cury

        if self.regular and self.canvas.type('drawing') in \
            ['oval','rectangle']:
            dx      = self.lastx - self.startx
            dy      = self.lasty - self.starty
            delta = max(dx, dy)
            self.lastx = self.startx + delta
            self.lasty = self.starty + delta
            self.curFunc(self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                         self.lasty, prevx, prevy, self.foreground,
                         self.background, self.fillStyle, self.lineWidth, None)

        else:
            if self.selObj:
                self.canvas.move(self.selObj, curx-prevx, cury-prevy)
                self.lastx = curx
                self.lasty = cury

    def mouseUp(self, event):
        self.prevx = self.lastx
        self.prevy = self.lasty
        self.lastx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
        self.lasty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
        if self.curFunc:
            if self.regular and self.canvas.type('drawing') in \
                ['oval','rectangle']:
                dx      = self.lastx - self.startx
                dy      = self.lasty - self.starty
                delta = max(dx, dy)

```

```

        self.lastx = self.startx + delta
        self.lasty = self.starty + delta
        self.curFunc(self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                     self.lasty, self.prevx, self.prevy, self.foreground,
                     self.background, self.fillStyle, self.lineWidth,
                     self.lineData)
        self.storeObject()
    else:
        if self.selObj:
            self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj,
                                   width=self.savedWidth)

    def drawLine(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.canvas.delete(self.curObject)
        self.curObject = self.canvas.create_line(x,y,x2,y2,fill=fg,
  tags='drawing', stipple=fillp, width=wid)

    def drawFree(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.drawFreeSmooth(x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3, FALSE, fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld)

    def drawSmooth(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.drawFreeSmooth(x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3, TRUE, fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld)

    def drawFreeSmooth(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,smooth,fg, bg, fillp,
                      wid,ld):
        if not ld:
            for coord in [[x3, y3, x2, y2], [x2, y2]][smooth]:
                self.lineData.append(coord)
            ild = self.lineData
        else:
            ild = ld
        if len(ild) > 2:
            self.curObject = self.canvas.create_line(ild, fill=fg,
  stipple=fillp, tags='drawing', width=wid, smooth=smooth)

    def drawRect(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.drawFilledRect(x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg,'',fillp,wid,ld)

    def drawFilledRect(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.canvas.delete(self.curObject)
        self.curObject = self.canvas.create_rectangle(x,y,x2,y2,
  outline=fg, tags='drawing', fill=bg,
  stipple=fillp, width=wid)

    def drawOval(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.drawFilledOval(x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg,'',fillp,wid,ld)

    def drawFilledOval(self,x,y,x2,y2,x3,y3,fg, bg, fillp, wid, ld):
        self.canvas.delete(self.curObject)
        self.curObject = self.canvas.create_oval(x,y,x2,y2,outline=fg,
  fill=bg,tags='drawing',stipple=fillp,width=wid)

```

---

#### *Code comments (continued)*

- ❶ Each of the select callbacks uses the tag attached to each of the toolbar buttons to look up the function, line width, or other property of a button (Some of the code has been removed).

```

def selectFunc(self, tag):
    self.curFunc = self.func[tag]
    if self.curFunc:
        self.canvas.config(cursor='crosshair')
    else:
        self.canvas.config(cursor='arrow')

```

A cursor is also selected, appropriate for the current operation.

- 7 The mouse callbacks are similar to those in the earlier two examples.
- 8 This code implements the squaring or rounding of rectangles and ovals if the appropriate flags have been set.
- 9 The draw methods are quite similar to earlier examples with the addition of storing a list of line segments (for curved lines), smoothing and object attributes.

### **draw3.py (continued)**

```

def storeObject(self):
    self.objects.append(( self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                         self.lasty, self.prevx, self.prevy, self.curFunc,
                         self.foreground, self.background, self.fillStyle,
                         self.lineWidth, self.lineData))

def redraw(self):
    self.canvas.delete(ALL)
    for startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, prevy, func, \
        fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld, in self.objects:
        self.curObject = None
        func(startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, prevy,
              fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld)

def initData(self):
    self.curFunc      = self.drawLine
    self.curObject    = None
    self.selObj       = None
    self.lineData     = []
    self.savedWidth   = 1
    self.objects      = []
    self.foreground   = 'black'
    self.background   = 'white'
    self.fillStyle    = None
    self.lineWidth    = 1
    self.regular      = False

def ipostscript(self):          12
    postscript = self.canvas.postscript()
    fd = open('drawing.ps', 'w')
    fd.write(postscript)
    fd.close()

def close(self):
    self.quit()

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()

```

10

11

12

```

    self.initData()
    self.createBase()
    self.createTools()
    self.createLineWidths()
    self.createLineColors()
    self.createFillColors()
    self.createPatterns()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    draw = Draw()
    draw.run()

```

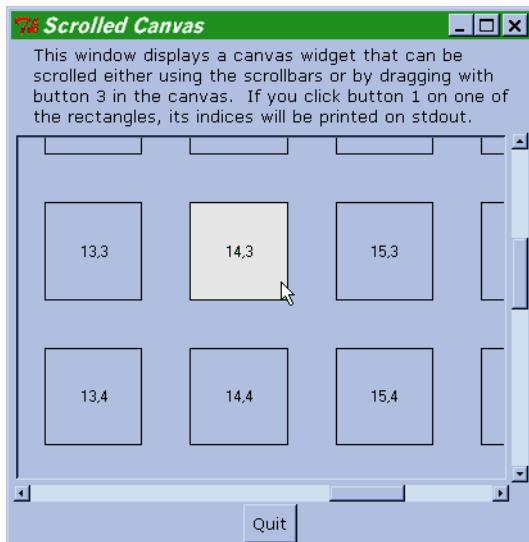
---

*Code comments (continued)*

- ⑩ The purpose of `storeObject` is to store a list of object descriptors in the order in which they were created, so that the drawing can be refreshed in the correct order.
- ⑪ `redraw` deletes all of the current objects and recreates them, with all original attributes and tags.
- ⑫ Tk canvases have a wonderful ability to create a PostScript representation of themselves (it is a pity that the rest of the widgets cannot do this). As a result, we are able to output a file containing the PostScript drawing, which can be printed or viewed with the appropriate software.

### 10.3 Scrolled canvases

Frequently, the size of a drawing exceeds the available space on the screen. To provide a larger canvas, we must scroll the canvas under a viewing area. Handling scrollbars in some windowing systems (X Window, for example) can require a moderate amount of code. Tkinter (Tk) makes scroll operations relatively easy to code. Take a look at this example, which was reworked directly from a Tk example.



**Figure 10.7 Managing a scrolled canvas**

## cscroll.py

```
from Tkinter import *

class ScrolledCanvas:
    def __init__(self, master, width=500, height=350):
        Label(master, text="This window displays a canvas widget "
            "that can be scrolled either using the scrollbars or "
            "by dragging with button 3 in the canvas. If you "
            "click button 1 on one of the rectangles, its indices "
            "will be printed on stdout.",
            wraplength="4i", justify=LEFT).pack(side=TOP)
        self.control=Frame(master)
        self.control.pack(side=BOTTOM, fill=X, padx=2)
        Button(self.control, text='Quit', command=master.quit).pack()

        self.grid = Frame(master)
        self.canvas = Canvas(master, relief=SUNKEN, borderwidth=2,
            scrollregion=(-11c, -11c, '50c', '20c'))
        self.hscroll = Scrollbar(master, orient=HORIZONTAL,
            command=self.canvas.xview)
        self.vscroll = Scrollbar(master, command=self.canvas.yview)

        self.canvas.configure(xscrollcommand=self.hscroll.set,
            yscrollcommand=self.vscroll.set)

        self.grid.pack(expand=YES, fill=BOTH, padx=1, pady=1)
        self.grid.rowconfigure(0, weight=1, minsize=0)
        self.grid.columnconfigure(0, weight=1, minsize=0)
        self.canvas.grid(padx=1, in_=self.grid, pady=1, row=0,
            column=0, rowspan=1, columnspan=1, sticky='news')
        self.vscroll.grid(padx=1, in_=self.grid, pady=1, row=0,
            column=1, rowspan=1, columnspan=1, sticky='news')
        self.hscroll.grid(padx=1, in_=self.grid, pady=1, row=1,
            column=0, rowspan=1, columnspan=1, sticky='news')
        self.oldFill = None

        bg = self.canvas['background']
        for i in range(20):
            x = -10 + 3*i
            y = -10
            for j in range(10):
                self.canvas.create_rectangle('%dc'%x, '%dc'%y,
                    '%dc'%(x+2), '%dc'%(y+2), outline='black',
                    fill=bg, tags='rect')
                self.canvas.create_text('%dc'%(x+1), '%dc'%(y+1),
                    text='%d,%d'%(i,j), anchor=CENTER,
                    tags=('text', 'rect'))
            y = y + 3
        self.canvas.tag_bind('rect', '<Any-Enter>', self.scrollEnter)
        self.canvas.tag_bind('rect', '<Any-Leave>', self.scrollLeave)
        self.canvas.bind_all('<1>', self.scrollButton)
        self.canvas.bind('<3>',
            lambda e, s=self: s.canvas.scan_mark(e.x, e.y))
        self.canvas.bind('<B3-Motion>',
            lambda e, s=self: s.canvas.scan_dragto(e.x, e.y))
```

1

2

3

```

def scrollEnter(self, event):
    id = self.canvas.find_withtag(CURRENT)[0]
    if 'text' in self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT):
        id = id-1
    self.canvas.itemconfigure(id, fill='SeaGreen1')

def scrollLeave(self, event):
    id = self.canvas.find_withtag(CURRENT)[0]
    if 'text' in self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT):
        id = id-1
    self.canvas.itemconfigure(id, fill=self.canvas['background'])

def scrollButton(self, event):
    ids = self.canvas.find_withtag(CURRENT)
    if ids:
        id = ids[0]
        if not 'text' in self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT):
            id = id+1
        print 'You clicked on %s' % \
              self.canvas.itemcget(id, 'text')

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10')
    root.title('Scrolled Canvas')
    scroll = ScrolledCanvas(root)
    root.mainloop()

```

4

### *Code comments*

- ❶ We create the canvas with a 61cm×31cm scroll region which clearly will not fit in a 500×350 (pixels) window. The horizontal and vertical bars are created and bound directly to the position method of the canvas.

```

self.canvas = Canvas(master, relief=SUNKEN, borderwidth=2,
                     scrollregion=(-11c, -11c, '50c', '20c'))
self.hscroll = Scrollbar(master, orient=HORIZONTAL,
                        command=self.canvas.xview)
self.vscroll = Scrollbar(master, command=self.canvas.yview)

```

- ❷ The scroll bars are set to track the canvas:

```

self.canvas.configure(xscrollcommand=self.hscroll.set,
                      yscrollcommand=self.vscroll.set)

```

- ❸ Setting up the bindings to pan the canvas when the right mouse button is clicked and dragged is surprisingly easy—we just bind the click to the `scan_mark` method and the drag to `scan_dragto`.

```

self.canvas.bind('<3>',
                 lambda e, s=self: s.canvas.scan_mark(e.x, e.y))
self.canvas.bind('<B3-Motion>',
                 lambda e, s=self: s.canvas.scan_dragto(e.x, e.y))

```

- ❹ Finally, the `ScrollButton` callback is worthy of a brief note. It illustrates the ease of using tags to identify objects:

```

ids = self.canvas.find_withtag(CURRENT)

```

```

if ids:
    id = ids[0]
    if not 'text' in self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT):
        id = id+1
    print 'You clicked on %s' % \
          self.canvas.itemcget(id, 'text')

```

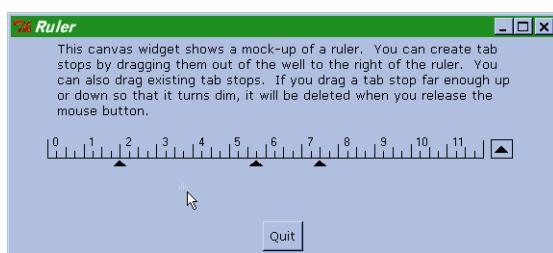
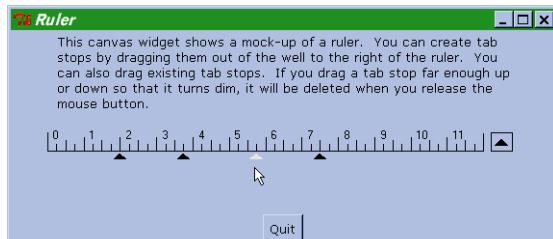
First we find all the `ids` with the `CURRENT` tag (this will be either the rectangle or the text field at its center). We only care about the first tag.

Then, we check to see if it is the text object. If it is not, the next `id` will be the text object, since we defined the rectangle first.

Last, we get the text object's contents which give the row-column coordinates.

## 10.4 Ruler-class tools

Another common drawing tool is a ruler. This can be used to provide tab stops or other constraint graphics. It also illustrates some of the aspects of drag-and-drop from within an application. This example was also recoded from a Tk example.



**Figure 10.8 A simple ruler tool**

### ruler.py

```

from Tkinter import *

class Ruler:
    def __init__(self, master, width='14.8c', height='2.5c'):
        Label(master, text="This canvas widget shows a mock-up of a " +
              "ruler. You can create tab stops by dragging them out " +
              "of the well to the right of the ruler. You can also " +
              "drag existing tab stops. If you drag a tab stop far "

```

```

    "enough up or down so that it turns dim, it will be "
    "deleted when you release the mouse button.",
    wraplength="5i", justify=LEFT).pack(side=TOP)
self.ctl=Frame(master)
self.ctl.pack(side=BOTTOM, fill=X, padx=2, pady=2)
Button(self.ctl, text='Quit', command=master.quit).pack()
self.canvas = Canvas(master, width=width, height=height,
                     relief=FLAT, borderwidth=2)
self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, fill=X)

c = self.canvas
self.grid  = '0.25c'
self.left   = c.winfo_fpixels('1c')
self.right  = c.winfo_fpixels('13c')
self.top    = c.winfo_fpixels('1c')
self.bottom = c.winfo_fpixels('1.5c')
self.size   = c.winfo_fpixels('.2c')
self.normalStyle = 'black'
self.activeStyle = 'green'
self.activeStipple = ''
self.deleteStyle = 'red'
self.deleteStipple = 'gray25'

c.create_line('1c', '0.5c', '1c', '1c', '13c', '1c',
              '13c', '0.5c', width=1) ②
for i in range(12):
    x = i+1
    c.create_line('%dc%x', '1c', '%dc%x', '0.6c', width=1)
    c.create_line('%d.25c%x', '1c', '%d.25c%x',
                  '0.8c', width=1)
    c.create_line('%d.5c%x', '1c', '%d.5c%x',
                  '0.7c', width=1)
    c.create_line('%d.75c%x', '1c', '%d.75c%x',
                  '0.8c', width=1)
    c.create_text('%d.15c%x', '.75c', text=i, anchor=SW)

    wellBorder = c.create_rectangle('13.2c', '1c', '13.8c',
                                    '0.5c', outline='black',
                                    fill=self.canvas['background'])
wellTab = self.mkTab(c.winfo_pixels('13.5c'),
                      c.winfo_pixels('.65c'))
c.addtag_withtag('well', wellBorder)
c.addtag_withtag('well', wellTab)

c.tag_bind('well', '<1>',
           lambda e, s=self: s.newTab(e.x, e.y))
c.tag_bind('tab', '<1>',
           lambda e, s=self: s.selectTab(e.x, e.y))
c.bind('<B1-Motion>',
       lambda e, s=self: s.moveTab(e.x, e.y))
c.bind('<Any-ButtonRelease-1>', self.releaseTab)

def mkTab(self, x, y):
    return self.canvas.create_polygon(x, y, x+self.size,
                                      y+self.size, x-self.size, y+self.size)

```

```

def newTab(self, x, y):
    newTab = self.mkTab(x, y)
    self.canvas.addtag_withtag('active', newTab) | ③
    self.canvas.addtag_withtag('tab', newTab)
    self.x = x
    self.y = y
    self.moveTab(x, y)

def selectTab(self, x, y):
    self.x = self.canvas.canvasx(x, self.grid)
    self.y = self.top + 2
    self.canvas.addtag_withtag('active', CURRENT)
    self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.activeStyle,
                           stipple=self.activeStipple)
    self.canvas.lift('active')

def moveTab(self, x, y):
    tags = self.canvas.find_withtag('active')
    if not tags: return
    cx = self.canvas.canvasx(x, self.grid)
    cy = self.canvas.canvasx(y)
    if cx < self.left:
        cx = self.left
    if cx > self.right:
        cx = self.right
    if cy >= self.top and cy <= self.bottom:
        cy = self.top+2
        self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.activeStyle,
                               stipple=self.activeStipple)
    else:
        cy = cy-self.size-2
        self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.deleteStyle,
                               stipple=self.deleteStipple)
    self.canvas.move('active', cx-self.x, cy-self.y)
    self.x = cx
    self.y = cy

def releaseTab(self, event):
    tags = self.canvas.find_withtag('active')
    if not tags: return
    if self.y != self.top+2:
        self.canvas.delete('active')
    else:
        self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.normalStyle,
                               stipple=self.activeStipple)
        self.canvas.dtag('active')

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10')
    root.title('Ruler')
    ruler = Ruler(root)
    root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ This example illustrates how dimensions may be specified in any valid Tkinter distance and converted to pixels (in this case as a floating point number),

```
self.right = c.winfo_fpixels('13c')
```

- ❷ Similarly, we can create an object using absolute measurements (in this case, centimeters). This can be useful if you are working directly from a drawing and you have a ruler!

```
c.create_line('1c', '0.5c', '1c', '1c', '13c', '1c',
              '13c', '0.5c', width=1)
```

- ❸ Tkinter sometimes hides the capability of the underlying Tk function. In this case we are adding two tags, active and tab, to the newly-created object newTab.

```
newTab = self.mkTab(x, y)
self.canvas.addtag_withtag('active', newTab)
self.canvas.addtag_withtag('tab', newTab)
```

The addtag\_withtag method hides the fact that the withtag argument applies to both tags and ids, which are being passed here.

- ❹ moveTab has a lot of work to do, since the user can create new tabs, as well as move and delete existing ones. If I weren't following Ousterhout's example, I would probably reduce the complexity here.

- ❺ The ruler arranges to snap the tab to the nearest 0.25 cm (`self.grid`). The `canvasx` method takes an optional argument, which defines the resolution with which the conversion to canvas coordinates is to be made.

```
cx = self.canvas.canvasx(x, self.grid)
```

- ❻ If the pointer moves between the top and bottom range of the ruler, we snap the vertical position of the tab and fill it with a distinctive color so that it is readily identified.

```
cy = self.top+2
self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.activeStyle,
                      stipple=self.activeStipple)
```

- ❼ If we have moved outside the bounds of top and bottom, we push it out further and fill it with a distinctive color stippling so that it becomes a ghost.

```
cy = cy-self.size-2
self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.deleteStyle,
                      stipple=self.deleteStipple)
```

- ❽ As with moving the tab, releasing it requires multiple actions.

- ❾ If the tab is marked for deletion (it isn't at the snapped-to y-value) the object is deleted.

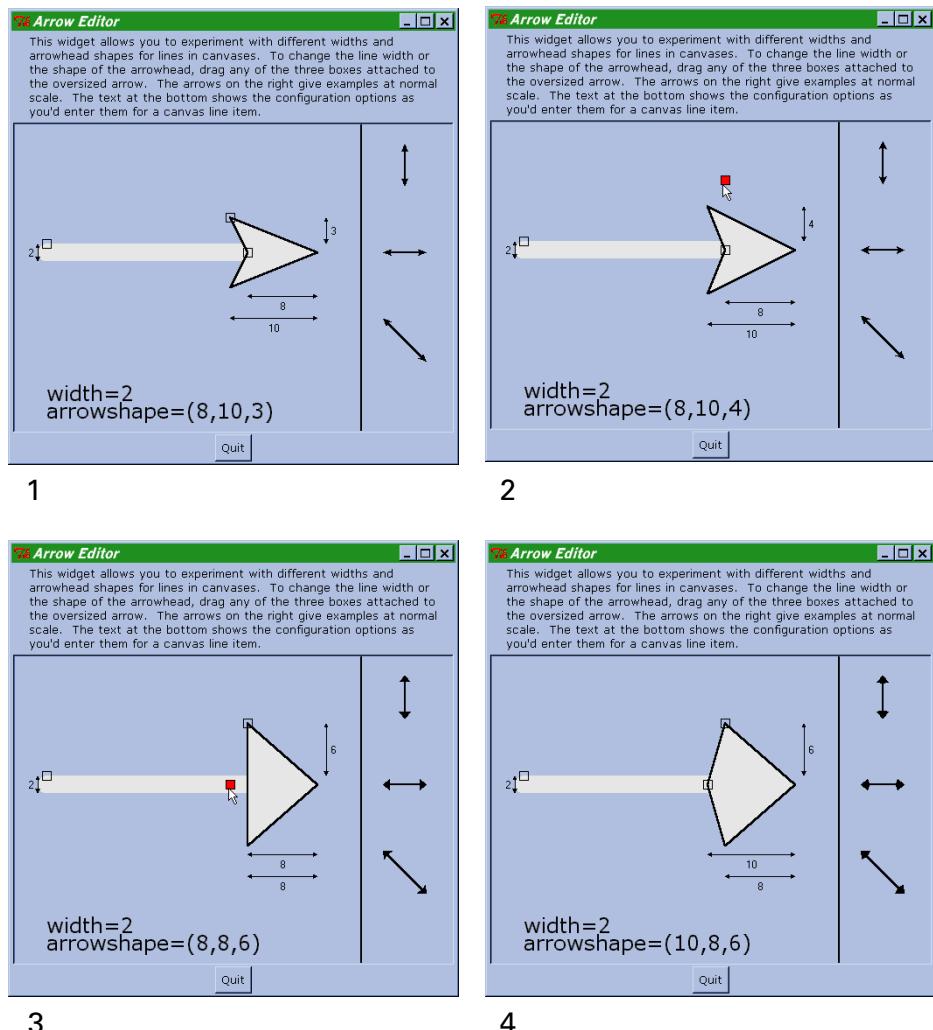
```
if self.y != self.top+2:
    self.canvas.delete('active')
```

- ❿ Otherwise, we fill the tab with a normal color and delete the active tag.

```
self.canvas.itemconfig('active', fill=self.normalStyle,
                      stipple=self.activeStipple)
self.canvas.dtag('active')
```

## 10.5 Stretching canvas objects

A common operation for drawing programs is stretching an existing object. This requires us to provide grab handles which the user can click and drag to resize the object. Before we add resize operations to our drawing example, let's take a look at a slightly simpler example which was also converted from Tk. This little program allows you to experiment with the two attributes that determine the shape of an arrow, width and arrowshape. You might find this a useful tool if you ever want to create arrows with a distinctive shape.



**Figure 10.9 Stretching canvas objects**

## arrow.py

```
from Tkinter import *

class ArrowEditor:
    def __init__(self, master, width=500, height=350):
        Label(master, text="This widget allows you to experiment "
            "with different widths and arrowhead shapes for lines "
            "in canvases. To change the line width or the shape "
            "of the arrowhead, drag any of the three boxes "
            "attached to the oversized arrow. The arrows on the "
            "right give examples at normal scale. The text at "
            "the bottom shows the configuration options as you'd "
            "enter them for a canvas line item.",
            wraplength="5i", justify=LEFT).pack(side=TOP)
        self.control=Frame(master)
        self.control.pack(side=BOTTOM, fill=X, padx=2)
        Button(self.control, text='Quit', command=master.quit).pack()
        self.canvas = Canvas(master, width=width, height=height,
            relief=SUNKEN, borderwidth=2)
        self.canvas.pack(expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

        self.a      = 8      # Setup default values
        self.b      = 10
        self.c      = 3
        self.width= 2
        self.motionProc = None
        self.x1     = 40
        self.x2     = 350
        self.y      = 150
        self.smallTips= (5,5,2)
        self.bigLine= 'SkyBlue2'
        self.boxFill= ''
        self.activeFill = 'red'

        self.arrowSetup() # Draw default arrow
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box', '<Enter>', lambda e, s=self:
            s.canvas.itemconfig(CURRENT, fill='red'))
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box', '<Leave>', lambda e, s=self:
            s.canvas.itemconfig(CURRENT, fill=''))
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box1', '<1>', lambda e, s=self:
            s.motion(s.arrowMove1))
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box2', '<1>', lambda e, s=self:
            s.motion(s.arrowMove2) )
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box3', '<1>', lambda e, s=self:
            s.motion(s.arrowMove3))
        self.canvas.tag_bind('box', '<B1-Motion>', lambda e,
            s=self: s.motionProc(e))
        self.canvas.bind('<Any-ButtonRelease-1>', lambda e,
            s=self: s.arrowSetup())

    def motion(self, func):
        self.motionProc = func
```

1

```

def arrowMove1(self, event):
    newA = (self.x2+5-int(self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)))/10
    if newA < 0: newA = 0
    if newA > 25: newA = 25
    if newA != self.a:
        self.canvas.move("box1", 10*(self.a-newA), 0)
        self.a = newA

def arrowMove2(self, event):
    newB = (self.x2+5-int(self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)))/10
    if newB < 0: newB = 0
    if newB > 25: newB = 25
    newC = (self.y+5-int(self.canvas.canvasx(event.y) + \
                      5*self.width))/10
    if newC < 0: newC = 0
    if newC > 20: newC = 20
    if newB != self.b or newC != self.c:
        self.canvas.move("box2", 10*(self.b-newB),
                         10*(self.c-newC))
        self.b = newB
        self.c = newC

def arrowMove3(self, event):
    newW = (self.y+2-int(self.canvas.canvasx(event.y)))/5
    if newW < 0: newW = 0
    if newW > 20: newW = 20
    if newW != self.width:
        self.canvas.move("box3", 0, 5*(self.width-newW))
        self.width = newW

def arrowSetup(self):
    tags = self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT)
    cur = None
    if 'box' in tags:
        for tag in tags:
            if len(tag) == 4 and tag[:3] == 'box':
                cur = tag
                break
    self.canvas.delete(ALL)
    self.canvas.create_line(self.x1, self.y, self.x2, self.y,
                           width=10*self.width,
                           arrowshape=(10*self.a, 10*self.b, 10*self.c),
                           arrow='last', fill=self.bigLine)
    xtip = self.x2-10*self.b
    deltaY = 10*self.c+5*self.width
    self.canvas.create_line(self.x2, self.y, xtip, self.y+deltaY,
                           self.x2-10*self.a, self.y, xtip, self.y-deltaY,
                           self.x2, self.y, width=2, capstyle='round',
                           joinstyle='round')
    self.canvas.create_rectangle(self.x2-10*self.a-5, self.y-5,
                                self.x2-10*self.a+5, self.y+5,
                                fill=self.boxFill, outline='black',
                                tags=('box1', 'box'))
    self.canvas.create_rectangle(xtip-5, self.y-deltaY-5,
                                xtip+5, self.y-deltaY+5,
                                fill=self.boxFill, outline='black',

```

2

3

4

```

tags=('box2', 'box'))
self.canvas.create_rectangle(self.x1-5,
                            self.y-5*self.width-5, self.x1+5,
                            self.y-5*self.width+5, fill=self.boxFill,
                            outline='black', tags=('box3', 'box'))
if cur:
    self.canvas.itemconfig(cur, fill=self.activeFill)
self.canvas.create_line(self.x2+50, 0, self.x2+50,
                       1000, width=2)

tmp = self.x2+100
self.canvas.create_line(tmp, self.y-125, tmp, self.y-75,
                       width=self.width, arrow='both',
                       arrowshape=(self.a, self.b, self.c))
self.canvas.create_line(tmp-25, self.y, tmp+25, self.y,
                       width=self.width, arrow='both',
                       arrowshape=(self.a, self.b, self.c))
self.canvas.create_line(tmp-25, self.y+75, tmp+25, self.y+125,
                       width=self.width, arrow='both',
                       arrowshape=(self.a, self.b, self.c))

tmp = self.x2+10
self.canvas.create_line(tmp, self.y-5*self.width, tmp,
                       self.y-deltaY, arrow='both', arrowshape=self.smallTips)
self.canvas.create_text(self.x2+15, self.y-deltaY+5*self.c,
                       text=self.c, anchor=W)
tmp = self.x1-10
self.canvas.create_line(tmp, self.y-5*self.width, tmp,
                       self.y+5*self.width, arrow='both',
                       arrowshape=self.smallTips)
self.canvas.create_text(self.x1-15, self.y,
                       text=self.width, anchor=E)
tmp = self.y+5*self.width+10*self.c+10
self.canvas.create_line(self.x2-10*self.a, tmp, self.x2, tmp,
                       arrow='both', arrowshape=self.smallTips)
self.canvas.create_text(self.x2-5*self.a, tmp+5,
                       text=self.a, anchor=N)
tmp = tmp+25
self.canvas.create_line(self.x2-10*self.b, tmp, self.x2, tmp,
                       arrow='both', arrowshape=self.smallTips)
self.canvas.create_text(self.x2-5*self.b, tmp+5,
                       text=self.b, anchor=N)

self.canvas.create_text(self.x1, 310, text="width=%d" % \
                       self.width, anchor=W, font=('Verdana', 18))
self.canvas.create_text(self.x1, 330,
                       text="arrowshape=(%d,%d,%d)" % \
                           (self.a, self.b, self.c),
                       anchor=W, font=('Verdana', 18))

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.option_add('*Font', 'Verdana 10')
    root.title('Arrow Editor')
    arrow = ArrowEditor(root)
    root.mainloop()

```

---

### Code comments

- ➊ This example has to create many bindings:
  - ➋ An <Enter> callback to color the grab handle.
  - ⌃ A <Leave> callback to remove the added color.
  - ⌄ A <Button-1> (<1>) callback for each of the grab handles.
  - ⌅ A <B1-Motion> callback for a common callback for each of the grabs.
  - ⌆ An <Any-ButtonRelease-1> callback to process the final location of the grab.
- ➋ The responsibility of each of the three arrowMove methods is to validate that the value is within bounds and then draw the grab at the current location.
- ➌ Since we have three separate boxes (box1, box2 and box3) we need to implement a simple search algorithm within the tags to determine which box created the event:

```
if 'box' in tags:  
    for tag in tags:  
        if len(tag) == 4 and tag[:3] == 'box':  
            cur = tag  
            break
```

- ➍ We then create a line using the supplied width and the appropriate arrowshape values.

The remainder of the code is responsible for updating the values of the dimensions on the screen and drawing the example arrows. Since this example illustrates 1-to-1 translation of Tk to Tkinter, I have not attempted to optimize the code. I am certain that some of the code can be made more succinct.

## 10.6 Some finishing touches

We are going to extend the capability of draw3.py to add some additional functionality and provide some features that may be useful if you use this example as a template for your own code. This is what has been added:

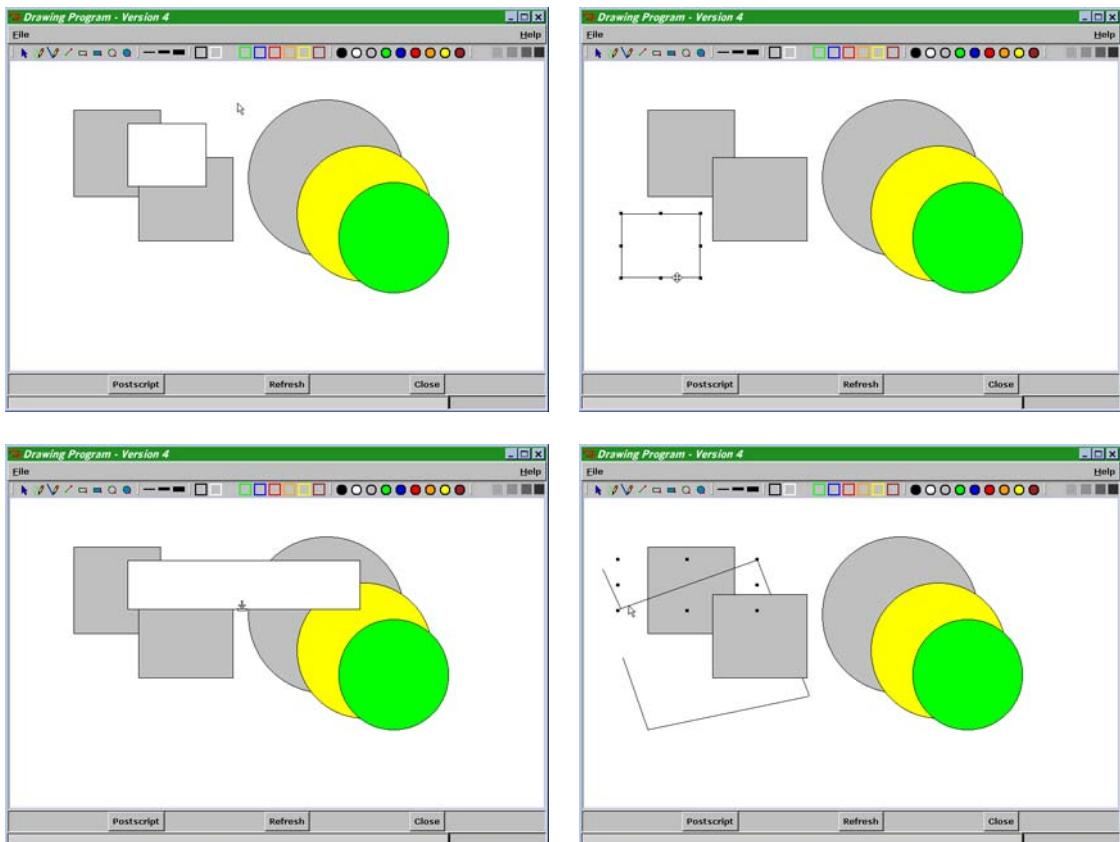
- ➊ Menu options to create New drawings and Open existing ones.
- ➋ A Menu option to save drawings with a supplied filename (Save As).
- ➌ A Menu option to save an existing drawing to its file (Save).
- ➍ A Move operation to allow an object to be moved about the canvas.
- ➎ Stretch operations with eight grab handles.

The following code example is derived from draw3.py, which was presented on page 245. I have removed much of the common code, so that this example is not too long, but note that this example has a *lot* to do!

### draw4.py

```
from Tkinter import *  
import Pmw, AppShell, math, time, string, marshal  
from cursornames import *  
from toolbarbutton import ToolBarButton  
from tkFileDialog import *
```





**Figure 10.10 Adding movement and stretching to the drawing program**

```

transDict = { 'bx': 'boundX', 'by': 'boundY',
             'x': 'adjX',   'y': 'adjY',
             'S': 'uniqueIDINT' } ②

class Draw(AppShell.AppShell):

    # --- Code Removed -----

    def createMenus(self):
        self.menuBar.deleteMenuItem('File')
        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'New drawing',
                               label='New', command=self.newDrawing)
        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'Open drawing',
                               label='Open...', command=self.openDrawing)
        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'Save drawing',
                               label='Save', command=self.saveDrawing)
        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'Save drawing',
                               label='SaveAs...', command=self.saveAsDrawing)
        self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'separator')

```

```

    self.menuBar.addMenuItem('File', 'command', 'Exit program',
                           label='Exit', command=self.quit)

    def createTools(self):
        self.func      = {}
        self.transFunc = {} 3
       ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, 'sep', 'sep.gif',
                      width=10, state='disabled')
        for key, func, balloon in [
            ('pointer', None, 'Edit drawing'),
            ('draw',      self.drawFree, 'Draw freehand'),
            ('smooth',   self.drawSmooth, 'Smooth freehand'),
            ('line',     self.drawLine, 'Rubber line'),
            ('rect',     self.drawRect, 'Unfilled rectangle'),
            ('frect',   self.drawFilledRect, 'Filled rectangle'),
            ('oval',     self.drawOval, 'Unfilled oval'),
            ('foval',   self.drawFilledOval, 'Filled oval')]:
            ToolBarButton(self, self.toolbar, key, '%s.gif' % key,
                          command=self.selectFunc, balloonhelp=balloon,
                          statushelp=balloon)
            self.func[key] = func
            self.transFunc[func] = key

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The ToolBarButton class has been moved to a separate module.
- ❷ transDict is going to be used when we parse the tags assigned to each of the grab handles. See ❻ below.
- ❸ transFunc is created as a reverse-lookup, so that we can find the key associated with a particular function.

### **draw4.py (continued)**

```

    def mouseDown(self, event):
        self.curObject = None
        self.canvas.dtag('drawing')
        self.lineData = []
        self.lastx = self.startx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
        self.lasty = self.starty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
        self.uniqueID = 'S*%d' % self.serial 4
        self.serial = self.serial + 1

    if not self.curFunc:
        if event.widget.find_withtag(CURRENT):
            tags = self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT)
            for tag in tags:
                if tag[:2] == 'S*':
                    objectID = tag
            if 'grabHandle' in tags:
                self.inGrab = TRUE
                self.releaseGrab = FALSE
5

```

```

        self.uniqueID = objectID
    else:
        self.inGrab = FALSE
        self.addGrabHandles(objectID, 'grab')
        self.canvas.config(cursor='fleur')
        self.uniqueID = objectID
else:
    self.canvas.delete("grabHandle")
    self.canvas.dtag("grabHandle")
    self.canvas.dtag("grab")

```

5

```

def mouseMotion(self, event):
    curx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
    cury = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
    prevx = self.lastx
    prevy = self.lasty
    if not self.inGrab and self.curFunc:
        self.lastx = curx
        self.lasty = cury
        if self.regular and self.curFunc in \
            [self.func['oval'], self.func['rect'],
             self.func['foval'], self.func['frect']]:
            dx      = self.lastx - self.startx
            dy      = self.lasty - self.starty
            delta = max(dx, dy)
            self.lastx = self.startx + delta
            self.lasty = self.starty + delta
            self.curFunc(self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                         self.lasty, prevx, prevy, self.foreground,
                         self.background, self.fillStyle, self.lineWidth, None)
    elif self.inGrab:
        self.canvas.delete("grabbedObject")
        self.canvas.dtag("grabbedObject")
        tags = self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT)
        for tag in tags:
            if '**' in tag:
                key, value = string.split(tag, '**')
                var = transDict[key]
                setattr(self, var, string.atoi(value))
        self.uniqueID = 'S*%d' % self.uniqueIDINT
        x1, y1, x2, y2, px, py, self.growFunc, \
            fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld= self.objects[self.uniqueID]
        if self.boundX == 1 and self.adjX:
            x1 = x1 + curx-prevx
        elif self.boundX == 2 and self.adjX:
            x2 = x2 + curx-prevx
        if self.boundY == 1 and self.adjY:
            y1 = y1 + cury-prevy
        elif self.boundY == 2 and self.adjY:
            y2 = y2 + cury-prevy
        self.growFunc(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld)
        self.canvas.addtag_withtag("grabbedObject",
                                   self.uniqueID)
        self.storeObject(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,self.growFunc,
                        fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld)

```

6

```

        self.lastx = curx
        self.lasty = cury
    else:
        self.canvas.move('grab', curx-prevx, cury-prevy)
        self.lastx = curx
        self.lasty = cury

    def mouseUp(self, event):
        self.prevx = self.lastx
        self.prevy = self.lasty
        self.lastx = self.canvas.canvasx(event.x)
        self.lasty = self.canvas.canvasy(event.y)
        if self.curFunc:
            if self.regular and self.curFunc in \
                [self.func['oval'], self.func['rect'],
                 self.func['oval'], self.func['frect']]:
                dx = self.lastx - self.startx
                dy = self.lasty - self.starty
                delta = max(dx, dy)
                self.lastx = self.startx + delta
                self.lasty = self.starty + delta
            self.curFunc(self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                         self.lasty, self.prevx, self.prevy, self.foreground,
                         self.background, self.fillStyle, self.lineWidth,
                         self.lineData)
        self.inGrab = FALSE
        self.releaseGrab = TRUE
        self.growFunc = None
        self.storeObject(self.startx, self.starty, self.lastx,
                         self.lasty, self.prevx, self.prevy, self.curFunc,
                         self.foreground, self.background, self.fillStyle,
                         self.lineWidth, self.lineData)
    else:
        if self.inGrab:
            tags = self.canvas.gettags(CURRENT)
            for tag in tags:
                if '*' in tag:
                    key, value = string.split(tag, '*')
                    var = transDict[key]
                    setattr(self, var, string.atoi(value))
            x1,y1,x2,y2, px, py, self.growFunc, \
                fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld = self.objects[self.uniqueID]
            if self.boundX == 1 and self.adjX:
                x1 = x1 + self.lastx-self.prevx
            elif self.boundX == 2 and self.adjX:
                x2 = x2 + self.lastx-self.prevx
            if self.boundY == 1 and self.adjY:
                y1 = y1 + self.lasty-self.prevy
            elif self.boundY == 2 and self.adjY:
                y2 = y2 + self.lasty-self.prevy
            self.growFunc(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld)
            self.storeObject(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,self.growFunc,
                            fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld)
            self.addGrabHandles(self.uniqueID, self.uniqueID)
        if self.selObj:

```

6

7

8

```

        self.canvas.itemconfig(self.selObj,
                               width=self.savedWidth)
        self.canvas.config(cursor='arrow')

    def addGrabHandles(self, objectID, tag):
        self.canvas.delete("grabHandle")
        self.canvas.dtag("grabHandle")
        self.canvas.dtag("grab")
        self.canvas.dtag("grabbedObject")

        self.canvas.addtag("grab", "withtag", CURRENT)
        self.canvas.addtag("grabbedObject", "withtag", CURRENT)
        x1,y1,x2,y2 = self.canvas.bbox(tag)
        for x,y, curs, tagBx, tagBy, tagX, tagY in [
            (x1,y1,TLC,      'bx*1','by*1','x*1','y*1'),
            (x2,y1,TRC,      'bx*2','by*1','x*1','y*1'),
            (x1,y2,BLC,      'bx*1','by*2','x*1','y*1'),
            (x2,y2,BRC,      'bx*2','by*2','x*1','y*1'),
            (x1+((x2-x1)/2),y1,TS, 'bx*0','by*1','x*0','y*1'),
            (x2,y1+((y2-y1)/2),RS, 'bx*2','by*0','x*1','y*0'),
            (x1,y1+((y2-y1)/2),LS, 'bx*1','by*0','x*1','y*0'),
            (x1+((x2-x1)/2),y2,BS, 'bx*0','by*2','x*0','y*1')]:
            ghandle = self.canvas.create_rectangle(x-2,y-2,x+2,y+2,
   outline='black', fill='black', tags=('grab',
   'grabHandle', tagBx, tagBy, tagX,
   tagY, '%s'%objectID))
            self.canvas.tag_bind(ghandle, '<Any-Enter>',
                               lambda e, s=self, c=curs: s.setCursor(e,c))
            self.canvas.tag_bind(ghandle, '<Any-Leave>',
                               self.resetCursor)
            self.canvas.lift("grab")

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ④ Each of the objects drawn on the canvas is identified by a unique identity, which is attached to the object as a tag. Here we construct an identity:

```

        self.uniqueID = 'S*%d' % self.serial
        self.serial = self.serial + 1

```

- ⑤ Here we use the tags to get the identity of a drawn object from one of the grab handles or the object itself:

```

        for tag in tags:
            if tag[:2] == 'S*':
                objectID = tag

```

Then, we determine if we have grabbed a grab handle (which all contain a grabhandle tag) or an object, in which case we change the cursor to indicate that the object is moveable.

- ⑥ This is where we parse the tags attached to the grab handles. The grab handles are encoded with information about their processing; this reduces the amount of code needed to support stretching the objects. The tags are attached in step ⑩ below.

```

        for tag in tags:
            if '*' in tag:

```

9

10

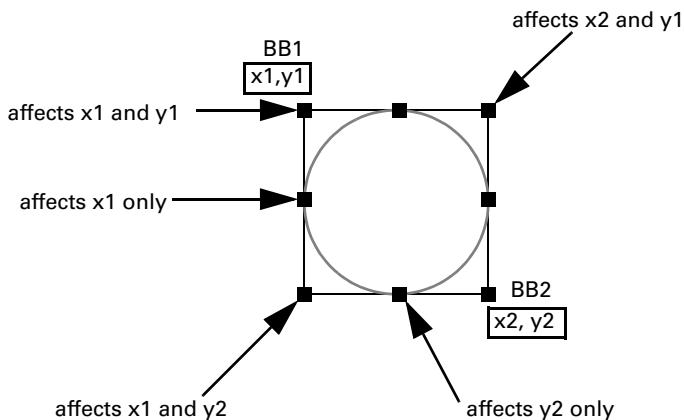
```

key, value = string.split(tag, ' ')
var = transDict[key]
setattr(self, var, string.atoi(value))

```

This requires a little more explanation. Take a look at figure 10.11. Each of the grab handles at the four corners modifies the bounding box. The  $x$ - or  $y$ -value is associated with either BB1 or BB2. So, for example, the bottom-left grab handle is tagged with  $\text{bx}^*1$  and  $\text{by}^*2$ . Additionally, the four median grab handles are constrained to stretch one side of the bounding box at a time, so we encode (as a boolean value) the axis that is free ( $\text{x}^*1 \text{ y}^*0$  indicates that the  $x$ -axis is free).

- 7 Since we need to know the current dimensions of an object's bounding box as we grow or move the object, we store that data each time the callback is invoked.
- 8 When the mouse is released, we have to recalculate the bounding box and store the object's data. This code is similar to the code for mouse movement shown in 6.
- 9 In `addGrabHandles` we begin by removing all existing grab handles from the display, along with the associated tags.
- 10 To construct the grab handles, we first get the current bounding box. Then we construct the handles using data contained in a list. The tags are constructed to provide the associations noted in step 6 above.



**Figure 10.11 Grab handles and their association with the bounding-box coordinates**

### draw4.py (continued)

```

x1,y1,x2,y2 = self.canvas.bbox(tag)

for x,y, curs, tagBx, tagBy, tagX, tagY in [
    (x1,y1,TLC,      'bx*1','by*1','x*1','y*1'),
    (x2,y1,TRC,      'bx*2','by*1','x*1','y*1'),
    ---- code removed ----

```

```

ghandle = self.canvas.create_rectangle(x-2,y-2,x+2,y+2,
                                       outline='black', fill='black', tags=('grab',
   'grabHandle', '%s'%tagBx, '%s'%tagBy, '%s'%tagX,
   '%s'%tagY, '%s'%objectID))

def storeObject(self, x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,func,fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld):
    self.objects[self.uniqueID] = ( x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,func,fg,bg,
                                    fill,lwid,ld )

def redraw(self):
    self.canvas.delete(ALL)
    keys = self.objects.keys()
    keys.sort()
    for key in keys:
        startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, prevy, func, \
            fg, bg, fill, lwid , ld= self.objects[key]
        self.curObject = None
        self.uniqueID = key
        func(startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, prevy,
              fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld)

def newDrawing(self):
    self.canvas.delete(ALL)
    self.initData()

def openDrawing(self):
    ofile = askopenfilename(filetypes=[("PTkP Draw", "ptk"),
   ("All Files", "*")])
    if ofile:
        self.currentName = ofile
        self.initData()
        fd = open(ofile)
        items = marshal.load(fd)
        for i in range(items):
            self.uniqueID, x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,cfunc, \
                fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld = marshal.load(fd)
            self.storeObject(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,self.func[cfunc],
                             fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld)
        fd.close()
        self.redraw()

def saveDrawing(self):
    self.doSave()

def saveAsDrawing(self):
    ofile = asksaveasfilename(filetypes=[("PTkP Draw", "ptk"),
   ("All Files", "*")])
    if ofile:
        self.currentName = ofile
        self.doSave()

def doSave(self):
    fd = open(self.currentName, 'w')
    keys = self.objects.keys()
    keys.sort()

```

11

12

```

marshal.dump(len(keys), fd)
for key in keys:
    startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, prevy, func, \
        fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld= self.objects[key]
    cfunc = self.transFunc[func]
    marshal.dump((key, startx, starty, lastx, lasty, prevx, \
                  prevy, cfunc, fg, bg, fill, lwid, ld), fd)
fd.close()

def initData(self):
    self.curFunc = self.drawLine
    self.growFunc = None
    self.curObject = None
    self.selObj = None
    self.lineData= []
    self.savedWidth = 1
    self.savedCursor = None
    self.objects = {}      # Now a dictionary
    self.foreground = 'black'
    self.background = 'white'
    self.fillStyle = None
    self.lineWidth = 1
    self.serial = 1000
    self.regular = FALSE
    self.inGrab = FALSE
    self.releaseGrab = TRUE
    self.currentName = 'Untitled'

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ❶ To load an existing file, we use the standard `tkFileDialog` dialogs to obtain the filename. We then *unmarshal*\* the contents of the file to obtain the stored object dictionary and then simply redraw the screen.

```

fd = open(ofile)
items = marshal.load(fd)
for i in range(items):
    self.uniqueID, x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,cfunc, \
        fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld = marshal.load(fd)
    self.storeObject(x1,y1,x2,y2,px,py,self.func[cfunc], \
        fg,bg,fill,lwid,ld)

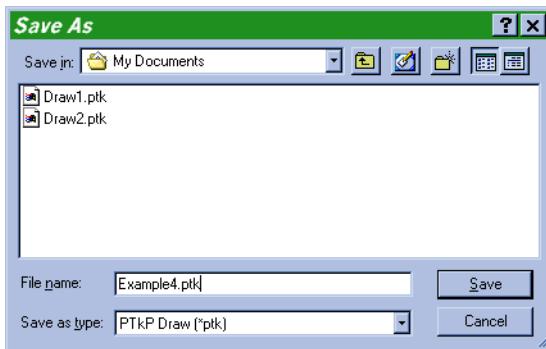
```

Because it is not possible to marshal member functions of classes (`self.func`), we store the key to the function and use the reverse-lookup created in ❸ to obtain the corresponding method.

---

\* Marshaling is a method of serializing arbitrary Python data in a form that may be written and read to simple files. Not all Python types can be marshaled and other methods such as pickle or shelve (to store a database object) may be used. It is adequate to provide persistence for our relatively simple dictionary.

- ⑫** doSave implements the writing of the marshaled data to a file. Figure 10.12 illustrates the tkFileDialog used to get the file name. Note that the dialogs are native dialogs for the particular architecture upon which Tk is running at release 8.0 and above.



**Figure 10.12 Save As dialog**

## 10.7 Speed drawing

In general, creating canvas objects is relatively efficient and rarely causes a performance problem. However, for very complex drawings, you may notice a delay in drawing the canvas. This is particularly noticeable when the display contains a large number of objects or when they contain complex line segments.

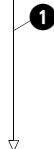
One way of improving drawing performance is to draw the canvas as an image. The Python Imaging Library, which was introduced briefly in chapter 5 on page 89, has the facility to draw directly to a GIF file. We will use this facility to draw a quite challenging image. I always found Mandelbrot diagrams, now generally referred to as fractals, fascinating. While I was looking at Douglas A. Young's *The X Window System: Programming and Applications with Xt*, I noticed the fractal on the cover. Here is an adaptation of the fractal in Python, Tkinter and PIL.

### fractal.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw, AppShell, Image, ImageDraw, os

class Palette:
    def __init__(self):
        self.palette = [(0,0,0), (255,255,255)]

    def getpalette(self):
        # flatten the palette
        palette = []
        for r, g, b in self.palette:
            palette = palette + [r, g, b]
        return palette
```



```

def loadpalette(self, cells):
    import random
    for i in range(cells-2):
        self.palette.append((
            random.choice(range(0, 255)), # red
            random.choice(range(0, 255)), # green
            random.choice(range(0, 255)))) # blue

class Fractal(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname       = 'Fractal Demonstration'
    frameWidth    = 780
    frameHeight   = 580

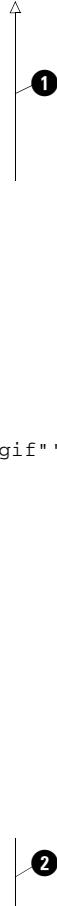
    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Save',
                       helpMessage='Save current image',
                       statusMessage='Write current image as "out.gif"',
                       command=self.save)
        self.buttonAdd('Close',
                       helpMessage='Close Screen',
                       statusMessage='Exit',
                       command=self.close)

    def createDisplay(self):
        self.width  = self.root.winfo_width()-10
        self.height = self.root.winfo_height()-95
        self.form = self.createComponent('form', (), None,
   Frame, (self.interior(),),
   width=self.width,
   height=self.height)
        self.form.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)
        self.im = Image.new("P", (self.width, self.height), 0)
        self.d = ImageDraw.ImageDraw(self.im)
        self.d.setfill(0)
        self.label = self.createComponent('label', (), None,
   Label, (self.form,),)
        self.label.pack()

    def initData(self):
        self.depth = 20
        self.origin = -1.4+1.0j
        self.range = 2.0
        self.maxDistance = 4.0
        self.ncolors = 256
        self.rgb = Palette()
        self.rgb.loadpalette(255)
        self.save = FALSE

    def createImage(self):
        self.updateProgress(0, self.height)
        for y in range(self.height):
            for x in range(self.width):
                z = 0j
                k = complex(self.origin.real + \

```



```

        float(x)/float(self.width)*self.range,
        self.origin.imag - \
        float(y) / float(self.height)*self.range)
    # calculate z = (z +k) * (z + k) over and over
    for iteration in range(self.depth):
        real_part = z.real + k.real
        imag_part = z.imag + k.imag
        del z
        z = complex(real_part * real_part - imag_part * \
                    imag_part, 2 * real_part * imag_part)
        distance = z.real * z.real + z.imag * z.imag
        if distance >= self.maxDistance:
            cidx = int(distance % self.ncolors)
            self.pixel(x, y, cidx)
            break
        self.updateProgress(y)
    self.updateProgress(self.height, self.height)
    self.im.putpalette(self.rgb.getpalette())
    self.im.save("out.gif")
    self.img = PhotoImage(file="out.gif")
    self.label['image'] = self.img

def pixel(self, x, y, color):
    self.d.setink(color)
    self.d.point((x, y))

def save(self):
    self.save = TRUE
    self.updateMessageBar('Saved as "out.gif"')

def close(self):
    if not self.save:
        os.unlink("out.gif")
    self.quit()

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.initData()
    self.createDisplay()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    fractal = Fractal()
    fractal.root.after(10, fractal.createImage())
    fractal.run()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ The Palette class is responsible for creating a random palette (`loadpalette`) and generating an RGB list for inclusion in the GIF image (`getpalette`).
- ➋ We create a new image, specifying pixel mode (`P`), and we instantiate the ImageDraw class, which provides basic drawing functions to the image. We fill the image with black, initially with the `setfill` method.

```

self.im = Image.new("P", (self.width, self.height), 0)
self.d = ImageDraw.ImageDraw(self.im)
self.d.setfill(0)

```

- ③ At the center of the computational loop, we select a color and set the corresponding pixel to that color.

```

cidx = int(distance % self.ncolors)
self.pixel(x, y, cidx)

```

- ④ When complete, we add the palette to the image, save it as a GIF file, and then load the image as a Tkinter PhotoImage.

```

self.im.putpalette(self.rgb.getpalette())
self.im.save("out.gif")
self.img = PhotoImage(file="out.gif")
self.label['image'] = self.img

```

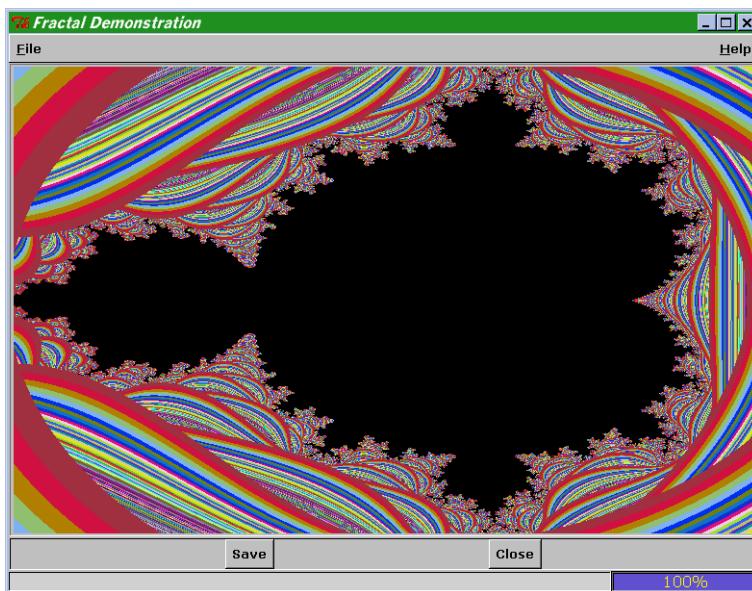
- ⑤ The pixel method is very simple. We set the color of the ink and place the pixel at the specified  $x, y$  coordinate.

```

def pixel(self, x, y, color):
    self.d.setink(color)
    self.d.point((x, y))

```

Running fractal.py on a moderately fast workstation will generate an  $800 \times 600$  pixel image in about 2-3 minutes. If you are interested, you will find slowfractal.py online. This version is written using Tkinter canvas methods and it takes *considerably* longer to complete.



**Figure 10.13 Generating fractals**

## **10.8 Summary**

This is another important chapter for those readers who want to manipulate objects on a screen. Whether building a drawing program or a drafting system of a UML editor, the principles are similar and you will find many of the techniques are readily transferable.

One thing is very important when designing interfaces such as these: think carefully about the range of pointing devices that may be used with your program. While it is quite easy to drag an object to resize it when you are using a mouse, it may not be as easy if the user has a trackball or is using one of the embedded keyboard mouse buttons.



## C H A P T E R   1 1

---

# *Graphs and charts*

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| 11.1 Simple graphs  | 276 |
| 11.2 A graph widget | 279 |
| 11.3 3-D graphs     | 292 |
| 11.4 Strip charts   | 296 |
| 11.5 Summary        | 298 |

There was a time when the term *graphics* included graphs; this chapter reintroduces this meaning. Although graphs, histograms and pie charts may not be appropriate for all applications, they do provide a useful means of conveying a large amount of information to the viewer. Examples will include linegraphs, histograms, and pie charts to support classical graphical formats. More complex graph examples will include threshold alarms and indicators.

## **11.1 Simple graphs**

Let's start by constructing a very simple graph, without trying to make a graph class or adding too many features, so we can see how easy it can be to add a graph to an application. We'll add more functionality later.

### **simpleplot.py**

```
from Tkinter import *
root = Tk()
root.title('Simple Plot - Version 1')
```

```

canvas = Canvas(root, width=450, height=300, bg = 'white')
canvas.pack()

Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.quit).pack()

canvas.create_line(100,250,400,250, width=2)
canvas.create_line(100,250,100,50, width=2)

for i in range(11):
    x = 100 + (i * 30)
    canvas.create_line(x,250,x,245, width=2)
    canvas.create_text(x,254, text='%d'% (10*i), anchor=N)

for i in range(6):
    y = 250 - (i * 40)
    canvas.create_line(100,y,105,y, width=2)
    canvas.create_text(96,y, text='%.1f'% (50.*i), anchor=E)

for x,y in [(12, 56), (20, 94), (33, 98), (45, 120), (61, 180),
            (75, 160), (98, 223)]:
    x = 100 + 3*x
    y = 250 - (4*y)/5
    canvas.create_oval(x-6,y-6,x+6,y+6, width=1,
                      outline='black', fill='SkyBlue2')

root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

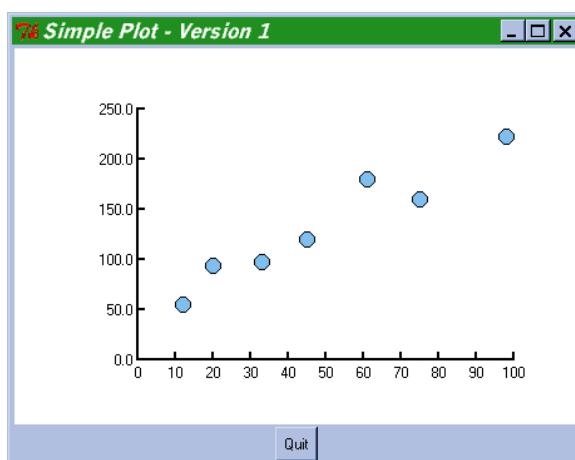
- ❶ Here we add the ticks and labels for the x-axis. Note that the values used are hard-coded—we have made little provision for reuse!

```

for i in range(11):
    x = 100 + (i * 30)
    canvas.create_line(x,250,x,245, width=2)
    canvas.create_text(x,254, text='%d'% (10*i), anchor=N)

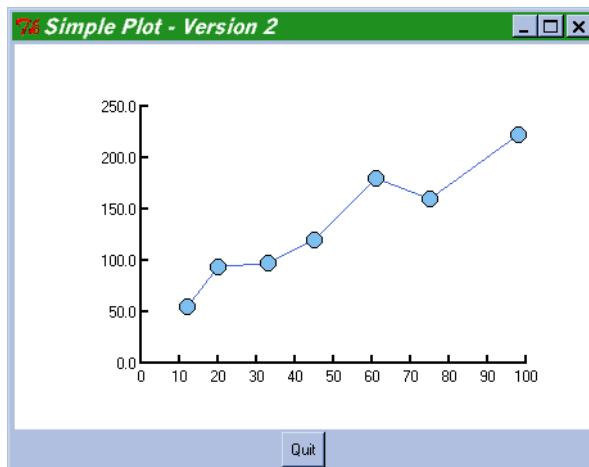
```

Notice how we have set this up to increment  $x$  in units of 10.



**Figure 11.1 Simple two-dimensional graph**

This small amount of code produces an effective graph with little effort as you can see in figure 11.1. We can improve this graph easily by adding lines connecting the dots as shown in figure 11.2.



**Figure 11.2 Adding lines to a simple graph**

### simpleplot2.py

```
scaled = []
for x,y in [(12, 56), (20, 94), (33, 98), (45, 120), (61, 180),
             (75, 160), (98, 223)]:
    scaled.append(100 + 3*x, 250 - (4*y)/5)

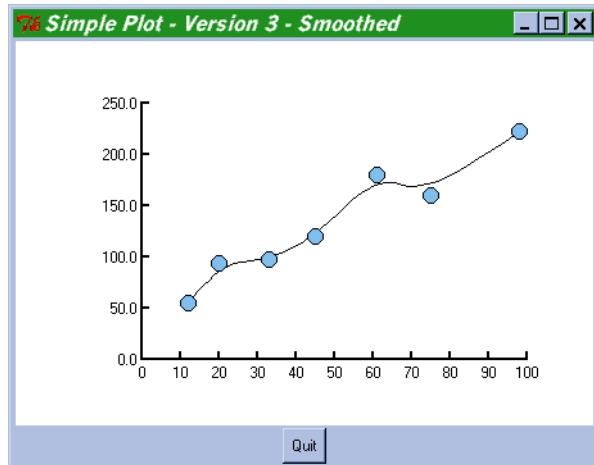
canvas.create_line(scaled, fill='royalblue')

for x,y in scaled:
    canvas.create_oval(x-6,y-6,x+6,y+6, width=1,
                      outline='black', fill='SkyBlue2')
```

#### Code comments

- ➊ So that we do not have to iterate through the data in a simple loop, we construct a list of x-y coordinates which may be used to construct the line (a list of coordinates may be input to the `create_line` method).
- ➋ We draw the line first. Remember that items drawn on a canvas are layered so we want the lines to appear under the blobs.
- ➌ Followed by the blobs.

Here come the Ginsu knives! We can add line smoothing at no extra charge! If we turn on smoothing we get cubic splines for free; this is illustrated in figure 11.3.



**Figure 11.3 Smoothing the line**

### simpleplot3.py

```
canvas.create_line(scaled, fill='black', smooth=1)
```

I don't think that needs an explanation!

## 11.2 A graph widget

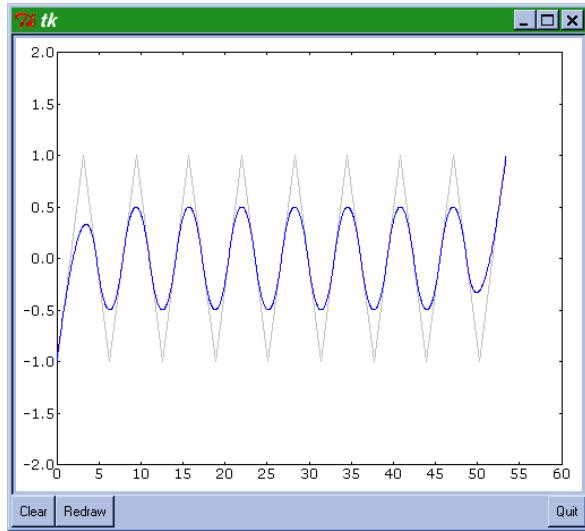
The previous examples illustrate that it is quite easy to produce simple graphs with a small amount of code. However, when it is necessary to display several graphs on the same axes, it is cumbersome to produce code that will be flexible enough to handle all situations. Some time ago Konrad Hinsen made an effective graph widget available to the Python community. The widget was intended to be used with NumPy.\* With his permission, I have adapted it to make it usable with the standard Python distribution and I have extended it to support additional display formats. An example of the output is shown in figure 11.4. In the following code listing, I have removed some repetitive code. You will find the complete source code online.

### plot.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from Canvas import Line, CanvasText
import string, math
from utils import *
from math import pi
```

---

\* NumPy is Numeric Python, a specialized collection of additional modules to facilitate numeric computation where performance is needed.



**Figure 11.4 Simple graph widget: lines only**

```

class GraphPoints:
    def __init__(self, points, attr):
        self.points = points
        self.scaled = self.points
        self.attributes = {}
        for name, value in self._attributes.items():
            try:
                value = attr[name]
            except KeyError:
                pass
            self.attributes[name] = value

    def boundingBox(self):
        return minBound(self.points), maxBound(self.points)

    def fitToScale(self, scale=(1,1), shift=(0,0)):
        self.scaled = []
        for x,y in self.points:
            self.scaled.append((scale[0]*x)+shift[0],\n                           (scale[1]*y)+shift[1])

class GraphLine(GraphPoints):
    def __init__(self, points, **attr):
        GraphPoints.__init__(self, points, attr)

        _attributes = {'color': 'black',
                      'width': 1,
                      'smooth': 0,
                      'splinesteps': 12}

    def draw(self, canvas):
        color = self.attributes['color']
        width = self.attributes['width']
        smooth = self.attributes['smooth']

```

①

②

③

④

⑤

```

steps  = self.attributes['splinesteps']
arguments = (canvas,)

if smooth:
    for i in range(len(self.points)):
        x1, y1 = self.scaled[i]
        arguments = arguments + (x1, y1)
else:
    for i in range(len(self.points)-1):
        x1, y1 = self.scaled[i]
        x2, y2 = self.scaled[i+1]
        arguments = arguments + (x1, y1, x2, y2)

apply(Line, arguments, {'fill': color, 'width': width,
                      'smooth': smooth,
                      'splinesteps': steps})

class GraphSymbols(GraphPoints):
    def __init__(self, points, **attr):
        GraphPoints.__init__(self, points, attr)

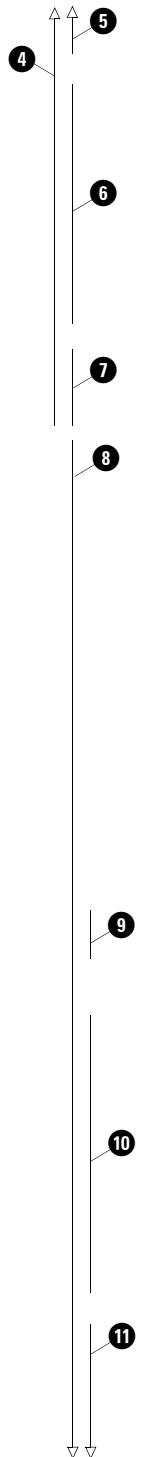
    _attributes = {'color': 'black',
                  'width': 1,
                  'fillcolor': 'black',
                  'size': 2,
                  'fillstyle': '',
                  'outline': 'black',
                  'marker': 'circle'}

    def draw(self, canvas):
        color  = self.attributes['color']
        size   = self.attributes['size']
        fillcolor = self.attributes['fillcolor']
        marker  = self.attributes['marker']
        fillstyle = self.attributes['fillstyle']
        self._drawmarkers(canvas, self.scaled, marker, color,
                           fillstyle, fillcolor, size)

    def _drawmarkers(self, c, coords, marker='circle',
                    color='black', fillstyle='', fillcolor='', size=2):
        l = []
        f = eval('self._' + marker)
        for xc, yc in coords:
            id = f(c, xc, yc, outline=color, size=size,
                   fill=fillcolor, fillstyle=fillstyle)
            if type(id) is type(()):
                for item in id: l.append(item)
            else:
                l.append(id)
        return l

    def _circle(self, c, xc, yc, size=1, fill='',
               outline='black', fillstyle=''):
        id = c.create_oval(xc-0.5, yc-0.5, xc+0.5, yc+0.5,
                           fill=fill, outline=outline,
                           stipple=fillstyle)

```



```

c.scale(id, xc, yc, size*5, size*5) ↑ ❸ ↑ ❻
return id

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ The GraphPoints class defines the points and attributes of a single plot. As you will see later, the attributes that are processed by the constructor vary with the type of line style. Note that the `self._attributes` definitions are a requirement for subclasses.
- ❷ `boundingBox` returns the top-left and bottom-right coordinates by scanning the coordinates in the points data. The convenience functions are in `utils.py`.
- ❸ `fitToScale` modifies the coordinates so that they fit within the scale determined for all of the lines in the graph.

```

def fitToScale(self, scale=(1,1), shift=(0,0)):
    self.scaled = []
    for x,y in self.points:
        self.scaled.append((scale[0]*x)+shift[0], \
                           (scale[1]*y)+shift[1])

```

Note that we supply tuples for `scale` and `shift`. The first value is for  $x$  and the second is for  $y$ .

- ❹ The GraphLine class defines methods to draw lines from the available coordinates.
- ❺ The `draw` method first extracts the appropriate arguments from the attributes dictionary.
- ❻ Depending on whether we are doing smoothing, we supply start-end-coordinates for line segments (unsmoothed) or a sequence of coordinates (smoothed).
- ❼ We then apply the arguments and the keywords to the canvas `Line` method. Remember that the format of the `Line` arguments is really:

```
Line(*args, **keywords)
```

- ❽ `GraphSymbols` is similar to `GraphLine`, but it outputs a variety of filled shapes for each of the  $x$ - $y$  coordinates.
- ❾ The `draw` method calls the appropriate marker routine through the generic `_drawmarkers` method:

```

self._drawmarkers(canvas, self.scaled, marker, color,
                  fillstyle, fillcolor, size)

```

- ❿ `_drawmarkers` evaluates the selected marker method, and then it builds a list of the symbols that are created.

```

f = eval('self._'+marker)
for xc, yc in coords:
    id = f(c, xc, yc, outline=color, size=size,
            fill=fillcolor, fillstyle=fillstyle)

```

- ❾ I have included just one of the shapes that can be drawn by the graph widget. The full set are in the source code available online.

## plot.py (continued)

```
def _dot(self, c, xc, yc, ...):
def _square(self, c, xc, yc, ...):
def _triangle(self, c, xc, yc, ...):
def _triangle_down(self, c, xc, yc, ...):
def _cross(self, c, xc, yc, ...):
def _plus(self, c, xc, yc, ...):

# --- Code Removed -----
```

```
class GraphObjects:
    def __init__(self, objects):
        self.objects = objects

    def boundingBox(self):
        c1, c2 = self.objects[0].boundingBox()
        for object in self.objects[1:]:
            clo, c2o = object.boundingBox()
            c1 = minBound([c1, clo])
            c2 = maxBound([c2, c2o])
        return c1, c2

    def fitToScale(self, scale=(1,1), shift=(0,0)):
        for object in self.objects:
            object.fitToScale(scale, shift)

    def draw(self, canvas):
        for object in self.objects:
            object.draw(canvas)

class GraphBase(Frame):
    def __init__(self, master, width, height,
                 background='white', **kw):
        apply(Frame.__init__, (self, master), kw)
        self.canvas = Canvas(self, width=width, height=height,
                             background=background)
        self.canvas.pack(fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
        border_w = self.canvas.winfo_reqwidth() - \
                   string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('width'))
        border_h = self.canvas.winfo_reqheight() - \
                   string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('height'))
        self.border = (border_w, border_h)
        self.canvas.bind('<Configure>', self.configure)
        self.plotarea_size = [None, None]
        self._setsizes()
        self.last_drawn = None
        self.font = ('Verdana', 10)

    def configure(self, event):
        new_width = event.width-self.border[0]
        new_height = event.height-self.border[1]
        width = string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('width'))
        height = string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('height'))
        if new_width == width and new_height == height:
```

12  
13  
14  
15  
16

```

        return
    self.canvas.configure(width=new_width, height=new_height)
    self._setsize()
    self.clear()
    self.replot()

    def bind(self, *args):
        apply(self.canvas.bind, args)

    def _setsize(self):
        self.width = string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('width'))
        self.height = string.atoi(self.canvas.cget('height'))
        self.plotarea_size[0] = 0.97 * self.width
        self.plotarea_size[1] = 0.97 * -self.height
        xo = 0.5*(self.width-self.plotarea_size[0])
        yo = self.height-0.5*(self.height+self.plotarea_size[1])
        self.plotarea_origin = (xo, yo)

    def draw(self, graphics, xaxis = None, yaxis = None):
        self.last_drawn = (graphics, xaxis, yaxis)
        p1, p2 = graphics.boundingBox()
        xaxis = self._axisInterval(xaxis, p1[0], p2[0])
        yaxis = self._axisInterval(yaxis, p1[1], p2[1])
        text_width = [0., 0.]
        text_height = [0., 0.]

        if xaxis is not None:
            p1 = xaxis[0], p1[1]
            p2 = xaxis[1], p2[1]
            xticks = self._ticks(xaxis[0], xaxis[1])
            bb = self._textBoundingBox(xticks[0][1])
            text_height[1] = bb[3]-bb[1]
            text_width[0] = 0.5*(bb[2]-bb[0])
            bb = self._textBoundingBox(xticks[-1][1])
            text_width[1] = 0.5*(bb[2]-bb[0])
        else:
            xticks = None
        if yaxis is not None:
            p1 = p1[0], yaxis[0]
            p2 = p2[0], yaxis[1]
            yticks = self._ticks(yaxis[0], yaxis[1])
            for y in yticks:
                bb = self._textBoundingBox(y[1])
                w = bb[2]-bb[0]
                text_width[0] = max(text_width[0], w)
                h = 0.5*(bb[3]-bb[1])
                text_height[0] = h
                text_height[1] = max(text_height[1], h)
        else:
            yticks = None
        text1 = [text_width[0], -text_height[1]]
        text2 = [text_width[1], -text_height[0]]
        scale = ((self.plotarea_size[0]-text1[0]-text2[0]) / \
                  (p2[0]-p1[0]), \
                  (self.plotarea_size[1]-text1[1]-text2[1]) / \

```

```

        (p2[1]-p1[1]))
    shift = ((-p1[0]*scale[0]) + self.plotarea_origin[0] + \
              text1[0],
              (-p1[1]*scale[1]) + self.plotarea_origin[1] + \
              text1[1])
    self._drawAxes(self.canvas, xaxis, yaxis, p1, p2,
                  scale, shift, xticks, yticks)
    graphics.fitToScale(scale, shift)
    graphics.draw(self.canvas)

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments (continued)*

- ⑫ The `GraphObjects` class defines the collection of graph symbolologies for each graph. In particular, it is responsible for determining the common bounding box for all of the lines.
- ⑬ `fitToScale` scales each of the lines to the calculated bounding box.
- ⑭ Finally, the `draw` method renders each of the graphs in the composite.
- ⑮ `GraphBase` is the base widget class which contains each of the composites. As you will see later, you may combine different arrangements of graph widgets to produce the desired effect.
- ⑯ An important feature of this widget is that it redraws whenever the parent container is resized. This allows the user to shrink and grow the display at will. We bind a `configure` event to the `configure` callback.

### **plot.py (continued)**

```

    self.canvas.bind('<Configure>', self.configure)
if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    di = 5.*pi/5.
    data = []

    for i in range(18):
        data.append((float(i)*di,
                     (math.sin(float(i)*di)-math.cos(float(i)*di))))
    line = GraphLine(data, color='gray', smooth=0)
    linea = GraphLine(data, color='blue', smooth=1, splinesteps=500)

    graphObject = GraphObjects([line, linea])
    graph = GraphBase(root, 500, 400, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
    graph.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)

    graph.draw(graphObject, 'automatic', 'automatic')

    Button(root, text='Clear', command=graph.clear).pack(side=LEFT)
    Button(root, text='Redraw', command=graph.replot).pack(side=LEFT)
    Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.quit).pack(side=RIGHT)

    root.mainloop()

```

⑰

⑱

⑲

---

### Code comments (continued)

- 17 Using the graph widget is quite easy. First, we create the line/curve that we wish to plot:

```
for i in range(18):
    data.append((float(i)*di,
                 (math.sin(float(i)*di)-math.cos(float(i)*di))))
line = GraphLine(data, color='gray', smooth=0)
linea = GraphLine(data, color='blue', smooth=1, splinesteps=500)
```

- 18 Next we create the GraphObject which does the necessary scaling:

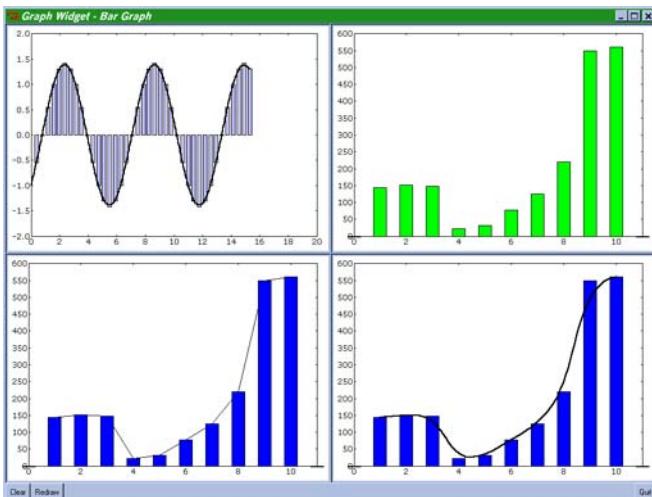
```
graphObject = GraphObjects([line, linea])
```

- 19 Finally, we create the graph widget and associate the GraphObject with it:

```
graph = GraphBase(root, 500, 400, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph.pack(side=TOP, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph.draw(graphObject, 'automatic', 'automatic')
```

#### 11.2.1 Adding bargraphs

Having developed the basic graph widget, it is easy to add new types of visuals. Bargraphs, sometimes called *histograms*, are a common way of presenting data, particularly when it is intended to portray the magnitude of the data, since the bars have actual volume as opposed to perceived volume under-the-curve. Figure 11.5 shows some typical bargraphs, in some cases combined with line graphs. Note that it is quite easy to set up multiple instances of the graph widget.



**Figure 11.5 Adding bar graphs to the graph widget**

#### plot2.py

```
from Tkinter import *
from Canvas import Line, CanvasText, Rectangle
```

```

class GraphPoints:

# --- Code Removed -----


def fitToScale(self, scale=(1,1), shift=(0,0)):
    self.scaled = []
    for x,y in self.points:
        self.scaled.append((scale[0]*x)+shift[0],\
                           (scale[1]*y)+shift[1])
    self.anchor = scale[1]*self.attributes.get('anchor', 0.0)\ ❶
                           + shift[1]

# --- Code Removed -----


class GraphBars(GraphPoints):
    def __init__(self, points, **attr):
        GraphPoints.__init__(self, points, attr)
        _attributes = {'color': 'black',
                      'width': 1,
                      'fillcolor': 'yellow',
                      'size': 3,
                      'fillstyle': '',
                      'outline': 'black'}
```

❷

```

    def draw(self, canvas):
        color = self.attributes['color']
        width = self.attributes['width']
        fillstyle = self.attributes['fillstyle']
        outline = self.attributes['outline']
        spread = self.attributes['size']
        arguments = (canvas,)
        p1, p2 = self.boundingBox()
        for i in range(len(self.points)):
            x1, y1 = self.scaled[i]
            canvas.create_rectangle(x1-spread, y1, x1+spread,
                                   self.anchor, fill=color,
                                   width=width, outline=outline,
                                   stipple=fillstyle)
```

❸

```

# --- Code Removed -----


if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.title('Graph Widget - Bar Graph')

    di = 5.*pi/40.
    data = []
    for i in range(40):
        data.append((float(i)*di,
                    (math.sin(float(i)*di)-math.cos(float(i)*di))))
    line1 = GraphLine(data, color='black', width=2,
                      smooth=1)
    line1a = GraphBars(data[1:], color='blue', fillstyle='gray25', ❹
                       anchor=0.0)

    line2 = GraphBars([(0,0), (1,145), (2,151), (3,147), (4,22), (5,31),

```

```

(6,77),(7,125),(8,220),(9,550),(10,560),(11,0)],
color='green', size=10)

line3 = GraphBars([(0,0),(1,145),(2,151),(3,147),(4,22),(5,31),
(6,77),(7,125),(8,220),(9,550),(10,560),(11,0)],
color='blue', size=10)
line3a = GraphLine([(1,145),(2,151),(3,147),(4,22),(5,31),
(6,77),(7,125),(8,220),(9,550),(10,560)],
color='black', width=1, smooth=0)

line4 = GraphBars([(0,0),(1,145),(2,151),(3,147),(4,22),(5,31),
(6,77),(7,125),(8,220),(9,550),(10,560),(11,0)],
color='blue', size=10)
line4a = GraphLine([(1,145),(2,151),(3,147),(4,22),(5,31),
(6,77),(7,125),(8,220),(9,550),(10,560)],
color='black', width=2, smooth=1)

graphObject = GraphObjects([line1a, line1])
graphObject2 = GraphObjects([line2])
graphObject3 = GraphObjects([line3a, line3])
graphObject4 = GraphObjects([line4, line4a])

f1 = Frame(root)
f2 = Frame(root)

graph = GraphBase(f1, 500, 350, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph.pack(side=LEFT, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph.draw(graphObject, 'automatic', 'automatic')

graph2= GraphBase(f1, 500, 350, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph2.pack(side=LEFT, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph2.draw(graphObject2, 'automatic', 'automatic')

graph3= GraphBase(f2, 500, 350, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph3.pack(side=LEFT, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph3.draw(graphObject3, 'automatic', 'automatic')

graph4= GraphBase(f2, 500, 350, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph4.pack(side=LEFT, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph4.draw(graphObject4, 'automatic', 'automatic')

f1.pack()
f2.pack()

# --- Code Removed -----

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ There's not much to explain here; I think that the changes are fairly self-explanatory. However, anchor is worthy of a brief note. In the case of the sine/cosine curve, we want the bars to start on zero. This is the anchor value. If we don't set it, we'll draw from the x-axis regardless of its value.  
`self.anchor = scale[1]*self.attributes.get('anchor', 0.0) + shift[1]`
- ➋ The bargraph has some slightly different options that need to be set.

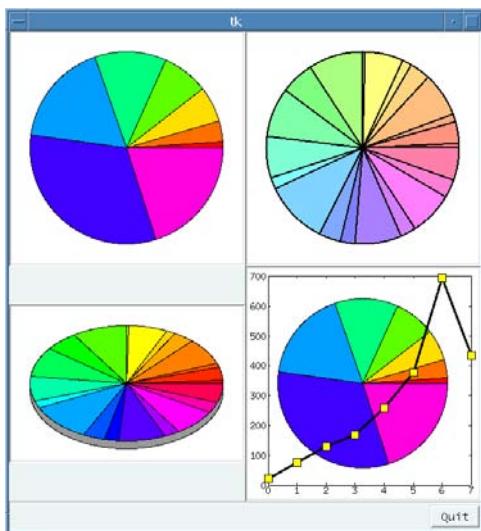
- ③ The bargraph simply draws a rectangle for the visual.
- ④ Defining the data is similar to the method for lines. Note that I have omitted the first data point so that it does not overlay the y-axis:

```
line1a = GraphBars(data[1:], color='blue', fillstyle='gray25',
anchor=0.0)
```

### 11.2.2 Pie charts

As Emeril Lagasse\* would say, “Let’s kick it up a notch!” Bargraphs were easy to add, and adding pie charts is not much harder. Pie charts seem to have found a niche in management reports, since they convey certain types of information very well. As you will see in figure 11.6, I have added some small details to add a little extra punch. The first is to scale the pie chart if it is drawn in combination with another graph—this prevents the pie chart from getting in the way of the axes (I do not recommend trying to combine pie charts and bar graphs, however). Secondly, if the height and width of the pie chart are unequal, I add a little decoration to give a three-dimensional effect.

There is a problem with Tk release 8.0/8.1. A stipple is ignored for arc items, if present, when running under Windows; the figure was captured under UNIX. Here are the changes to create pie charts:



**Figure 11.6 Adding pie charts to the graph widget**

---

\* Emeril Lagasse is a popular chef/proprietor of restaurants in New Orleans and Las Vegas in the USA. He is the exuberant host of a regular cable-television cooking show. The audience join Emeril loudly in shouting “Bam! Let’s kick it up a notch!” as he adds his own Essence to his creations.

## plot3.py

```
# --- Code Removed -----  
  
class GraphPie(GraphPoints):  
    def __init__(self, points, **attr):  
        GraphPoints.__init__(self, points, attr)  
  
        _attributes = {'color': 'black',  
                      'width': 1,  
                      'fillcolor': 'yellow',  
                      'size': 2,  
                      'fillstyle': '',  
                      'outline': 'black'}  
  
    def draw(self, canvas, multi):  
        width = self.attributes['width']  
        fillstyle = self.attributes['fillstyle']  
        outline = self.attributes['outline']  
        colors = Pmw.Color.spectrum(len(self.scaled)) ❶  
        arguments = (canvas,) ❷  
  
        x1 = string.atoi(canvas.cget('width'))  
        y1 = string.atoi(canvas.cget('height'))  
        adj = 0  
        if multi: adj = 15  
        xy = 25+adj, 25+adj, x1-25-adj, y1-25-adj  
        xys = 25+adj, 25+adj+10, x1-25-adj, y1-25-adj+10  
        tt = 0.0  
        i = 0  
        for point in self.points:  
            tt = tt + point[1]  
            start = 0.0  
            if not x1 == y1:  
                canvas.create_arc(xys, start=0.0, extent=359.99,  
                                  fill='gray60', outline=outline,  
                                  style='pieslice') ❸  
  
        for point in self.points:  
            x1, y1 = point  
            extent = (y1/tt)*360.0  
            canvas.create_arc(xy, start=start, extent=extent,  
                              fill=colors[i], width=width,  
                              outline=outline, stipple=fillstyle,  
                              style='pieslice') ❹  
            start = start + extent  
            i = i+1  
  
    class GraphObjects:  
        def __init__(self, objects):  
            self.objects = objects  
            self.multiple = len(objects)-1 ❺  
  
# --- Code Removed -----
```

```

def draw(self, canvas):
    for object in self.objects:
        object.draw(canvas, self.multiple) ⑥

# --- Code Removed ----

if __name__ == '__main__':
    root = Tk()
    root.title('Graph Widget - Piechart')

    pie1 = GraphPie([(0,21),(1,77),(2,129),(3,169),(4,260),(5,377),
                     (6,695),(7,434)])
```

pie2 = GraphPie([(0,5),(1,22),(2,8),(3,45),(4,22),
 (5,9),(6,40),(7,2),(8,56),(9,34),
 (10,51),(11,43),(12,12),(13,65),(14,22),
 (15,15),(16,48),(17,16),(18,45),(19,19),
 (20,33)], fillstyle='gray50', width=2)

pie3 = GraphPie([(0,5),(1,22),(2,8),(3,45),(4,22),
 (5,9),(6,40),(7,2),(8,56),(9,34),
 (10,51),(11,43),(12,12),(13,65),(14,22),
 (15,15),(16,48),(17,16),(18,45),(19,19),
 (20,33)])

pieline4 = GraphLine([(0,21),(1,77),(2,129),(3,169),(4,260),
 (5,377),(6,695),(7,434)], width=3)

pielines4 = GraphSymbols([(0,21),(1,77),(2,129),(3,169),(4,260),
 (5,377),(6,695),(7,434)],
 marker='square', fillcolor='yellow')

graphObject1 = GraphObjects([pie1])
graphObject2 = GraphObjects([pie2])
graphObject3 = GraphObjects([pie3])
graphObject4 = GraphObjects([pie1, pieline4, pielines4])

f1 = Frame(root)
f2 = Frame(root)

graph1= GraphBase(f1, 300, 300, relief=SUNKEN, border=2)
graph1.pack(side=LEFT, fill=BOTH, expand=YES)
graph1.draw(graphObject1)

# --- Code Removed ----

### *Code comments*

- ① The pie chart implementation assigns a spectrum of colors to the slices of the pie, one color value per slice. This gives a reasonable appearance for a small number of slices.

```
colors = Pmw.Color.spectrum(len(self.scaled))
```

- ② This code adjusts the position of the pie chart for cases where we are displaying the pie chart along with other graphs:

```
adj = 0
if multi: adj = 15
```

```
xy = 25+adj, 25+adj, x1-25-adj, y1-25-adj
xys = 25+adj, 25+adj+10, x1-25-adj, y1-25-adj+10
```

The shadow disc (`xys`) is used if the pie chart is being displayed as a tilted disc.

- ③ The shadow is drawn as a pie slice with an almost complete circular slice:

```
if not x1 == y1:
    canvas.create_arc(xys, start=0.0, extent=359.99,
                      fill='gray60', outline=outline, style='pieslice')
```

- ④ As in the case of adding bar graphs, adding pie charts requires a specialized draw routine.  
⑤ The scaling factors are determined by the presence of multiple graphs in the same widget.  
⑥ `self.multiple` is passed down to the graph object's draw method.

As you have seen in these examples, adding a new graph type is quite easy and it produces some reasonably attractive graphs. I hope that you can make use of them and perhaps create new visual formats for the Python community.

## 11.3 3-D graphs

If you have a large amount of data and that data follows a pattern that encourages examining the graphs on the same axes (same scale), there are a number of ways to display the graphs. One way is to produce a series of separate graphs and then present them side by side. This is good if you want to examine the individual graphs in detail, but it does not readily demonstrate the relationship between the graphs. To show the relationship you can produce a single diagram with all of the plots superimposed using different symbols, line styles, or combinations of both. However, there is often a tendency for the lines to become entangled or for symbols to be drawn on top of each other. This can produce very confusing results.

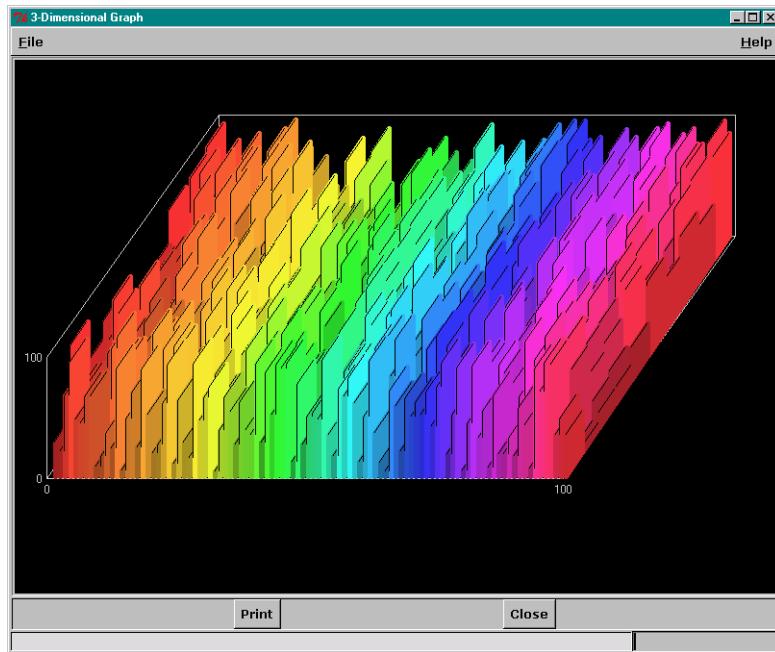
I always like to solve these problems by producing three-dimensional graphs. They allow the viewer to get a sense of the topology of the data as a whole, often highlighting features in the data that may be difficult to discern in other formats. The next example illustrates such a graph (see figure 11.7). I have taken a few shortcuts to reduce the overall amount of code. For example, I have made no provision for modifying the orientation of the axes or the viewing position. I'll leave that as an exercise for the enthusiastic reader!

### 3dgraph.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import Pmw, AppShell, math

class Graph3D(AppShell.AppShell):
    usecommandarea = 1
    appname       = '3-Dimensional Graph'
    frameWidth    = 800
    frameHeight   = 650

    def createButtons(self):
        self.buttonAdd('Print',
                       helpMessage='Print current graph (PostScript)',
                       statusMessage='Print graph as PostScript file',
                       command=self.iprint)
```



**Figure 11.7 three-dimensional graphical display**

```

        self.buttonAdd('Close',
                      helpMessage='Close Screen',
                      statusMessage='Exit',
                      command=self.close)

    def createBase(self):
        self.width = self.root.winfo_width()-10
        self.height = self.root.winfo_height()-95
        self.canvas = self.createComponent('canvas', (), None,
   Canvas, (self.interior()), width=self.width,
   height=self.height, background="black")
        self.canvas.pack(side=TOP, expand=YES, fill=BOTH)

        self.awidth = int(self.width * 0.68)
        self.aheight = int(self.height * 0.3)
        self.hoffset = self.awidth / 3
        self.voffset = self.aheight +3
        self.vheight = self.voffset / 2
        self.hrowoff = (self.hoffset / self.rows)
        self.vrowoff = self.voffset / self.rows
        self.xincr = float(self.awidth) / float(self.steps)
        self.xorigin = self.width/3.7
        self.yorigin = self.height/3
        self.yfactor = float(self.vheight) / float(self.maxY-self.minY)

        self.canvas.create_polygon(self.xorigin, self.yorigin,
                               self.xorigin+self.awidth, self.yorigin,

```

| 1

```

        self.xorigin+self.awidth-self.hoffset, self.yorigin+self.voff-
set,
        self.xorigin-self.hoffset, self.yorigin+self.voffset,
        self.xorigin, self.yorigin, fill='', outline=self.lineColor)

    self.canvas.create_rectangle(self.xorigin, self.yorigin-self.vheight,
        self.xorigin+self.awidth, self.yorigin,
        fill='', outline=self.lineColor)

    self.canvas.create_polygon(self.xorigin, self.yorigin,
        self.xorigin-self.hoffset, self.yorigin+self.voffset,
        self.xorigin-self.hoffset, self.yorigin+self.voffset-self.vheight,
        self.xorigin, self.yorigin-self.vheight,
        fill='', outline=self.lineColor)

    self.canvas.create_text(self.xorigin-self.hoffset-5,
        self.yorigin+self.voffset, text='%' % self.minY,
        fill=self.lineColor, anchor=E)
    self.canvas.create_text(self.xorigin-self.hoffset-5,
        self.yorigin+self.voffset-self.vheight, text='%' % \
        self.maxY, fill=self.lineColor, anchor=E)

    self.canvas.create_text(self.xorigin-self.hoffset,
        self.yorigin+self.voffset+5, text='%' % self minX,
        fill=self.lineColor, anchor=N)
    self.canvas.create_text(self.xorigin+self.awidth-self.hoffset,
        self.yorigin+self.voffset+5, text='%' % self maxX,
        fill=self.lineColor, anchor=N)

def initData(self):
    self.minY = 0
    self.maxY = 100
    self.minX = 0
    self.maxX = 100
    self.steps = 100
    self.rows = 10
    self.spectrum = Pmw.Color.spectrum(self.steps, saturation=0.8,
   intensity=0.8, extraOrange=1)
    self.lineColor = 'gray80'
    self.lowThresh = 30
    self.highThresh = 70

def transform(self, base, factor):
    rgb = self.winfo_rgb(base)
    retval = "#"
    for v in [rgb[0], rgb[1], rgb[2]]:
        v = (v*factor)/256
        if v > 255: v = 255
        if v < 0: v = 0
        retval = "%s%02x" % (retval, v)
    return retval

def plotData(self, row, rowdata):
    rootx = self.xorigin - (row*self.hrowoff)
    rooty = self.yorigin + (row*self.vrowoff)
    cidx = 0

```

2

```

lasthv = self.maxY*self.yfactor
xadj = float(self.xincr)/4.0
lowv = self.lowThresh*self.yfactor
for datum in rowdata:
    lside = datum*self.yfactor
    color = self.spectrum[cidx]
    if datum <= self.lowThresh:
        color = self.transform(color, 0.8)
    elif datum >= self.highThresh:
        color = self.transform(color, 1.2)

    self.canvas.create_polygon(rootx, rooty, rootx, rooty-lside,
                               rootx-self.hrowoff, rooty-lside+self.vrowoff,
                               rootx-self.hrowoff, rooty+self.vrowoff,
                               rootx, rooty, fill=color, outline=color,
                               width=self.xincr)
base = min(min(lside, lasthv), lowv)
self.canvas.create_line(rootx-xadj, rooty-lside,
                       rootx-xadj-self.hrowoff, rooty-lside+self.vrowoff,
                       rootx-xadj-self.hrowoff, rooty+self.vrowoff-base,
                       fill='black', width=1)
lasthv = lowv = lside
cidx = cidx + 1
rootx = rootx + self.xincr

def makeData(self, number, min, max):
    import random
    data = []
    for i in range(number):
        data.append(random.choice(range(min, max)))
    return data

def demo(self):
    for i in range(self.rows):
        data = self.makeData(100, 4, 99)
        self.plotData(i, data)
        self.root.update()

def close(self):
    self.quit()

def createInterface(self):
    AppShell.AppShell.createInterface(self)
    self.createButtons()
    self.initData()
    self.createBase()

if __name__ == '__main__':
    graph = Graph3D()
    graph.root.after(100, graph.demo)
    graph.run()

```

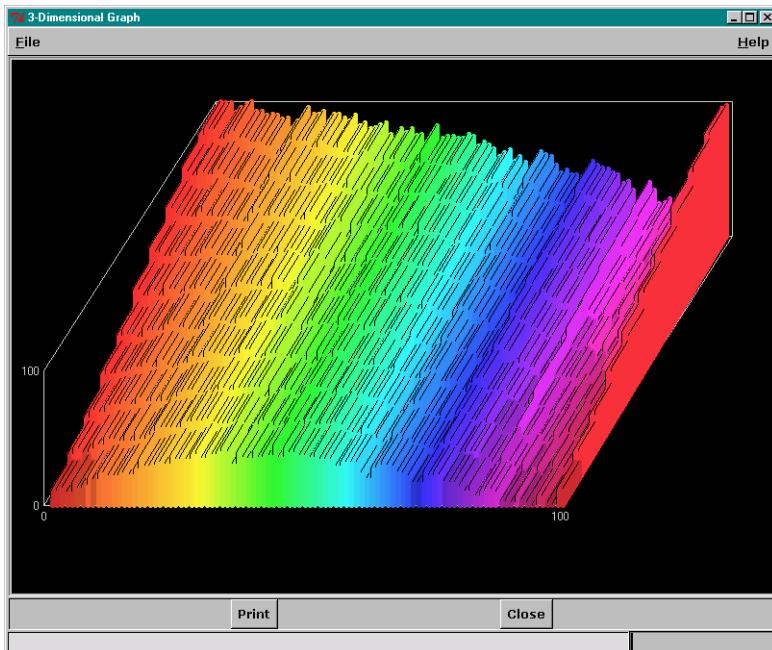
---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ Despite the complex diagram, the code is quite simple. Much of the code is responsible for drawing the frame and text labels.
- ❷ You may have seen the `transform` method used in “Adding a hex nut to our class library” on page 131. Its purpose is to calculate a lighter or darker color intensity when given a color.

```
def transform(self, base, factor):
```
- ❸ The transformed color is used to highlight values which exceed a high threshold and to deaccentuate those below a lower threshold.
- ❹ For this example, we generate ten rows of random data.

Because the data was generated randomly, the effect is quite busy. If data is supplied from topological sources, the plot may be used to provide a surface view. Figure 11.8 illustrates the kind of three-dimensional plot that can be produced with such data.



**Figure 11.8 Using the 3-D to present topological data**

## **11.4 Strip charts**

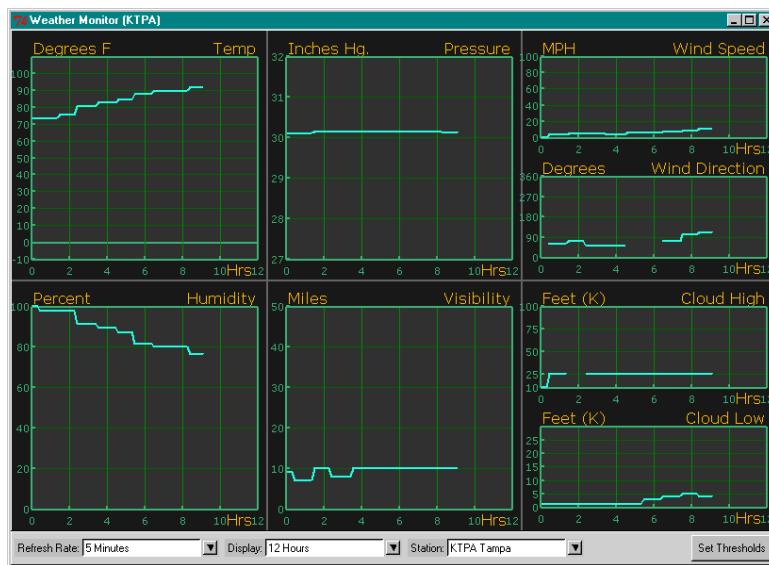
In this final section we are going to look briefly at using strip charts to display data coming from a source of continuously changing data. Such displays will typically build a plot incrementally as

the data is made available or polled at some time interval, and then they reset the chart when the maximum space has been filled.

Strip charts are an ideal medium for displaying performance data; data from sensors, such as temperature, speed, or humidity; data from more abstract measurements (such as the average number of items purchased per hour by each customer in a grocery store); and other types of data. They also can be used as a means of setting thresholds and triggering alarms when those thresholds have been reached.

The final example implements a weather monitoring system utilizing METAR\* data. This encoded data may be obtained via FTP from the National Weather Service in the United States and from similar authorities around the globe. We are not going to enter a long tutorial about how to decode METARS, since that would require a chapter of its own. For this example, I am not even going to present the source code (there is *really* too much to use the space on the printed page). The source code is available online and it may be examined to determine how a simple FTP poll may be made to gather data continuously.

Take a look at figure 11.9 which shows the results of collecting the data from Tampa Bay, Florida (station *KTPA*), for about nine hours, starting at about 8:00 a.m. EST. The graphs depict temperature, humidity, altimeter (atmospheric pressure), visibility, wind speed, wind direction, clouds over 10,000 feet and clouds under 25,000 feet.



**Figure 11.9 Strip chart display with polled meteorological data**

---

\* If you are a weather buff or a private pilot, you will be familiar with the automated, encoded weather observations that are posted at many reporting stations, including major airports, around the world. Updated on an hourly basis (more frequently if there are rapid changes in conditions), they contain details of wind direction and speed, temperature, dewpoints, atmospheric pressure, cloud cover and other data important to aviation in particular.

The presentation for the strip chart is intended to be similar to an oscilloscope or some other piece of equipment. Normally reverse-video is not the best medium for presenting data; this may be one of the exceptions.

The example code implements a threshold setting which allows the user to set values which trigger an alarm or warning when values are above or below the selected threshold. Take a look at figure 11.10 which shows how thresholds can be set on the data. This data comes from my home airport (Providence, in Warwick, Rhode Island) and it shows data just before a thunderstorm started.



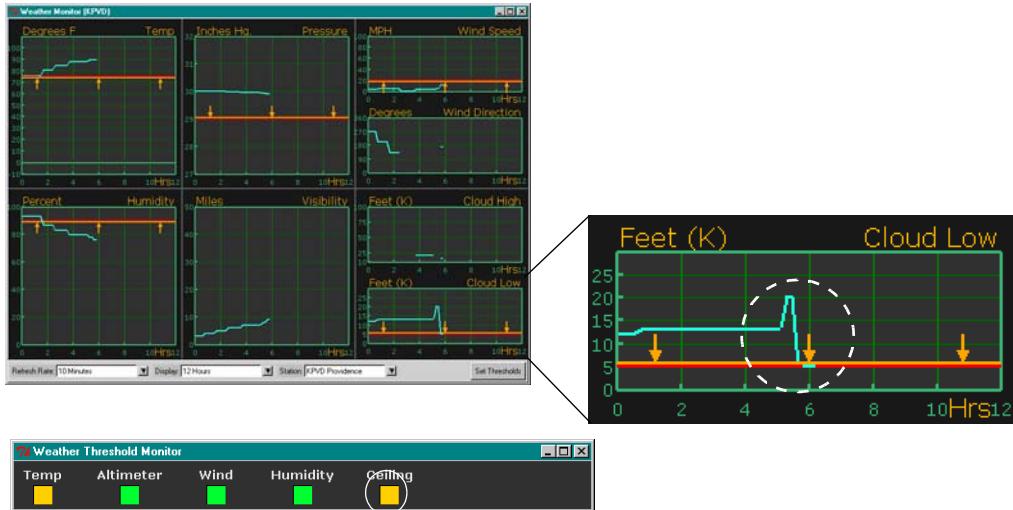
**Figure 11.10** Setting thresholds on data values

If you look at figure 11.11 you can observe how the cloud base suddenly dropped below 5000 feet and triggered the threshold alarm.

If you do use this example please do not set the update frequency to a high rate. The data on the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) website is important for many pilots—leave the bandwidth for them!

## 11.5 Summary

Drawing graphs may not be necessary for many applications, but the ability to generate attractive illustrations from various data sources may be useful in some cases. While there are several general-purpose plotting systems available to generate graphs from arbitrary data, there is something satisfying about creating the code yourself.



**Figure 11.11 Alarm and warning thresholds**



## CHAPTER 12

---

# *Navigation*

- 12.1 Introduction: navigation models 300
- 12.2 Mouse navigation 301
- 12.3 Keyboard navigation: “mouseless navigation” 301

- 12.4 Building navigation into an application 302
- 12.5 Image maps 305
- 12.6 Summary 305

All successful GUIs provide a consistent and convenient means of navigation between their graphical elements. This short chapter covers each of these methods in detail. Some advanced navigation methods will be discussed to provide a guide to the topic. From the methods presented, you should be able to identify appropriate patterns for your application and apply the methods.

### **12.1 *Introduction: navigation models***

This chapter is all about *focus*. Specifically, *keyboard focus*, which is at the widget level and determines where keyboard events are delivered. *Window focus* is strictly a feature of the *window manager*, which is covered in more detail in “The window manager” on page 306.

There are normally two focus models:

*Pointer* When a widget contains the *pointer*, all keyboard events are directed to the widget.

*Explicit* The user must click on the widget to tab from widget to widget to set focus on a particular widget.

There are advantages and disadvantages for both models. Many users like the pointer model, since a simple movement of the mouse positions the pointer and requires no clicking. However, if the mouse is accidentally moved, the keyboard events may be directed to an unintended widget. The explicit model requires the user to click on every window and widget that focus is to be directed to. However, even if the pointer moves out of the widget, keyboard events are directed to it. On Win32 and MacOS, *explicit* focus is the default, whereas on UNIX, *pointer* focus is the default.

Tk (and therefore Tkinter) implements an explicit model within a given top-level shell, regardless of how the window manager is configured. However, within the application, the window manager is capable of overriding focus to handle system-level operations, so focus can be lost.

## 12.2 **Mouse navigation**

Most computer users are familiar with using the mouse to select actions and objects on the screen. However, there are times when stopping keyboard input to move the mouse is inconvenient; a *touch typist* will lose station and have to reestablish it before continuing. Therefore, it is usually a good idea to provide a sensible series of tab groups which allow the user to move from widget to widget and area to area in the GUI. This is discussed in more detail in the next section.

When the mouse is used to select objects, you need to consider some important human factors:

- 1 Widget alignment is important. If widgets are arranged aimlessly on the screen, additional dexterity is needed to position the mouse. Widgets arranged in rows and columns typically allow movement in one or two axes to reposition the pointer.
- 2 The clickable components of a widget need to be big enough to ensure that the user does not have to reposition the pointer to hit a target. However, this may interfere with the GUI's visual effectiveness.
- 3 Ensure that there is space between widgets so that the user cannot accidentally choose an adjacent widget.
- 4 Remember that not all pointing devices are equal. While a mouse can be easy to use to direct the pointer to a clickable area, some of the mouse buttons (the little buttons embedded in the keyboard on certain laptop computers) can be difficult to control.

Unless Tkinter (Tk) is directed to obey strict Motif rules, it has a useful property that allows it to change the visual attributes of many widgets as the pointer enters the widgets. This can provide valuable feedback to the user that a widget has been located.

## 12.3 **Keyboard navigation: "mouseless navigation"**

It is easy to forget to provide alternate navigation methods. If you, as the programmer, are used to using the mouse to direct focus, you may overlook mouseless navigation. However, there are times when the ability to use Tab or Arrow keys to get around a GUI are important.

There may be times when the mouse is unavailable (I've had problems with a cat sleeping on my desk and leaving mouse-jamming hairs!) or when an application is intended to be deployed in a hostile environment where a mouse just would not survive.

This method of navigation does require some discipline in how your GUI is created. The order in which focus moves *between* and *within* groups is determined by the order in which widgets are created. So careless maintenance of a GUI can result in erratic behavior, with focus jumping all over the screen. Also, some widgets cannot accept focus (if they are disabled, for instance) and others bind the navigation keys internally (the Text widget allows you to enter Tab characters, for instance).

It is also important to remember that the pointer always directs events (such as Enter, Leave and Button1) to the widget under it, regardless of where the keyboard focus is set. Thus, you may have to change focus to a widget if it does not take keyboard focus itself.

## 12.4 ***Building navigation into an application***

Let's look at a simple example which allows you to discover how widgets behave in the focus models and under certain states. Widgets with the `takefocus` option set to `true` are placed in the window's tab group and focus moves from one widget to the next as the TAB key is pressed. If the widget's `highlightthickness` is at least one pixel, you will see which widget currently has focus. One thing to note is that there is somewhat less control of the navigation model under Tkinter. This is not normally a problem, but X Window programmers may find the restrictions limiting.

### **Example\_12\_1.py**

```
from Tkinter import *

class Navigation:
    def __init__(self, master):

        frame = Frame(master, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2, highlightcolor='blue')
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
        Label(frame, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=5, sticky=W)

        self.B1 = self.mkbutton(frame, 'B1', 1)
        self.B2 = self.mkbutton(frame, 'B2', 2)
        self.B3 = self.mkbutton(frame, 'B3', 3)
        self.B4 = self.mkbutton(frame, 'B4', 4)

        frame2 = Frame(master, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2,
                       highlightcolor='green')
        Label(frame2, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
        Label(frame2, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=4, sticky=W)
        self.Disable = self.mkbutton(frame2, 'Disable', 1, self.disable)
        self.Enable = self.mkbutton(frame2, 'Enable', 2, self.enable)
        self.Focus = self.mkbutton(frame2, 'Focus', 3, self.focus)

        frame3 = Frame(master, takefocus=1, highlightthickness=2,
                       highlightcolor='yellow')
        Label(frame3, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=0, sticky=W)
        Label(frame2, text='    ').grid(row=0, column=4, sticky=W)
```

```

    self.text = Text(frame3, width=20, height=3, highlightthickness=2)
    self.text.insert(END, 'Tabs are valid here')
    self.text.grid(row=0, col=1, columnspan=3)

    frame.pack(fill=X, expand=1)
    frame2.pack(fill=X, expand=1)
    frame3.pack(fill=X, expand=1)

def mkbutton(self, frame, button, column, action=None):
    button = Button(frame, text=button, highlightthickness=2)
    button.grid(padx=10, pady=6, row=0, col=column, sticky=NSEW)
    if action:
        button.config(command=action)
    return button

def disable(self):
    self.B2.configure(state=DISABLED, background='cadetblue')
    self.Focus.configure(state=DISABLED, background='cadetblue')

def enable(self):
    self.B2.configure(state=NORMAL, background=self.B1.cget('background'))
    self.Focus.configure(state=NORMAL,
                         background=self.B1.cget('background'))

def focus(self):
    self.B3.focus_set()

root = Tk()
root.title('Navigation')
top = Navigation(root)
quit = Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.destroy)
quit.pack(side=BOTTOM, pady=5)

root.mainloop()

```

---

### Code comments

- ➊ To show where keyboard focus is, we must give the highlight size, since the default for a Frame is 0. The color is also set so that it is easy to see.
- ➋ The Text widget also requires `highlightthickness` to be set. Text widgets are in the class of widgets that do not propagate TAB characters so you cannot navigate *out* of a Text widget using the TAB key (you must use CTRL-TAB).
- ➌ Buttons are window-system dependent. On Win32, buttons show their highlight as a dotted line, whereas Motif widgets require you to set the highlight width. If your application is targeted solely for Win32, you could omit the `highlightthickness` option.

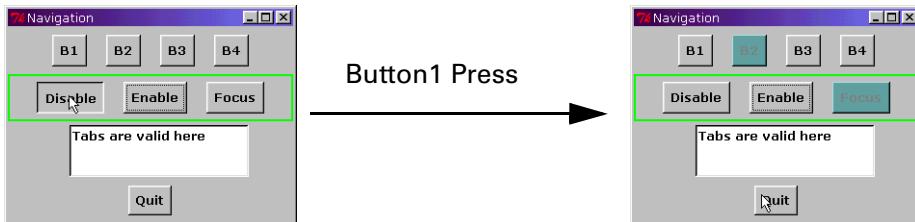
Let's run the code in example 12.1 and see how TAB-key navigation works:

Each time you press the TAB key, the focus will move to the next widget in the group. To reverse the traversal, use the SHIFT-TAB key. In the second frame in figure 12.1, you can see that the frame is showing a highlight. Tkinter gets the order of the widgets right if you make sure that the widgets are presented to the geometry manager in the order that you want to navigate. If you do not take care, you will end up with the focus jumping all over the GUI as you attempt to navigate.



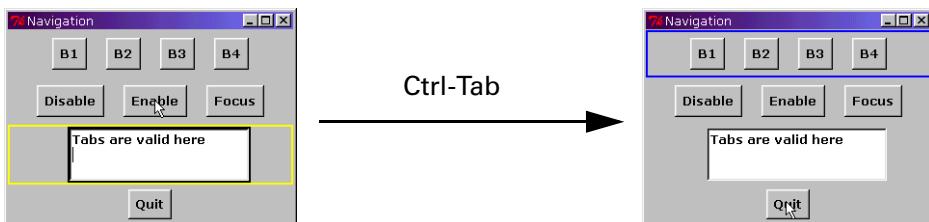
**Figure 12.1 Using the Tab key to select a frame**

Once you have focus, you can activate the widget using the SPACE bar (this is the default SELECT key, certainly for Win32 and Motif) or you can click on any widget using the pointer. Notice in figure 12.2 that the Enable button shows that it has been traversed to using TAB key, but that we select Disable with the pointer. Keyboard focus remains with the Enable button, so pressing the SPACE key will re-enable the buttons.



**Figure 12.2 Demonstrating the difference between keyboard and pointer focus**

Text widgets use TAB keys as separators, so the default binding does not cause traversal out of the widget. In figure 12.3 you can see that tabs are inserted into the text. To move out of the widget we must use CTRL-TAB which is not bound to the Text widget.



**Figure 12.3 Using CONTROL-TAB to navigate out of a Text widget**

## **12.5 *Image maps***

In “Image maps” on page 191, we looked at an implementation of image maps. It used pointer clicks to detect regions on the image and to select mapped areas. This technique cannot support mouseless operation, so if this is necessary, you have some work to do.

One solution is to overlay the image with objects that can take focus, then you can tab from object to object. This does work (the application shown on page 232 uses this technique to place buttons over button images on a ray-traced image), but it does require much more planning and code.

## **12.6 *Summary***

This chapter is another illustration of the fact that an application developer should consider its end-users carefully. If you are developing an application for a single group of users on uniform hardware platforms, then it may not be necessary to think about providing alternate means for navigating the GUIs. However, if you have no control of the end-user’s environment you can change their perception of your application greatly by allowing alternate navigation models.



## CHAPTER 13

# *The window manager*

|                                |     |                               |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------|-----|
| 13.1 What is a window manager? | 306 | 13.4 Icon methods             | 309 |
| 13.2 Geometry methods          | 307 | 13.5 Protocol methods         | 309 |
| 13.3 Visibility methods        | 308 | 13.6 Miscellaneous wm methods | 310 |

Even though it is possible to build applications that have no direct communication with the window manager, it is useful to have an understanding of the role that the window manager (`wm`) has in X Window, Win32 and MacOS environments. This chapter covers some of the available `wm` facilities and presents examples of their use.

### **13.1 *What is a window manager?***

If you already know the answer to that question, you may want to skip ahead. It is perfectly possible to develop complex GUI-based applications without knowing *anything* about the window manager. However, many of the attributes of the displayed GUI are determined by the window manager.

Window managers exist in one form or another for each of the operating systems; examples are *mwm* (Motif), *dtwm* (CDE) and *ovwm* (OpenView). In the case of Win32, the window manager is just part of the operating system rather than being a separate application. The main functions that window managers typically support are these:

- 1 Management of windows (obviously!): placement, sizing, iconizing and maximizing, for example.
- 2 Appearance and behavior of windows and the relationship of windows in an application.
- 3 Management of one or more screens.
- 4 Keyboard focus control.
- 5 Window decoration: titles, controls, menus, size and position controls.
- 6 Icons and icon management (such as iconboxes and system tray).
- 7 Overall keybindings (before application bindings).
- 8 Overall mouse bindings.
- 9 Root-window menus.
- 10 Window stacking and navigation.
- 11 Default behavior and client resources (`.XDefaults`).
- 12 Size and position negotiation with windowing primitives (geometry managers).
- 13 Device configuration: mouse double-click time, keyboard repeat and movement thresholds, for example.

Not all window managers support the same features or behave in the same way. However, Tkinter supports a number of window-manager-related facilities which may support your application. Naturally, the names of the facilities are oriented to Tk, so you may not recognize other manager's names immediately.

## 13.2 ***Geometry methods***

Geometry methods are used to position and size windows and to set resize behavior. It is important to note that these are *requests* to the window manager to allocate a given amount of space or to position the window at a particular screen position. There is no guarantee that the window manager will observe the request, since overriding factors may prevent it from happening. In general, if you get no apparent effect from geometry methods, you are probably requesting something that the window manager cannot grant or you are requesting it at the wrong time (either before window realization or too late).

You normally apply window manager methods to the `TopLevel` widget.

To control the size and position of a window use `geometry`, giving a single string as the argument in the format:

```
widthxheight+xoffset+yoffset
root.geometry('%dx%d+%d+%d' % (width, height, x, y))
```

Note that it is valid to supply either `widthxheight` or `+xoffset+yoffset` as separate arguments if you just want to set those parameters.

Without arguments, `self.geometry()` returns a string in the format shown above.

---

**Note** In general, you should issue geometry requests at most only once when a window is first drawn. It is not good practice to change the position of windows under program control; such positioning should be left for the user to decide using the window manager controls.

---

Setting the minimum and maximum dimensions of a window is often a good idea. If you have designed an application which has a complex layout, it may be inappropriate to provide the user with the ability to resize the window. In fact, it may be *impossible* to maintain the integrity of a GUI if you do not limit this ability. However, Tkinter GUIs using the `Pack` or `Grid` geometry managers are much easier to configure than equivalent X window GUIs.

```
window.maxsize(width, height)
window.minsize(width, height)
```

`window.minsize()` and `window.maxsize()` with no arguments return a tuple `(width, height)`.

You may control the resize capability using the `resizable` method. The method takes two boolean flags; setting either the `width` or `height` flags to `false` inhibits the resizing of the corresponding dimension:

```
resizable(1, 0)           # allow width changes only
resizable(0, 0)           # do not allow resizing in either dimension
```

### 13.3 Visibility methods

Window managers usually provide the ability to iconify windows so that the user can declutter the workspace. It is often appropriate to change the state of the window under program control. For example, if the user requests a window which is currently iconified, we can deiconify the window on his behalf. For reasons which will be explained in “Programming for performance” on page 348, it is usually better to draw complex GUIs with the window hidden; this results in faster window-creation speeds.

To iconify a window, use the `iconify` method:

```
root.iconify()
```

To hide a window, use the `withdraw` method:

```
self.toplevel.withdraw()
```

You can find out the current state of a window using the `state` method. This returns a string which is one of the following values: `normal` (the window is currently realized), `iconic` (the window has been iconified), `withdrawn` (the window is hidden), or `icon` (the window is an icon).

```
state = self.toplevel.state()
```

If a window has been iconified or withdrawn, you may restore the window with the `deiconify` method. It is not an error to deiconify a window that is currently displayed. Make sure that the window is placed on top of the window stack by calling `lift` as well.

```
self.deiconify()  
self.lift()
```

## 13.4 Icon methods

The icon methods are really only useful with X Window window managers. You have limited control over icons with most window managers.

To set a two-color icon, use `iconbitmap`:

```
self.top.iconbitmap(myBitmap)
```

To give the icon a name *other* than the window's title, use `iconname`:

```
self.top.iconname('Example')
```

You can give the window manager a hint about where you want to position the icon (however, the window manager may place the icon in an `iconbox` if one is defined or wherever else it wishes):

```
self.root.iconposition(10,200)
```

If you want a color bitmap, you must create a `Label` with an image and then use `iconwindow`:

```
self.label = Label(self, image=self.img)  
self.root.iconwindow(self.label)
```

## 13.5 Protocol methods

Window managers that conform to the ICCCM\* conventions support a number of protocols:

- `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` The window is about to be deleted.
- `WM_SAVE_YOURSELF` Saves client data.
- `WM_TAKE_FOCUS` The window has just gained focus.

You normally will use the first protocol to clean up your application when the user has chosen the exit window menu option and destroyed the window without using the application's Quit button:

```
self.root.protocol(WM_DELETE_WINDOW, self.cleanup)
```

In Python 1.6, the `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` protocol will be bound to the window's `destroy` method by default.

---

\* ICCCM stands for Inter-Client Communication Conventions Manual, which is a manual for client communication in the X environment. This pertains to UNIX systems, but Tk emulates the behavior on all platforms.

`WM_SAVE_YOURSELF` is less commonly encountered and is usually sent before a `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` is sent. `WM_TAKE_FOCUS` may be used by an application to allow special action to be taken when focus is gained (perhaps a polling cycle is executed more frequently when a window has focus, for example).

## 13.6 Miscellaneous `wm` methods

There are several window manager methods, many of which you may never need to look at. They are documented in “Inherited methods” on page 433. However, you might find a few of them useful.

To raise or lower a window in the window stack, use `lift` and `lower` (you cannot use “raise” since that is a Python keyword):

```
self.top.lift()                      # Bring to top of stack
self.top.lift(name)                  # Lift on top of 'name'
self.top.lower(self.spam)           # Lower just below self.spam
```

To find which screen your window is on (this is really only useful for X Window), use:

```
screen = self.root.screen()
print screen
:0.1
```

---

**Note**

*Win32 readers* The numbers returned refer to the `display` and `screen` within that display. X window is capable of supporting multiple display devices on the same system.

---

P A R T

3

## *Putting it all together...*

P

art 3 covers a number of topics. Not all relate directly to Tkinter, or even Python, necessarily. In chapter 14 we begin by looking at building extensions to Python. Extensions can be an effective way of adding new functionality to Python or they may be used to boost performance to correct problems when you're using native Python.

Chapter 15 looks at debugging techniques for Python and Tkinter applications, and chapter 16 examines GUI design. Both of these areas can be problematic to programmers, particularly those who are new to GUI applications.

Chapter 17 looks at techniques to get optimum performance from applications. This area can have a dramatic impact on whether your users will like or dislike the interface you have designed.

In chapter 18 we examine threads and other asynchronous techniques. This is only an introduction to the subject, but it may provide a starting point for readers who are interested in this topic.

Finally, chapter 19 documents some methods to package and distribute Python and Tkinter applications. While it's not exhaustive, it should help programmers to deliver a Python application without involving the end user in setting up complex systems.





## C H A P T E R   1 4

---

# *Extending Python*

|                                            |     |                       |     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|-----|
| 14.1 Writing a Python extension            | 313 | 14.5 Format strings   | 321 |
| 14.2 Building Python extensions            | 316 | 14.6 Reference counts | 324 |
| 14.3 Using the Python API in<br>extensions | 319 | 14.7 Embedding Python | 325 |
| 14.4 Building extensions in C++            | 320 | 14.8 Summary          | 328 |

Python is readily extensible using a well-defined interface and build scheme. In this chapter, I will show you how to build interfaces to external systems as well as existing extensions. In addition, we will look at maintaining extensions from one Python revision to another. We'll also discuss the choice between embedding Python within an application or developing a freestanding Python application.

The documentation that comes with Python is a good source of information on this topic, so this chapter will attempt not to repeat this information. My goal is to present the most important points so that you can easily build an interface.

### **14.1 *Writing a Python extension***

Many Python programmers will never have a need to extend Python; the available library modules satisfy a wide range of requirements. So, unless there are special requirements, the standard, binary distributions are perfectly adequate.

In some cases, writing an extension in C or C++ may be necessary:

- 1 When computational demands (intensive numeric operations, for example) make Python code inefficient.
- 2 Where access to third-party software is required. This might be through some API (Application Program Interface) or a more complex interface.\*
- 3 To provide access to legacy software which does not lend itself to conversion to Python.
- 4 To control external devices through mechanisms similar to items 2 and 3 above.

---

**Note** Writing an extension for Python means that you must have the full source for the Python interpreter and access to a C or C++ compiler (if you are going to work with Windows, I recommend that you use Microsoft's Visual C++ version 5 or later). Unless you are going to interface a library API or have severe performance problems, you may wish to avoid building an extension altogether. See "Programming for performance" on page 348 for some ideas to improve the performance of Python code.

---

Let's begin by looking at a simple example which will link a C API to Python (we will look at C++ later). For the sake of simplicity, let's assume that the API implements several statistical functions. One of these functions is to determine the minimum, average and maximum values within four supplied real numbers. From the Python code, we are going to supply the values as discrete arguments and return the result as a tuple. Don't worry if this sounds like a trivial task for Python—this is just a simple example!

Here's what we want to do from the Python side:

```
import statistics
.....
minimum, average, maximum = statistics.mavm(1.3, 5.5, 6.6, 8.8)
.....
```

We start by creating the file `statisticsmodule.c`. The accepted naming-convention for extension modules is `modulemodule.c` (this will be important later if we want to create dynamic loading modules).

All extension modules must include the Python API by including `Python.h`. This also includes several standard C-include files such as `stdio.h`, `string.h` and `stdlib.h`. Then we define the C functions that will support our API.

The source code will look something like this:

### statisticsmodule1.c

```
#include "Python.h"
static PyObject *
stats_mavm(self, args)
    PyObject *self, *args;
```

1  
2  
3

---

\* If you need to provide a Python interface to a library, you may wish to take a look at SWIG (See "SWIG" on page 625), which provides a very convenient way of building an interface. In some cases it is possible for SWIG to develop an interface from an include file alone. This obviously saves effort and time.

```

{
    double      value[4], total;
    double      minimum = 1E32;
    double      maximum = -1E32;
    int         i;

    if (!PyArg_ParseTuple (args, "dddd", &value[0], &value[1],
                           &value[2], &value[3]))
        return NULL; 4

    for (i=0; i<4; i++)
    {
        if (value[i] < minimum)
            minimum = value[i];
        if (value[i] > maximum)
            maximum = value[i];
        total = total + value[i]; 5
    }

    return Py_BuildValue("(ddd)", minimum, total/4, maximum) ; 6
}
static PyMethodDef statistics_methods[] = {
    {"mavm", stats_mavm, METH_VARARGS, "Min, Avg, Max"},
    {NULL, NULL} };
DL_EXPORT(void)
initstatistics()
{
    Py_InitModule("statistics", statistics_methods); 7
}

```

---

### Code comments

- ➊ As mentioned earlier, all extension modules must include the Python API definitions.
- ➋ All interface items are Python objects, so we define the function to return a `PyObject`.
- ➌ Similarly, the instance and arguments, `args`, are `PyObject`s.
- ➍ The Python API provides a function to parse the arguments, converting Python objects into C entities:

```

if (!PyArg_ParseTuple (args, "dddd", &value[0], &value[1],
                       &value[2], &value[3]))
    return NULL;

```

`PyArg_ParseTuple` parses the `args` object using the supplied format string. The available options are explained in “Format strings” on page 321. Note that you must supply the *address* of the variables into which parsed values are to be placed.

- ➋ Here we process our data. As you will note, this is *really* difficult!
- ➌ In a manner similar to `PyArg_ParseTuple`, `Py_BuildValue` creates Python objects from C entities. The formats have the same meaning.

```

return Py_BuildValue("(ddd)", minimum, total/4, maximum)

```

In this case, we create a tuple as our return object.

- 7 All interface modules must define a *methods table*, whose function is to associate Python function names with their equivalent C functions

```
static PyMethodDef statistics_methods[] = {
    {"mavm",         stats_mavm, METH_VARARGS, "Min, Avg, Max"},  
    {NULL, NULL} };
```

METH\_VARARGS defines how the arguments are to be presented to the parser. The documentation field is optional. Notice the naming convention for the methods table. Although this can take any name, it is usually a good idea to follow the convention.

- 8 The methods table must be registered with the interpreter in an initialization function. When the module is first imported, the `initstatistics()` function is called.

```
DL_EXPORT(void) initstatistics()  
{  
    Py_InitModule("statistics", statistics_methods);  
}
```

Again, the naming convention must be followed, because Python will attempt to call `initmodulename` for each module imported.

## 14.2 Building Python extensions

Before you can use the Python extension, you have to compile and link it. Here, you have several choices, depending on whether the target system is UNIX or Windows (sorry, I am not covering Macintosh extensions).

Basically, we can make the module a permanent part of the Python interpreter so that it is always available, or we can link it dynamically. Dynamic linking is not available on all systems, but it works well for many UNIX systems and for Windows. The advantage to loading dynamically is that you do not need to modify the interpreter to extend Python.

### 14.2.1 Linking an extension statically in UNIX

Linking an extension statically in UNIX is quite simple to do. If you have not already configured and built Python, do so as described in “Building and installing Python, Tkinter” on page 610. Copy your module (in this case, `statisticsmodule.c`) to the `Modules` directory. Then, add on line at the end of `Modules/Setup.local` (you may add some comments, too, if you wish):

```
*static*  
statistics statisticsmodule.c
```

If your module requires additional libraries, such as an API, add `-lxxxx` flags at the end of the line. Note that the `*static*` flag is really only required if the preceding modules have been built as shared modules by including the `*shared*` flag.

Now, simply invoke `make` in the top-level Python directory to rebuild the `python` executable in that directory.

## 14.2.2 Linking an extension statically in Windows

Linking an extension statically in Windows is a little more involved than the case for UNIX, but it is quite easy if you follow the steps. If you have not yet built Python, do so as described in “Building and installing Python, Tkinter” on page 610.

First, edit `PC/config.c`. You will find a comment:

```
/* -- ADDMODULE MARKER 1 -- */
extern void PyMarshal_Init();
extern void initimp();
extern void initstatistics();
extern void initwprint();
```

Add an `extern` reference for the `init` function. Then locate the second comment:

```
/* -- ADDMODULE MARKER 2 -- */
/* This module "lives in" with marshal.c */
{"marshal", PyMarshal_Init},
/* This lives it with import.c */
{"imp", initimp},
/* Statistics module (P-Tk-P) */
{"statistics", initstatistics},
/* Window Print module */
{"wprint", initwprint},
```

Add the module name and its `init` function.

Next, edit `PC/python15.dsp`. Near the end you should find an entry for `typeobject.c`:

```
SOURCE=..\Objects\typeobject.c
# End Source File
#
# Begin Source File
SOURCE=..\Modules\statisticsmodule.c
# End Source File
#
# Begin Source File
SOURCE=..\Modules\wprintmodule.c
# End Source File
```

Insert the lines for `statisticsmodule.c`.

Lastly, open the workspace `PCbuild/pcbuild.dsw` in VC++, select the appropriate configuration (see “Building and installing Python, Tkinter” on page 610) and build the projects.

## 14.2.3 Building a dynamic module in UNIX

There are several styles of generating dynamically-loadable modules. I’m just going to present a method that works for Solaris, but all UNIX systems derived from SVR4 should provide similar interfaces. All the work is done in the makefile, so no code changes should be needed. As with static linking, build and install Python first so that libraries and other such items are in place.

## makefile\_dyn

```
SRCS=      statisticsmodule.c
CFLAGS=    -DHAVE_CONFIG_H
C=         cc
          ①

# Symbols used for using shared libraries
SO=        .so
LDSHARED= ld -G
          ②

OBJS=      statisticsmodule.o
PYTHON_INCLUDE= -I/usr/local/include/python1.5 \
                -I/usr/local/lib/python1.5/config
statistics: $(OBJS)
            $(LDSHARED) $(OBJS)
            -Bdynamic -o statisticsmodule.so
          ③
          ④

statisticsmodule.o:   statisticsmodule.c
                     $(C) -c $(CFLAGS) $(PYTHON_INCLUDE) \
                     statisticsmodule.c
          ⑤
```

---

### Code comments

- ① CFLAGS defines HAVE\_CONFIG\_H (among other things, this defines the mode of dynamic loading). Not all architectures need this, but define it anyway.
- ② LDSHARED defines the ld command line needed to generate shared libraries. This will vary with different architectures.
- ③ PYTHON\_INCLUDE defines the path for Python.h and the installed config.h.
- ④ The target for the link might need libraries to be supplied for more complex modules. The -lxxxx flags would be placed right after the \$(OBJS).
- ⑤ The compile rule is quite simple; just add the CFLAGS and PYTHON\_INCLUDE variables.

### 14.2.4 Building a dynamic module in Windows

Once again, building a dynamic module in Windows is quite involved. It does require you to edit some files which contain comments such as **DO NOT EDIT**, but despite that, it works! As with static linking, build and install Python first so that libraries and other such items are in place.

First, create a directory in the top-level Python directory, at the same level as Modules, Parser and so on. Give it the same name as your module.

Next, copy all of the files necessary to support your module into this directory; for our example, we need only `statisticsmodule.c`.

Then, in the `PC` directory of the standard Python distribution, you will find a directory called `example_nt`. Copy `example.def`, `example.dsp`, `example.dsw` and `example.mak` into the module directory, renaming the files with your module name as the prefix.

Edit each of these files, changing the references to `example` to your module name. You will need to make over 50 changes to the make file. As you make the changes, note the paths to the Python library (which is `python15.lib` in this case). If this does not match your

installed library, the best way to correct it is to delete it from the project and then add it in again.

Finally, select the Debug or Release configuration and then choose the Build menu option Build statistics.dll to build the dll.

### 14.2.5 Installing dynamic modules

To install dynamic modules, you can do one of three things. You can place the module.so or module.dll anywhere that is defined in the PYTHONPATH environment variable, you may add its path into the sys.path list at runtime, or you may copy it into the installed .../python/lib/lib-dynload directory. All three methods achieve the same effect, but I usually place *dll* files right with python.exe on Windows and I put .so files in lib-dynload for UNIX. You may make your own choice.

### 14.2.6 Using dynamic modules

There are no differences in the operation and use of modules that are linked statically with the interpreter and those that are linked dynamically. The only thing that you may experience is a error if you forget to put the files in the right directory or to add the path to PYTHONPATH!

```
Python 1.5.2b2 (#17, Apr 7 1999, 13:25:13) [C] on sunos5
Copyright 1991-1995 Stichting Mathematisch Centrum, Amsterdam
>>> import statistics
>>> statistics.mavm(1.3, 5.5, 6.6, 8.8)
(1.3, 5.55, 8.8)
>>>
```

## 14.3 Using the Python API in extensions

The mavm routine in the previous example is really rather tame. Let's change the input to a list and perform the same operations on it.

### statisticsmodule2.c

```
#include "Python.h"

static PyObject *
stats_mavm(self, args)
    PyObject *self, *args;
{
    double      total      = 0.0;
    double      minimum    = 1E31;
    double      maximum    = -1E31;
    int         i, len;
    PyObject     *idataList = NULL;
    PyFloatObject *f      = NULL;
    double      df;

    if (!PyArg_ParseTuple (args, "O", &idataList))          ②
        return NULL;

    /* check first to make sure we've got a list */
```

①

②

```

if (!PyList_Check(idataList))
{
    PyErr_SetString(PyExc_TypeError,
                   "input argument must be a list");
    return NULL;
}
len = PyList_Size(idataList);

for (i=0; i<len; i++)
{
    f = (PyFloatObject *)PyList_GetItem(idataList, i);      5
    df = PyFloat_AsDouble(f);                                6
    if (df < minimum)
        minimum = df;
#-----Remaining code removed-----

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ We need to define a Python object for the list that is being passed in as an argument and a `PyFloatObject` (a subtype of `PyObject`) to receive the items in the list.
- ➋ We are now receiving a single object (as opposed to discrete values in the previous example).
- ➌ We check that the object is indeed a list. This actually introduces a shortcoming—we cannot pass a tuple containing the values. If there *is* an error, we use `PyErr_SetString` to generate `PyExc_TypeError` with a specific error message.
- ➍ List objects have a `length` attribute, so we get it.
- ➎ We get each item in the list.
- ➏ For each item we convert the `PyFloat` to a C double. The rest of the code has been removed; you have seen it before.

This example only scratches the surface of what can be done with the Python API. A good place to find examples of its use is in the `Modules` directory in the Python source. One reason that this topic is important is that Python is very good at creating and manipulating strings, especially if they involve lists, tuples, or dictionaries. A very realistic scenario is the ability to use Python to create such data structures and then to use use C to further process the entries, using API calls inside an iterator. In this way, C can provide the speed for critical operations and Python can provide the power to handle data succinctly.

## 14.4 ***Building extensions in C++***

Python is a C-based interpreter. Although it's possible to adjust the source so that it would compile as C++, it would be a large undertaking. This means that calling C++ functions from this C base introduces some special problems. However, if you are able to link Python with the C++ compiler (linker), the problems are reduced.

Clearly, many C++ class libraries can support Python systems. The trick is to leave Python essentially unchanged and provide a wrapper which gives access to the class library. If you can use dynamic linking for extension modules, this is quite a painless experience. If you *must* link statically, you may be facing some challenges.

Because of the great variability of each architecture's C++ compilers, I am not going to try to provide a cookbook to solve the various problems. However, I *am* going to present some code fragments that have worked for Solaris.

To get a module to compile with C++, you need to define the Python API as a C segment to the C++ compiler:

```
extern "C" {
#include "Python.h"
}
```

Then, the `init` function must be given the same treatment:

```
extern "C" {
DL_EXPORT(void)
initstatistics()
{
    Py_InitModule("statistics", statistics_methods);
}
}
```

## 14.5 Format strings

Format strings provide a mechanism to specify the conversion of Python types passed as arguments to the extension routines. The items in the string must match, in number and type, the addresses supplied in the `PyArg_ParseTuple()` call. Although the type of the arguments is checked with the format string, the supplied addresses are not checked. Consequently, errors here can have a disastrous effect on your application.

Since Python supports long integers of arbitrary length, it is possible that the values cannot be stored in C `long` integers; in all cases where the receiving field is too small to store the value, the most significant bits are silently truncated.

The characters `|`, `:`, and `;` have special meaning in format strings.

- "`|`" This indicates that the remaining arguments in the Python argument list are optional. The C variables corresponding to optional arguments must be initialized to their default value since `PyArg_ParseTuple` leaves the variables corresponding to absent arguments unchanged.
- "`:`" The list of format units ends here; the string after the colon is used as the function name in error messages.
- "`;`" The list of format units ends here; the string after the colon is used as the error message instead of the default error message.

**Table 14.1 Format strings for PyArg\_ParseTuple( )**

| Format unit | Python type        | C type                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| s           | string             | char *                    | Convert a Python string to a C pointer to a character string. The address you pass must be a character pointer; you do not supply storage. The C string is null-terminated. The Python string may not contain embedded nulls and it cannot be None. If it does or is, a <code>TypeError</code> exception is raised.                                                                                             |
| s#          | string             | char *, int               | Stores into two C variables, the first one being a pointer to a character string, the second one being its length. The Python string may have embedded nulls.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| z           | string or None     | char *                    | Similar to s, but the Python object may also be None, in which case the C pointer is set to <code>NULL</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| z#          | string or None     | char *, int               | Similar to s#.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| b           | integer            | char                      | Convert a Python integer to a tiny <code>int</code> , stored in a C char.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| h           | integer            | short int                 | Convert a Python integer to a C short <code>int</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| i           | integer            | int                       | Convert a Python integer to a plain C <code>int</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| l           | integer            | long int                  | Convert a Python integer to a C long <code>int</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| c           | string of length 1 | char                      | Convert a Python character, represented as a string of length 1, to a C <code>char</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| f           | float              | float                     | Convert a Python floating point number to a C <code>float</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| d           | float              | double                    | Convert a Python floating point number to a C <code>double</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| D           | complex            | Py_complex                | Convert a Python complex number to a C <code>Py_complex</code> structure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| O           | object             | PyObject *                | Store a Python object (without conversion) in a C object pointer. The C interface receives the actual object that was passed. The object's reference count is not increased.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| O!          | object             | typeobject,<br>PyObject * | Store a Python object in a C object pointer. This is similar to O, but it takes two C arguments: the first is the address of a Python-type object specifying the required type, and the second is the address of the C variable (of type <code>PyObject *</code> ) into which the object pointer is stored. If the Python object does not have the required type, a <code>TypeError</code> exception is raised. |

**Table 14.1 Format strings for PyArg\_ParseTuple( ) (continued)**

| <b>Format unit</b> | <b>Python type</b> | <b>C type</b>         | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| O&                 | object             | function,<br>variable | Convert a Python object to a C variable through a converter function. This takes two arguments: the first is a function, the second is the address of a C variable (of arbitrary type), cast to void *. The converter function is called as follows:<br><code>status = function(object, variable);</code> where <code>object</code> is the Python object to be converted and <code>variable</code> is the <code>void *</code> argument that was passed to <code>PyArg_ConvertTuple()</code> . The returned status should be 1 for a successful conversion and 0 if the conversion has failed. If conversion fails, the function should raise an exception. |
| S                  | string             | PyStringObject *      | Similar to O, but it expects that the Python object is a string object. It raises a <code>TypeError</code> exception if the object is not a string object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| (items)            | sequence           | matching items        | The object must be a Python sequence whose length is the number of format units in items. The C arguments must correspond to the individual format units in items. Format units for sequences may be nested.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

To return values to the Python program that called the extension, we use `Py_BuildValue`, which uses similar format strings to `PyArg_ParseTuple`. `Py_BuildValue` has a couple of differences. First, the arguments in the call are values, not addresses. Secondly, it does not create a tuple unless there are two or more format units, or if you enclose the empty or single format unit in parentheses.

**Table 14.2 Format strings for Py\_BuildValue()**

| <b>Format unit</b> | <b>C type</b> | <b>Python type</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| s                  | char *        | string             | Convert a null-terminated C string to a Python object. If the C string pointer is NULL, None is returned.                          |
| s#                 | char *, int   | string             | Convert a C string and its length to a Python object. If the C string pointer is NULL, the length is ignored and None is returned. |
| z                  | char *        | string or None     | Same as "s". If the C string pointer is NULL, None is returned.                                                                    |
| z#                 | char *, int   | string or None     | Same as "s#". If the C string pointer is NULL, None is returned.                                                                   |

**Table 14.2 Format strings for Py\_BuildValue() (continued)**

| Format unit | C type             | Python type        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| i           | int                | integer            | Convert a plain C int to a Python integer object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| b           | char               | integer            | Same as i.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| h           | short int          | integer            | Same as i.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| l           | long int           | integer            | Convert a C long int to a Python integer object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| c           | char               | string of length 1 | Convert a C int representing a character to a Python string of length 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| d           | double             | float              | Convert a C double to a Python floating point number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| f           | float              | float              | Same as d.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| O           | PyObject *         | object             | Pass a Python object incrementing its reference count. If the object passed in is a NULL pointer, it is assumed that this was caused because the call producing the argument found an error and set an exception. Therefore, <code>Py_BuildValue()</code> will return NULL but it does not raise an exception. If no exception has been raised, <code>PyExc_SystemError</code> is set. |
| S           | PyObject *         | object             | Same as O.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| N           | PyObject *         | object             | Similar to O, except that the reference count is not incremented.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| O&          | function, variable | object             | Convert variable to a Python object through a converter function. The function is called with variable (which should be compatible with void *) as its argument and it should return a new Python object, or NULL if an error occurred.                                                                                                                                                |
| (items)     | matching items     | tuple              | Convert a sequence of C values to a Python tuple with the same number of items.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| [items]     | matching items     | list               | Convert a sequence of C values to a Python list with the same number of items.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| {items}     | matching items     | dictionary         | Convert a sequence of C values to a Python dictionary. Each consecutive pair of C values adds one item to the dictionary, using the first value as the key and the second as the value.                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## 14.6 Reference counts

You may have noticed a couple of mentions of reference counts in the previous format string descriptions: If you are new to Python, and especially if you are new to extension writing and the Python API, this may be an important area to study.

The Python documentation for extensions and the API provides an excellent picture of what is entailed, and you want to see a full explanation, I recommend that you study the Python documentation.

Most API functions have a return value of type `PyObject *`. This is a pointer to an arbitrary Python object. All Python objects have similar base behavior and may be represented by a single C type. You cannot declare a variable of type `PyObject`; you can only declare `PyObject *` pointers to the actual storage. All `PyObjects` have a reference count.

This is where we need to take special care! When an object's reference count becomes zero, it will be deconstructed. If the object contains references to other objects, then *their* reference counts are decremented. If their reference count becomes zero, then they too will be deconstructed.

Problems usually occur when the interface extracts an object from a list and then uses that reference for a while (or worse, passes the reference back to the caller). In a similar fashion, a `Py_DECREF()` call before passing data to the caller will result in disaster.

The Python documentation recommends that extensions use the API functions that have a `PyObject`, `PyNumber`, `PySequence` or `PyMapping` prefix, since these operations always increment the reference count. It is the caller's responsibility to call `Py_DECREF()` when no further reference is required.

Here's a general rule of thumb: If you are writing a Python extension and you repeatedly get a crash when you either return a value or exit your application, you've got the reference counts wrong.

## 14.7 Embedding Python

When it is necessary to add Python functionality to a C or C++ application, it is possible to embed the Python interpreter. This can be invaluable if you need to create Python objects within a C program or, perhaps, use dictionaries as a data structure. It is also possible to combine extending and embedding within the same application.

The Python documentation provides full documentation for the API, and you should reference this material for details. All you need to use the API is to call `Py_Initialize()` once from your application before using API calls.

Once the interpreter has been initialized, you may execute Python strings using `PyRun_SimpleString()` or you may execute complete files with `PyRun_SimpleFile()`. Alternatively, you can use the Python API to exercise precise control over the interpreter.

Here is a simple example that illustrates a way that Python functionality may be accessed from C. We will access a dictionary created using a simple Python script from C. This provides a powerful mechanism for C programs to perform *hashed lookups* of data without the need to implement specific code. Most of the code runs entirely in C code, which means that performance is good.

### dictionary.c

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include "Python.h"
```

```

PyObject *rDict = NULL; /* Keep these global */
PyObject *instanceDict;
/*
**   Initializes the dictionary
**   Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise
*/
int
initDictionary(char *name)
{
    PyObject *importModule;
    int retval = 0;

    /* ***** Initialize interpreter **** */
    Py_Initialize();                                ①

    /* Import a borrowed reference to the dict Module */
    if ((importModule = PyImport_ImportModule("dict")))
    {
        /* Get a borrowed reference to the dictionary instance */
        if ((instanceDict = PyObject_CallMethod(importModule, "Dictionary",
  "s", name)))
        {
            /* Store a global reference to the dictionary */
            rDict = PyObject_GetAttrString(instanceDict, "dictionary");
            if (rDict != NULL)
                retval = 1;
        }
        else
        {
            printf("Failed to initialize dictionary\n");
        }
    }
    else
    {
        printf("import of dict failed\n");
    }
    return (retval);
}
/*
**   Finalizes the dictionary
**   Returns TRUE
*/
int
exitDictionary(void)
{
    /* ***** Finalize interpreter **** */
    Py_Finalize();                                 ②
    return (1);
}
/*
**   Returns the information in buffer (which caller supplies)
*/
void
getInfo(char *who, char *buffer)
{

```

```

PyObject *reference;
int birthYear;
int deathYear;
char *birthPlace;
char *degree;
*buffer = '\0';

if (rDict)
{
    if ((reference = PyDict_GetItemString(rDict, who))) ❸
    {
        if (PyTuple_Check(reference)) ❹
        {
            if (PyArg_ParseTuple(reference, "iiss",
                &birthYear, &deathYear, &birthPlace, &degree)) ❺
            {
                sprintf(buffer,
                    "%s was born at %s in %d. His degree is in %s.\n",
                    who, birthPlace, birthYear, degree);
                if (deathYear > 0)
                    sprintf((buffer+strlen(buffer)),
                        "He died in %d.\n", deathYear);
            }
        }
        else
            strcpy(buffer, "No information\n");
    }
    return;
}

main()
{
    static char buf[256];
    initDictionary("Not Used");
    getInfo("Michael Palin", buf);
    printf(buf);
    getInfo("Spiny Norman", buf);
    printf(buf);
    getInfo("Graham Chapman", buf);
    printf(buf);
    exitDictionary();
}

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ❶ This example is meant to represent a long-term lookup service, so we hang on to the references from call to call to reduce overhead.
- ❷ We import the module `dict.py`. The `PyImport_ImportModule` call is entirely analogous to the Python statement `import dict`.
- ❸ We create an instance of the dictionary using `PyObject_CallMethod`. Now, although instantiating a class is not really calling a method, Python's implementation makes it a method call in effect. Here is the short Python module, `dict.py`:

```

class Dictionary:
    def __init__(self, name=None):
        self.dictionary = {
            'Graham Chapman': (1941, 1989, 'Leicester', 'Medicine'),
            'John Cleese': (1939, -1, 'Weston-Super-Mare', 'Law'),
            'Eric Idle': (1943, -1, 'South Shields', 'English'),
            'Terry Jones': (1942, -1, 'Colwyn Bay', 'English'),
            'Michael Palin': (1943, -1, 'Sheffield', 'History'),
            'Terry Gilliam': (1940, -1, 'Minneapolis', 'Political Science'),
        }

```

- ➊ Then we get the reference to `self.dictionary` and store it for later use.
- ➋ `PyDict_GetItemString(rDict, who)` is equivalent to the statement:  
`tuple = self.dictionary[who]`
- ➌ This is a bit of paranoid code: we check that we really retrieved a tuple.
- ➍ Finally, we unpack the tuple using the format string.

To compile and link you would use something like this (on Win32):

```

cl -c dictionary.c -I\pystuff\python-1.5.2\Include \
-I\pystuff\python-1.5.2\PC -I.
link dictionary.obj \pystuff\python-1.5.2\PCbuild\python15.lib \
-out:dict.exe

```

If you run `dict.exe`, you'll see output similar to figure 14.1.

```

C:>dict
Michael Palin was born at Sheffield in 1943. His degree is in History.
No information.
Graham Chapman was born at Leicester in 1941. His degree is in Medicine.
He died in 1989.

```

**Figure 14.1 Python embedded in a C application**

## 14.8 Summary

You may never need to build a Python extension or embed Python in an application, but in some cases it is the only way to interface with a particular system or develop code economically. Although the information contained in this chapter is accurate at the time of writing, I suggest that you visit [www.python.org](http://www.python.org) to obtain information about the current release.



## C H A P T E R   1 5

---

# *Debugging applications*

|                            |     |           |     |
|----------------------------|-----|-----------|-----|
| 15.1 Why print statements? | 329 | 15.5 pdb  | 336 |
| 15.2 A simple example      | 330 | 15.6 IDLE | 336 |
| 15.3 How to debug          | 333 | 15.7 DDD  | 337 |
| 15.4 A Tkinter explorer    | 334 |           |     |

Debugging is a tricky area. I know that I'm going to get some stern comments from some of my readers, but I'm going to make a statement that is bound to inflame some of them. Python is easy to debug if you insert `print` statements at strategic points in suspect code.

Not that some excellent debug tools aren't available, including IDLE, which is Python's emerging IDE, but as we shall see later there are some situations where debuggers get in the way and introduce artifacts.

In this chapter we will look at some simple techniques that really work and I'll offer some suggestions for readers who have not yet developed a method for debugging their applications.

## **15.1 Why *print statements*?**

Debugging a simple Python program using a debugger rarely causes problems—you can happily single-step through the code, printing out data as changes are made, and you can make changes to data values to experiment with known values. When you are working with GUIs, networked applications or any code where timed events occur, it is difficult to predict the *exact* behavior of the application. This is why: for GUIs, a mainloop dispatches events in

a particular timing sequence; for network applications there are timed events (in particular, *time-outs* which may be short enough to occur while single-stepping).

Since many of the applications that I have worked on have fallen into these categories, I have developed a method which usually avoids the pitfalls I have described. I say *usually* because even though adding `print` statements to an application only *slightly* increases the overall execution time, it still has an effect on CPU usage, output either to a file or `stdout` and the overall size of the code.

By all means try the tools that are available—they are very good. If you get results that have you totally confused, discouraged, or angry, try `print` statements!

## 15.2 A simple example

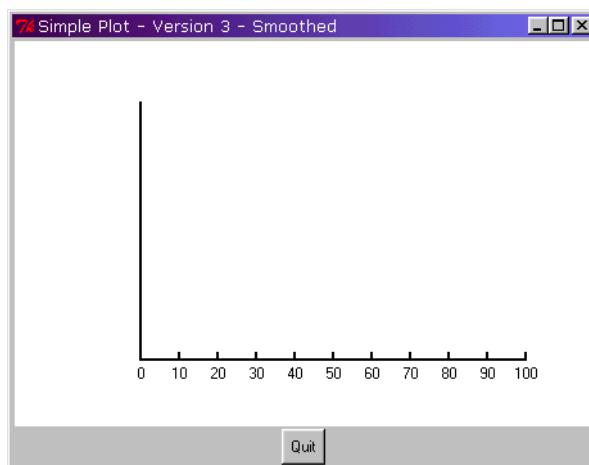
Many of the examples in this book use `try ... except` clauses to trap errors in execution. This is a good way of writing solid code, but it can make life difficult for the programmer if there are errors, since an error will cause Python to branch to the `except` section when an error occurs, possibly masking the real problem.

Python has one downside to testing a program: even though the syntax may be correct when Python compiles to bytecode, it may not be correct at runtime. Hence we need to locate and fix such errors. I have doctored one of the examples used earlier in the book to introduce a couple of runtime errors. This code is inside a `try ... except` clause with no defined exception; this is not a particularly good idea, but it does help the example, because it is really difficult to find the location of the error.

Let's try running `debug1.py`:

```
C:> python debug1.py  
An error has occurred!
```

To add insult to injury, we still get part of the expected output, as shown in figure 15.1.



**Figure 15.1 Debugging stage one**

To start debugging, we have two alternatives: we can put `print` statements in the code to find out where we last executed successfully, or we can disable the `try ... except`. To do this, quickly edit the file like this:

```
if 1:  
#     try:  
#-----Code removed-----  
#     except:  
#         print 'An error has occurred!'
```

Putting in the `if 1:` and commenting out the `except` clause means that you don't have to redo the indentation—which would probably cause even *more* errors. Now, if you run `debug2.py`, you'll get the following result:

```
C:> python debug2.py  
Traceback (innermost last):  
  File "debug2.py", line 41, in ?  
    main()  
  File "debug2.py", line 23, in main  
    canvas.create_line(100,y,105,y, width=2)  
NameError: y
```

So, we take a look at the section of code and see the following:

```
for i in range(6):  
    x = 250 - (i + 40)  
    canvas.create_line(100,y,105,y, width=2)  
    canvas.create_text(96,y, text='%.1f' % (50.*i), anchor=E)
```

Okay, it's my fault! I cut and pasted some of the code and left `x` as the variable. So I'll change the `x` to `y` and reinstate the `try ... except` (that's *obviously* the only problem!).

Now, let's run `debug3.py`:

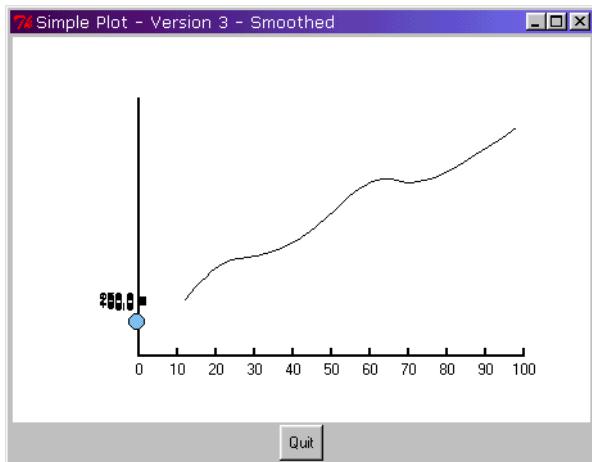
```
C:> python debug3.py
```

No errors, but the screen is nothing like I expect—take a look at figure 15.2! Clearly the `y`-axis is not being created correctly, so let's print out the values that are being calculated:

```
for i in range(6):  
    y = 250 - (i + 40)  
    print "i=%d, y=%d" %(i, y)  
    canvas.create_line(100,y,105,y, width=2)  
    canvas.create_text(96,y, text='%.1f' % (50.*i), anchor=E)
```

Now run `debug4.py`:

```
C:> python debug4.py  
i=0, y=210  
i=1, y=209  
i=2, y=208  
i=3, y=207  
i=4, y=206  
i=5, y=205
```



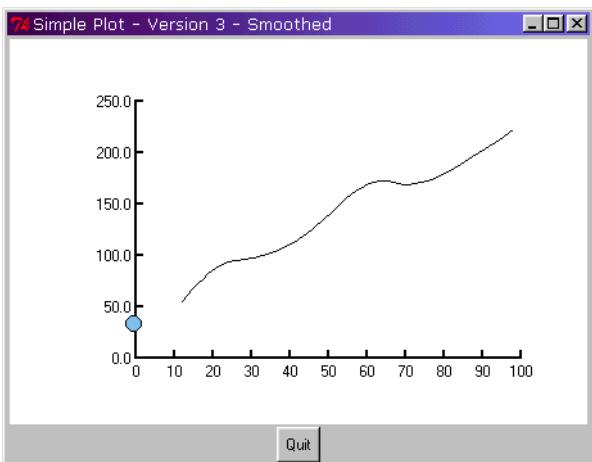
**Figure 15.2 Debugging stage two**

That's not what I meant! Decrementing 1 pixel at a time will not work!. If you look at the line of code before the `print` statement, you will see that I meant to *multiply* by 40 not just add 40. So let's make the changes and run `debug5.py`:

```
C:> python debug5.py
```

No errors, again, but not the result I expected (see figure 15.3) the “blobs” are supposed to be on the line. Let's look at the bit of code that's supposed to plot the points:

```
scaled = []
for x,y in [(12, 56), (20, 94), (33, 98), (45, 120), (61, 180),
             (75, 160), (98, 223)]:
    scaled.append(100 + 3*x, 250 - (4*y)/5)
```



**Figure 15.3 Debugging, stage three**

That *looks* Okay, but let's check it out:

```
scaled = []
    for x,y in [(12, 56), (20, 94), (33, 98), (45, 120), (61, 180),
                (75, 160), (98, 223)]:
        s = 100 + 3*x, 250 - (4*y)/5
        print "%x,%y = %d,%d" % (s[0], s[1])
    scaled.append(s)
```

Now, run debug6.py:

```
C:> python debug6.py
x,y - 136,206
x,y - 160,175
x,y - 199,172
x,y - 235,154
x,y - 283,106
x,y - 325,122
x,y - 394,72
```

Yes, that looks right (blast!). We need to look further:

```
canvas.create_line(scaled, fill='black', smooth=1)

for xs,ys in scaled:
    canvas.create_oval(x-6,y-6,x+6,y+6, width=1,
                       outline='black', fill='SkyBlue2')
```

I'll save you any more pain on this example. Obviously it was contrived and I'm not usually so careless. I meant to use *xs* and *ys* as the *scaled* coordinates, but I used *x* and *y* in the *canvas.create\_oval* method. Since I had used *x* and *y* earlier, I did not get a *NameError*, so we just used the *last* values. I'm sure that you will take my word that if the changes are made, the code will now run!

## 15.3 How to debug

The ability to debug is really as important as the ability to code. Some programmers have real problems in debugging failing code, particularly when the code is complex. The major skill in debugging is to *ignore the unimportant* and *focus on the important*. The secondary skill is to learn how to gain the major skill.

Really, you want to confirm that the code is producing the values you expect and following the paths you expect. This is why using *print* statements (or using a debugger where appropriate) to show the actual values of variables, pointers and the like is a good idea. Also, putting *tracers* into your code to show which statements are being executed can quickly help you focus on problem areas.

If you are proficient with an editor such as emacs it is really easy to insert debugging statements into your code. If you have the time and the inclination, you can build your code so that it is ready to debug. Add statements which are only executed when a variable has been set. For example:

```
...
if debug > 2:
    print('location: var=%d, var2=%s' % (var, var2))
```

Clearly, you could add more detail, timestamps and other data that may help you if you encounter problems when you start running your code. Planning for the need to debug is often easier at the time you write the code than when you have pressure to deliver.

## 15.4 A Tkinter explorer

In “Building an application” on page 18 I suggested a technique for hiding access to a debug window. This often works well, since you have immediate access to the tool, usually without restarting the application. I’m including an example here (the code is available online) which pops up if an error is output to `stderr`. Then you can look at the source, change variables in the namespace or even launch another copy of the application to check it out. Here are a series of screenshots:

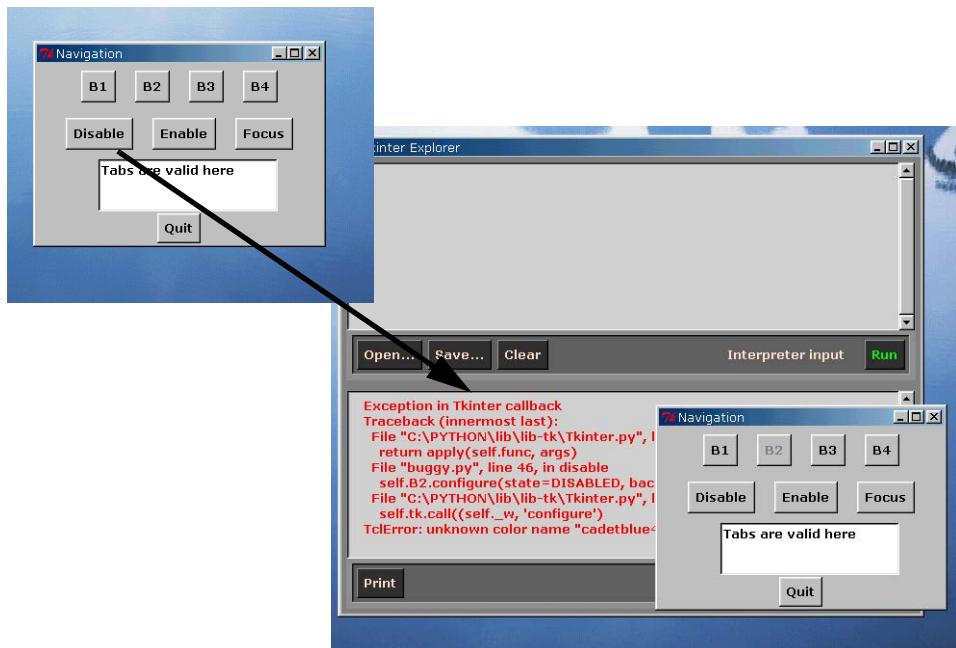
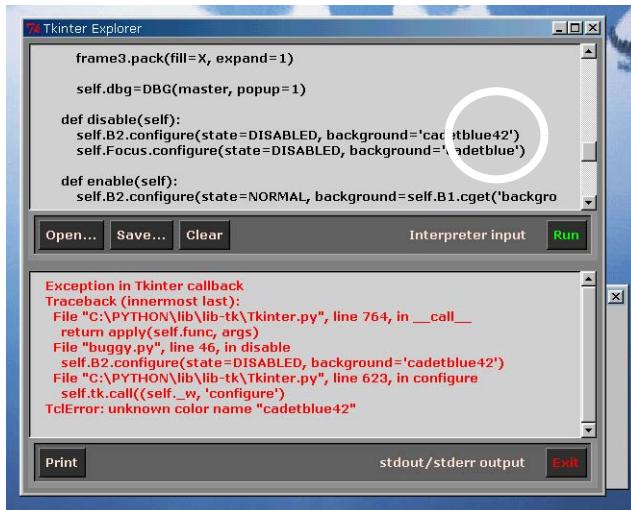


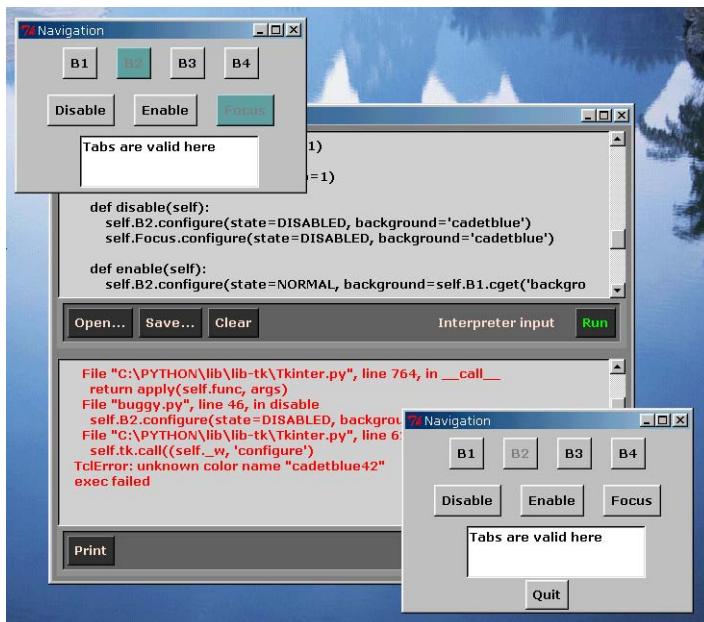
Figure 15.4 An embedded debug tool

Then, open up the source in the top window and look for the error:



**Figure 15.5 Locating the code error**

If we correct the error and then click Run, we execute another copy of the application and we can see that the problem has been corrected. The window at the top-left-hand corner of figure 15.6 shows how this looks.



**Figure 15.6 Executing a second version of the application**

## 15.5 *pdb*

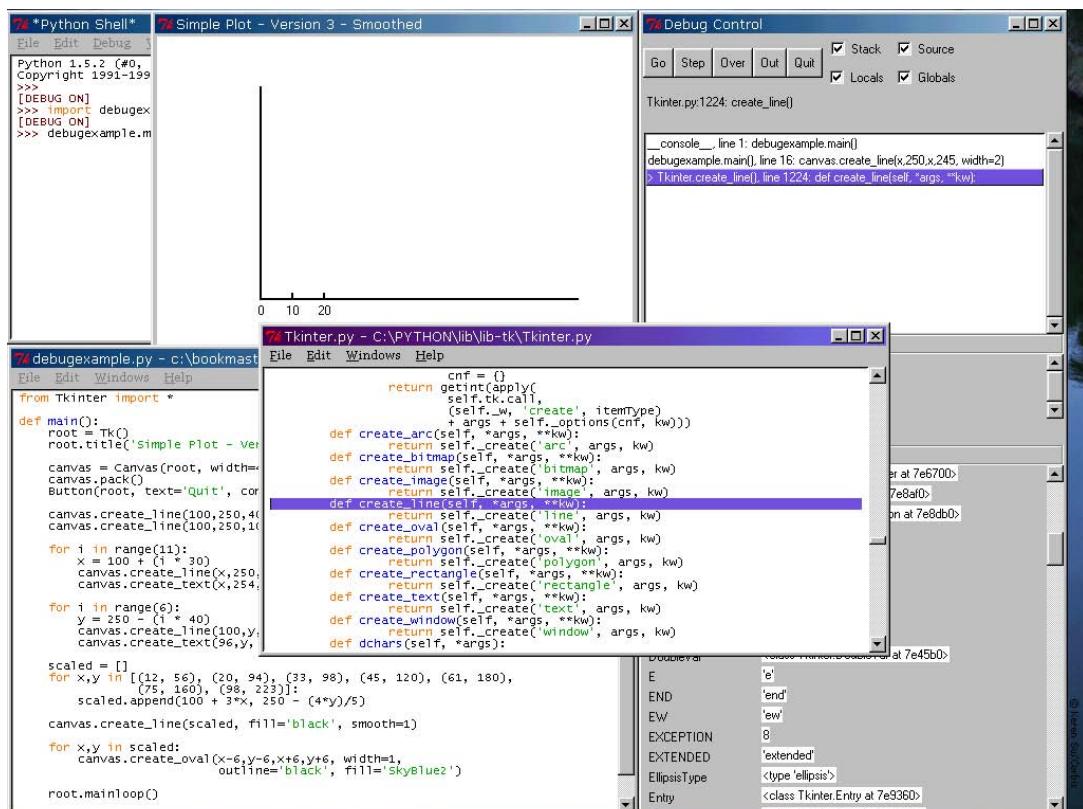
If you like to type, this is the debug tool for you! *pdb* is a basic debugger that will allow you to set breakpoints, get data values and examine the stack, to name but a few of its facilities. Its drawback is that you have to input a lot of data to get to a particular point of interest and when the time comes to do it again, you have to enter the information again!

This tool isn't for everyone, but if your debug style fits *pdb*, then it will probably work for you.

## 15.6 *IDLE*

*IDLE* is an emerging IDE for Python. It has some limitations which will reduce as time goes by and its usage increases. You can already see demands for various types of functionality on the Python news group. This will continue to grow as more users find out what is needed in the tool. Make sure that you obtain the latest code rather than using the code packaged in Python 1.5.2—many changes and bug fixes have been made recently.

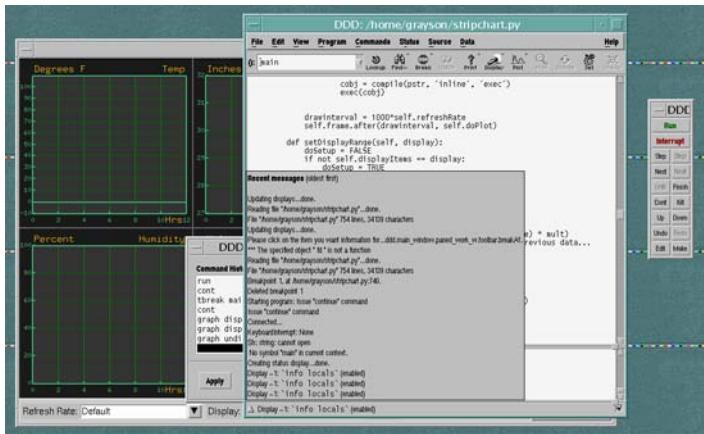
I have included a screenshot of an *IDLE* session to give you an idea of what is provided. Try the tool and decide if it will meet your expectations.



**Figure 15.7 Debugging with *IDLE***

## 15.7 DDD

DDD is a graphic front-end debugger for a number of languages. It uses a modified version of pdb and has a wide range of support from programmers. Again, I have included an example session, and I leave it to you to decide if it will be useful to you!



**Figure 15.8 Debugging with DDD**



## C H A P T E R   1 6

---

# *Designing effective graphics applications*

|                                                |                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 16.1 The elements of good interface design 339 | 16.3 Alternative graphical user interfaces 346 |
| 16.2 Human factors 342                         | 16.4 Summary 347                               |

A graphical user interface has become an expected part of most applications which have direct communication with users. This chapter describes the essentials of good GUI design—but keep in mind that this area is highly subjective, of course. Some considerations of font and color schemes will be covered, along with size, ergonomic and other human factors. Finally, alternatives for GUI design will be suggested, introducing photorealism, virtual reality and other emerging techniques.

Established standards for interface design are noted in the bibliography. Many companies have internal design standards which may be in conflict with established standards; the life of a GUI programmer is not always easy and aesthetics may succumb to standards in some cases.

If one thing should be selected as the major determinant of good GUI design, it is probably *simplicity*. An elegant interface will display the minimum information necessary to guide the user into inputting data and observing output. As we shall see, there may be cases where a little added complexity enhances an interface, but in general, *keep it simple*.

## 16.1 The elements of good interface design



**Figure 16.1 An inferior interface**

User interfaces are really rather simple: display a screen, have the user input data and click on a button or two and show the user the result of their actions. This appears to be easy, but unless you pay attention to detail, the end user's satisfaction with the application can be easily destroyed by a badly designed GUI. Of course, appreciation of GUI's is highly subjective and it is almost impossible to satisfy everyone. We are going to develop a number of example interfaces in this chapter and examine their relative merits. The source code for the examples will not be presented in the text, but it is available online if you want to reproduce the examples or use them as templates for your own interfaces. You can see many more examples of Tkinter code throughout the book! If you do use the supplied source code, please make sure that only the *good* examples are used.

Take a look at the first GUI (figure 16.1). You may not believe me, but I have seen GUIs similar to this one in commercial applications. This screen does all that it is intended to do—and nothing more—but without any concern for the end user or for human factors. You may wish to examine this example again after we have discussed how to construct a better GUI.

Even though I said that this is an inferior GUI, this type of screen can be acceptable in certain contexts; if all that is needed is a simple screen to input debug information for an application, the amount of code necessary to support this screen is quite small. However, don't inflict this type of screen on an end user; especially if they are expected to pay money for it!

So let's take a quick look at the screen's faults before we determine how the screen could be improved.

- 1 Jagged label/entry boundary is visually taxing, causing the user to scan randomly in the GUI.
- 2 Poor choice of font: Courier is a fixed pitch serif font. In this case it does not have sufficient weight or size to allow easy visual scanning.
- 3 Although the contrast between the black letters and the white background in the entry fields is good, the contrast between the frame and the label backgrounds is too great and makes for a stark interface.
- 4 Crowded fields make it difficult for the user to locate labels and fields.
- 5 Fields have arbitrary length. This provides no clues to the user to determine the length of data that should be input.
- 6 Poor grouping of data: the Position, Employee # type of data have more to do with the name of the individual than the address of the individual and should be grouped accordingly.

Let's attempt to correct some of the problems with figure 16.1 and see if we can improve the interface. Figure 16.2 shows the result of changing some of the attributes of the GUI.

The screenshot shows a window titled "GUI Design 2". It contains a grid of 13 rows, each with a label and an entry field. The labels are: First Name, Initial, Last Name, Address 1, Address 2, City, State, Zip, Phone, Position, Employee #, and SS#. The entry fields contain the values: John, E, Grayson, My Street, , My City, RI, 01234, (401) 555-1212, The Boss, 12345, and 123-45-6789. A small "OK" button is at the bottom.

**Figure 16.2 A better interface**

- 1 This interface uses the grid manager; the previous interface used the pack manager (see “Grid” on page 86 for details of the geometry managers). This has corrected the jagged alignment of the labels and fields.
- 2 The font has been changed to a larger sans serif font which improves readability when compared to the previous example, but see “Choosing fonts” on page 343.
- 3 The background color of the entry fields has been changed to narrow the contrast between the labels and fields.
- 4 A small amount of padding has been applied around the fields to make scanning easier.

The interface is better, but it can still be improved more. Arranging the fields in logical groups and setting the size of some of the fields to an appropriate width will assist the user to fill in the information. Also, grouping some of the fields on the same line will result in a less vertically-linear layout, which fits scan patterns better since we tend to scan horizontally better than we scan vertically—that is how we learned to read, after all. This may not apply to cultures where printed characters are read vertically, however.

The next example implements the points discussed above.

The GUI in figure 16.3 is beginning to show signs of improvement since the fields are grouped logically and the width of the entries matches the data widths that they support. The Position entry has been replaced by a ComboBox (a Pmw widget) which allows the user to select from a list of available options (see figure 16.4).

The screenshot shows a window titled "GUI Design 3". It contains a grid of 13 rows, grouped into three sections. The first section (rows 1-3) contains: Name [John] [Initial E] [Last Name Grayson]. The second section (rows 4-6) contains: Position [The Boss] [ComboBox dropdown] [Employee # 12345]. The third section (rows 7-13) contains: Phone [(401) 555-1212] [SS# 123-45-6789], Address 1 [My Street], Address 2 [ ], City [My City], State [RI], Zip [01234]. A small "OK" button is at the bottom.

**Figure 16.3 A GUI showing logical field grouping**

We can improve the interface further by breaking appropriate fields into subfields. For example, social security numbers always have a 3-2-4 format. We can handle this situation in two ways:

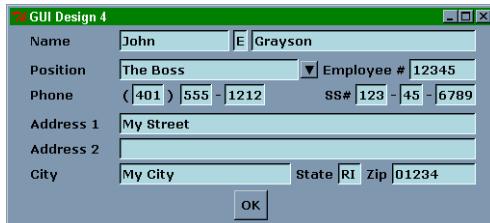
- 1 Use three separate fields for each of the subfields.
- 2 Use a smart widget that automatically formats the data to insert the hyphens in the data. Smart widgets are discussed in “Formatted (smart) widgets” on page 117.



**Figure 16.4 ComboBox widget**

Figure 16.5 shows our example with the fields split into appropriate subfields.

Unfortunately, this change has now cluttered our interface and the composition is now rather confusing to the end user. We have to make a further adjustment to separate the logical field groups and to help the user to navigate the interface. In figure 16.6, we introduce whitespace between the three groups.



**Figure 16.5 Splitting fields into sub-fields**

This achieves the desired effect, but we can improve the effect further by drawing a graphic around each of the logical groups. This can be achieved in a number of ways:

- 1 Use available 3-D graphic relief options with containers. Tkinter frames allow `sunken`, `raised`, `groove` and `ridge`, for example.
- 2 Draw a frame around the group. This is commonly seen in Motif GUIs, usually with an accompanying label in the frame.
- 3 Arrange for the background color of the exterior of the frame to be displayed in a different color from the inside of the frame. Note that this kind of differentiation is suitable for only a limited range of interface types.



**Figure 16.6 Separating logical groups with whitespace**

Figure 16.7 illustrates the application of a 3-D graphic groove in the frame surrounding the grouped fields.



**Figure 16.7 Logical groups framed with a 3-D graphic**

## 16.2 Human factors

Extensive documents on Human Factor Engineering describe GUI design in scientific terms (see the Reference section). In particular, font choice may be based on calculating the arc subtended by a character from a point 20 inches from the character (the viewing position). While I have worked on projects where it was necessary to actually measure these angles to confirm compliance with specifications, it is not usually necessary to be *so* precise.

When designing an application that includes a GUI, you should consider the following human factors:

- 1 Ensure that the application meets the end user's expectations. If a paper system is currently being used, the GUI application should mimic at least some of that operation, for example.
- 2 Keep the interface simple and only request necessary data from the user; accordingly, only display pertinent data.
- 3 Select fonts that make the interface work effectively. Use as few different fonts as possible within a single screen.
- 4 Lay out the information in a logical sequence, grouping areas where appropriate, so that the user is led through the information in a smooth fashion, not jumping between key areas.
- 5 Use color sparingly and to achieve a specific purpose. For example, use color to highlight fields that must be entered by the user as opposed to optional fields.
- 6 Provide multiple navigation methods in the GUI. It is not always appropriate to require navigation to be mouse-based; tabbing from field to field within a form may be more natural to users than clicking on each field to enter data. Provide both so the user may choose.
- 7 Ensure consistency in your application. Function keys and control-key combinations should result in similar actions throughout a single application and between applications in a suite.

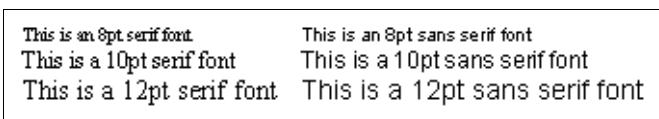
- 8 Some platforms may have GUI style guides that constrain the design. These should be adhered to, even if it means developing platform-specific versions.
- 9 Provide help wherever possible. *Balloon help*\* can be useful for beginning users but may be annoying to experts. Consequently it is important to provide the user with a means of turning off such facilities.
- 10 The UI should be intuitive so that it is not necessary to provide documentation. Careful field labeling, clues to input format and clear validation schemes can go a long way to achieve this goal.
- 11 Whenever possible, test the UI with end users. Building prototypes in Python is easy, so take advantage of this and get feedback from the target audience for your work.

### 16.2.1 Choosing fonts

Choosing an appropriate font for a GUI is important to ensure that an interface is effective. Readability is an important factor here. A font that is highly readable when displayed at a screen resolution of 640 x 480 may be too small to read when displayed at a resolution of 1024 x 768 or greater. The size of the font should, therefore, be either calculated based on the screen resolution or selected by the end user. However, in the latter case, you should ensure that the end user is given a range of fonts that the application can display without changing screen layouts or causing overflows, overlaps or other problems.

Font selection can be crucial to achieving an effective interface. In general, *serif*<sup>†</sup> fonts should be avoided. Most of us are used to reading serif fonts on printed material (in fact, the body of this book is set in Adobe Garamond, a font with a light serif) since we believe that we are able to recognize word forms faster in serif as opposed to sans serif fonts. Unfortunately, many serif fonts do not display as clearly on screens as they do when printed, since the resolution of most printers is better than that of displays.

Take a look at figure 16.8. This shows a screen grab, at 1024×768 resolution, of Times New Roman and Verdana fonts in three point sizes. The sans serif font results in a crisper image, although the overall width of the text is greater. In most cases, it is easier to select Arial.



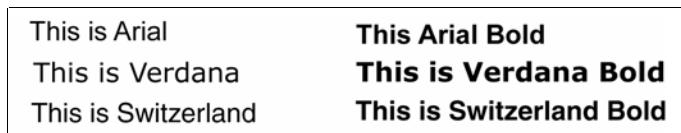
**Figure 16.8 Comparing Serif and Sans Serif Fonts**

---

\* Balloon help is displayed when the cursor is placed over a field or control without moving it for a short time. The help may be displayed as a message in the status area of a window, if it has one, or in a popup balloon close to the field or control.

† A serif font is one in which each of the letters contain small artistic flourishes that appear to give the glyphs ledges and feet. Common serif fonts include Times, Bookman, Palatino, and Garamond. A sans serif font is one that does not contain these extra flourishes. Common sans serif fonts are Helvetica, Arial, Geneva, Gothic, and Swiss.

or Verdana for Windows and Helvetica for UNIX and MacOS, since these fonts are usually installed on their respective systems. Figure 16.9 illustrates these fonts.



**Figure 16.9 Arial, Verdana and Switzerland Fonts**

Now let's take a look at what can happen if a font is selected that is just not meant to be used for a GUI. The fonts used in this GUI look great when printed, but when displayed on the screen, they produce the effect shown in figure 16.10. Although the weight of the font is adequate, it just does not look right on the screen.



**Figure 16.10 The effect of selecting the wrong font**

In summary:

- 1 Choose sans serif fonts wherever possible.
- 2 Use a minimum of font types, sizes, weights and styles within a single screen.
- 3 Allow for different screen sizes, if possible.
- 4 If the user is able to choose fonts from a theme or style, use that font, even if the result offends aesthetics.

### **16.2.2 Use of color in graphical user interfaces**

The process of selecting color schemes for a GUI is highly subjective. In many cases it is best to allow the end user complete control over the colors that will be used within an application. The current trend in systems (Windows and UNIX CDE) is to allow the user to select a theme or scheme and then apply the selected colors, extrapolating alternate colors as appropriate. If you design your GUI to look good using just shades of gray and then calculate colors based upon the user-selected scheme, the GUI will probably work well. That way the user is allowed the privilege to select bizarre combinations of colors; after all, who are we to judge?

The basic rules to be followed with color are these:

- 1 If you need to distinguish a graphic item, select color as the last method.
- 2 Use color to draw the user to the most important features on the screen.
- 3 Remember that your user might be color blind\* and might not perceive color contrast in the same way as you do.
- 4 Create optimal contrast between your graphic components. You should avoid 100% contrast in most cases.†
- 5 Avoid reverse video (light on dark) except where you must draw attention to a graphic component. A good example of reverse video is to indicate a validation error in an input field.

As an illustration of how color selection can become a problem, take a look at figure 16.11. Although it is not possible to see the direct effect of color on the page, the color scheme chosen is quite pleasing, in warm tones of brown, olive green and cream. However, an application with GUIs implemented with these colors would prove tiring in practice, though it might look good for a short demonstration. The major problem is the use of low-contrast reverse video in the entry fields. Incidentally, the colors used in this application were adapted from a commercial application; I'm sure the designer was proud of the result that had been produced.



**Figure 16.11 Problems with color combinations**

\* It is relatively easy to design color use to accommodate individuals with color-blindness. Do not use primary colors; mix each color with varying amounts of red, green, and blue so that the overall chrominance varies. The overall effect will not appear greatly different for individuals with normal color vision, but it will appear distinct for those with color blindness. If you have an application which is in a mission critical environment and might be used by individuals with color blindness, it may be prudent to have your GUI checked out by someone with less-than-perfect vision.

† Not all monitors display black on white as clearly as they display black on grey (or some other light color combination). Try black on 90% gray, for example. (Note that 90% gray is really 90% white and 10% black).

### 16.2.3 Size considerations

Apart from the need to ensure that a GUI works at different screen resolutions, consideration must be made to determine whether the user is permitted to change the size of the displayed GUI. Having designed a well-proportioned screen, it can be difficult to allow the user to change the size of the display at will. In many cases it is better to disallow resizing of the screen rather than attempting to maintain an effective GUI regardless of what the user requests (see “Geometry methods” on page 307 for details about how to do this).

In the examples presented earlier in this chapter, resizing was handled by assigning one field on each line to stretch if the window was made larger. This is generally appropriate, but it may result in strange screen appearances. Shrinking a window is much harder to handle and may be impossible.

If the screen does not contain scrolled widgets (text, lists, etc.), it is probably better to fix the size of the window and maintain optimal layout.

## 16.3 Alternative graphical user interfaces

The elements of GUI design described above are appropriate for most applications, but a specific application might need to break the rules to achieve a desired effect. Let me present a case study. I was contracted to develop a crew-scheduling system for an airline’s pilots. Most of the airline’s administrators are, or have been pilots, so I wanted to design an interface that would have impact for such individuals. Figure 16.12 illustrates one of the screens that was delivered. This interface breaks many of the rules that have been presented above, but it was highly acclaimed by the airline. For readers who have not sat in the cockpit of an airplane, the interface is made to resemble a communication stack (radios) in an airplane. In this interface, the main displays utilize reverse video and a pixel font which is not uncommon in systems of this type. The panel is ray-traced to provide an extreme 3-D appearance (this technique was covered in “Virtual machines using POV-Ray” on page 232). Although it’s not apparent in the black-and-white illustration, the interface contains many colored elements. Again, this is consistent with the systems that are being mimicked.



**Figure 16.12 An interface for targeted users**

Here are some suggestions to help you choose an appropriate interface for an application:

- 1 If a manual system already exists for the application you are about to implement, and it uses paper forms, try to use elements of the system in the GUI. An order entry system would be a good example.
- 2 If the end user is familiar with a certain display and the application presents some aspects of that display, use familiar shapes, colors and navigation methods. The front-panel of a device controlled with SNMP is a good example.
- 3 If the application supports a device with a numeric keypad, and users are familiar with it or are trained to use the keypad, provide a graphical representation of the keypad in your interface. Maybe there will be a touch-screen in the future.
- 4 If the end user is used to interacting with a control panel, without a keyboard, consider how the user can navigate using methods which are natural to them; consider using touch-screen input, for example.

## 16.4 Summary

Some of the information in this chapter is somewhat subjective. Some fairly-well accepted rules are applied to human factor engineering which you should always consider when designing an application. Using tiny or huge fonts, for example, will immediately invoke a judgement by your user—you want your user to approve of your design. However, that does not mean that you *must* follow guidelines rigidly; some of the best user interfaces break some of the rules.



## CHAPTER 17

---

# *Programming for performance*

17.1 Everyday speedups 348  
17.2 Tkinter performance 350  
17.3 Python techniques 352

17.4 Application profiling 357  
17.5 Python extensions 359  
17.6 Summary 360

Current computer systems have a great capability to support interpreter-based applications such as the Python/Tkinter applications that are presented in this book. This chapter provides both arguments to refute skeptical readers and evidence to support converted readers; it includes case studies to illustrate real-world applications. Since Tkinter is a good example of how effective C extensions to Python can be, I'll introduce extension-building methods to mitigate adverse performance for complex applications.

## **17.1 *Everyday speedups***

If you are conscientious, there is no reason for Python to perform badly. Unfortunately, you can do many things to guarantee that your application will not present the user with acceptable performance and responsiveness. However, you may be able to produce Python programs that rival the performance of compiled C++ if you work hard to avoid a number of key problem areas.

### 17.1.1 Program organization

You can do a number of things to make sure that your application performs well. Let's start with how you organize your code. Regardless of how you start your application and whether it is intended to run on UNIX, Win32 or MacOS, you need to make sure that the first bit of Python code is *short*. If you invoke the Python interpreter (on UNIX) using:

```
#! /usr/bin/env python
```

as the first line of a script on UNIX, all of the subsequent lines will be parsed and compiled every time you run your application. Although the script is translated to bytecode, no bytecode (.pyc or .pyo) file will be created. This means that you have to go through the parser each time you invoke your program. So, you must construct your application so that you parse the minimum number of Python statements each time you invoke the application. Let's suppose you have constructed your application to have a structure something like this:

```
from Tkinter import *
from tkSimpleDialog import Dialog
import tkMessageBox
import Pmw

class MyClass(Dialog):
    def body(self, master):
        ...

    def amethod(self):
        ...

root = Tk()
instance = MyClass(root)
```

Sure, there aren't too many lines of code here, but *your* application might have thousands of lines. So, let's name the module myApplicationReal.py and change the last two lines to look like this:

```
def myApplicationReal():
    root = Tk()
    instance = MyClass(root)
```

Then, create a short Python script called myApplication, and insert the following lines:

```
#! /usr/bin/env python

import myApplicationReal
myApplicationReal.myApplicationReal()
```

This will use either myApplicationReal.pyc or myApplicationReal.pyo if they exist, or it will create them if they do not. This guarantees an improvement in start-up time for any large application. Incidentally, you can use the same file for Win32 also. If you construct a batch file called myApp.bat that contains the following lines, you can use the same module for UNIX and Win32:

```
python myApplication
```

Alternatively, you can pass a .pyc or .pyo file to the Python interpreter directly. On UNIX, the following script may be used:

```
#!/bin/sh
exec python script.pyo ${1+"$*"} 
```

This technique may not be very effective for Win32 since the time taken to launch a batch file and start the Python interpreter may negate the increase in speed when using a .pyo file. However, if you set Explorer's file type to execute Python when a .py file is double-clicked, then you do not need a batch file at all.

### 17.1.2 Using the Python optimizer

If you invoke Python with the optimize command-line option set (-O), the compiler will generate optimized bytecode. This means that the bytecode is optimized to run faster. It does so by eliminating some of the bytecode instructions (eliminating `SET_LINENO` from function calls and suppressing `assert` statements). It really depends on how many function calls and `assert` statements are in your code. However, it is still worth using this option to increase your application's invocation speed even a few percentage points.

### 17.1.3 Examining code

Python has an unusual property: if you leave new code alone for a couple of days you can usually return to it and reduce its size. There are often opportunities to collapse code, flatten loops, or eliminate unnecessary operations. What you are doing is reducing the number of bytecode operations. This is generally possible without reducing the ability to maintain the code, so it is worth doing.

## 17.2 Tkinter performance

The performance of a GUI can make or break an application. Users have subconscious expectations about how fast something should happen. Even simple interfaces, such as you might see on an Automated Teller Machine (ATM), have response times set for various operations (usually feedback for every keypress, such as a beep or acknowledgment is less than two seconds and transactions are completed within ten seconds). Consistency is also important. If a GUI normally does something in one second, a user will often react adversely if it occasionally takes two or three seconds—often prompting them to repeat the button press or key entry.

However, never try to optimize an application before your application is running. What you think may be slow code might perform well in the final version. If a loop is only executed a small number of times, the effort to improve its performance may result in your overlooking more important problems.

### 17.2.1 Keep it short!

If you can reduce the number of lines of code in your program without reducing someone's ability to maintain it, then you will improve performance. Take a look at this simple example:

```
self.label = Label(frame, text='Password:', fg='black')
self.label.pack(side=LEFT, padx=10) 
```

If you do not need to keep the instance of the label around, because you are not going to change its content, background color or other attributes, you can allow Tkinter to create an internal instance for you:

```
Label(frame, text='Password:', fg='black').pack(side=LEFT, padx=10)
```

### 17.2.2 Eliminate local variables

Another thing to watch for is local variables being unnecessarily assigned, particularly if this occurs within a loop (this is not an important factor if it occurs only once). This is particularly important if you are going to create many attribute variables in an instance. If you don't intend to use them again, don't create them. By scanning your code you may occasionally find an opportunity to save a few CPU cycles. Of course, this applies to regular Python programs, too. Take a look at this code:

```
...
localx = event.x
localy = event.y

...
canvas.create_text(localx, localy, text='here', ...)
```

The intent was good, but if you do not need to reuse the data, collapse the code:

```
...
canvas.create_text(event.x, event.y, text='here', ...)
```

However, local variables are not all bad. If you have an invariant subexpression or attribute reference within a loop, it may pay to take a local copy before entering the loop. Compare:

```
for i in range(30):
    self.list[i] = (self.attr2 * i) + self.attr2
```

with:

```
l = self.list
a1 = self.attr1
a2 = self.attr2
for i in range(30):
    l[i] = (a1 * i) + a2
```

### 17.2.3 Keep it simple

This point may be *too* obvious, but remember that a simple GUI usually initializes faster and consumes fewer system resources. Some programmers (particularly if they are true engineers) have a tendency to design GUIs for complex systems that expose every possible variable-data item within the system in a few dense screens. If you arrange the data in several screens, with just a few highly-related items in each, the application will respond faster for the user even though the underlying code still has to perform the same operations.

Avoid ripple in your applications if at all possible (ripple was introduced on page 154). Badly-designed interdependence between fields can consume a lot of system resources and the user will find it has limited value.

#### 17.2.4 Fast initialization

It is important that your screens are drawn as quickly as possible. Users often judge an application by its response times; in some cases, flawless applications are viewed as *buggy* if the users experience long delays with no apparent progress after they have selected an operation. In some of the examples, I've included comments about delaying the packing of Frame widgets until the widgets contained within them have been completed. The purpose of doing this is to prevent the negotiation, which is inherent in the way that the geometry managers operate, from happening on-screen every time a new widget is added. If you delay the negotiation until all widgets have been created, you will see much better performance at startup.

#### 17.2.5 Throttling events

Window systems generate a lot of events for certain types of actions. Two such actions are moving the mouse and holding down the SHIFT key (if your system is configured to auto-repeat held keys). Try running Example\_6\_2.py and try those actions—you may be surprised at the rate at which the events are generated. If all you are interested in is the x/y location of the mouse and little computation is being triggered, then it is not a problem. However, if each event triggers redrawing a complex object, then you may have a performance problem.

You can do a number of things to handle a high rate of arrivals:

- 1 *Throttle* the events so that the code responds to fewer occurrences; this may be done using a timer so that updates are performed every few hundred milliseconds, for example. Alternatively, you may use a *counter*, so that every ten events are processed, as an example. The latter method is more difficult to implement and it usually requires a combination of a timer and a counter.
- 2 Reduce the drawing overhead. If the events are the result of a mouse drag, for example, you may be able to simplify what is drawn until the mouse is released. As an example, draw an outline or ghost of the object while the drag is in progress.
- 3 Suppress unrelated events. For example, dragging an object may cause a number of events to be generated as you cross other objects. Unless they are related to the drag, they might as well be ignored.

### 17.3 Python techniques

One or two techniques have already been suggested in “Everyday speedups” on page 348. In this section, we'll look at some Python-specific coding methods that usually result in more efficient code. However, before you go into every application that you've written already, be aware that you should not make changes unless there are grounds to do so. If you don't see a problem, don't correct it! See “Application profiling” on page 357 to learn how you can identify bottlenecks in your applications. If this technique identifies places to improve your code, then go ahead.

Most of the suggestions in this section are pretty straightforward. You may also find useful suggestions by reading the Python news group (see “Python News Group” on page 626).

### 17.3.1 Importing modules

You can execute an `import` statement almost anywhere in your program. Conventionally, most `import` statements occur at the start of the program. Sometimes you may want to delay the import of a module that is required infrequently until there is a need for it. Python handles repeated imports of the same module properly, but there is a slight cost when this occurs. If possible, avoid repeatedly importing the same module. Let’s look at a hypothetical example:

#### Example\_17\_1.py

```
import time
start = time.time()

def splitter():
    import string
    list = string.split('A B C D E F G H', ' ')

for i in range(123456):
    splitter()

print time.time() - start
```

Compare this with:

#### Example\_17\_2.py

```
import time
import string

start = time.time()

def splitter():
    list = string.split('A B C D E F G H', ' ')

for i in range(123456):
    splitter()

print time.time() - start
```

If you run `Example_17_1.py` and then `Example_17_2.py` a few times, you will find that `Example_17_2.py` runs more than twice as fast as `Example_17_1.py`. By the way, don’t try to do an `if not stringLoaded: import string; stringLoaded = TRUE` construct within the `splitter` function. It will not work because of scoping; the `string` module reference gets removed each time the function returns.

### 17.3.2 Concatenating strings

Until recent releases of Python, the documentation did not spell out the use of formatted strings, so strings were frequently concatenated like this:

```
longString = part1 + ' ' + part2 + ' ' + part3
```

It's more efficient to do this with formatted strings:

```
longString = '%s %s %s' % (part1, part2, part3)
```

It is *much* faster, because all of the work happens in C code. Depending on the type of concatenation you are doing, you should see at least 25 percent improvement using format strings.

### 17.3.3 Getting nested loops right

This point has been mentioned before, and most seasoned programmers have encountered this issue at least once, but it is still worth mentioning again. When you have to iterate over a multi-dimensional object, make sure that the less-rapidly changing index is to the *outside* of the loop. Let's look at a two-dimensional array with 100 columns and 25,000 rows. It really does matter which way you access it:

```
l = []
for row in range(25000):
    for col in range(100):
        l.append('%d.%d' % (row, col))
```

runs about 20 percent slower than:

```
l = []
for col in range(100):
    for row in range(25000):
        l.append('%d.%d' % (row, col))
```

However Guido van Rossum showed me this trick which beats that one by *another* 20 percent:

```
rowrange = range(100)
for col in range(25000):
    for row in rowrange:
        l.append('%d.%d' % (row, col))
```

This achieves the performance boost because integers in the range -1 to 100 are cached and are considerably faster. 25000 loops from 0 to 99 result in 24999 integer allocations, whereas 100 loops from 0 to 24999 result in 100\*24999 allocations.

### 17.3.4 Eliminate module references

Every time you use a module reference, you incur a small overhead. If the references are within a loop, then some benefits can be gained. Contrast:

```
import time, string
start = time.time()

for i in range(5000):
    strftime = time.asctime(time.localtime(time.time()))
    lname = string.lower('UPPER')

print time.time() - start
```

with:

```
import time, string
start = time.time()

asct      = time.asctime
ltime     = time.localtime
now       = time.time
lower     = string.lower
for i in range(5000):
    strftime = asct(ltime(now()))
    lname = lower('UPPER')

print time.time() - start
```

Although the second form has more code, it runs a little faster. In a real application with reasonable constructs, the improvement can be worthwhile.

### 17.3.5 Use local variables

Now, there's a contradiction! Earlier I was encouraging you not to use local variables, but if you do it right, you can get another performance boost, because *local* variables are accessed faster than *global* variables.

If we recode the last example to use a function so that the variables are local, we see another small performance boost:

```
import time, string
start = time.time()

def local():
    asct      = time.asctime
    time     = time.localtime
    now       = time.time
    lower     = string.lower

    for i in range(20000):
        strftime = asct(ltime(now()))
        lname = lower('UPPER')
    ocal()
    print time.time() - start
```

Similarly, you may improve performance if you do a method lookup outside a loop. Compare:

```
r = []
for item in biglist:
    r.append(item)
```

with:

```
r = []
a = r.append
for item in biglist:
    a(item)
```

You can get similar speedups by caching built-in functions (such as `len`) or globals (such as other functions defined in the same modules) in local variables.

### 17.3.6 Using exceptions

The `exception` mechanism can be a valuable tool to improve performance. Although Python release 1.5.2 has now superseded the following tip by adding new functionality, the principle still applies.

This example looks at using dictionaries. Dictionaries are valuable Python tools since they usually give applications a program boost when there is a need to access data using a *key*. However, dictionaries used to have a problem: if you tried to access a dictionary entry that did not exist, you got a `KeyError`. This required programmers to check whether keys existed using:

```
if dictionary.has_key(key):  
    ...
```

If the key *usually* exists, it is generally better to use an exception to trap occasional `KeyErrors`:

```
try:  
    value = dictionary[key]  
except KeyError:  
    doErrorStuff()
```

In the current version of Python, you may not need to do any of this; use the `get` dictionary method:

```
value = dictionary.get(key, value_to_use_if_not_defined)
```

### 17.3.7 Using map, filter and reduce

Python supports three built-in functions which allow lists to be manipulated. The advantage of using these functions is that you push much of the looping overhead into C code, with an attendant improvement in performance.

`map(function, sequence)` applies `function` to each item in the list and returns the resultant values in a new list. Here is a simple example that changes all *Y* characters to *K*s in a list of strings:

```
from string import maketrans, translate  
  
def Y2K(instr):  
    return translate(instr, maketrans('yY', 'kK'))  
  
list = ['thirty', 'Year 2000', 'century', 'yellow']  
print map(Y2K, list)  
  
C:> python map.py  
['thirtk', 'Kear 2000', 'centurk', 'kellow']
```

You can also use `map` to combine several lists into a list of tuples. Using the previous example:

```
print map(None, list, map(Y2K, list))
```

```
C:> python map.py
[('thirty', 'thirtk'), ('Year 2000', 'Kear 2000'), ('century', 'centurk'),
('yellow', 'kellow')]
```

`filter(function, sequence)` returns a sequence that contains all items for which `function` returned `true`. Here is a simple example that selects any item that ends in a seven or is divisible by seven:

```
def func(n):
    return `n`[-1] == '7' or ( n % 7 == 0 ) # Cocoricos!

print filter(func, range(1,50))

C:> python filter.py
[7, 14, 17, 21, 27, 28, 35, 37, 42, 47, 49]
```

`Finally, reduce(function, sequence) returns a single item constructed by successively applying two items in the sequence as arguments to function. It is very useful as a means of summing a sequence of numbers. We can extend the previous example like this:`

```
...
def sum(n1, n2):
    return n1 + n2

seq = filter(func, range(1,50))
print reduce(sum, seq)

C:> python reduce.py
135
```

You can even better the performance by replacing the `sum` function with `operator.add`. The `operator` module provides a set of functions, implemented in C, which correspond to the intrinsic Python operators:

```
import operator
# ....
print reduce(operator.add, seq)
```

However, it is important to note that `map`, `filter`, and `reduce` are generally *slower* than inline code when the function is a lambda expression or a function constructed expressly to be used by one of these methods.

## 17.4 Application profiling

Python has a basic profiling module which allows you to learn where bottlenecks occur in your code. If you do find a point in the code where you spend a lot of time, or execute frequently, you may have a candidate for improvement.

Using the `profile` module is quite easy and requires minimal changes to your code. Essentially, you have to invoke your application through the profiler. If your application was started by invoking a function `start`, you would only have to add two lines:

```
import profile
profile.run('start()')
```

When the application exits from start, the profiler prints a report on all the functions and execution times. Let's take a look at one of the earlier examples in the book. In “Speed drawing” on page 271, we developed a fractal program. This is highly compute-bound, but we can probably make some improvements. To profile the code, we just add the additional profiler statements:

```
if __name__ == '__main__':
    def start():
        fractal = Fractal()
        fractal.root.after(10, fractal.createImage())
        fractal.run()

import profile
profile.run('start()')
```

When you exit the application, a screenful of statistics fly by—you will have to redirect the output to read it! Part of the output is shown here:

```
655511 function calls (655491 primitive calls) in 419.062 CPU seconds
Ordered by: standard name

      ncalls  tottime  percall  cumtime  percall filename:lineno(function)
          2    0.000    0.000    0.003    0.002 <string>:1(after)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.001    0.001 <string>:1(after_cancel)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.002    0.002 <string>:1(after_idle)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.001    0.001 <string>:1(bind)
          2    0.000    0.000    0.003    0.002 <string>:1(bind_class)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.000    0.000 <string>:1(focus_set)
          1    0.000    0.000   20.476   20.476 <string>:1(mainloop)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.001    0.001 <string>:1(overrideredirect)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.000    0.000 ImageDraw.py:24(__init__)
214194  22.624  0.000  22.624  0.000 ImageDraw.py:34(setink)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.000    0.000 ImageDraw.py:39(setfill)
214194  20.578  0.000  20.578  0.000 ImageDraw.py:51(point)
          1    0.152    0.152    0.152    0.152 ImageFile.py:194(_save)
          1    0.000    0.000    0.465    0.465 p_fractal.py:55(initData)
1  287.474  287.474  394.599  394.599 p_fractal.py:65(createImage)
          1    0.135    0.135    0.135    0.135 p_fractal.py:8(getpalette)
214194  49.528  0.000  92.730  0.000 p_fractal.py:96(pixel)
          0    0.000        0.000        0.000        0.000 profile:0(profiler)
```

You can see three routines that are called over 200,000 times each, and notice that almost all the time is spent in createImage (which is not surprising). However, there is really too much output in a default run to be very useful.

Fortunately, the profiler can also be run in a mode where the statistics are collected in a file which may be analyzed at your leisure. You also have considerable control over the output format. To illustrate this, we need to make a small modification. In this case we will print the entries for the 20 top cumulative times:

```
import profile
profile.run('start()', 'profile_results')

import pstats
p = pstats.Stats('profile_results')
p.sort_stats('cumulative').print_stats(20)
```

Now, when we run p\_fractal.py again, we get the following output when the application exits:

```

Tue Oct 05 12:14:25 1999      profile_results
      655779 function calls (655759 primitive calls) in 374.967 CPU seconds
Ordered by: cumulative time
List reduced from 289 to 20 due to restriction <20>
ncalls  tottime  percall  cumtime  percall  filename:lineno(function)
    1    0.003    0.003   374.969   374.969  profile:0(start())
    1    0.000    0.000   374.966   374.966  python:0(279.C.32)
    1    0.000    0.000   374.966   374.966  p_fractal.py:116(start)
    1  271.083  271.083   366.943   366.943  p_fractal.py:65(createImage)
214194  47.581  0.000  87.823  0.000  p_fractal.py:96(pixel)
214194  21.319  0.000  21.319  0.000  c:\py15\PIL\ImageDraw.py:34(setink)
214194  18.923  0.000  18.923  0.000  c:\py15\PIL\ImageDraw.py:51(point)
    1    0.000    0.000    5.590    5.590  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\AppShell.py:296(run)
    1    0.000    0.000    5.590    5.590  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\AppShell.py:291(main)
    1    0.000    0.000    5.589    5.589  <string>:1(mainloop)
    1    5.264    5.264    5.589    5.589  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:486(mainloop)
  489    0.345    0.001    5.301    0.011  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\ProgressBar.py:50(update)
  488    0.072    0.000    5.288    0.011  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\AppShell.py:248(updateProgress)
  488    0.073    0.000    5.217    0.011  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\ProgressBar.py:44(updateProgress)
    1    0.001    0.001    2.423    2.423  c:\Bookmaster\examples\common\AppShell.py:33(__init__)
 1467    0.381    0.000    1.950    0.001  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:1222(itemconfigure)
 1956    1.841    0.001    1.841    0.001  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:1058(_do)
490/489    1.800    0.004    1.804    0.004  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:449(update_idletasks)
    1    0.000    0.000    1.567    1.567  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:1767(__init__)
    1    1.567    1.567    1.567    1.567  c:\py15\lib\lib-tk\Tkinter.py:1717(__init__)

```

If you take a look at the output, you can see the three drawing-related routines that we saw earlier. They are responsible for about 20 percent of the overall cumulative time, so you can see that little of anything we have control over will *really* improve this application. However, your application might have many more opportunities for improvement.

You may also use some very simple benchmarking techniques to determine if a piece of code may be optimized by taking a particular approach. You just have to time a sequence of code. For example:

```

import time
...
def function():
    ...
start = time.clock(); function(); print round(time.clock() - start, 3)

```

Always use `time.clock()` for benchmarking, since it provides CPU time, as opposed to elapsed time

## 17.5 Python extensions

In “Extending Python” on page 313, we looked at building Python extensions, primarily as a way of extending functionality. In the area of performance improvements, extensions can be used to replace interpreted Python with compiled C. You first need to profile your application, as shown above. If you find candidate routines, you may be able to rewrite them in C. Remember that some of the power of Python comes from its high-level constructs. Sometimes it is difficult to reproduce such facilities in C—in fact the C-code may end up being less efficient than Python.

There are, however, plenty of places where adding an extension module to alleviate a bottleneck is worthwhile. Moderate floating-point operations, trigonometric operations and matrix operations are good candidates. In certain cases, complex dictionary processes may be faster to implement as C-calling-Python rather than pure Python.

## **17.6 Summary**

Remember the first rule of working on application performance: do *nothing* unless you, or your users, detect a problem. You can quickly expend a great deal of effort to get relatively insignificant improvements when the same time may be better spent on working on interface ergonomics. Your users will frequently find attention to details in the interface more rewarding. However, if you *do* find a performance problem, I hope that you find these suggestions helpful.



## C H A P T E R   1 8

---

# *Threads and asynchronous techniques*

- 18.1 Threading 361
- 18.2 “after” processing 369
- 18.3 Summary 373

Applications frequently have a need to process actions as parallel tasks or to perform time-consuming operations. This chapter covers threads and other techniques that support background processing. This area of programming for Python and Tkinter poses special problems that must be solved to prevent system hangs and unexpected behavior. It is also a difficult area to debug, since problems usually occur when the system is running at full speed, outside of any debugger or without debug print statements.

## **18.1 Threading**

*Threads* provide a means to allow multiple tasks, or threads, to share a global data space. Sometimes they are referred to as *lightweight processes*, but I think that can be a little misleading; if you regard threads as subprocesses of the same process, it might be easier to understand how they are related.

Python provides two threading interfaces. The `thread` module provides low-level primitives to facilities to control and synchronize threads. The `threading` module is a higher-level interface which is built on top of the `thread` module.

Using threads in a Python-only environment (without involving a GUI) can be quite straightforward. However, adding Tkinter (or CORBA or ILU) can introduce some special problems. Such systems rely on a mainloop to dispatch events received from a number of stimuli, and threads can complicate the design of your code dramatically.

### 18.1.1 Non-GUI threads

Let's begin by looking at a simple example which does *not* involve a GUI, or at least not directly. This example is a skeleton for a server which accepts a number of requests to process data (the requests may come from a client with a GUI). In particular, the requestors do not expect to get data returned to them, or at most they accept a success/failure return code.

#### thread1.py

```
import thread, time

class Server:
    def __init__(self):
        self._dispatch = {}
        self._dispatch['a'] = self.serviceA
        self._dispatch['b'] = self.serviceB
        self._dispatch['c'] = self.serviceC
        self._dispatch['d'] = self.serviceD

    def service(self, which, qual):
        self._dispatch[which](qual)

    def serviceA(self, argin):
        thread.start_new_thread(self.engine, (argin, 'A'))

    def serviceB(self, argin):
        thread.start_new_thread(self.engine, (argin, 'B'))

    def serviceC(self, argin):
        thread.start_new_thread(self.engine, (argin, 'C'))

    def serviceD(self, argin):
        thread.start_new_thread(self.engine, (argin, 'D'))

    def engine(self, arg1, arg2):
        for i in range(500):
            print '%s%s%03d' % (arg1, arg2, i),
            time.sleep(0.0001)
        print

server = Server()

server.service('a', '88')      # These calls simulate receipt of
server.service('b', '12')      # requests for service.
server.service('c', '44')
server.service('d', '37')

time.sleep(30.0)
```

The code is annotated with six numbered callouts:

- ① Points to the assignment of methods to the dictionary in the `__init__` method.
- ② Points to the call to the dictionary in the `service` method.
- ③ Points to the call to `start_new_thread` in the `serviceA` method.
- ④ Points to the loop in the `engine` method.
- ⑤ Points to the final `print` statement in the `engine` method.
- ⑥ Points to the final `sleep` call in the global scope.

---

### Code comments

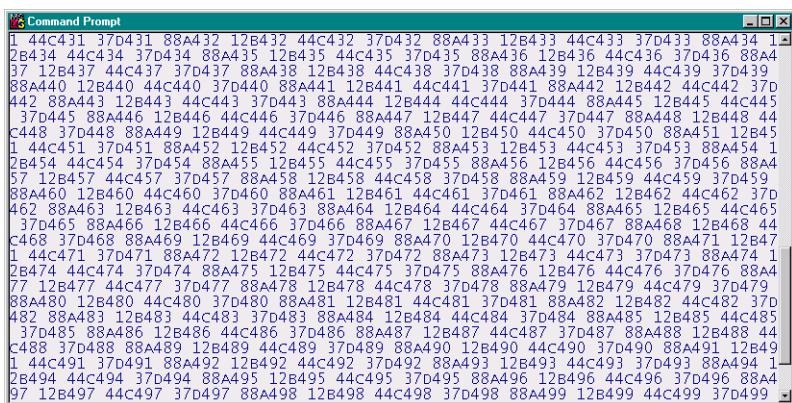
- ❶ The constructor creates a simple dispatch dictionary that will be used to select a particular method to be called.
- ❷ The `service` method is the dispatcher for this skeleton server. Naturally, a real implementation would be more complex.
- ❸ Each of the four service methods start the same method in a new thread, passing the input argument and an identifier.

```
def serviceA(self, argin):  
    thread.start_new_thread(self.engine, (argin,'B'))
```

Note that `start_new_thread` expects arguments to the method to be supplied as a tuple.

- ❹ The example service engine is pretty simple; it just loops and prints to `stdout`.
- ❺ The call `time.sleep(0.0001)` is important because it ensures that the thread blocks for a very short time, allowing other threads to run. See below for further notes on this subject.
- ❻ The call to `time.sleep` as the final line of the example is also very important for reasons that will be explained below.

If you run `thread1.py`, you'll see output to `stdout` which should look something like figure 18.1. The output is ugly, but it can be used to illustrate a few points about threads and the way that the code layout can affect behavior.



This example starts four threads that loop 500 times, printing a few characters in each iteration. Depending on the way that the scheduler is implemented for the operating system in use, each process will receive a finite timeslice in which to execute. In a non-threaded system, doing input/output operations will suspend the process until the operation completes, thereby allowing other processes to run. With threads, we have a similar situation except that other

threads within the process run when a thread does I/O. However, printing to `stdout` does not qualify as blocking I/O (at least when running simple Python scripts), so the thread continues to process instructions until it ends its timeslice or actually does some blocking I/O.

If you look at the fragment of output shown in figure 18.1, you will see that when the example is run with the short `sleep` after each print, we switch to the next thread and do one print. The result is that the output cycles in blocks of four prints, one from each thread, as shown within the gray boxes in figure 18.1.

```
12B492 44C492 37D492 88A493 12B493 44C493 37D493 88A495
12B495 44C495 37D495 88A496 12B496 44C496 37D496 88A497
12B498 44C498 37D498 88A499 12B499 44C499 37D499 88A498
```

**Figure 18.2 Effect of running threads with a sleep after each print**

If you remove the `time.sleep` call after the `print` statement, you will change the example’s runtime behavior. Running the example again will produce output similar to the fragment shown in figure 18.3. Notice how one of the threads has completed the loop during a timeslice and that the next thread outputs characters sequentially.

```
12B484 12B485 12B486 12B487 12B488 12B489 12B490 :
495 12B496 12B497 12B498 12B499
12B498 12B499 88A347 88A348 88A349 88A350 88A351 88A352 88A353
```

**Figure 18.3 Effect of running threads without sleeping after each print**

The last `time.sleep` call is very important. There is no mainloop in this program since there is no GUI; if you omit the sleep, the main thread will exit, and the child threads will be killed. This problem can be infuriating when you first start programming threads. Nothing seems to work and until you realize that the main thread is just exiting, you will run the application repeatedly—sometimes getting variable results.

Now, this very simplistic example relies on the fact that data sharing between the threads is not an issue. In fact, we’re lucky that it works at all. If you look at the engine method, you’ll notice the `for` loop. The controlled variable, `i`, might appear to be shared between the threads, but in reality it is not; each thread creates a new reference to the controlled variable, since local variables on a thread’s stack are thread-local. It is probably not a good idea to rely on such features to build threaded applications—there are too many rules to be followed and broken.

The problem, stated simplistically, is that you cannot predict when a thread will get *preempted*\* and if this happens when you’re halfway through a series of instructions which make

---

\* When a running process is stopped to allow another process to run (a *process exchange*), it is normally referred to as having been “preempted.”

up an *atomic*\* operation, the result of another thread executing the same code path can be disastrous. If it is important that threads maintain *atomic* operations, you need to use *locks* (*semaphores* or *mutexes*†) to prevent another thread from gaining access to shared data. You can find some examples of locking in the standard Python distribution in the `Demo/threads` directory.

### 18.1.2 GUI threads

The decision to use threads with a GUI must be made with some caution. In general, a system that uses threads must ensure that the GUI is updated from within the main thread, which includes the mainloop. The following example is an adaptation of `wpi.py`, of one of the threading examples in the standard Python distribution. The example has a main thread which creates a GUI and starts the mainloop, and a thread which continuously calculates successive digits of pi. In addition, the example uses Tkinter's event loop to update the GUI periodically.

#### thread2.py

```
# Display digits of pi in a window, calculating in a separate thread.
# Compare with wpi.py in Demo/threads/wpi.py.

import sys
import time
import thread
from Tkinter import *

class ThreadExample:
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        self.ok          = 1
        self.digits      = []
        self.digits_calculated = 0
        self.digits_displayed = 0
        self.master      = master

        thread.start_new_thread(self.worker_thread, ()) ①

        self.frame = Frame(master, relief=RAISED, borderwidth=2)
        self.text = Text(self.frame, height=26, width=50)
        self.scroll = Scrollbar(self.frame, command=self.text.yview)
        self.text.configure(yscrollcommand=self.scroll.set)
        self.text.pack(side=LEFT)
        self.scroll.pack(side=RIGHT, fill=Y)
        self.frame.pack(padx=4, pady=4)
        Button(master, text='Close', command=self.shutdown).pack(side=TOP)

        self.master.after(100, self.check_digits) ②

    def worker_thread(self):
        k, a, b, a1, b1 = 21, 41, 11, 121, 41
        while self.ok:
```

---

\* Atomic operations complete in their entirety before any other process or thread can follow the same code path.

† Mutual exclusion locks.

```

# Next approximation
p, q, k = k*k, 21*k+11, k+11
a, b, a1, b1 = a1, b1, p*a+q*a1, p*b+q*b1
# Print common digits
d, d1 = a/b, a1/b1
while d == d1:
    self.digits.append(`int(d)`)

    a, a1 = 101*(a%b), 101*(a1%b1)
    d, d1 = a/b, a1/b1
    time.sleep(0.001) ③

def shutdown(self):
    self.ok = 0
    self.master.after(100, self.master.quit)

def check_digits(self):
    self.digits_calculated = len(self.digits)
    diff = self.digits_calculated - self.digits_displayed
    ix = self.digits_displayed
    for i in range(diff):
        self.text.insert(END, self.digits[ix+i])
    self.digits_displayed = self.digits_calculated
    self.master.title('%d digits of pi' % self.digits_displayed) ④

    self.master.after(100, self.check_digits) ⑤

root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB')
example = ThreadExample(root)
root.mainloop()

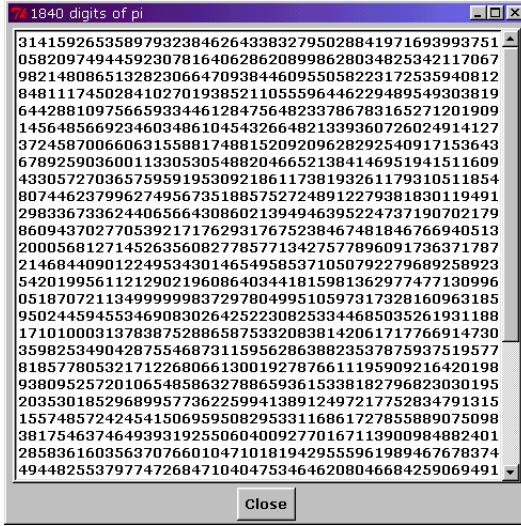
```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ The `worker_thread`, which continuously updates digits of `pi`, is started up as before, with `start_new_thread`.
- ➋ We are using `after` to place a timed event on the event queue. Using this technique allows a delay without blocking the mainloop.
- ➌ Again, a small `sleep` is added at the end of the `worker_thread`'s loop to ensure that the mainloop gets to spin (see below for more detail).
- ➍ To ensure an orderly shutdown of the application, we set the `ok` flag, which will cause the `worker_thread` to exit and wait for 100 ms before killing the GUI. A more realistic application might need additional methods.
- ➎ `after` events are one-shot events; you must put an event back on the queue if the timed event is to be repetitive.

If you run `thread2.py`, you will see a screen similar to figure 18.4. Digits are appended to the text widget at approximately 100ms intervals. You may wish to experiment and comment out the `sleep` in the `worker_thread`. When you run the code, you will see that the application takes much longer to respond to a click on the Close button—the `worker_thread` gets a complete timeslice to run before getting suspended, so the event queue for GUI events gets drained less frequently.



**Figure 18.4 Threaded GUI application**

With one thread going, we can try adding another thread. Since this example is not really very useful directly, we can make it do something pretty useless to illustrate multiple threads. We'll just change the color of the Close button every 100 milliseconds with random colors. Here are the changes that have to be made to the code:

### thread3.py

```

import time, thread, random
from Tkinter import *

class ThreadExample:
    def __init__(self, master=None):
# -----Code Removed-----

        self.btn.pack(side=TOP, pady=5)

    thread.start_new_thread(self.worker_thread2, ())

        self.master.after(100, self.check_digits)

    def worker_thread1(self):
# -----Code Removed-----


    def worker_thread2(self):
        while self.ok:
            self.btn.configure(background=self.color())
            time.sleep(0.1)

    def color(self):
        rc = random.choice
        return '#%02x%02x%02x' % (rc(range(0,255)), rc(range(0,255)),
                                   rc(range(0,255)))

# -----Code Removed-----

```

There are two points to note: The second thread is started *after* the widgets have been created. If the thread had been started at the same time as the first thread, the Close button would not have been created. This would have prevented the second thread from running, but it would not have caused an application failure. This important feature of threading may be used to your advantage in designing applications if it's used reasonably. Also note that the 100 ms sleep in `worker_thread2` is used to time the period of the thread and not just to release the thread.

If you run `thread3.py`, you will see the same basic screen which is displayed by running `thread2.py`, but the Close button will change color rapidly.

```
'995773622599413891249721775  
'415069595082953311686172785  
'393192550604009277016711390  
'707660104710181942955596198  
'472684710404753464620804668
```



Close

**Figure 18.5 Random color changes in a thread**

Python provides a higher-level interface, `threading`, which takes care of many of the details of getting threads to cooperate. It also removes the need to add `sleep` calls to make sure that threads release control to other threads. To illustrate how this may be used, we can convert `thread3.py` to the `threading` module.

### thread4.py

```
from threading import *  
  
class ThreadExample:  
    def __init__(self, master=None):  
        self.ok          = 1  
        # -----Code Removed-----  
        self.master      = master  
  
        self.thread1= Thread(target=self.worker_thread1)  
        self.thread2= Thread(target=self.worker_thread2) ①  
  
    # -----Code Removed-----  
  
        self.master.after(100, self.check_digits)  
        self.thread1.start()  
        self.thread2.start() ②  
  
    def worker_thread1(self):  
        # -----Code Removed-----  
        ###    time.sleep(0.001) ③  
  
    # -----Code Removed-----
```

---

### *Code comments*

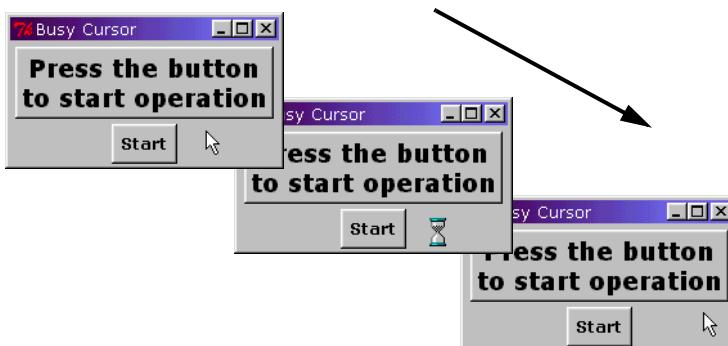
- ❶ We create a thread object for each of the worker threads. Note that this does not *start* the thread; that must be done later.
- ❷ Once the GUI has been created, we start the threads.
- ❸ Note that the short `sleep` in `worker_thread1` has been commented out.

If you run `thread4.py`, you will see output similar to `thread3.py`. Interestingly, the threading implementation runs 30 percent faster than the thread version.

## **18.2 “after” processing**

The `after` method has been used frequently in examples, including the threading examples above, to provide simple alarm callbacks. For X window programmers, `after` is similar to `XtAppAddTimeOut`. `after_idle` is similar to `XtAppAddWorkProc`, which provides a simple mechanism to define a background task which is executed when there are no events in the event queue (with the exception of pending `after` events).

Here is a simple example which illustrates using `after_idle` to implement a busy cursor which is displayed when the system is processing a long operation. Before starting the operation, the application displays a watch cursor\* and registers a work process. When the `after_idle` callback is invoked, the cursor changes back to the normal one.



**Figure 18.6 Using `after_idle` to implement a busy cursor**

### **busy\_cursor.py**

```
import time
from Tkinter import *

class AfterIdleExample:
```

---

\* On Win32, the `watch` cursor will display the current cursor selected for the `watch`.

```

def __init__(self, master=None):
    self.master      = master
    self.frame = Frame(master, relief=RAISED, borderwidth=2)
    Label(self.frame, text='Press the button\ninto start operation').pack()
    self.frame.pack(padx=4, pady=4)
    Button(master, text='Start', command=self.startOP).pack(side=TOP)

def startOP(self):
    self.displayBusyCursor()
    time.sleep(10.0) # simulate a long operation

def displayBusyCursor(self):
    self.master.configure(cursor='watch')
    self.master.update()
    self.master.after_idle(self.removeBusyCursor) ①

def removeBusyCursor(self):
    self.master.configure(cursor='arrow') ② ③

root = Tk()
root.option_readfile('optionDB2')
root.title('Busy Cursor')
AfterIdleExample(root)
root.mainloop()

```

---

### *Code comments*

- ➊ `displayBusyCursor` changes the cursor to an appropriate cursor and then calls `update` to make sure that the cursor is displayed before the long operation starts.
- ➋ The `after_idle` method registers the `removeBusyCursor` which will be called when the event queue is empty. There is no opportunity for the mainloop to spin until after the `sleep` has ended.
- ➌ All that `removeBusyCursor` has to do is restore the cursor.

---

**Note** In a full implementation, the busy cursor implementation would be more general so you should probably get the current cursor and store it so that you can restore the same cursor.

---

Another method can be used to process asynchronous operations. Unfortunately, in the current release of Tcl/Tk, this currently works only for UNIX. In Tk version 8.0, support for Win32 was suddenly withdrawn for `createfilehandler` which is equivalent to `XtAppAddInput` in the X Window world. It allows you to bind a callback which is run when a file-class operation occurs. This currently works for sockets. I would normally exclude a method which is exclusive to a particular operating system, but this one is useful enough to warrant inclusion.

Many applications have requirements to respond to an external event, such as receiving data on a socket. You have several choices in implementing a system, but normally you would choose either to block, waiting for input; or poll, on a periodic basis, until data is received. Now, when a GUI is involved, you clearly cannot block unless that occurs within a thread.

However, you may not be willing or able to use a thread or you may be running on a system which does not support threads. In this case, using `createfilehandler` provides a convenient mechanism.

As an illustration, we're going to look at a simple client/server which implements a time server. This might be used as some kind of monitor to make sure that critical components in an application are operating. Every minute, the server sends a timestamp on a given port. The client just displays this information in the example. To keep the code shorter, I've implemented the client and server in the same file:

### client\_server.py

```
from Tkinter import *
import sys, socket, time

class Server:
    def __init__(self):
        host = socket.gethostname()
        host = socket.gethostbyname(host)
        addr = host, 5000
        s = socket.socket(socket.AF_INET, socket.SOCK_DGRAM)
        s.bind('', 0)
        while 1:
            time.sleep(60.0)
            s.sendto(time.asctime(time.localtime(time.time())), addr)

class GUIClient:
    def __init__(self, master=None):
        self.master = master
        self.master.title('Time Service Client')
        self.frame = Frame(self.master, relief=RAISED, borderwidth=2)
        self.text = Text(self.frame, height=26, width=50)
        self.scroll = Scrollbar(self.frame, command=self.text.yview)
        self.text.configure(yscrollcommand=self.scroll.set)
        self.text.pack(side=LEFT)
        self.scroll.pack(side=RIGHT, fill=Y)
        self.frame.pack(padx=4, pady=4)
        Button(self.master, text='Close', command=self.master.quit).pack(side=TOP)

        self.socket = socket.socket(socket.AF_INET, socket.SOCK_DGRAM)
        self.socket.bind('', 5000)

        tkinter.createfilehandler(self.socket, READABLE, self.ihandler)

        self.master.after(5000, self.doMark)

    def ihandler(self, sock, mask):
        data, addr = sock.recvfrom(256)
        self.text.insert(END, '%s\n' % data)

    def doMark(self):
        self.text.insert(END, 'waiting...\n')
        self.master.after(5000, self.doMark)

if len(sys.argv) < 2:
    print 'select -s (server) or -c (client)'
```

The code is annotated with three numbered callouts:

- 1**: Points to the `Server` class definition.
- 2**: Points to the `tkinter.createfilehandler` call.
- 3**: Points to the `ihandler` function definition.

```
    sys.exit(2)
if sys.argv[1] == '-s':
    server=Server()
elif sys.argv[1] == '-c':
    root = Tk()
    example = GUIClient(root)
    root.mainloop()
```

---

### Code comments

- ❶ I've made very little mention of sockets in this book, and some readers may not be familiar with this facility. A brief mention here is warranted. Here we are setting up to send a message over a socket, which is a basic network facility available on most operating systems. Essentially, we connect to a numbered port on a particular host system, and then we send and receive messages using either the UDP (datagram) or TCP (stream) protocols. In this example we are using datagrams\*.
- ❷ The client side of the example sets up a socket using the same port as the server, and then it registers the filehandler which will be called when one of three events occur on the socket. The possible values for the event mask are READABLE, which occurs when a socket receives data; WRITABLE, which occurs when a socket is written to and EXCEPTION, which occurs when any error occurs. We set up an after callback to write text to the window every five seconds.
- ❸ The handler for the file event is very simple. The mask argument specifies the type of file operation that resulted in the call, so a single handler could act for all types of file operations.

To run the example, first start the server as a separate process:

```
% python client_server.py -s &
```

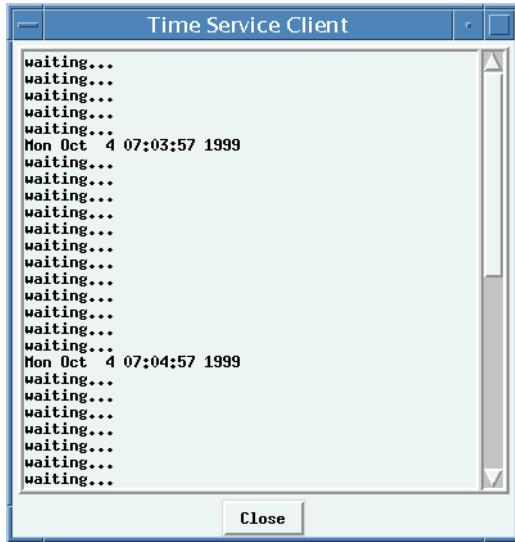
Then start the client process:

```
% python client_server.py -c
```

Figure 18.7 shows the screen you can see when the example is run.

---

\* The UDP protocol is a *connectionless* protocol in which packets are sent into the network for delivery to a particular host with a specified port. No confirmation is sent to the sender that the packet has been received and no mechanism for automatic retransmission of messages exists if there are problems. Thus, there is no guarantee that a datagram will be delivered to its destination. Datagrams are normally used for noncritical messages, typically within a LAN to avoid costly connection overhead.



**Figure 18.7 Time-server client**

### 18.3 **Summary**

This chapter has been a minor introduction into the topic of threads and asynchronous techniques. In particular, the reader is directed to the Python documentation information on the `threading` module which provides a higher-level threading interface to the `thread` module shown here. There are many alternatives in this area and it really depends on the exact nature of your application to determine the best solution. The material here should serve as a simple introduction.



# *Distributing Tkinter applications*

|                                                  |     |                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 19.1 General issues in distributing applications | 374 | 19.3 Distributing Win32 applications | 376 |
| 19.2 Distributing Unix applications              | 375 | 19.4 Python distribution tools       | 379 |

If you follow the Python news group for a few weeks, you will see at least one question being raised repeatedly: “How do I distribute Python applications?”. In this chapter we will look at some options for UNIX and Win32. UNIX is relatively easy to handle, but Win32 has several possible solutions.

## **19.1 *General issues in distributing applications***

The main issue in distributing and installing a Python application is making sure that the end user has all of the components that are required for the application to run. You have several alternatives in deciding how to achieve this, but you first have to make sure that most of these components are present on the end user’s system:

- 1 Python executable (*python*, *python.exe*).
- 2 Launcher for your application (*xxx* script for UNIX, *xxx.bat* for Win32).
- 3 Python shared-object files (*xxx.so*) for UNIX, dynamic load libraries (*xxx.dll*) for Win32.

- 4** Extension libraries (*Python/Lib/lib-dynload/xxx.[so|dll]*).
- 5** Python library files (*Python/Lib/xxx.py*).
- 6** Application-specific Python library files (*appropriate location*).
- 7** Tcl/Tk runtime (*Tcl/bin*, *Tcl/lib*, *Tk/bin*, */Tk/lib* etc.).
- 8** Pmw (*Python/Lib/Pmw*).
- 9** Any other extensions, data files, or databases that your application requires.

One decision you will have to make is whether you will handle the distribution of Python and/or Tcl/Tk separately, either leaving it to the end user to install these items independently, or distributing them with your application. In general, the latter method is preferable, since Python is still expanding in popularity and currently will not be installed on many of the end users' systems. Of course, we fully expect this to change in the future!

If you do decide to distribute Python and Tcl/Tk with your application, you have another decision to make—whether to install them *publicly* so that the end user has easy access to Python and/or Tcl/Tk, or *locally* so that they are accessed through your application. It is usually possible to install them publicly, although for Win32 it is often easier to use a local installation.

Finally, you must consider the architectures that your application is going to support. If you are targeting Win32 exclusively, then your task is quite simple. However, there are multiple UNIX architectures, which are normally supported by building from source. You probably do not want to be responsible for these builds, so you will have to consider supplying binaries for specific platforms. This is a totally different problem which requires careful consideration of both business and technical issues. It is beyond the scope of a short section such as this one..

## 19.2 **Distributing UNIX applications**

Supporting your application is usually a simple task once you have access to a built Python and Tcl/Tk. In general, UNIX end users are capable of building and installing both of these so you may be able to simply require your end users to take care of them. Then your application installation may be as simple as extracting files from a tar file and editing the users' environments appropriately. For the moment, let's assume that this is the case, so we will concentrate on getting your application up and running.

First, we need an executable to start your application. Our aim here is to use a minimal Python script to get into your application's main module (remember that a Python script will be interpreted every time you invoke it, so you want to keep the script simple; see “Everyday speedups” on page 348).

Here is an example of a minimal script:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import myapplication
myapplication.main()
```

There are some cases where you cannot use `#!/usr/bin/env python`, so you might have to give an explicit path such as `/usr/local/bin/python`. One small reminder: the space in the first form is meant to be there; it is not uncommon for UNIX folks to unconsciously translate the space into a slash. Next, you might need to add a little bit more to make this work. The script assumes that the environment variable `PYTHONPATH` has been set and it includes

paths to .../Python/Lib and wherever MyApplication.py is installed. You may not want to modify the user's environment, but you can do that within your script:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

import sys
sys.path.insert(0, '/opt/yourapp/lib')

import myapplication
myapplication.main()
```

Clearly some refinements can be made, but this scheme works well in practice.

### 19.3 **Distributing Win32 applications**

I think that this is much more problematic when compared to the UNIX case. You have several alternatives. I will advocate the simplest case, since the others do require interaction with the registry, which really implies that you will use an installation tool such as InstallShield, which automates the process of installing and registering the application components. More important, it perhaps makes provisions to install an *uninstaller* which removes the registry information and the installed files, usually without user intervention.

The decisions that have to be made for Win32 are similar to those for UNIX. The need to use a minimal script to get the application running is still present. The real problem is that Win32 will open an MS-DOS window when launching a Python script from a clickable file. With a little bit of encouragement, this can be avoided.

First, let's decide how we are going to package the application. For this example we will make a freestanding Win32 application, with everything that we need to support our application installed in a single directory (which can be called anything we wish). We are *not* going to make modifications to the registry and we want a single icon on the desktop which the user double-clicks to start the application.

Let's first take a look at the contents of the top-level directory, which is shown in figure 19.1. In this directory we have installed the Python executables (python.exe and pythonw.exe), the system dll files (\_tkinter.pyd, python15.dll, tcl80.dll and tk80.dll) and the application-specific dll files (such as btrieve.dll and sio.pyd). We also have the standard Python's Lib directory, which contains Pmw\* (and might contain application-specific files).

---

\* Pmw is not part of the standard Python distribution. You must download Pmw from <http://www.dscpl.com.au/pmw/>.

| Name             | Size  | Type            | Modified         |
|------------------|-------|-----------------|------------------|
| doc              |       | File Folder     | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| Lib              |       | File Folder     | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| libs             |       | File Folder     | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| tcl8.0           |       | File Folder     | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| tk8.0            |       | File Folder     | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| _tkinter.pyd     | 20KB  | PYD File        | 4/13/99 10:55 AM |
| bsddb.pyd        | 69KB  | PYD File        | 4/13/99 10:55 AM |
| btrieve.dll      | 59KB  | Application ... | 5/6/99 8:39 AM   |
| elapsedTimer.pyd | 6KB   | PYD File        | 4/28/98 6:07 PM  |
| parser.pyd       | 29KB  | PYD File        | 4/13/99 10:56 AM |
| python.exe       | 5KB   | Application     | 4/13/99 11:31 AM |
| python15.dll     | 545KB | Application ... | 4/13/99 11:29 AM |
| pythonw.exe      | 6KB   | Application     | 4/13/99 10:56 AM |
| sio.pyd          | 14KB  | PYD File        | 4/28/98 7:11 PM  |
| tcl80.dll        | 362KB | Application ... | 3/8/99 6:17 PM   |
| tclpip80.dll     | 24KB  | Application ... | 3/8/99 6:17 PM   |
| tk80.dll         | 744KB | Application ... | 3/8/99 9:31 PM   |
| zlib.pyd         | 52KB  | PYD File        | 4/13/99 10:56 AM |

**Figure 19.1 Contents of C:\python**

Tcl is also installed in the toplevel directory containing the directory structure shown in figure 19.2:

| Name        | Size | Type        | Modified         |
|-------------|------|-------------|------------------|
| http1.0     |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| http2.0     |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| opt0.1      |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| reg1.0      |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| history.tcl | 9KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:40 AM |
| init.tcl    | 47KB | TclScript   | 2/10/99 7:06 PM  |
| paray.tcl   | 1KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:40 AM |
| safe.tcl    | 27KB | TclScript   | 11/10/98 6:39 PM |
| tclIndex    | 2KB  | File        | 7/24/98 8:06 AM  |
| word.tcl    | 5KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:40 AM |

**Figure 19.2 Contents of the Tcl directory**

Similarly the Tk directory is installed in the python directory as shown in figure 19.3:

| Name        | Size | Type        | Modified         |
|-------------|------|-------------|------------------|
| demos       |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| images      |      | File Folder | 9/14/99 7:07 PM  |
| berror.tcl  | 4KB  | TclScript   | 1/4/99 11:25 AM  |
| button.tcl  | 11KB | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| clipick.tcl | 20KB | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| comdlg.tcl  | 8KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| console.tcl | 12KB | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| dialog.tcl  | 6KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| entry.tcl   | 16KB | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| focus.tcl   | 5KB  | TclScript   | 9/14/98 11:23 AM |
| listbox.tcl | 12KB | TclScript   | 10/9/98 5:30 PM  |

**Figure 19.3 Contents of Tk directory**

\*\*Remainder of directory not shown

Now, we need to create a batch file which sets environment variables and invokes our application's short Python script:

### start.bat

```
set PYTHONPATH=C:\PYTHON\LIB;C:\PYTHON;c:\MyApplication\Common  
set TCL_LIBRARY=C:\PYTHON\TCL8.0  
set TK_LIBRARY=C:\PYTHON\TK8.0  
c:\Python\pythonw startApp.py
```

The Python script can't get much simpler:

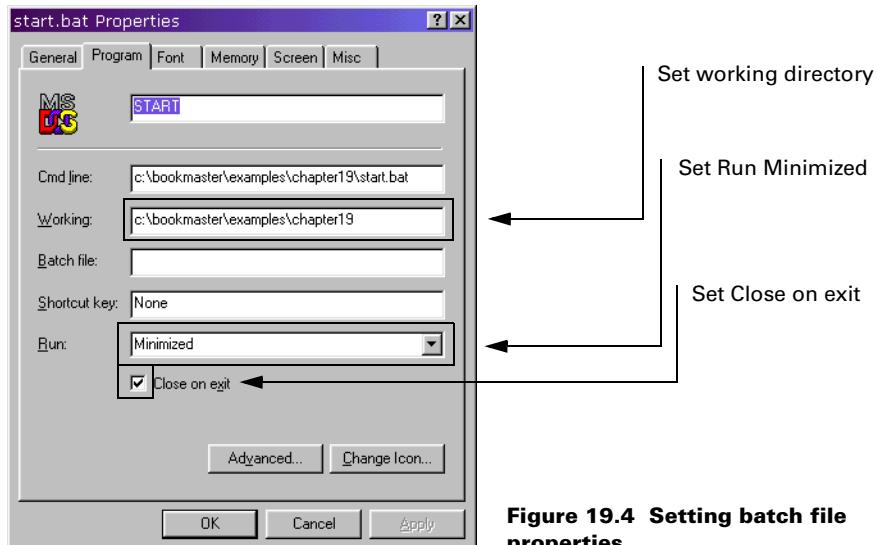
### startApp.py

```
import myApplication  
myApplication.main()
```

Now, we need to change the properties of the batch program, start.bat. We right mouse-button click on start.bat and select Properties:

Then we set the working directory to the directory containing MyApplication.py, choose Minimized from the Run combobox and check Close on exit. These options are shown in figure 19.4. If you want to change the icon to something specific for your application, click the Change Icon... button and select an icon. Be careful to choose an icon that you ship with your application, and make sure that it is installed in the right place.

Now, when you double-click on the Start.bat file you'll get just your application with no MS-DOS window. You will get an icon in the Start bar at the bottom of the screen for your open window.



**Figure 19.4 Setting batch file properties**

Clearly, there are other ways to achieve this effect, and if you scan the Python news group (see “Python News Group” on page 626) you will find other suggestions on how to do this quite frequently.

## **19.4 *Python distribution tools***

A number of tools are available to an application developer and more are being developed. I am not going to cover these tools here, since there are such wide application targets to be covered.

One of the tools worth looking at is freeze, which wraps your Python application and all of the necessary support modules in an embedded C-program. To date, I have not found a need to use it, but I am certain that it may be a solution for some of you.

Another tool is SqueezeTool, which squeezes a Python application and all of its support modules into a single, compressed package. You can find more details in the “References” section (see “PythonWorks” on page 626).

There is also a Distutils special interest group (SIG) for people who are working to develop tools to distribute Python applications, both with and without C extensions, to all platforms. By the time this book is available, the early versions of these tools will have undergone considerable testing. Take a look at <http://www.python.org/sigs/distutils-sig/> for the latest information on this interesting development.



P A R T

4

*Appendices*



## A P P E N D I X A

---

# *Mapping Tk to Tkinter*

This appendix details the mapping of Tk commands and arguments into Tkinter methods and options. The order of the mappings somewhat follows the sequence presented in a reference guide published by Paul Raines and Jeff Trainer for Tcl/Tk (*Tcl/Tk is a Nutshell: A Desktop Quick Reference* is published by O'Reilly and Associates, Inc.). The mappings do not contain any Tcl information, however. I assume that you want to directly translate Tk directives into Tkinter. In many cases, there may be better means of implementing a Tcl/Tk code sequence in Tkinter. Tkinter implements many of the Tk commands as inherited widget methods, which may cause some initial confusion for Tcl/Tk programmers.

## **General Tk widget information**

All widgets are created with:

```
widget = Widget(master [, option=value [, option=value]])
```

where *Widget* is the Tkinter class of widget desired (such as `Button`) and *widget* is the instance. Widget configuration options may be passed as arguments to the creation call. Options begin with a keyword and are always followed by a value or a string. After creation, options may be changed using the `configure` method and accessed using the `cget` method. Optionally, access may be references to the dictionary keys in the widget (`value = widget['option']` or `widget['option'] = value`).

Some of the common widget options supported by multiple widgets are described here and to keep this appendix brief, they are not repeated with the individual widget options.. For options that take screen units, values are in pixels unless an optional one-letter suffix modifier is present. `c` (cm), `i` (inch), `m` (mm), or `p` (points).

**Table A.1 Standard widget options**

| Tk                                                   | Tkinter                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-activebackground</code> color                 | <code>activebackground=color</code>                        |
| <code>-activeborderwidth</code> width                | <code>activeborderwidth=width</code>                       |
| <code>-activeforeground</code> color                 | <code>activeforeground=color</code>                        |
| <code>-anchor</code> anchorPos                       | <code>anchor=anchorPos</code>                              |
| <code>-background</code> color                       | <code>background=color</code>                              |
| <code>-bitmap</code> bitmap                          | <code>bitmap=bitmap</code>                                 |
| <code>-borderwidth</code> width                      | <code>borderwidth=width</code>                             |
| <code>-command</code> tclCommand                     | <code>command=pythonCommand</code>                         |
| <code>-cursor</code> cursor                          | <code>cursor(cursor)</code>                                |
| <code>-disabledforeground</code> color               | <code>disabledforeground=color</code>                      |
| <code>-exportselection</code> boolean                | <code>exportselection=boolean</code>                       |
| <code>-font</code> font                              | <code>font=font</code>                                     |
| <code>-foreground</code> color                       | <code>foreground=color</code>                              |
| <code>-height</code> height{textChars}               | <code>height=height{textChars}</code>                      |
| <code>-highlightbackground</code> color              | <code>highlightbackground=color</code>                     |
| <code>-highlightcolor</code> color                   | <code>highlightcolor=color</code>                          |
| <code>-highlightthickness</code> width               | <code>highlightthickness=width</code>                      |
| <code>-image</code> image                            | <code>image=image</code>                                   |
| <code>-insertbackground</code> color                 | <code>insertbackground=color</code>                        |
| <code>-insertborderwidth</code> width                | <code>insertborderwidth=width</code>                       |
| <code>-insertofftime</code> milliseconds             | <code>insertofftime=milliseconds</code>                    |
| <code>-insertontime</code> milliseconds              | <code>insertontime=milliseconds</code>                     |
| <code>-insertwidth</code> width                      | <code>insertwidth=width</code>                             |
| <code>-jump</code> boolean                           | <code>jump=boolean</code>                                  |
| <code>-justify</code> left center right              | <code>justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT</code>                     |
| <code>-orient</code> horizontal vertical             | <code>orient=HORIZONTAL VERTICAL</code>                    |
| <code>-padx</code> width                             | <code>padx=width</code>                                    |
| <code>-pady</code> height                            | <code>pady=height</code>                                   |
| <code>-relief</code> flat groove raised ridge sunken | <code>relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED  RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID</code> |
| <code>-repeatdelay</code> milliseconds               | <code>repeatdelay=milliseconds</code>                      |
| <code>-repeatinterval</code> milliseconds            | <code>repeatinterval=milliseconds</code>                   |

**Table A.1 Standard widget options (continued)**

| Tk                            | Tkinter                      |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| -selectbackground color       | selectbackground=color       |
| -selectborderwidth width      | selectborderwidth=width      |
| -selectforeground color       | selectforeground=color       |
| -setgrid boolean              | setgrid=boolean              |
| -state normal disabled active | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE |
| -takefocus focusType          | takefocus=focusType          |
| -text string                  | text=string                  |
| -textvariable variable        | textvariable=variable        |
| -troughcolor color            | troughcolor=color            |
| -underline index              | underline=index              |
| -width width textChars        | width=width textChars        |
| -wraplength length            | wraplength=length            |
| -xscrollcommand cmdPrefix     | xscrollcommand=command       |
| -yscrollcommand cmdPrefix     | yscrollcommand=command       |

**Table A.2 Tk special variables**

| Tk             | Tkinter                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| tk_library     | Not available                  |
| tk_patchLevel  | Not available                  |
| tkPriv         | Not available                  |
| tk_strictMotif | window.tk_strictMotif(boolean) |
| tk_version     | TkVersion                      |

## The Canvas widget

**Table A.3 Canvas widget standard options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| -background color          | background=color          |
| -borderwidth width         | borderwidth=width         |
| -cursor cursor             | cursor=cursor             |
| -height height             | height=height             |
| -highlightbackground color | highlightbackground=color |

**Table A.3 Canvas widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness number              | highlightthickness=number                    |
| -insertbackground color                 | insertbackground=color                       |
| -insertborderwidth width                | insertborderwidth=width                      |
| -insertofftime milliseconds             | insertofftime(milliseconds)                  |
| -insertontime milliseconds              | insertontime(milliseconds)                   |
| -insertwidth width                      | insertwidth=width                            |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -selectbackground color                 | selectbackground=color                       |
| -selectborderwidth width                | selectborderwidth=width                      |
| -selectforeground color                 | selectforeground=color                       |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -width width                            | width=width                                  |
| -xscrollcommand tclCommand              | xscrollcommand=pythonCommand                 |
| -yscrollcommand tclCommand              | yscrollcommand=pythonCommand                 |

**Table A.4 Canvas widget-specific options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                    |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| -closeenough float         | closeenough=float          |
| -confine boolean           | confine=bool               |
| -scrollregion corners      | scrollregion=(x1,y1,x2,y2) |
| -xscrollincrement distance | xscrollincrement=distance  |
| -yscrollincrement distance | yscrollincrement=distance  |

**Table A.5 Canvas methods**

| Tk                          | Tkinter                              |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| canvas addtag above tagOrId | canvas.addtag_above(newtag, tagOrId) |
| canvas addtag all           | canvas.addtag_all(newtag)            |
| canvas addtag below tagOrId | canvas.addtag_below(newtag, tagOrId) |

**Table A.5 Canvas methods (continued)**

| Tk                                                            | Tkinter                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas addtag closest x y [halo] [start]                      | canvas.addtag_closest(newtag, x, y, [, halo] [, start])                 |
| canvas addtag enclosed x1 y1 x2 y2                            | canvas.addtag_enclosed(newtag, x1, y1, x2, y2)                          |
| canvas addtag overlapping x1 y1 x2 y2                         | canvas.addtag_overlapping(newtag, x1, y1, x2, y2)                       |
| canvas addtag withtag tagOrId                                 | canvas.addtag_withtag(newtag, tagOrId)                                  |
| canvas bbox tagOrId [tagOrId ...]                             | canvas.bbox(tagOrId [, tagOrId ...])                                    |
| canvas bind tagOrId [sequence [command]]                      | canvas.tag_bind(tagOrId [, sequence [, command]])                       |
| canvas canvasx screenx [gridspacing]                          | canvas.canvasx(screenx [, gridspacing])                                 |
| canvas canvasy screeny [gridspacing]                          | canvas.canvasy(screeny [, gridspacing])                                 |
| canvas coords tagOrId [x0 y0 ...]                             | canvas.coords(tagOrId [, x0, y0 ...])                                   |
| canvas create <b>TYPE</b> x y [x y ...]<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_ <b>TYPE</b> (x, y, [, x, y ...]<br>[, option=value ...]) |
| canvas dchars tagOrId first [last]                            | canvas.dchars(tagOrId, first [, last])                                  |
| canvas delete [tagOrId ...]                                   | canvas.delete([tagOrId ...])                                            |
| canvas dtag tagOrId [tagToDelete]                             | canvas.dtag(tagOrId [, tagToDelete])                                    |
| canvas find above tagOrId                                     | canvas.find_above(tagOrId)                                              |
| canvas find all                                               | canvas.find_all()                                                       |
| canvas find below tagOrId                                     | canvas.find_below(tagOrId)                                              |
| canvas find closest x y [halo] [start]                        | canvas.find_closest(x, y, [, halo] [, start])                           |
| canvas find enclosed x1 y1 x2 y2                              | canvas.find_enclosed(x1, y1, x2, y2)                                    |
| canvas find overlapping x1 y1 x2 y2                           | canvas.find_overlapping(x1, y1, x2, y2)                                 |
| canvas find withtag tagOrId                                   | canvas.find_withtag(tagOrId)                                            |
| canvas focus tagOrId                                          | canvas.focus(tagOrId)                                                   |
| canvas gettags tagOrId                                        | canvas.gettags(tagOrId)                                                 |
| canvas icursor tagOrId index                                  | canvas.icursor(tagOrId, index)                                          |
| canvas index tagOrId index                                    | canvas.index(tagOrId, index)                                            |
| canvas insert tagOrId beforeThis string                       | canvas.insert(tagOrId, string)                                          |
| canvas itemcget tagOrId option                                | canvas.itemcget(tagOrId, option)                                        |
| canvas itemconfigure tagOrId<br>[option value ...]            | canvas.itemconfigure(tagOrId<br>[, option=value ...])                   |
| canvas lower(tagOrId [belowThis])                             | canvas.lower(tagOrId [, belowThis])                                     |
| canvas move tagOrId xAmount yAmount                           | canvas.move(tagOrId, xAmount,<br>yAmount)                               |
| canvas postscript [option value ...]                          | canvas.postscript([option=value ...])                                   |

**Table A.5 Canvas methods (continued)**

| Tk                                                    | Tkinter                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas raise tagOrId [aboveThis]                      | canvas.tkraise(tagOrId, [, aboveThis])                     |
| canvas scale tagOrId xOrigin yOrigin<br>xScale yScale | canvas.scale(tagOrId, xOrigin, yOrigin,<br>xScale, yScale) |
| canvas scan mark x y                                  | canvas.scan_mark(x, y)                                     |
| canvas scan dragto x y                                | canvas.scan_dragto(x, y)                                   |
| canvas select adjust tagOrId index                    | canvas.select_adjust(tagOrId, index)                       |
| canvas select clear                                   | canvas.select_clear()                                      |
| canvas select from tagOrId index                      | canvas.select_from(tagOrId, index)                         |
| canvas select item                                    | canvas.select_item()                                       |
| canvas select to tagOrId index                        | canvas.select_to(tagOrId, index)                           |
| canvas type tagOrId                                   | canvas.type(tagOrId)                                       |
| canvas xview args                                     | canvas.xview(args)                                         |
| canvas xview moveto fraction                          | canvas.xview_moveto(fraction)                              |
| canvas xview scroll number units pages                | canvas.xview_scroll(number,<br>UNITS PAGES)                |
| canvas yview args                                     | canvas.yview(args)                                         |
| canvas yview moveto fraction                          | canvas.yview_moveto(fraction)                              |
| canvas yview scroll number units pages                | canvas.yview_scroll(number,<br>UNITS PAGES)                |

## Canvas item types

**Table A.6 Create arc**

| Tk                                                  | Tkinter                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create arc x1 y1 x2 y2<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_arc(x1, y1, x2, y2,<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.7 Arc options**

| Tk                     | Tkinter               |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| -extent degrees        | extent=degrees        |
| -fill color            | fill=color            |
| -outline color         | outline=color         |
| -outlinestipple bitmap | outlinestipple=bitmap |
| -start degrees         | start=degrees         |

**Table A.7 Arc options (continued)**

| Tk                        | Tkinter                  |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| -stipple bitmap           | stipple=bitmap           |
| -style pieslice chord arc | style=PIESLICE CHORD ARC |
| -tags tagList             | tags=tagList             |
| -width outlineWidth       | width=outlineWidth       |

**Table A.8 Create bitmap**

| Tk                                          | Tkinter                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create bitmap x y [option value ...] | canvas.create_bitmap(x, y,<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.9 Bitmap options**

| Tk                | Tkinter          |
|-------------------|------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos | anchor=anchorPos |
| -background color | background=color |
| -bitmap bitmap    | bitmap=bitmap    |
| -foreground color | foreground=color |
| -tags tagList     | tags=tagList     |

**Table A.10 Create image**

| Tk                                         | Tkinter                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create image x y [option value ...] | canvas.create_image(x, y,<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.11 Image options**

| Tk                | Tkinter          |
|-------------------|------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos | anchor=anchorPos |
| -image image      | image=image      |
| -tags tagList     | tags=tagList     |

**Table A.12 Create line**

| Tk                                                       | Tkinter                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create line x1 y1 ... xN yN<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_line(x1, y1, ... xN, yN,<br>[option=value ...]) |

**Table A.13 Line options**

| Tk                              | Tkinter                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| -arrow none first last both     | arrow=NONE FIRST LAST BOTH     |
| -arrowshape shape               | arrowshape=shape               |
| -capstyle butt projecting round | capstyle=BUTT PROJECTING ROUND |
| -fill color                     | fill=color                     |
| -joinstyle bevel miter round    | joinstyle=BEVEL MITER ROUND    |
| -smooth boolean                 | smooth=boolean                 |
| -splinesteps number             | splinesteps=number             |
| -stipple bitmap                 | stipple=bitmap                 |
| -tags tagList                   | tags=tagList                   |
| -width outlineWidth             | width=outlineWidth             |

**Table A.14 Create oval**

| Tk                                                   | Tkinter                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create oval x1 y1 x2 y2<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_oval(x1, y1, x2, y2<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.15 Oval options**

| Tk                  | Tkinter            |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| -fill color         | fill=color         |
| -outline color      | outline=color      |
| -stipple bitmap     | stipple=bitmap     |
| -tags tagList       | tags=tagList       |
| -width outlineWidth | width=outlineWidth |

**Table A.16 Create polygon**

| Tk                                                          | Tkinter                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create polygon x1 y1 ... xN yN<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_polygon(x1, y1, ... xN,<br>yN, [option=value ...]) |

**Table A.17 Polygon options**

| Tk                  | Tkinter            |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| -fill color         | fill=color         |
| -outline color      | outline=color      |
| -smooth boolean     | smooth=boolean     |
| -splinesteps number | splinesteps=number |
| -stipple bitmap     | stipple=bitmap     |
| -tags tagList       | tags=tagList       |
| -width outlineWidth | width=outlineWidth |

**Table A.18 Create rectangle**

| Tk                                                        | Tkinter                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create rectangle x1 y1 x2 y2<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_rectangle(x1, y1, x2, y2<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.19 Rectangle options**

| Tk                  | Tkinter            |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| -fill color         | fill=color         |
| -outline color      | outline=color      |
| -stipple bitmap     | stipple=bitmap     |
| -tags tagList       | tags=tagList       |
| -width outlineWidth | width=outlineWidth |

**Table A.20 Create text**

| Tk                                           | Tkinter                                           |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create text x y<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_text(x, y,<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.21 Text options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos          | anchor=anchorPos          |
| -fill color                | fill=color                |
| -font font                 | font=font                 |
| -justify left right center | justify=LEFT RIGHT CENTER |
| -stipple bitmap            | stipple=bitmap            |
| -tags tagList              | tags=tagList              |
| -text string               | text=string               |
| -width lineLength          | width=lineLength          |

**Table A.22 Create window**

| Tk                                             | Tkinter                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| canvas create window x y<br>[option value ...] | canvas.create_window(x, y,<br>[, option=value ...]) |

**Table A.23 Window options**

| Tk                | Tkinter          |
|-------------------|------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos | anchor=anchorPos |
| -height height    | height=height    |
| -tags tagList     | tags=tagList     |
| -width width      | width=width      |

**Table A.24 Canvas Postscript options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                         |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| -height height             | height=height                   |
| -width width               | width=width                     |
| -window pathName           | window=pathName                 |
| -colormap varName          | colormap=varName                |
| -colormode color grey mono | colormode='color' 'grey' 'mono' |
| -file fileName             | file=fileName                   |
| -fontmap varName           | fontmap=varName                 |
| -height size               | height=size                     |
| -pageanchor anchor         | pageanchor=anchor               |
| -pageheight size           | pageheight=size                 |
| -pagewidth size            | pagewidth=size                  |
| -pagex position            | pagex=position                  |
| -pagey position            | pagey=position                  |
| -rotate boolean            | rotate=boolean                  |
| -width size                | width=size                      |
| -x position                | x=position                      |
| -y position                | y=position                      |

## The Entry widget

**Table A.25 Entry widget standard options**

| Tk                          | Tkinter                    |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| -background color           | background=color           |
| -borderwidth width          | borderwidth=width          |
| -cursor cursor              | cursor=cursor              |
| -exportselection boolean    | exportselection=boolean    |
| -font font                  | font=font                  |
| -foreground color           | foreground=color           |
| -highlightbackground color  | highlightbackground=color  |
| -highlightcolor color       | highlightcolor=color       |
| -highlightthickness width   | highlightthickness=width   |
| -insertbackground color     | insertbackground=color     |
| -insertborderwidth width    | insertborderwidth=width    |
| -insertofftime milliseconds | insertofftime=milliseconds |

**Table A.25 Entry widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -insertontime milliseconds              | insertontime=milliseconds                    |
| -insertwidth width                      | insertwidth=width                            |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -selectbackground color                 | selectbackground=color                       |
| -selectborderwidth width                | selectborderwidth=width                      |
| -selectforeground color                 | selectforeground=color                       |
| -state NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE           | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE                 |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -textvariable variable                  | textvariable=variable                        |
| -width width                            | width=width                                  |
| -xscrollcommand tclCommand              | xscrollcommand=pythonCommand                 |

**Table A.26 Entry widget-specific options**

| Tk         | Tkinter   |
|------------|-----------|
| -show char | show=char |

**Table A.27 Entry indices**

| Tk        | Tkinter               |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| number    | number   (start, end) |
| anchor    | ANCHOR                |
| end       | END                   |
| insert    | INSERT                |
| sel.first | SEL_FIRST             |
| sel.last  | SEL_LAST              |
| @x-coord  | "@x"                  |

**Table A.28 Entry widget methods**

| Tk                                     | Tkinter                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| entry bbox index                       | entry.bbox(index)                      |
| entry delete first [,last]             | entry.delete(first [, last])           |
| entry get                              | entry.get()                            |
| entry icursor index                    | entry.icursor(index)                   |
| entry index index                      | entry.index(index)                     |
| entry insert index string              | entry.insert(index, string)            |
| entry scan mark args                   | entry.scan_mark(args)                  |
| entry scan dragto args                 | entry.scan_dragto(args)                |
| entry selection adjust index           | entry.selection_adjust(index)          |
| entry selection clear                  | entry.selection_clear()                |
| entry selection from index             | entry.selection_from(index)            |
| entry selection present                | entry.selection_present()              |
| entry selection range start end        | entry.selection_range(start, end)      |
| entry selection to index               | entry.selection_to(index)              |
| entry xview moveto fraction            | entry.xview_moveto(fraction)           |
| entry xvview scroll number units pages | entry.xviewscroll(number, units pages) |

## The Listbox widget

**Table A.29 Listbox widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor(cursor)                               |
| -exportselection boolean                | exportselection=boolean                      |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -height height                          | height=height                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -selectbackground color                 | selectbackground=color                       |

**Table A.29 Listbox widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| -selectborderwidth width   | selectborderwidth=width      |
| -selectforeground color    | selectforeground=color       |
| -setgrid boolean           | setgrid=boolean              |
| -takefocus focusType       | takefocus=focusType          |
| -width width               | width=width                  |
| -xscrollcommand tclCommand | xscrollcommand=pythonCommand |
| -yscrollcommand tclCommand | yscrollcommand=pythonCommand |

**Table A.30 Listbox widget-specific options**

| Tk                                              | Tkinter                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| -selectmode single browse<br> multiple extended | selectmode=SINGLE BROWSE<br> MULTIPLE EXTENDED |

**Table A.31 Listbox indices**

| Tk     | Tkinter                |
|--------|------------------------|
| number | number or (start, end) |
| active | ACTIVE                 |
| anchor | ANCHOR                 |
| end    | END                    |
| @x,y   | "@x,y"                 |

**Table A.32 Listbox widget methods**

| Tk                                 | Tkinter                               |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| listbox activate index             | listbox.activate(index)               |
| listbox bbox index                 | listbox.bbox(index)                   |
| listbox curselection               | listbox.curselection()                |
| listbox delete index1 [index2]     | listbox.delete(index1 [, index2])     |
| listbox get index1 [index2]        | listbox.get(index1 [, index2])        |
| listbox index index                | listbox.index(index)                  |
| listbox insert index [element ...] | listbox.insert(index [, element ...]) |
| listbox nearest y                  | listbox.nearest(y)                    |

**Table A.32 Listbox widget methods (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| listbox scan mark args                  | listbox.scan_mark(args)                      |
| listbox scan dragto args                | listbox.scan_dragto(args)                    |
| listbox see index                       | listbox.see(index)                           |
| listbox selection anchor index          | listbox.selection_anchor(index)              |
| listbox selection clear first [last]    | listbox.selection_clear(first [, last])      |
| listbox selection includes index        | listbox.selection_includes(index)            |
| listbox selection set first [last]      | listbox.selection_set(first [, last])        |
| listbox size                            | listbox.size()                               |
| listbox xview index                     | listbox.xview(index)                         |
| listbox xview moveto fraction           | listbox.xview_moveto(fraction)               |
| listbox xview scroll number units pages | listbox.xview_scroll(number,<br>units pages) |
| listbox yview index                     | listbox.yview(index)                         |
| listbox yview moveto fraction           | listbox.yview_moveto(fraction)               |
| listbox yview scroll number units pages | listbox.yview_scroll(number,<br>units pages) |

## The Menu widget

**Table A.33 Menu widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                           |
| -activeborderwidth width                | activeborderwidth=width                          |
| -activeforeground color                 | activeforeground=color                           |
| -background color                       | background=color                                 |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                                |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor(cursor)                                   |
| -disabledforeground color               | disabledforeground=color                         |
| -font font                              | font=font                                        |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                                 |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED <br>RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |

**Table A.34** Menu widget-specific options

| Tk                         | Tkinter                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| -postcommand tclCommand    | postcommand=pythonCommand    |
| -selectcolor color         | selectcolor=color            |
| -tearoff boolean           | tearoff=boolean              |
| -tearoffcommand tclCommand | tearoffcommand=pythonCommand |
| -title string              | title=string                 |
| -type type                 | type=type                    |

**Table A.35** Entry types

| Tk          | Tkinter     |
|-------------|-------------|
| cascade     | cascade     |
| checkbutton | checkbutton |
| command     | command     |
| radiobutton | radiobutton |
| separator   | separator   |

**Table A.36** Menu indices

| Tk           | Tkinter                |
|--------------|------------------------|
| number       | number or (start, end) |
| active       | ACTIVE                 |
| last         | LAST                   |
| none         | NONE                   |
| @y-coord     | "@y"                   |
| matchPattern | matchPattern           |

**Table A.37** Menu widget methods

| Tk                   | Tkinter                               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| menu activate index  | menu.activate(index)                  |
| menu add cascade     | menu.add_cascade(option=value...)     |
| menu add checkbutton | menu.add_checkbutton(option=value...) |

**Table A.37** Menu widget methods (continued)

| Tk                                                  | Tkinter                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| menu add command                                    | menu.add_command(option=value...)                      |
| menu add radiobutton                                | menu.add_radiobutton(option=value...)                  |
| menu add separator                                  | menu.add_separator(option=value...)                    |
| menu clone newMenuName [cloneType]                  |                                                        |
| menu delete index1 [index2]                         | menu.delete(index1 [, index2])                         |
| menu entrycget index option                         | menu.entrycget(index, option)                          |
| menu entryconfigure index<br>[option value ...]     | menu.entryconfigure(index<br>[, option=value ...])     |
| menu index index                                    | menu.index(index)                                      |
| menu insert index type [option value ...]           | menu.insert.(index, type<br>[, option=value ...])      |
| menu insert index cascade<br>[option value ...]     | menu.insert_cascade(index<br>[, option=value ...])     |
| menu insert index checkbutton<br>[option value ...] | menu.insert_checkbutton(index<br>[, option=value ...]) |
| menu insert index command<br>[option value ...]     | menu.insert_command(index<br>[, option=value ...])     |
| menu insert index radiobutton [option<br>value ...] | menu.insert_radiobutton(index<br>[, option=value ...]) |
| menu insert index separator<br>[option value ...]   | menu.insert_separator(index<br>[, option=value ...])   |
| menu invoke index                                   | menu.invoke(index)                                     |
| menu post x y                                       | menu.post(x, y)                                        |
| menu postcascade index                              | menu.postcascade(index)                                |
| menu type index                                     | menu.type(index)                                       |
| menu unpost                                         | menu.unpost()                                          |
| menu yposition index                                | menu.yposition(index)                                  |

**Table A.38** Additional Menu options

| Tk                   | Tkinter               |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| -accelerator string  | accelerator=string    |
| -command tclCommand  | command=pythonCommand |
| -columnbreak value   | columnbreak=value     |
| -hidemargin value    | hidemargin=value      |
| -indicatoron boolean | indicatoron=boolean   |
| -label string        | label=string          |

**Table A.38 Additional Menu options (continued)**

| Tk                 | Tkinter           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| -menu pathName     | menu=pathName     |
| -offvalue value    | offvalue=value    |
| -onvalue value     | onvalue=value     |
| -selectcolor color | selectcolor=color |
| -selectimage image | selectimage=image |
| -value value       | value=value       |
| -variable variable | variable=variable |

## The Text widget

**Table A.39 Text widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -exportselection boolean                | exportselection=boolean                      |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -height height                          | height=height                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -insertbackground color                 | insertbackground=color                       |
| -insertborderwidth width                | insertborderwidth=width                      |
| -insertofftime milliseconds             | insertofftime(milliseconds)                  |
| -insertontime milliseconds              | insertontime(milliseconds)                   |
| -insertwidth width                      | insertwidth=width                            |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                   |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                  |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -selectbackground color                 | selectbackground=color                       |
| -selectborderwidth width                | selectborderwidth=width                      |
| -selectforeground color                 | selectforeground=color                       |

**Table A.39 Text widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                            | Tkinter                      |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| -setgrid boolean              | setgrid=boolean              |
| -state NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE |
| -takefocus focusType          | takefocus=focusType          |
| -width width                  | width=width                  |
| -xscrollcommand tclCommand    | xscrollcommand=pythonCommand |
| -yscrollcommand tclCommand    | yscrollcommand=pythonCommand |

**Table A.40 Text widget-specific options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter             |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| -spacing1 size       | spacing1=size       |
| -spacing2 size       | spacing2=size       |
| -spacing3 size       | spacing3=size       |
| -tabs tabList        | tabs=tabList        |
| -wrap none char word | wrap=NONE CHAR WORD |

## Text indices

**Table A.41 Base text indices**

| Tk                          | Tkinter   |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| line.char                   | line.char |
| @x,y                        | "@x,y"    |
| end                         | END       |
| mark                        | mark      |
| tag                         | tag       |
| pathName (embedded window)  | window    |
| imageName (embedded window) | imageName |

**Table A.42 Text index modifiers**

| Tk            | Tkinter         |
|---------------|-----------------|
| + count chars | '+ count chars' |
| - count chars | '- count chars' |
| + count lines | '+ count lines' |
| - count lines | '- count lines' |
| linestart     | 'linestart'     |
| lineend       | 'lineend'       |
| wordstart     | 'wordstart'     |
| wordend       | 'wordend'       |

**Table A.43 Text tag standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |

**Table A.44 Text tag specific options**

| Tk                  | Tkinter            |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| -bgstipple bitmap   | bgstipple=bitmap   |
| -fgstipple bitmap   | fgstipple=bitmap   |
| -lmargin1 size      | lmargin1=size      |
| -lmargin2 size      | lmargin2=size      |
| -offset size        | offset=size        |
| -overstrike boolean | overstrike=boolean |
| -rmargin size       | rmargin=size       |
| -tabs tabList       | tabs=tabList       |
| -underline boolean  | underline=boolean  |

**Table A.45 Text embedded window options**

| Tk                                | Tkinter                          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| -align top center bottom baseline | align=TOP CENTER BOTTOM BASELINE |
| -create script                    | create=script                    |
| -padx width                       | padx=width                       |
| -pady height                      | pady=height                      |
| -stretch boolean                  | stretch=boolean                  |
| -window pathName                  | window=window                    |

**Table A.46 Text embedded image options**

| Tk                                | Tkinter                          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| -align top center bottom baseline | align=TOP CENTER BOTTOM BASELINE |
| -image image                      | image=image                      |
| -name imageName                   | name=imageName                   |
| -padx width                       | padx=width                       |
| -pady height                      | pady=height                      |

**Table A.47 Text widget methods**

| Tk                                                                | Tkinter                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| text bbox index                                                   | text.bbox(index)                                                  |
| text compare index1 op index2                                     | text.compare(index1, op, index2)                                  |
| text delete index1 [index2]                                       | text.delete(index1 [, index2])                                    |
| text dlineinfo index                                              | text.dlineinfo(index)                                             |
| text dump [switches] index1 [index2]                              | text.dump(index1 [, index2] [, option=value ...])                 |
| text get index1 [index2]                                          | text.get(index1 [, index2])                                       |
| text image cget index option                                      | text.image_cget(index, option)                                    |
| text image configure index [option<br>[value [option value ...]]] | text.image_configure(index [, option=value ...])                  |
| text image create index [option value ...]                        | text.image_create(index [, option value ...])                     |
| text image names                                                  | text.image_names()                                                |
| text index index                                                  | text.index(index)                                                 |
| text insert index [string<br>[tagList string tagList ...]]        | text.insert(index [, string [, tagList, string,<br>tagList ...]]) |
| text mark gravity markName [left right]                           | text.mark_gravity(markName [LEFT RIGHT])                          |

**Table A.47 Text widget methods (continued)**

| Tk                                                                 | Tkinter                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| text mark names                                                    | text.mark_names()                                       |
| text mark next   previous index                                    | No mapping                                              |
| text mark set tagName index                                        | text.mark_set(tagName, index)                           |
| text mark unset tagName [tagName ...]                              | text.mark_unset(tagName [, tagName ...])                |
| text scan mark x y                                                 | text.scan_mark(x, y)                                    |
| text scan dragto x y                                               | text.scan_dragto(x, y)                                  |
| text search [switches] pattern index<br>[stopIndex]                | text.search(pattern, index, [, stopIndex] [, switches]) |
| text see index                                                     | text.see(index)                                         |
| text tag add tagName index1 [index2]                               | text.tag_add(tagName, index1 [, index2])                |
| text tag bind tagName [sequence [script]]                          | text.tag_bind(tagName, sequence, script [, '+'])        |
| text tag cget tagName option                                       | text.tag_cget(tagName, option)                          |
| text tag configure tagName [option [value<br>[option value ...]]]  | text.tag_configure(tagName [, option=value ...])        |
| text tag delete tagName [tagName ...]                              | text.tag_delete(tagName [, tagName ...])                |
| text tag lower tagName [belowThis]                                 | text.tag_lower(tagName [, belowThis])                   |
| text tag names [index]                                             | text.tag_names([index])                                 |
| text tag nexrange tagName index1<br>[index2]                       | text.tag_nextrange(tagName, index1 [, index2])          |
| text tag prevrangle tagName index1<br>[index2]                     | text.tag_pvrangle(tagName, index1 [, index2])           |
| text tag raise tagName [aboveThis]                                 | text.tag_raise(tagName [, aboveThis])                   |
| text tag ranges tagName                                            | text.tag_ranges(tagName)                                |
| text tag remove tagName index1 [index2]                            | text.tag_remove(tagName, index1 [, index2])             |
| text window cget index option                                      | text.window_cget(index, option)                         |
| text window configure index [option [value<br>[option value ...]]] | text.window_configure(index [, option=value ...])       |
| text window create index [option value ...]                        | text.window_create(index [, option=value ...])          |
| text window names                                                  | text.window_names()                                     |
| text xview                                                         | text.xview()                                            |
| text xview moveto fraction                                         | text.xview_moveto(fraction)                             |
| text xview scroll number units pages                               | text.xview_scroll(number, units pages)                  |
| text yview                                                         | text.yview()                                            |
| text yview moveto fraction                                         | text.yview_moveto(fraction)                             |
| text yview scroll number units pages                               | text.yview_scroll(number, units pages)                  |
| text yview [-pickplace] index                                      | text.yview_pickplace(index)                             |

# The Button widget

**Table A.48** Button widget standard options

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                       |
| -activeforeground color                 | activeforeground=color                       |
| -anchor anchorPos                       | anchor=anchorPos                             |
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -bitmap bitmap                          | bitmap=bitmap                                |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -command tclCommand                     | command=pythonCommand                        |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -disabledforeground color               | disabledforeground=color                     |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -height height                          | height=height                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -image image                            | image=image                                  |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                   |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                  |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -state normal disabled active           | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE                 |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -text string                            | text=string                                  |
| -textvariable variable                  | textvariable=variable                        |
| -underline index                        | underline=index                              |
| -width width                            | width=width                                  |
| -wraplength length                      | wraplength=length                            |

**Table A.49** Button widget-specific options

| Tk                              | Tkinter                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| -default normal disabled active | default=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE |

**Table A.50 Button methods**

| Tk            | Tkinter         |
|---------------|-----------------|
| button flash  | button.flash()  |
| button invoke | button.invoke() |

## The Checkbutton widget

**Table A.51 Checkbutton widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                       |
| -activeforeground color                 | activeforeground=color                       |
| -anchor anchorPos                       | anchor=anchorPos                             |
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -bitmap bitmap                          | bitmap=bitmap                                |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -command tclCommand                     | command=pythonCommand                        |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -disabledforeground color               | disabledforeground=color                     |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -height height                          | height=height                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -image image                            | image=image                                  |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                   |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                  |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -state normal disabled active           | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE                 |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -text string                            | text=string                                  |
| -textvariable variable                  | textvariable=variable                        |
| -underline index                        | underline=index                              |

**Table A.51 Checkbutton widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                 | Tkinter           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| -width width       | width=width       |
| -wraplength length | wraplength=length |

**Table A.52 Checkbutton widget-specific options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter             |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| -indicatoron boolean | indicatoron=boolean |
| -offvalue value      | offvalue=value      |
| -onvalue value       | onvalue=value       |
| -selectcolor color   | selectcolor=color   |
| -selectimage image   | selectimage=image   |
| -variable variable   | variable=variable   |

**Table A.53 Checkbutton methods**

| Tk                   | Tkinter                |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| checkbutton deselect | checkbutton.deselect() |
| checkbutton flash    | checkbutton.flash()    |
| checkbutton invoke   | checkbutton.invoke()   |
| checkbutton select   | checkbutton.select()   |
| checkbutton toggle   | checkbutton.toggle()   |

## The Frame widget

**Table A.54 Frame widget standard options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| -borderwidth width         | borderwidth=width         |
| -cursor cursor             | cursor=cursor             |
| -height height             | height=height             |
| -highlightbackground color | highlightbackground=color |
| -highlightcolor color      | highlightcolor=color      |
| -highlightthickness width  | highlightthickness=width  |

**Table A.54 Frame widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -width width                            | width=width                                  |

**Table A.55 Frame widget-specific options**

| Tk                 | Tkinter           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| -background color  | background=color  |
| -class name        | class=name        |
| -colormap colormap | colormap=colormap |
| -container boolean | container=boolean |
| -visual visual     | visual=visual     |

## The Label widget

**Table A.56 Label widget standard options**

| Tk                         | Tkinter                   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos          | anchor=anchorPos          |
| -background color          | background=color          |
| -bitmap bitmap             | bitmap=bitmap             |
| -borderwidth width         | borderwidth=width         |
| -cursor cursor             | cursor=cursor             |
| -font font                 | font=font                 |
| -foreground color          | foreground=color          |
| -height height             | height=height             |
| -highlightbackground color | highlightbackground=color |
| -highlightcolor color      | highlightcolor=color      |
| -highlightthickness width  | highlightthickness=width  |
| -image image               | image=image               |
| -justify left center right | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT |
| -padx width                | padx=width                |
| -pady height               | pady=height               |

**Table A.56 Label widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -text string                            | text=string                                  |
| -textvariable variable                  | textvariable=variable                        |
| -underline index                        | underline=index                              |
| -width width                            | width=width                                  |
| -wraplength length                      | wraplength=length                            |

## The Menubutton widget

**Table A.57 Menubutton widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                       |
| -activeforeground color                 | activeforeground=color                       |
| -anchor anchorPos                       | anchor=anchorPos                             |
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -bitmap bitmap                          | bitmap=bitmap                                |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -disabledforeground color               | disabledforeground=color                     |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -height height                          | height=height                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -image image                            | image=image                                  |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                   |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                  |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -state normal disabled active           | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE                 |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |

**Table A.57 Menubutton widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                     | Tkinter               |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| -text string           | text=string           |
| -textvariable variable | textvariable=variable |
| -underline index       | underline=index       |
| -width width           | width=width           |
| -wraplength length     | wraplength=length     |

**Table A.58 Menubutton widget-specific options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter             |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| -direction direction | direction=direction |
| -indicatoron boolean | indicatoron=boolean |
| -menu pathName       | menu=pathName       |

## The Message widget

**Table A.59 Message widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -anchor anchorPos                       | anchor=anchorPos                             |
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -font font                              | font=font                                    |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                             |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                    |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                   |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                  |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -text string                            | text=string                                  |

**Table A.59 Message widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                     | Tkinter               |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| -textvariable variable | textvariable=variable |
| -width width           | width=width           |

**Table A.60 Message widget-specific options**

| Tk              | Tkinter        |
|-----------------|----------------|
| -aspect integer | aspect=integer |

## The Radiobutton widget

**Table A.61 Radiobutton widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                        |
| -activeforeground color                 | activeforeground=color                        |
| -anchor anchorPos                       | anchor=anchorPos                              |
| -background color                       | background=color                              |
| -bitmap bitmap                          | bitmap=bitmap                                 |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                             |
| -command tclCommand                     | command=pythonCommand                         |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                 |
| -disabledforeground color               | disabledforeground=color                      |
| -font font                              | font=font                                     |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                              |
| -height height                          | height=height                                 |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                     |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                          |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                      |
| -image image                            | image=image                                   |
| -justify left center right              | justify=LEFT CENTER RIGHT                     |
| -padx width                             | padx=width                                    |
| -pady height                            | pady=height                                   |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED  RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |

**Table A.61 Radiobutton widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                            | Tkinter                      |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| -state normal disabled active | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE |
| -takefocus focusType          | takefocus=focusType          |
| -text string                  | text=string                  |
| -textvariable variable        | textvariable=variable        |
| -underline index              | underline=index              |
| -width width                  | width=width                  |
| -wraplength length            | wraplength=length            |

**Table A.62 Radiobutton widget-specific options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter           |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| -indicatoron boolean | indicatoron=bool  |
| -selectcolor color   | selectcolor=color |
| -selectimage image   | selectimage=image |
| -value value         | value=value       |
| -variable variable   | variable=variable |

**Table A.63 Radiobutton widget methods**

| Tk                   | Tkinter                |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| radiobutton deselect | radiobutton.deselect() |
| radiobutton flash    | radiobutton.flash()    |
| radiobutton invoke   | radiobutton.invoke()   |
| radiobutton select   | radiobutton.select()   |

## The Scale widget

**Table A.64 Scale widget standard options**

| Tk                      | Tkinter                |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| -activebackground color | activebackground=color |
| -background color       | background=color       |
| -borderwidth width      | borderwidth=width      |

**Table A.64 Scale widget standard options (continued)**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                 |
| -font font                              | font=font                                     |
| -foreground color                       | foreground=color                              |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                     |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                          |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                      |
| -orient horizontal vertical             | orient=HORIZONTAL VERTICAL                    |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED  RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -repeatdelay milliseconds               | repeatdelay=milliseconds                      |
| -repeatinterval milliseconds            | repeatinterval=milliseconds                   |
| -state normal disabled                  | state=NORMAL DISABLED ACTIVE                  |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                           |
| -troughcolor color                      | troughcolor=color                             |

**Table A.65 Scale widget-specific options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter               |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| -bigincrement number | bigincrement=number   |
| -command tclCommand  | command=pythonCommand |
| -digits integer      | digits=integer        |
| -from number         | from_=number          |
| -label string        | label=string          |
| -length size         | length=size           |
| -resolution number   | resolution=number     |
| -showvalue boolean   | showvalue=boolean     |
| -sliderlength size   | sliderlength=size     |
| -sliderrelief relief | sliderrelief=relief   |
| -tickinterval number | tickinterval=number   |
| -to number           | to=number             |
| -variable variable   | variable=variable     |
| -width width         | width=width           |

**Table A.66 Scale widget methods**

| Tk                   | Tkinter               |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| scale coords [value] | scale.coords([value]) |
| scale get [x y]      | scale.get()           |
| scale identify x y   | scale.identify(x, y)  |
| scale set value      | scale.set(value)      |

## The Scrollbar widget

**Table A.67 Scrollbar widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| -activebackground color                 | activebackground=color                       |
| -background color                       | background=color                             |
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                            |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                    |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                         |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                     |
| -jump boolean                           | jump=boolean                                 |
| -orient horizontal vertical             | orient=HORIZONTAL VERTICAL                   |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -repeatdelay milliseconds               | repeatdelay=milliseconds                     |
| -repeatinterval milliseconds            | repeatinterval=milliseconds                  |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                          |
| -troughcolor color                      | troughcolor=color                            |

**Table A.68 Scrollbar widget-specific options**

| Tk                        | Tkinter                     |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| -active relief number     | activerelief=number         |
| -command tclCommandPrefix | command=pythonCommandPrefix |
| -elementborderwidth width | elementborderwidth=width    |
| -width width              | width=width                 |

**Table A.69 Scrollbar widget methods**

| Tk                            | Tkinter                         |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| scrollbar activate [element]  | scrollbar.activate(element)     |
| scrollbar delta deltaX deltaY | scrollbar.delta(deltaX, deltaY) |
| scrollbar fraction x y        | scrollbar.fraction(x, y)        |
| scrollbar get                 | scrollbar.get()                 |
| scrollbar identify x y        | scrollbar.identify(x, y)        |
| scrollbar set first last      | scrollbar.set(first, last)      |

## The Toplevel widget

**Table A.70 Toplevel widget standard options**

| Tk                                      | Tkinter                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| -borderwidth width                      | borderwidth=width                             |
| -cursor cursor                          | cursor=cursor                                 |
| -height height                          | height=height                                 |
| -highlightbackground color              | highlightbackground=color                     |
| -highlightcolor color                   | highlightcolor=color                          |
| -highlightthickness width               | highlightthickness=width                      |
| -relief flat groove raised ridge sunken | relief=FLAT GROOVE RAISED  RIDGE SUNKEN SOLID |
| -takefocus focusType                    | takefocus=focusType                           |
| -width width                            | width=width                                   |

**Table A.71 Toplevel widget-specific options**

| Tk                 | Tkinter           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| -background color  | background=color  |
| -class string      | class=string      |
| -colormap colormap | colormap=colormap |
| -container boolean | container=boolean |
| -menu pathName     | menu=pathName     |
| -use windowID      | use=windowID      |
| -screen screen     | screen=screen     |
| -visual visual     | visual=visual     |

# The Image class

Table A.72 Image methods

| Tk                                           | Tkinter                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| image create type [name] [options value ...] | image = PhotoImage BitmapImage([option=value ...]) |
| image delete name                            | del(image)                                         |
| image height name                            | image.height()                                     |
| image names                                  | image_names()                                      |
| image type name                              | image.type()                                       |
| image types                                  | image_types()                                      |
| image width name                             | image_width()                                      |

## The bitmap image type

Table A.73 Bitmap options

| Tk                 | Tkinter           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| -background color  | background=color  |
| -data string       | data=string       |
| -file fileName     | file=fileName     |
| -foreground color  | foreground=color  |
| -maskdata string   | maskdata=string   |
| -maskfile fileName | maskfile=fileName |

## The PhotoImage type

Table A.74 PhotoImage options

| Tk                   | Tkinter             |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| -data string         | data=string         |
| -file fileName       | file=fileName       |
| -format formatName   | format=formatName   |
| -height number       | height=number       |
| -palette paletteSpec | palette=paletteSpec |
| -width number        | width=number        |

**Table A.75 Photolimage methods**

| Tk                                        | Tkinter                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| image blank                               | image.blank()                                             |
| image copy sourceImage [option value ...] | image.copy()                                              |
| image copy sourceImage [-zoom x y]        | image.zoom(xscale [,yscale])                              |
| image copy sourceImage [-subsample x y]   | image.subsample(xscale [,yscale])                         |
| image get x y                             | image.get(x,y)                                            |
| image put data [-to x1 y1 x2 y2]          | image.put(data [, 'to' x1 y1 x2 y2])                      |
| image read file [option value ...]        | No mapping                                                |
| image redither                            | No mapping                                                |
| image write fileName [option value ...]   | image.write(fileName [, formatName] [, (x1, y1, x2, y2)]) |

## Window information

**Table A.76 Winfo methods**

| Tk                                               | Tkinter                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| winfo allmapped window                           | No mapping                                  |
| winfo atom [-displayof window] name              | window.winfo_atom(name, [,win])             |
| winfo atomname [-displayof window] id            | window.winfo_atomname(id [,win])            |
| winfo cells window                               | window.winfo_cells()                        |
| winfo children window                            | window.winfo_children()                     |
| winfo class window                               | window.winfo_class()                        |
| winfo_colormapfull window                        | window.winfo_colormapfull()                 |
| winfo containing [-displayof window] rootX rootY | window.winfo_containing(rootX,rootY [,win]) |
| winfo depth window                               | window.winfo_depth()                        |
| winfo exists window                              | window.winfo_exists()                       |
| winfo fpixels window number                      | window.winfo_fpixels(umber)                 |
| winfo geometry window                            | window.winfo_geometry()                     |
| winfo height window                              | window.winfo_height()                       |
| winfo id window                                  | window.winfo_id()                           |
| winfo interps [-displayof window]                | window.winfo_interps([win])                 |
| winfo ismapped window                            | window.winfo_ismapped()                     |
| winfo manager window                             | window.winfo_manager()                      |
| winfo name window                                | window.winfo_name()                         |
| winfo parent window                              | window.winfo_parent()                       |

**Table A.76 Winfo methods (continued)**

| Tk                                    | Tkinter                            |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| winfo pathname [-displayof window] id | window.winfo_pathname(id, [, win]) |
| winfo pointerx window                 | window.winfo_pointerx()            |
| winfo pointerxy window                | window.winfo_pointerxy()           |
| winfo pointery window                 | window.winfo_pointery()            |
| winfo pixels window number            | window.winfo_pixels(number)        |
| winfo_reqheight window                | window.winfo_reqheight()           |
| winfo_reqwidth window                 | window.winfo_reqwidth()            |
| winfo_rgb window color                | window.winfo_rgb(color)            |
| winfo_rootx window                    | window.winfo_rootx()               |
| winfo_rooty window                    | window.winfo_rooty()               |
| winfo_server window                   | window.winfo_server()              |
| winfo_screen window                   | window.winfo_screen()              |
| winfo_screencells window              | window.winfo_screencells()         |
| winfo_screendepth window              | window.winfo_screendepth()         |
| winfo_screenheight window             | window.winfo_screenheight()        |
| winfo_screenmmheight window           | window.winfo_screenmmheight()      |
| winfo_screenmmwidth window            | window.winfo_screenmmwidth()       |
| winfo_screenvisual window             | window.winfo_screenvisual()        |
| winfo_screenwidth window              | window.winfo_screenwidth()         |
| winfo_toplevel window                 | window.winfo_toplevel()            |
| winfo_visual window                   | window.winfo_visual()              |
| winfo_visualsavailable window         | window.winfo_visualsavailable()    |
| winfo_vrootheight window              | window.winfo_vrootheight()         |
| winfo_vrootwidth window               | window.winfo_vrootwidth()          |
| winfo_vrootx window                   | window.winfo_vrootx()              |
| winfo_vrooty window                   | window.winfo_vrooty()              |
| winfo_width window                    | window.winfo_width()               |
| winfo_x window                        | window.winfo_x()                   |
| winfo_y window                        | window.winfo_y()                   |

# The window manager

**Table A.77** **wm operations**

| Tk                                                          | Tkinter                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| wm aspect window [minNumer minDenom<br>maxNumer maxDenom]   | window.wm_aspect([minNumer, minDenom,<br>maxNumer, maxDenom])   |
| wm client window [name]                                     | window.wm_client([name])                                        |
| wm colormapwindows window [windowList]                      | window.wm_colormapwindows([windowList])                         |
| wm command window [value]                                   | window.wm_command([value])                                      |
| wm deiconify window                                         | window.wm_deiconify()                                           |
| wm focusmodel window [active passive]                       | window.wm_focusmodel(['active' 'passive'])                      |
| wm frame window                                             | window.wm_frame()                                               |
| wm geometry window [newGeometry]                            | window.wm_geometry([newGeometry])                               |
| wm grid window [baseWidth baseHeight<br>widthInc heightInc] | window.wm_grid([baseWidth, baseHeight,<br>widthInc, heightInc]) |
| wm group window [pathName]                                  | window.wm_group([pathName])                                     |
| wm iconbitmap window [bitmap]                               | window.wm_iconbitmap([bitmap])                                  |
| wm iconify window                                           | window.wm_iconify()                                             |
| wm iconmask window [bitmap]                                 | window.wm_iconmask([bitmap])                                    |
| wm iconname window [newName]                                | window.wm_iconname([newName])                                   |
| wm iconposition window [x y]                                | window.wm_iconposition([x, y])                                  |
| wm iconwindow window [pathName]                             | window.wm_iconwindow([pathName])                                |
| wm maxsize window [width height]                            | window.wm_maxsize([width, height])                              |
| wm minsize window [width height]                            | window.wm_minsize([width, height])                              |
| wm overrideredirect window [boolean]                        | window.wm_overrideredirect([boolean])                           |
| wm positionfrom window [program user]                       | window.wm_positionfrom(['program' 'user'])                      |
| wm protocol window [name] [command]                         | window.wm_protocol([name], [command])                           |
| wm resizable window<br>[widthBoolean heightBoolean]         | window.wm_resizable([widthBoolean,<br>heightBoolean])           |
| wm sizefrom window [program user]                           | window.wm_sizefrom(['program' 'user'])                          |
| wm state window                                             | window.wm_state()                                               |
| wm title window [string]                                    | window.wm_title([string])                                       |
| wm transient window [master]                                | window.wm_transient([master])                                   |
| wm withdraw window                                          | window.wm_withdraw()                                            |

# Binding and virtual events

Table A.78 Bind and event methods

| Tk                                                             | Tkinter                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| bind tag                                                       | widget.bind()                                           |
| bind tag sequence                                              | widget.bind('sequence')                                 |
| bind tag sequence script                                       | widget.bind('sequence', script)                         |
| bindtags window [tagList]                                      | window.bindtags([tagList])                              |
| event add <<virtual>> sequence<br>[sequence ...]               | window.event_add(virtual, sequence<br>[, sequence ...]) |
| event delete <<virtual>> [sequence ...]                        | window.event_delete(virtual [, sequence ...])           |
| event generate window event<br>[-when when] [option value ...] | window.event_generate(sequence<br>[, option=value ...]) |

# Geometry management

## The pack command

Table A.79 Pack methods

| Tk                                           | Tkinter                          |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| pack [configure] slave [slave ...] [options] | slave.pack([option=value ...])   |
| pack forget slave [slave ...]                | slave.pack_forget()              |
| pack info slave                              | slave.pack_info()                |
| pack propagate master [boolean]              | master.pack_propagate([boolean]) |
| pack slaves master                           | master.pack_slaves()             |

## The place command

Table A.80 Place options

| Tk                                | Tkinter                                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| -anchor anchor                    | anchor=anchor                          |
| -bordermode inside outside ignore | bordermode='inside' 'outside' 'ignore' |
| -height size                      | height=size                            |
| -in master                        | in=master                              |
| -relheight size                   | relheight=size                         |
| -relwidth size                    | relwidth=size                          |

**Table A.80 Place options (continued)**

| Tk             | Tkinter       |
|----------------|---------------|
| -relx location | relx=location |
| -rely location | rely=location |
| -width size    | width=size    |
| -x location    | x=location    |
| -y location    | y=location    |

**Table A.81 Place methods**

| Tk                                                          | Tkinter                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| place [configure] window option value<br>[option value ...] | window.place([option=value ...]) |
| place forget window                                         | window.place_forget()            |
| place info window                                           | window.place_info()              |
| place slaves window                                         | window.place_slaves()            |

## The grid command

**Table A.82 Grid options**

| Tk                   | Tkinter             |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| -column n            | column=n            |
| -columnspan n        | columnspan=n        |
| -in other            | in=other            |
| -ipadx amount        | ipadx=amount        |
| -ipady amount        | ipady=amount        |
| -padx amount         | padx=amount         |
| -pady amount         | pady=amount         |
| -row n               | row=n               |
| -rowspan n           | rowspan=n           |
| -sticky [n][s][e][w] | sticky=[N][S][E][W] |

**Table A.83 Grid methods**

| <b>Tk</b>                                                | <b>Tkinter</b>                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| grid [configure] slave [slave ...]<br>[option value ...] | slave.grid([option=value ...])                         |
| grid bbox master [column row<br>[column2 row2]]          | master.grid_bbox([column, row<br>[, column2, row2]])   |
| grid columnconfigure master columnList<br>[options]      | master.grid_columnconfigure(columnList<br>[, options]) |
| -minsize size                                            | minsize=size                                           |
| -pad amount                                              | pad=amount                                             |
| -weight int                                              | weight=int                                             |
| grid forget slave [slave ...]                            | slave.grid_forget()                                    |
| grid info slave                                          | slave.grid_info()                                      |
| grid location master x y                                 | slave.grid_location(x, y)                              |
| grid propagate master [boolean]                          | master.grid_propagate([boolean])                       |
| grid remove slave [slave ...]                            | slave.grid_remove()                                    |
| grid rowconfigure master rowList [options]               | master.grid_rowconfigure(rowList,<br>[, options])      |
| grid size master                                         | master.grid_size()                                     |
| grid slaves master [-row row]<br>[-column column]        | master.grid_slaves([row] [, column])                   |

## Fonts

**Table A.84 Font options**

| <b>Tk</b>           | <b>Tkinter</b>     |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| -family name        | family=name        |
| -size size          | size=size          |
| -weight weight      | weight=weight      |
| -slant slant        | slant=slant        |
| -underline boolean  | underline=boolean  |
| -overstrike boolean | overstrike=boolean |

**Table A.85 Font methods**

| Tk                                                           | Tkinter                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| font actual fontDesc<br>[-displayof window] [option]         | fontDesc.actual(option)                 |
| font configure fontname [option<br>[value option value ...]] | fontname.configure(option=value ...)    |
| font create [fontname [option value ...]]                    | font = Font([master], option=value ...) |
| font delete fontname [fontname ...]                          | del(fontname)                           |
| font families [-displayof window]                            | families([window])                      |
| font measure fontDesc<br>[-displayof window] text            | fontDesc.measure(text)                  |
| font metrics fontDesc<br>[-displayof window] [metric]        | fontDesc.metrics([metric])              |
| font names                                                   | names([window])                         |

## Other Tk commands

**Table A.86 Other Tk methods**

| Tk                                                                   | Tkinter                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| bell [-displayof window]                                             | window.bell([displayof=window])                    |
| clipboard clear [-displayof window]                                  | window.clipboard_clear([displayof=window])         |
| clipboard append [-displayof win]<br>[-format fmt] [-type type] data | window.clipboard_clear(data<br>, option=value ...) |
| destroy [window window ...]                                          | window.destroy()                                   |
| focus [-force] window                                                | window.focus_force()                               |
| focus [-displayof window]                                            | window.focus_displayof()                           |
| focus -lastfor window                                                | window.focus_lastfor()                             |
| grab current [window]                                                | window.grab_current()                              |
| grab release window                                                  | window.grab_release()                              |
| grab set window                                                      | window.grab_set()                                  |
| grab set -global window                                              | window.grab_set_global()                           |
| grab status window                                                   | window.grab_status()                               |
| lower window [belowThis]                                             | window.lower([belowThis])                          |
| option add pattern value [priority]                                  | window.option_add(pattern, value,<br>, priority)   |
| option clear                                                         | window.option_clear()                              |
| option get window name class                                         | window.option_get(name, class)                     |

**Table A.86 Other Tk methods (continued)**

| <b>Tk</b>                                                                | <b>Tkinter</b>                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| option readfile fileName [priority]                                      | window.option_readfile(fileName [, priority])                                |
| raise window [aboveThis]                                                 | window.raise([aboveThis])                                                    |
| selection clear [-displayof window]<br>[-selection selection]            | window.selection_clear([displayof=window] [, selection=sel])                 |
| selection get [-displayof window]<br>[-selection selection] [-type type] | window.selection_get([displayof=window] [, -selection=sel][, type=type])     |
| selection handle [-selection sel] [-type type]<br>[-format fmt] win cmd  | window.selection_handle(cmd [, selection=sel] [, type=type] [, format= fmt]) |
| selection own [-displayof window]<br>[-selection selection]              | window.selection_own([displayof=window] [, selection=sel])                   |
| selection own [-selection selection]<br>[-command command] window        | window.selection_own_get([selection=sel] [command= command])                 |
| send [-displayof window]<br>[-async] interp cmd [arg arg ...]            | window.send(interp, cmd [, arg ...])                                         |
| tk appname [newName]                                                     | No mapping                                                                   |
| tk scaling [-displayof window] [floatNumber]                             | No mapping                                                                   |
| tkwait variable varName                                                  | window.wait_variable([window])                                               |
| tkwait visibility window                                                 | window.wait_variablevisibility([window])                                     |
| tkwait window window                                                     | window.wait_window([window])                                                 |
| tk_bisque                                                                | window.tk_bisque()                                                           |
| tk_chooseColor [option value ...]                                        | Use tkColorChooser                                                           |
| tk_dialog topw title text bitmap default string<br>[string ...]          | Use Dialog                                                                   |
| tk_focusNext window                                                      | window.tk_focusNext()                                                        |
| tk_focusPrev window                                                      | window.tk_focusPrev()                                                        |
| tk_focusFollowsMouse                                                     | window.tk_focusFollowsMouse()                                                |
| tk_getOpenFile [option value ...]                                        | No mapping                                                                   |
| tk_getSaveFile [option value ...]                                        | No mapping                                                                   |
| tk_messageBox [option value ...]                                         | box=MessageBox(master, text=text [, option ...])                             |
| tk_optionMenu w varName value [value ...]                                | menu = OptionMenu(master, varName, value [, value ...])                      |
| tk_popup menu x y [entry]                                                | menu.tk_popup(x, y [, entry] )                                               |
| tk_setPalette color                                                      | window.tk_setPalette(color)                                                  |
| tk_setPalette name color [name color ...]                                | window.tk_setPalette(name=color [, name=color ...])                          |

## A P P E N D I X    B

---

# *Tkinter reference*

## **About this appendix**

The information presented in this appendix has been largely generated using Python programs that use the Tkinter module dictionary and the Tk man pages, which were parsed and edited to correspond to Python use and stored in a huge dictionary. The programs produced a large ASCII file which contained headings, text and tables ready for importing into FrameMaker, which was used to produce this book. Some of the information required manual adjustment, but the bulk of data required only formatting in FrameMaker. The scripts did not take long to develop.

You will find references to both Tcl and Tk. I have left them in the text, where appropriate, since it is worth remembering that Tkinter is, ultimately, just an interface to them and it is Tcl/Tk that determines whether supplied arguments are valid and appropriate.

## **Common options**

Many widgets accept options which are common with other widgets. There may be small differences in the absolute values, but they are similar enough for them to be documented as a group here. In general, many of the descriptions are derived from the Tk man pages, since Tkinter provides a simple interface to the underlying Tk widgets where options are considered. However, since Tkinter provides an object-oriented wrapper to Tk, some of the descriptions required considerable modification to the Tkinter context.

## Options shared by most widgets

| Option (alias)      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units  | Typical                          | All widgets except:                      |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| background (bg)     | Specifies the normal background color to use when displaying the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | color  | 'gray25'<br>'#FF4400'            |                                          |
| borderwidth (bd)    | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border to draw around the outside of the widget (if such a border is being drawn; the relief option typically determines this). The value may also be used when drawing 3-D effects in the interior of the widget. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (Tk_GetPixels). | pixel  | 3                                |                                          |
| cursor              | Specifies the mouse cursor to be used for the widget. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (Tk_GetCursor).                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | cursor | gumby                            |                                          |
| font                | Specifies the font to use when drawing text inside the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | font   | 'Helvetica'<br>('Verdana',<br>8) | Canvas<br>Frame<br>Scrollbar<br>Toplevel |
| foreground (fg)     | Specifies the normal Foreground color to use when displaying the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | color  | 'black'<br>'#FF2244'             | Canvas<br>Frame<br>Scrollbar<br>Toplevel |
| highlightbackground | Specifies the color to display in the traversal highlight region when the widget does not have the input focus.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | color  | 'gray30'                         | Menu                                     |
| highlightcolor      | Specifies the color to use for the traversal highlight rectangle that is drawn around the widget when it has the input focus.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | color  | 'royalblue'                      | Menu                                     |
| highlightthickness  | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the highlight rectangle to draw around the outside of the widget when it has the input focus. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (Tk_GetPixels). If the value is zero, no focus highlight is drawn around the widget.                                                         | pixel  | 2, 1m                            | Menu                                     |

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Units    | Typical          | All widgets except: |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------|---------------------|
| relief         | Specifies the 3-D effect desired for the widget. Acceptable values are RAISED, SUNKEN, FLAT, RIDGE, SOLID, and GROOVE. The value indicates how the interior of the widget should appear relative to its exterior; for example, RAISED means the interior of the widget should appear to protrude from the screen, relative to the exterior of the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | constant | RAISED<br>GROOVE |                     |
| takefocus      | Determines whether the window accepts the focus during keyboard traversal (e.g., TAB and SHIFT-TAB). Before setting the focus to a window, the traversal scripts consult the value of the takefocus option. A value of 0 means that the window should be skipped entirely during keyboard traversal. 1 means that the window should receive the input focus as long as it is viewable (it and all of its ancestors are mapped). An empty value for the option means that the traversal scripts make the decision about whether or not to focus on the window: the current algorithm is to skip the window if it is disabled, if it has no key bindings, or if it is not viewable. | boolean  | 1 YES            |                     |
| width          | Specifies an integer value indicating the desired width of the widget, in average-size characters of the widget's font. If the value is less than or equal to zero, the widget picks a size just large enough to hold its current text.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | integer  | 32               | Menu                |

## Options shared by many widgets

| Option (alias)   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units    | Typical            | These widgets only                                                               |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| activebackground | Specifies the background color to use when drawing active elements. An element (a widget or portion of a widget) is active if the mouse cursor is positioned over the element and pressing a mouse button will cause some action to occur. If strict Motif compliance has been requested by setting the <code>tk_strictMotif</code> variable, this option will normally be ignored; the normal background color will be used instead. For some elements on Windows and Macintosh systems, the active color will only be used while mouse button 1 is pressed over the element.                                                        | color    | 'red'<br>'#fa07a3' | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Menu<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton<br>Scale<br>Scrollbar |
| activeforeground | Specifies the foreground color to use when drawing active elements. See above for definition of active elements.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | color    | 'cadetblue'        | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Menu<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton                       |
| anchor           | Specifies how the information in a widget (e.g. text or a bitmap) is to be displayed in the widget. Must be one of the values N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW, or CENTER. For example, NW means to display the information so that its top-left corner is at the top-left corner of the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | constant |                    | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton           |
| bitmap           | Specifies a bitmap to display in the widget, in any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetBitmap</code> ). The exact way in which the bitmap is displayed may be affected by other options such as <code>anchor</code> or <code>justify</code> . Typically, if this option is specified then it overrides other options that specify a textual value to display in the widget; the <code>bitmap</code> option may be reset to an empty string to re-enable a text display. In widgets that support both <code>bitmap</code> and <code>image</code> options, <code>image</code> will usually override <code>bitmap</code> . | bitmap   |                    | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton                      |

| Option (alias)     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Units    | Typical   | These widgets only                                                                                      |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| command            | Specifies a Python command to associate with the widget. This command is typically invoked when mouse button 1 is released over the widget. For check buttons and radio buttons the button's tkinter variable (set with the variable option) will be updated before the command is invoked.                                                                                            | command  | setupData | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Radiobutton<br>Scale<br>Scrollbar                                              |
| disabledforeground | Specifies the foreground color to use when drawing a disabled element. If the option is specified as an empty string (which is typically the case on monochrome displays), disabled elements are drawn with the normal foreground color but they are dimmed by drawing them with a stippled fill pattern.                                                                              | color    | 'gray50'  | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Menu<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton                                              |
| height             | Specifies the desired height for the window, in units of characters in the font given by the font option. Must be at least one.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | integer  | 1 4       | Button Canvas<br>Checkbutton<br>Frame Label<br>Listbox<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton<br>Text<br>Toplevel |
| image              | Specifies an image to display in the widget, which must have been created with the image <code>create</code> method.<br>Typically, if the <code>image</code> option is specified then it overrides other options that specify a bitmap or textual value to display in the widget; the <code>image</code> option may be reset to an empty string to re-enable a bitmap or text display. | image    |           | Button<br>Checkbutton Label<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton                                                |
| justify            | When multiple lines of text are displayed in a widget, this option determines how the lines line up with each other. Must be one of LEFT, CENTER, or RIGHT. LEFT means that the lines' left edges all line up, CENTER means that the lines' centers are aligned, and RIGHT means that the lines' right edges line up.                                                                  | constant | RIGHT     | Button<br>Checkbutton Entry<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton                            |

| Option (alias)    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units | Typical | These widgets only                                                          |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| padx              | <p>Specifies a non-negative value indicating how much extra space to request for the widget in the X-direction. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (<code>Tk_GetPixels</code>). When computing how large a window it needs, the widget will add this amount to the width it would normally need (as determined by the width of the things displayed in the widget); if the geometry manager can satisfy this request, the widget will end up with extra internal space to the left and/or right of what it displays inside.</p> <p>Most widgets only use this option for padding text: if they are displaying a bitmap or image, then they usually ignore padding options.</p> | pixel | 2m 10   | Button<br>Checkbutton Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton<br>Text |
| pady              | <p>Specifies a non-negative value indicating how much extra space to request for the widget in the Y-direction. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (<code>Tk_GetPixels</code>). When computing how large a window it needs, the widget will add this amount to the height it would normally need (as determined by the height of the things displayed in the widget); if the geometry manager can satisfy this request, the widget will end up with extra internal space above and/or below what it displays inside.</p> <p>Most widgets only use this option for padding text: if they are displaying a bitmap or image, then they usually ignore padding options.</p>        | pixel | 12 3m   | Button<br>Checkbutton Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton<br>Text |
| selectbackground  | Specifies the background color to use when displaying selected items.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | color | blue    | Canvas<br>Entry Listbox Text                                                |
| selectborderwidth | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border to draw around selected items. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | pixel | 3       | Canvas<br>Entry Listbox Text                                                |
| selectforeground  | Specifies the foreground color to use when displaying selected items.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | color | yellow  | Canvas<br>Entry Listbox Text                                                |

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units    | Typical        | These widgets only                                                              |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| state          | Specifies one of two or three states for the widget (typically checkbutton): NORMAL and DISABLED or NORMAL, ACTIVE and DISABLED. In NORMAL state the widget is displayed using the foreground and background options. The ACTIVE state is typically used when the pointer is over the widget. In ACTIVE state the widget is displayed using the activeforeground and activebackground options. DISABLED state means that the widget should be insensitive: the default bindings will refuse to activate the widget and will ignore mouse button presses. In this state the disabledforeground and background options determine how the widget is displayed. | constant | ACTIVE         | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Entry<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton<br>Scale<br>Text    |
| text           | Specifies a string to be displayed inside the widget. The way in which the string is displayed depends on the particular widget and may be determined by other options, such as anchor or justify.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | string   | 'Display This' | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton          |
| textvariable   | Specifies the name of a variable. The value of the variable is converted to a text string to be displayed inside the widget; if the variable value changes then the widget will automatically update itself to reflect the new value. The way in which the string is displayed in the widget depends on the particular widget and may be determined by other options, such as anchor or justify.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | variable | widgetContent  | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Entry<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Message<br>Radiobutton |
| underline      | Specifies the integer index of a character to underline in the widget. This option is used by the default bindings to implement keyboard traversal for menu buttons and menu entries. 0 corresponds to the first character of the text displayed in the widget, 1 to the next character, and so on.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | integer  | 2              | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton                     |

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Typical | These widgets only                                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| wraplength     | For widgets that can perform word-wrapping, this option specifies the maximum line length. Lines that would exceed this length are wrapped onto the next line, so that no line is longer than the specified length. The value may be specified in any of the standard forms for screen distances. If this value is less than or equal to 0 then no wrapping is done: lines will break only at newline characters in the text.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | pixel    | 4i, 65  | Button<br>Checkbutton<br>Label<br>Menubutton<br>Radiobutton |
| xscrollcommand | <p>Specifies the prefix for a command used to communicate with horizontal scrollbars. When the view in the widget's window changes (or whenever anything else occurs that could change the display in a scrollbar, such as a change in the total size of the widget's contents), the widget will generate a command by concatenating the scroll command and two numbers. Each of the numbers is a fraction between 0 and 1, which indicates a position in the document. 0 indicates the beginning of the document, 1 indicates the end, .333 indicates a position one third of the way through the document, and so on. The first fraction indicates the first information in the document that is visible in the window, and the second fraction indicates the information just after the last portion that is visible. The command is then passed to the Tcl interpreter for execution.</p> <p>Typically the <code>xScrollCommand</code> option consists of <b>the identity of a scrollbar widget followed by set</b>; for example, <code>self.x.scrollbar set</code> will cause the scrollbar to be updated whenever the view in the window changes. If this option is not specified, then no command will be executed.</p> | function |         | Canvas<br>Entry Listbox Text                                |

| Option (alias)              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Units    | Typical | These widgets only           |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|------------------------------|
| <code>yscrollcommand</code> | <p>Specifies the prefix for a command used to communicate with vertical scrollbars. When the view in the widget's window changes (or whenever anything else occurs that could change the display in a scrollbar, such as a change in the total size of the widget's contents), the widget will generate a command by concatenating the scroll command and two numbers. Each of the numbers is a fraction between 0 and 1, which indicates a position in the document. 0 indicates the beginning of the document, 1 indicates the end, .333 indicates a position one third of the way through the document, and so on. The first fraction indicates the first information in the document that is visible in the window, and the second fraction indicates the information just after the last portion that is visible. The command is then passed to the Tcl interpreter for execution.</p> <p>Typically the <code>yScrollCommand</code> option consists of the identity of a scrollbar widget followed by <code>set</code>; for example, <code>self.y.scrollbar set</code> will cause the scrollbar to be updated whenever the view in the window changes. If this option is not specified, then no command will be executed.</p> | function |         | Canvas<br>Entry Listbox Text |

## Inherited methods

Many methods are inherited from the bases classes and are available to all widgets. In addition to the methods listed here, `grid`, `pack` and `place` geometry manager methods are inherited by all widgets. These methods are documented separately from the widgets.

The arguments to the methods are presented in the form that Tkinter defines them. You will find a mapping to Tk commands here; typically Tk commands have the window as the first argument. Tkinter methods are applied to the current instance of a widget which may be interpreted as the `window` or `slave` or `master` arguments in Tk commands.

### Common widget methods

#### **after(ms, function=None, \*args)**

Registers a callback that is called after `ms` milliseconds. Note that this period is not guaranteed to be accurate; you must assume that the wait period is at least the given period and it can be

much longer. The method returns `id` which may be used as the argument to `after_cancel` to cancel the callback.

### **`after_cancel(id)`**

Cancels the specified `after` callback.

### **`after_idle(function, *args)`**

Registers a callback `function` which is called when the system is idle (no more events in the event queue). The callback is called once for each call to `after_idle`.

### **`bell(displayof=0)`**

Rings the bell on the display for the window and returns `None`. If the `displayof` option is omitted, the display of the application's main window is used by default. The method uses the current bell-related settings for the display, which may be modified with programs such as `xset`. This method also resets the screen saver for the screen. Some screen savers will ignore this, but others will reset so that the screen becomes visible again.

### **`bind(sequence=None, function=None, add=None)`**

Associates event handlers with events. If `add` is `+` the binding is added to the current bindings; the default is to replace the existing binding.

### **`bind_all(sequence=None, function=None, add=None)`**

Associates event handlers with events at the application level. If `add` is `+` the binding is added to the current bindings; the default is to replace the existing binding.

### **`bind_class(className, sequence=None, function=None, add=None)`**

Associates event handlers with events for the specified widget class. If `add` is `+` the binding is added to the current bindings; the default is to replace the existing binding.

### **`bindtags(tagList=None)`**

If `bindtags` is invoked without an argument, then the current set of binding tags for the widget is returned as a tuple. If the `tagList` argument is specified to `bindtags`, then it must be a proper tuple; the tags for `window` are changed to the elements of the list. The elements of `tagList` may be arbitrary strings; however, any tag starting with a dot is treated as the name of a Tk window. If no window by that name exists at the time an event is processed, then the tag is ignored for that event. The order of the elements in `tagList` determines the order in which binding scripts are executed in response to events.

### **`cget(key)`**

Returns the current value of the configuration option given by `key`.

### **`clipboard_append(string)`**

Appends `string` to the clipboard on the window's display.

**clipboard\_clear()**

Claims ownership of the clipboard on the window's display and removes any previous contents.

**configure(option=None)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options of the widget. If no option is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the widget. If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given widget option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns None.

**destroy()**

Destroys the widget and removes all references from namespace.

**event\_add(virtual, \*sequences)**

Associates the virtual event `virtual` with the physical event sequence(s) given by the sequence arguments, so that the virtual event will trigger whenever any one of the sequences occurs. `Virtual` may be any string value and `sequence` may have any of the values allowed for the sequence argument to the `bind` method. If `virtual` is already defined, the new physical event sequences add to the existing sequences for the event.

**event\_delete(virtual, \*sequences)**

Deletes each of the sequences from those associated with the virtual event given by `virtual`. `Virtual` may be any string value and `sequence` may have any of the values allowed for the sequence argument to the `bind` method. Any sequences not currently associated with `virtual` are ignored. If no `sequence` argument is provided, all physical event sequences are removed for `virtual`, so that the virtual event will not trigger anymore.

**event\_generate(sequence, option=value...)**

Generates a window event and arranges for it to be processed just as if it had come from the window system. `Sequence` provides a basic description of the event, such as `<Shift-Button-2>`. `Sequence` may have any of the forms allowed for the sequence argument of the `bind` method except that it must consist of a single event pattern, not a sequence. Option-value pairs may be used to specify additional attributes of the event, such as the x and y mouse position.

**event\_info(virtual=None)**

Returns information about virtual events. If the `virtual` argument is omitted, the return value is a tuple of all the virtual events that are currently defined. If `virtual` is specified then the return value is a tuple whose elements are the physical event sequences currently defined for the given virtual event; if the virtual event is not defined then `None` is returned.

**focus\_displayof()**

Returns the name of the focus window on the display containing the widget. If the focus window for widget's display isn't in this application, the return value is `None`.

### **focus\_force()**

Sets the focus of the widget's display to `self`, even if the application doesn't currently have the input focus for the display. This method should be used sparingly, if at all. In normal usage, an application should not claim the focus for itself; instead, it should wait for the window manager to give it the focus.

### **focus\_get()**

If the application currently has the input focus on the widget's display, this method returns the identity of the window with focus.

### **focus\_lastfor()**

Returns the identity of the most recent window to have the input focus among all the windows in the same top-level as `self`. If no window in that top-level has ever had the input focus, or if the most recent focus window has been deleted, then the ID of the top-level is returned. The return value is the window that will receive the input focus the next time the window manager gives the focus to the top-level.

### **focus\_set()**

If the application currently has the input focus on the widget's display, this method resets the input focus for the widget's display to `self`. If the application doesn't currently have the input focus on the widget's display, `self` will be remembered as the focus for its top-level; the next time the focus arrives at the top-level, Tk will redirect it to `self`.

### **getboolean(string)**

Converts `string` to a boolean using Tcl's conventions.

### **getvar(name='PY\_VAR')**

Returns the value of the variable `name`.

### **grab\_current()**

Returns the identity of the current grab window in this application for window's display, or `None` if there is no such window.

### **grab\_release()**

Releases the grab on `self` if there is one; otherwise it does nothing.

### **grab\_set()**

Sets a grab on all events for the current application to `self`. If a grab was already in effect for this application on the widget's display then it is automatically released. If there is already a grab on `self` then the method does nothing.

### **grab\_set\_global()**

Sets a grab on all events for the entire screen to `self`. If a grab was already in effect for this application on the widget's display then it is automatically released. If there is already a grab on `self` then the method does nothing. Be careful if you use this grab.

**grab\_status()**

Returns `None` if no grab is currently set on window, `local` if a local grab is set on window, and `global` if a global grab is set.

**image\_names()**

Returns a list containing the names of all existing images.

**image\_types()**

Returns a list of all image types that have been created.

**keys()**

Returns a tuple containing the names of the options available for this widget. Use `self.cget` to obtain the current value for each option.

**lower(belowThis=None)**

Changes the widget's position in the stacking order. If the `belowThis` argument is omitted then the method lowers the window so that it is below all of its siblings in the stacking order (it will be obscured by any siblings that overlap it and will not obscure any siblings). If `belowThis` is specified then it must be the identity of a window that is either a sibling of window or the descendant of a sibling of window. In this case the `lower` method will insert the window into the stacking order just below `belowThis` (or the ancestor of `belowThis` that is a sibling of window); this could end up either raising or lowering the window.

**mainloop**

Starts processing the event loop. Nothing will be updated until this method is called and this method does not return until the `quit` method is called.

**nametowidget(name)**

Returns the widget identity corresponding to `name`.

**option\_add(pattern, value, priority = None)**

Allows you to add entries to the Tk option database. `pattern` contains the option being specified, and it consists of names and/or classes separated by asterisks or dots, in the usual X format. `value` contains a text string to associate with `pattern`; this is the value that will be returned in calls to Tkinter (`Tk_GetOption`) or by invocations of the `option_get` method. If `priority` is specified, it indicates the priority level for this option; it defaults to `interactive`.

**option\_clear()**

Clears the Tk option database. Default options (from the `RESOURCE_MANAGER` property or the `.Xdefaults` file) will be reloaded automatically the next time an option is added to the database or removed from it.

**option\_get(name, className)**

Returns the value of the option specified for `self` under `name` and `class`. If several entries in the option database match `name` and `class`, then the method returns whichever was created

with the highest priority level. If there are several matching entries at the same priority level, then it returns whichever entry was most recently entered into the option database. If there are no matching entries, then the empty string is returned.

### **option\_readfile(fileName, priority = None)**

Reads `fileName`, which should have the standard format for an X resource database such as `.Xdefaults`, and it adds all the options specified in that file to the option database. If `priority` is specified, it indicates the priority level at which to enter the options; priority defaults to `interactive`.

### **quit()**

Exits the mainloop.

### **selection\_clear()**

Clears the selection if it is currently in this widget. If the selection isn't in this widget then the method has no effect.

### **selection\_get()**

Retrieves the value of selection from the window's display and returns it as a result.

### **selection\_handle(handler)**

Creates a handler for selection requests, such that `handler` will be executed whenever selection is owned by the window and someone attempts to retrieve it in the form given by type (e.g. type is specified in the `selection_get` method). `selection` defaults to `PRIMARY`, `type` defaults to `STRING`, and `format` defaults to `STRING`. If `handler` is empty then any existing handler for the window, type and selection is removed.

### **selection\_own()**

Causes `self` to become the new owner of selection on the window's display, returning an empty string as a result. The existing owner, if any, is notified that it has lost the selection.

### **selection\_own\_get()**

Returns the identity of the window in this application that owns selection on the display containing `self`, or an empty string if no window in this application owns the selection. `selection` defaults to `PRIMARY` and `window` defaults to the root window.

### **send(interp, cmd, \*args)**

Arranges for `cmd` (and `args`) to be executed in the application named by `interp`. It returns the result or error from that command execution. `interp` may be the name of any application whose main window is on the display containing the sender's main window; it need not be within the same process. If no `args` arguments are present, then the command to be executed is contained entirely within the `cmd` argument. If one or more `args` are present, they are concatenated to form the command to be executed, just as for the `eval` command.

**`setvar(name='PY_VAR', value ='1')`**

Sets the specified variable, `name`, to the value supplied.

**`tk_bisque()`**

Provided for backward compatibility: it restores the application's colors to the light brown (`bisque`) color scheme used in Tk 3.6 and earlier versions.

**`tk_focusFollowsMouse()`**

Creates an implicit focus model: it reconfigures Tk so that the focus is set to a window whenever the mouse enters it.

**`tk_focusNext(), tk_focusPrev()`**

The `tk_focusNext` and `tk_focusPrev` methods implement a focus order among the windows of a top-level; they are used in the default bindings for TAB and SHIFT TAB, among other things.

**`tk_menuBar(*args)`**

Does nothing, since the Tk function is obsolete.

**`tk_setPalette(*args)`**

Changes the color scheme for Tk by modifying the colors of existing widgets and by changing the option database so that future widgets will use the new color scheme. If `tk_setPalette` is invoked with a single argument, the argument is the name of a color to use as the normal background color; `tk_setPalette` will compute a complete color palette from this background color.

Alternatively, the arguments to `tk_setPalette` may consist of any number of name-value pairs, where the first argument of the pair is the name of an option in the Tk option database and the second argument is the new value to use for that option. The following database options are currently supported:

- `activeBackground`
- `activeForeground`
- `background`
- `disabledForeground`
- `foreground`
- `highlightBackground`
- `highlightColor`
- `insertBackground`
- `selectColor`
- `selectBackground`
- `selectForeground`
- `troughColor`

**`tk_strictMotif(boolean=None)`**

`boolean` is set to zero by default. If an application sets it to TRUE, then Tk attempts to adhere as closely as possible to Motif look-and-feel standards. For example, active elements such as buttons and scrollbar sliders will not change color when the pointer passes over them.

### **tkraise(*aboveThis=None*) [*lift(*aboveThis=None*)*]**

If the *aboveThis* argument is omitted then the method raises *self* so that it is above all of its siblings in the stacking order (it will not be obscured by any siblings and will obscure any siblings that overlap it). If *aboveThis* is specified then it must be the identity of a window that is either a sibling of the window or the descendant of a sibling of the window. In this case the *raise* method will insert *self* into the stacking order just above *aboveThis* (or the ancestor of *aboveThis* that is a sibling of the window); this could end up either raising or lowering the window.

### **unbind(*sequence, funcid=None*)**

Removes any bindings for the given *sequence*. If the event handler *funcid* is given bindings for *sequence*, that handler alone will be removed.

### **unbind\_all(*sequence*)**

Removes all bindings for the supplied *sequence* at the application level.

### **unbind\_class(*className, sequence*)**

Removes all bindings for the supplied *sequence* for the specified class *className*.

### **update()**

Processes all pending events on the event list. In particular, completes all geometry negotiation and redraws widgets as necessary. Use this method with care, since it can be a source of problems, not only by consuming CPU cycles but also by setting up potential race conditions.

### **update\_idletasks()**

Processes all pending idle events on the event list.

### **wait\_variable(*name='PY\_VAR'*)**

Waits for the value of the supplied Tkinter variable, *name*, to change. Note that the method enters a local event loop until the variable changes, so the application's mainloop continues.

### **wait\_visibility(*window=None*)**

Waits for the specified *window* to become visible. Note that the method enters a local event loop until the variable changes, so the application's mainloop continues.

### **wait\_window(*window=None*)**

Waits for the specified *window* to be destroyed. Note that the method enters a local event loop until the variable changes, so the application's mainloop continues.

## **Winfo methods**

### **winfo\_atom(*name, displayof=0*)**

Returns an integer giving the integer identifier for the atom whose name is *name*. If no atom exists with the name *name* then a new one is created. If the *displayof* option is given then

the atom is looked up on the `display` of window; otherwise it is looked up on the display of the application's main window.

### **winfo\_atomname(id, displayof=0)**

Returns the textual name for the atom whose integer identifier is `id`. If the `displayof` option is given then the identifier is looked up on the display of window; otherwise it is looked up on the display of the application's main window. This method is the inverse of the `winfo_atom` method. It generates an error if no such atom exists.

### **winfo\_cells()**

Returns an integer giving the number of cells in the color map for the window.

### **winfo\_children()**

Returns a list containing the path names of all the children of window. The list is in stacking order, with the lowest window first. Top-level windows are returned as children of their logical parents.

### **winfo\_class()**

Returns the class name for window.

### **winfo\_colormapfull()**

Returns `TRUE` if the colormap for the window is known to be full, `FALSE` otherwise. The colormap for a window is "known" to be full if the last attempt to allocate a new color on that window failed and this application hasn't freed any colors in the colormap since the failed allocation.

### **winfo\_containing(rootX, rootY, displayof=0)**

Returns the identity of the window containing the point given by `rootX` and `rootY`. `rootX` and `rootY` are specified in screen units in the coordinate system of the root window (if a virtual-root window manager is in use then the coordinate system of the virtual root window is used). If the `displayof` option is given then the coordinates refer to the screen containing the window; otherwise they refer to the screen of the application's main window. If no window in this application contains the point then `None` is returned. In selecting the containing window, children are given higher priority than parents and among siblings the highest one in the stacking order is chosen.

### **winfo\_depth()**

Returns an integer giving the depth of window (number of bits per pixel).

### **winfo\_exists()**

Returns `TRUE` if a window exists for `self`, `FALSE` if no such window exists.

### **winfo\_fpixels(number)**

Returns a floating-point value giving the number of pixels in `window` corresponding to the distance given by `number`. `number` may be specified in any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter

(Tk\_GetScreenMM), such as `2.0c` or `1i`. The return value may be fractional; for an integer value, use `winfo_pixels`.

### **winfo\_geometry()**

Returns the geometry for window, in the form `widthxheight+x+y`. All dimensions are in pixels.

### **winfo\_height()**

Returns an integer giving window's height in pixels. When a window is first created its height will be 1 pixel; the height will eventually be changed by a geometry manager to fulfill the window's needs. If you need the true height immediately after creating a widget, invoke `update` to force the geometry manager to arrange it, or use `winfo_reqheight` to get the window's requested height instead of its actual height.

### **winfo\_id()**

Returns an integer giving a low-level platform-specific identifier for window. On Unix platforms, this is the X window identifier. Under Windows, this is the Windows HWND. On the Macintosh the value has no meaning outside Tk.

### **winfo\_interps(displayof=0)**

Returns a list whose members are the names of all Tcl interpreters (e.g. all Tk-based applications) currently registered for a particular display. If the `displayof` option is given then the return value refers to the display of window; otherwise it refers to the display of the application's main window. This may be of limited use to Tkinter applications.

### **winfo\_ismapped()**

Returns `TRUE` if `self` is currently mapped, `FALSE` otherwise.

### **winfo\_manager()**

Returns the name of the geometry manager currently responsible for `self`'s window, or an empty string if window isn't managed by any geometry manager. The name is usually the name of the Tcl method for the geometry manager, such as `pack` or `place`. If the geometry manager is a widget, such as `canvases` or `text`, the name is the widget's class, such as `canvas`.

### **winfo\_name()**

Returns window's name (i.e. its name within its parent, as opposed to its full path name).

### **winfo\_parent()**

Returns the path name of window's parent, or an empty string if window is the main window of the application.

### **winfo\_pathname(id, displayof=0)**

Returns the path name of the window whose X identifier is `id`. `id` must be a decimal, hexadeciml or octal integer and must correspond to a window in the invoking application. If the `displayof` option is given then the identifier is looked up on the display of window; otherwise it is looked up on the display of the application's main window.

**winfo\_pixels(number)**

Returns the number of pixels in window corresponding to the distance given by `number`. `number` may be specified in any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter (`Tk_GetPixels`), such as `2.0c` or `1i`. The result is rounded to the nearest integer value; for a fractional result, use `winfo_fpixels`.

**winfo\_pointerx()**

If the mouse pointer is on the same screen as `window`, returns the pointer's x coordinate, measured in pixels in the screen's root window. If a virtual root window is in use on the screen, the position is measured in the virtual root. If the mouse pointer isn't on the same screen as `window` then `-1` is returned.

**winfo\_pointery()**

If the mouse pointer is on the same screen as `window`, returns a tuple with two elements, which are the pointer's x and y coordinates measured in pixels in the screen's root window. If a virtual root window is in use on the screen, the position is computed in the virtual root. If the mouse pointer isn't on the same screen as `window` then both of the returned coordinates are `-1`.

**winfo\_pointery()**

If the mouse pointer is on the same screen as `window`, returns the pointer's y coordinate, measured in pixels in the screen's root window. If a virtual root window is in use on the screen, the position is computed in the virtual root. If the mouse pointer isn't on the same screen as `window` then `-1` is returned.

**winfo\_reqheight()**

Returns an integer giving `window`'s requested height, in pixels. This is the value used by `window`'s geometry manager to compute its geometry.

**winfo\_reqwidth()**

Returns an integer giving `window`'s requested width, in pixels. This is the value used by `window`'s geometry manager to compute its geometry.

**winfo\_rgb(color)**

Returns a tuple containing three decimal values, which are the red, green, and blue intensities that correspond to `color` in the window given by `window`. `Color` may be specified in any of the forms acceptable for a color option.

**winfo\_rootx()**

Returns an integer giving the x-coordinate, in the root window of the screen, of the upper-left corner of `window`'s border (or `window` if it has no border).

**winfo\_rooty()**

Returns an integer giving the y-coordinate, in the root window of the screen, of the upper-left corner of `window`'s border (or `window` if it has no border).

**winfo\_screen()**

Returns the name of the screen associated with window, in the form `displayName.screenIndex`.

**winfo\_screencells()**

Returns an integer giving the number of cells in the default color map for window's screen.

**winfo\_screendepth()**

Returns an integer giving the depth of the root window of window's screen (number of bits per pixel).

**winfo\_screenheight()**

Returns an integer giving the height of window's screen, in pixels.

**winfo\_screenmmheight()**

Returns an integer giving the height of window's screen, in millimeters.

**winfo\_screenmmwidth()**

Returns an integer giving the width of window's screen, in millimeters.

**winfo\_screenvisual()**

Returns one of the following strings to indicate the default visual class for window's screen: `directcolor`, `grayscale`, `pseudocolor`, `staticcolor`, `staticgray` or `truecolor`.

**winfo\_screenwidth()**

Returns an integer giving the width of window's screen, in pixels.

**winfo\_server()**

Returns a string containing information about the server for window's display. The exact format of this string may vary from platform to platform. For X servers the string has the form `XmajorRminor vendor vendorVersion` where `major` and `minor` are the version and revision numbers provided by the server (e.g. `X11R5`), `vendor` is the name of the vendor for the server and `vendorRelease` is an integer release number provided by the server.

**winfo\_toplevel()**

Returns the identity of the top-level window containing window.

**winfo\_viewable()**

Returns `TRUE` if window and all of its ancestors up through the nearest toplevel window are mapped. Returns `FALSE` if any of these windows are not mapped.

**winfo\_visual()**

Returns one of the following strings to indicate the visual class for window: `directcolor`, `grayscale`, `pseudocolor`, `staticcolor`, `staticgray` or `truecolor`.

**winfo\_visualid()**

Returns the X identifier for the visual for window.

**winfo\_visualsavailable(includeids=0)**

Returns a list whose elements describe the visuals available for window's screen. Each element consists of a visual class followed by an integer depth. The class has the same form as returned by winfo\_visual. The depth gives the number of bits per pixel in the visual. In addition, if the includeids argument is provided, then the depth is followed by the X identifier for the visual.

**winfo\_vrootheight()**

Returns the height of the virtual root window associated with window if there is one; otherwise returns the height of window's screen.

**winfo\_vrootwidth()**

Returns the width of the virtual root window associated with window if there is one; otherwise returns the width of window's screen.

**winfo\_vrootx()**

Returns the x-offset of the virtual root window associated with window, relative to the root window of its screen. This is normally either zero or negative. Returns 0 if there is no virtual root window for window.

**winfo\_vrooty()**

Returns the y-offset of the virtual root window associated with window, relative to the root window of its screen. This is normally either zero or negative. Returns 0 if there is no virtual root window for window.

**winfo\_width()**

Returns an integer giving window's width in pixels. When a window is first created its width will be 1 pixel; the width will eventually be changed by a geometry manager to fulfill the window's needs. If you need the true width immediately after creating a widget, invoke update to force the geometry manager to arrange it, or use winfo\_reqwidth to get the window's requested width instead of its actual width.

**winfo\_x()**

Returns an integer giving the x-coordinate, in window's parent, of the upper left corner of window's border (or window if it has no border).

**winfo\_y()**

Returns an integer giving the y-coordinate, in window's parent, of the upper left corner of window's border (or window if it has no border).

# Wm methods

## Description

The `wm` methods are used to interact with window managers in order to control such things as the title for a window, its geometry, or the increments in terms of which it may be resized. Tkinter makes these methods accessible at the root window (`Tk`) and with all `TopLevel` widgets. The `wm` methods can take any of a number of different forms, depending on the option argument. All of the forms expect at least one additional argument, `window`, which must be the path name of a top-level window.

Tkinter defines synonyms for `wm` methods, although you are free to use the `wm_` prefix if you wish. The legal forms for the `wm` methods follow.

### **aspect(minNumer=None, minDenom=None, maxNumer=None, maxDenom=None)**

If `minNumer`, `minDenom`, `maxNumer`, and `maxDenom` are all specified, then they will be passed to the window manager and the window manager should use them to enforce a range of acceptable aspect ratios for `window`. The aspect ratio of `window` (width/length) will be constrained to lie between `minNumer/minDenom` and `maxNumer/maxDenom`.

If `minNumer`, etc., are all unspecified, then any existing aspect ratio restrictions are removed. If `minNumer`, etc., are specified, then the method returns `None`. Otherwise, it returns a tuple containing four elements, which are the current values of `minNumer`, `minDenom`, `maxNumer` and `maxDenom` (if no aspect restrictions are in effect, then `None` is returned).

### **client(name=None)**

If `name` is specified, this method stores `name` (which should be the name of the host on which the application is executing) in `window`'s `WM_CLIENT_MACHINE` property for use by the window manager or session manager. If `name` isn't specified, the method returns the last name set in a `wm_client` method for `window`. If `name` is specified as an empty string, the method deletes the `WM_CLIENT_MACHINE` property from `window`. This method is only useful for X systems.

### **colormapwindows(\*windowList)**

Used to manipulate the `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property, which provides information to the window managers about windows that have private colormaps. If `windowList` isn't specified, the method returns a list whose elements are the names of the windows in the `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property. If `windowList` is specified, it consists of a list of window path names; the method overwrites the `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property with the given windows and returns `None`. This method is only useful for X systems.

The `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property should normally contain a list of the internal windows within `window` whose colormaps differ from their parents. The order of the windows in the property indicates a priority order: the window manager will attempt to install as many colormaps as possible from the head of this list when `window` gets the colormap focus. If `window` is not included among the windows in `windowList`, Tk implicitly adds it at the end of the `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property, so that its colormap is lowest in priority. If `wm_colormapwindows` is not invoked, Tk will automatically set the property for each top-

level window to all the internal windows whose colormaps differ from their parents, followed by the top-level itself; the order of the internal windows is undefined. See the ICCCM documentation for more information on the `WM_COLORMAP_WINDOWS` property.

### **command(callback=None)**

Specifies a `callback` to associate with the button. This callback is typically invoked when mouse button 1 is released over the button window. This method is only useful for X systems.

### **deiconify()**

Arranges for window to be displayed in normal (non-iconified) form. This is done by mapping the window. If the window has never been mapped then this method will not map the window, but it will ensure that when the window is first mapped it will be displayed in deiconified form. Returns None.

### **focusmodel(model=None)**

If active or passive is supplied as an optional `model` argument to the method, then it specifies the focus model for window. In this case the method returns an empty string. If no additional argument is supplied, then the method returns the current focus model for window. An active focus model means that window will claim the input focus for itself or its descendants, even at times when the focus is currently in some other application. Passive means that window will never claim the focus for itself: the window manager should give the focus to window at appropriate times. However, once the focus has been given to window or one of its descendants, the application may re-assign the focus among window's descendants. The focus model defaults to passive, and Tk's focus method assumes a passive model of focusing.

### **frame()**

If window has been reparented by the window manager into a decorative frame, the method returns the platform-specific window identifier for the outermost frame that contains window (the window whose parent is the root or virtual root). If window hasn't been reparented by the window manager then the method returns the platform specific window identifier for window. This method is only useful for X systems.

### **geometry(newGeometry=None)**

If `newGeometry` is specified, then the geometry of window is changed and an empty string is returned. Otherwise the current geometry for window is returned (this is the most recent geometry specified either by manual resizing or in a `wm_geometry` call). `newGeometry` has the form `=widthxheight+-x+-y`, where any of `=`, `widthxheight`, or `+-x+-y` may be omitted. Width and height are positive integers specifying the desired dimensions of window. If window is gridded then the dimensions are specified in grid units; otherwise they are specified in pixel units. `x` and `y` specify the desired location of window on the screen, in pixels. If `x` is preceded by `+`, it specifies the number of pixels between the left edge of the screen and the left edge of window's border; if preceded by `-` then `x` specifies the number of pixels between the right edge of the screen and the right edge of window's border. If `y` is preceded by `+` then it specifies the number of pixels between the top of the screen and the top of window's border; if `y` is preceded by `-` then it specifies the number of pixels between the bottom of window's

border and the bottom of the screen. If `newGeometry` is specified as an empty string then any existing user-specified geometry for window is cancelled, and the window will revert to the size requested internally by its widgets.

### **group(pathName=None)**

If `pathname` is specified, it gives the path name for the leader of a group of related windows. The window manager may use this information, for example, to unmap all of the windows in a group when the group's leader is iconified. `pathName` may be specified as an empty string to remove window from any group association. If `pathname` is specified then the method returns an empty string; otherwise it returns the path name of window's current group leader, or an empty string if window isn't part of any group.

### **iconbitmap(bitmap=None)**

If `bitmap` is specified, then it names a bitmap in the standard forms accepted by Tkinter (`Tk_GetBitmap`). This bitmap is passed to the window manager to be displayed in window's icon, and the method returns an empty string. If `bitmap` is not specified, then any current icon bitmap is cancelled for window. If `bitmap` is specified then the method returns an empty string. Otherwise it returns the name of the current icon bitmap associated with window, or an empty string if window has no icon bitmap.

### **wm\_iconify()**

Arrange for window to be iconified. If window hasn't yet been mapped for the first time, this method will arrange for it to appear in the iconified state when it is eventually mapped.

### **iconmask(bitmap=None)**

If `bitmap` is specified, then it names a bitmap in the standard forms accepted by Tkinter (`Tk_GetBitmap`). This bitmap is passed to the window manager to be used as a mask in conjunction with the `iconbitmap` option: where the mask has zeroes no icon will be displayed; where it has ones, the bits from the icon bitmap will be displayed. If `bitmap` is not specified, then any current icon mask is cancelled for window (this is equivalent to specifying a bitmap of all ones). If `bitmap` is specified then the method returns an empty string. Otherwise it returns the name of the current icon mask associated with window, or an empty string if no mask is in effect.

### **iconname(newName=None)**

If `newName` is specified, then it is passed to the window manager; the window manager should display `newName` inside the icon associated with window. In this case an empty string is returned as result. If `newName` isn't specified then the method returns the current icon name for window, or an empty string if no icon name has been specified (in this case the window manager will normally display the window's title, as specified with the `wm_title` call).

### **iconposition(x=None, y=None)**

If `x` and `y` are specified, they are passed to the window manager as a hint about where to position the icon for window. In this case an empty string is returned. If `x` and `y` are specified as empty strings then any existing icon position hint is cancelled. If neither `x` nor `y` is specified,

then the method returns a tuple containing two values, which are the current icon position hints (if no hints are in effect then `None` is returned).

### **iconwindow(pathName=None)**

If `pathname` is specified, it is the path name for a window to use as icon for window; when window is iconified then `pathname` will be mapped to serve as icon, and when window is de-iconified then `pathname` will be unmapped again. If `pathname` is specified as an empty string then any existing icon window association for window will be cancelled. If the `pathname` argument is specified then an empty string is returned. Otherwise the method returns the path name of the current icon window for window, or an empty string if there is no icon window currently specified for window. Button press events are disabled for window as long as it is an icon window; this is needed in order to allow window managers to “own” those events.

*Note:* Not all window managers support the notion of an icon window.

### **maxsize(width=None, height=None)**

If `width` and `height` are specified, they give the maximum permissible dimensions for window. For gridded windows the dimensions are specified in grid units; otherwise they are specified in pixel units. The window manager will restrict the window’s dimensions to be less than or equal to `width` and `height`. If `width` and `height` are specified, then the method returns `None`. Otherwise it returns a tuple with two elements, which are the maximum width and height currently in effect. The maximum size defaults to the size of the screen. If resizing has been disabled with the `wm_resizable` method, then this method has no effect. See the sections on geometry management: “Grid” section on page 492, “Pack” section on page 511 and “Place” section on page 516 for more information.

### **minsize(width=None, height=None)**

If `width` and `height` are specified, they give the minimum permissible dimensions for window. For gridded windows the dimensions are specified in grid units; otherwise they are specified in pixel units. The window manager will restrict the window’s dimensions to be greater than or equal to `width` and `height`. If `width` and `height` are specified, then the method returns `None`. Otherwise it returns a tuple with two elements, which are the minimum width and height currently in effect. The minimum size defaults to one pixel in each dimension. If resizing has been disabled with the `wm_resizable` method, then this method has no effect. See the sections on geometry management: “Grid” section on page 492, “Pack” section on page 511 and “Place” section on page 516 for more information.

### **overrideredirect(boolean=None)**

If `boolean` is specified, it must have a proper boolean form and the override-redirect flag for window is set to that value. If `boolean` is not specified then `TRUE` or `FALSE` is returned to indicate whether the override-redirect flag is currently set for window. Setting the override-redirect flag for a window causes it to be ignored by the window manager; among other things, this means that the window will not be reparented from the root window into a decorative frame and the user will not be able to manipulate the window using the normal window manager mechanisms.

### **positionfrom(who=None)**

If `who` is specified, it must be either `program` or `user`, or an abbreviation of one of these two. It indicates whether window's current position was requested by the program or by the user. Many window managers ignore program-requested initial positions and ask the user to manually position the window; if `user` is specified then the window manager should position the window at the given place without asking the user for assistance.

If `who` is specified as an empty string, then the current position source is cancelled. If `who` is specified, then the method returns an empty string. Otherwise it returns `user` or `window` to indicate the source of the window's current position, or an empty string if no source has been specified yet. Most window managers interpret no source as equivalent to `program`. Tk will automatically set the position source to `user` when a `wm_geometry` method is invoked, unless the source has been set explicitly to `program`.

### **protocol(name=None, function=None)**

This method is used to manage window manager protocols such as `WM_DELETE_WINDOW`. `Name` is the name of an atom corresponding to a window manager protocol, such as `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` or `WM_SAVE_YOURSELF` or `WM_TAKE_FOCUS`. If both `name` and `function` are specified, then `function` is associated with the protocol specified by `name`. `name` will be added to window's `WM_PROTOCOLS` property to tell the window manager that the application has a protocol handler for `name`, and `function` will be invoked in the future whenever the window manager sends a message to the client for that protocol. In this case the method returns an empty string.

If `name` is specified but `function` isn't, then the current `function` for `name` is returned, or an empty string is returned if there is no handler defined for `name`. If `function` is specified as an empty string then the current handler for `name` is deleted and it is removed from the `WM_PROTOCOLS` property on window; an empty string is returned.

Lastly, if neither `name` nor `function` is specified, the method returns a list of all the protocols for which handlers are currently defined for window. Tk always defines a protocol handler for `WM_DELETE_WINDOW`, even if you haven't asked for one with `wm protocol`. If a `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` message arrives when you haven't defined a handler, then Tk handles the message by destroying the window for which it was received.

### **resizable(width=None, height=None)**

This method controls whether or not the user may interactively resize a top level window. If `width` and `height` are specified, they are boolean values that determine whether the width and height of window may be modified by the user. In this case the method returns an empty string. If `width` and `height` are omitted then the method returns a list with two `FALSE/TRUE` elements that indicate whether the width and height of window are currently resizable. By default, windows are resizable in both dimensions. If resizing is disabled, then the window's size will be the size from the most recent interactive resize or `wm_geometry` call. If there has been no such operation then the window's natural size will be used.

### **sizefrom(who=None)**

If `who` is specified, it must be either `program` or `user`, or an abbreviation of one of these two. It indicates whether window's current size was requested by the program or by the user. Some

window managers ignore program-requested sizes and ask the user to manually size the window; if `user` is specified then the window manager should give the window its specified size without asking the user for assistance.

If `who` is specified as an empty string, then the current size source is cancelled. If `who` is specified, then the method returns an empty string. Otherwise it returns `user` or `window` to indicate the source of the window's current size, or an empty string if no source has been specified yet. Most window managers interpret no source as equivalent to `program`.

### **state()**

Specifies one of three states for the button: `NORMAL`, `ACTIVE`, or `DISABLED`. In `NORMAL` state the button is displayed using the foreground and background options. `ACTIVE` state is typically used when the pointer is over the button. In active state the button is displayed using the `activeForeground` and `activeBackground` options. `DISABLED` state means that the button should be insensitive: the default bindings will refuse to activate the widget and will ignore mouse button presses. In this state the `disabledForeground` and `background` options determine how the button is displayed.

### **title(string=None)**

If `string` is specified, then it will be passed to the window manager for use as the title for `window` (the window manager should display this string in `window`'s title bar). If `string` isn't specified then the method returns the current title for the window. The title for a window defaults to its name.

### **transient(master=None)**

If `master` is specified, then the window manager is informed that `window` is a transient window (such as a pull-down menu) working on behalf of `master` (where `master` is the identity for a top-level window). Some window managers will use this information to manage `window` specially. If `master` is specified as an empty string then `window` is marked as not being a transient window any more. If `master` is specified, then the method returns an empty string. Otherwise the method returns the path name of `window`'s current master or an empty string if `window` isn't currently a transient window.

### **withdraw()**

Arranges for the window to be withdrawn from the screen. This causes the window to be unmapped and forgotten about by the window manager. If the window has never been mapped, then this method causes the window to be mapped in the withdrawn state. Not all window managers appear to know how to handle windows that are mapped in the withdrawn state.

*Note:* It sometimes seems to be necessary to withdraw a window and then re-map it (such as with `wm deiconify`) to get some window managers to pay attention to changes in window attributes such as `group`.

# Bitmap class

## Description

A bitmap is an image whose pixels can display either of two colors or be transparent. A bitmap image is defined by four things: a background color, a foreground color, and two bitmaps, called the source and the mask. Each of the bitmaps specifies 0/1 values for a rectangular array of pixels, and the two bitmaps must have the same dimensions. For pixels where the mask is zero, the image displays nothing, producing a transparent effect. For other pixels, the image displays the foreground color if the source data is 1 and the background color if the source data is 0.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Image`.

## Shared options

| Option                  | Default              |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <code>background</code> | <code>None</code>    |
| <code>foreground</code> | <code>"black"</code> |

## Options specific to Bitmap

| Option<br>(alias)     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Units  | Typical     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------|
| <code>data</code>     | Specifies the contents of the source bitmap as a string. The string must adhere to X11 bitmap format (e.g., as generated by the bitmap program). If both the <code>data</code> and <code>file</code> options are specified, the <code>data</code> option takes precedence.    | string |             |
| <code>file</code>     | <code>filename</code> gives the name of a file whose contents define the source bitmap. The file must adhere to X11 bitmap format (e.g., as generated by the bitmap program).                                                                                                 | string | 'icon.xbm'  |
| <code>maskdata</code> | Specifies the contents of the mask as a string. The string must adhere to X11 bitmap format (e.g., as generated by the bitmap program). If both the <code>maskdata</code> and <code>maskfile</code> options are specified, the <code>maskdata</code> option takes precedence. | string |             |
| <code>maskfile</code> | <code>filename</code> gives the name of a file whose contents define the mask. The file must adhere to X11 bitmap format (e.g., as generated by the bitmap program).                                                                                                          | string | "imask.xbm" |

## Methods

### **Bitmap(option...)**

Creates a bitmap instance using option-value pairs in option.

### **cget(option)**

Returns the current value of the configuration option given by option. option may have any of the values accepted by the bitmap constructor.

### **configure(option=value...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options for the image. If no option is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for imageName. If option is specified with no value, then the command returns a dictionary describing the one named option (this dictionary will be identical to the corresponding sublist of the value returned if no option is specified). If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns an empty string. option may have any of the values accepted by the bitmap constructor.

### **height()**

Returns an integer giving the height of the image in pixels.

### **type()**

Returns the type of image as a string (the value of the type argument to image create when the image was created).

### **width()**

Returns an integer giving the width of the image in pixels.

## Button



### **Description**

The button class defines a new window and a button widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the button such as its colors, font, text, and initial relief. The button method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the button's parent must exist.

A button is a widget that displays a textual string, bitmap or image. If text is displayed, it must all be in a single font, but it can occupy multiple lines on the screen (if it contains new-lines or if wrapping occurs because of the wrapLength option) and one of the characters may optionally be underlined using the underline option. It can display itself in either of three different ways, according to the state option: it can be made to appear raised, sunken, or flat; and it can be made to flash. When a user invokes the button (by pressing mouse button 1 with the cursor over the button), then the activate callback specified in the command option is invoked.

## Inheritance

Button inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                   | Default                         |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>activebackground</code>    | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>   |
| <code>activeforeground</code>    | <code>SystemButtonText</code>   |
| <code>anchor</code>              | <code>center</code>             |
| <code>background (bg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>   |
| <code>bitmap</code>              |                                 |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code>    | 2                               |
| <code>command</code>             |                                 |
| <code>cursor</code>              |                                 |
| <code>disabledforeground</code>  | <code>SystemDisabledText</code> |
| <code>font</code>                | (('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')  |
| <code>foreground (fg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonText</code>   |
| <code>height</code>              | 0                               |
| <code>highlightbackground</code> | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>   |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>      | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>  |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>  | 1                               |
| <code>image</code>               |                                 |
| <code>justify</code>             | <code>center</code>             |
| <code>padx</code>                | 1                               |
| <code>pady</code>                | 1                               |
| <code>relief</code>              | <code>raised</code>             |
| <code>state</code>               | <code>normal</code>             |
| <code>takefocus</code>           |                                 |
| <code>text</code>                |                                 |
| <code>textvariable</code>        |                                 |
| <code>underline</code>           | -1                              |
| <code>width</code>               | 0                               |
| <code>wraplength</code>          | 0                               |

## Options specific to Button

| Option<br>(alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Units    | Typical              | Default  |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------|----------|
| default           | Specifies one of three states for the default ring (button): NORMAL, ACTIVE, or DISABLED. In ACTIVE state, the button is drawn with the platform-specific appearance for a default button. In NORMAL state, the button is drawn with the platform-specific appearance for a non-default button, leaving enough space to draw the default button appearance. The NORMAL and ACTIVE states will result in buttons of the same size. In DISABLED state, the button is drawn with the non-default button appearance without leaving space for the default appearance. The DISABLED state may result in a smaller button than the ACTIVE state. | constant | NORMAL<br>"disabled" | disabled |

## Methods

### **flash()**

Flashes the button. This is accomplished by redisplaying the button several times, alternating between active and normal colors. At the end of the flash the button is left in the same normal/active state as when the method was invoked. This method is ignored if the button's state is disabled.

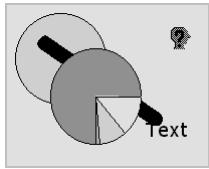
### **invoke()**

Invokes the callback associated with the button, if there is one. The return value is the return value from the callback, or an empty string if no callback is associated with the button. This method is ignored if the button's state is disabled.

### **tkButtonDown(\*ignored)** **tkButtonEnter(\*ignored)** **tkButtonInvoke(\*ignored)** **tkButtonLeave(\*ignored)** **tkButtonUp(\*ignored)**

These methods are really only useful if you are writing your own event-handling for buttons. Their function is to set the button's appearance as if the default actions had occurred. They may also be useful in simulating user interaction with a GUI.

# Canvas



## Description

The Canvas class defines a new window and creates an instance of a canvas widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the canvas such as its colors and 3-D relief. The `canvas` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the canvas's parent must exist.

Canvas widgets implement structured graphics. A canvas displays any number of items, which may be things like rectangles, circles, lines, and text. Items may be manipulated (e.g. moved or re-colored) and callbacks may be associated with items in much the same way that the `bind` method allows callbacks to be bound to widgets. For example, a particular callback may be associated with the `<Button-1>` event so that the callback is invoked whenever `Button-1` is pressed with the mouse cursor over an item. This means that items in a canvas can have behaviors defined by the Tkinter functions bound to them.

## Inheritance

Canvas inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                          |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>    |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 0                                |
| <code>cursor</code>                          |                                  |
| <code>height</code>                          | 7c                               |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>    |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>   |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 2                                |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>flat</code>                |
| <code>selectbackground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlight</code>     |
| <code>selectborderwidth</code>               | 1                                |
| <code>selectforeground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlightText</code> |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       |                                  |
| <code>width</code>                           | 10c                              |
| <code>xscrollcommand</code>                  |                                  |

## Options specific to Canvas

| Option (alias)    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units   | Typical         | Default          |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------|------------------|
| closeenough       | Specifies a floating-point value indicating how close the mouse cursor must be to an item before it is considered to be “inside” the item. Defaults to 1.0.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | float   | 0.5             | 1                |
| confine           | Specifies a boolean value that indicates whether or not it should be allowable to set the canvas’s view outside the region defined by the scrollregion argument. Defaults to TRUE, which means that the view will be constrained within the scroll region.                                                                                                            | boolean | FALSE           | 1                |
| insertbackground  | Specifies the color to use as background in the area covered by the insertion cursor. This color will normally override either the normal background for the widget (or the selection background if the insertion cursor happens to fall in the selection).                                                                                                           | color   | ‘yellow’        | SystemButtonText |
| insertborderwidth | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border to draw around the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                   | pixel   | 2               | 0                |
| insertofftime     | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain “off” in each blink cycle. If this option is zero then the cursor doesn’t blink—it is on all the time.                                                                                                                                                | integer | 250             | 300              |
| insertontime      | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain “on” in each blink cycle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | integer | 175             | 600              |
| insertwidth       | Specifies a value indicating the total width of the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ). If a border has been specified for the insertion cursor (using the <code>insertBorderWidth</code> option), the border will be drawn inside the width specified by the <code>insertWidth</code> option. | pixel   | 2               | 2                |
| scrollregion      | Specifies a list with four coordinates describing the left, top, right, and bottom coordinates of a rectangular region. This region is used for scrolling purposes and is considered to be the boundary of the information in the canvas. Each of the coordinates may be specified in any of the forms given in the COORDINATES section below.                        | list    | (10,10,200,250) |                  |

| Option (alias)   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Typical | Default |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| xscrollincrement | Specifies an increment for horizontal scrolling, in any of the usual forms permitted for screen distances. If the value of this option is greater than zero, the horizontal view in the window will be constrained so that the canvas x coordinate at the left edge of the window is always an even multiple of <code>xscrollincrement</code> ; furthermore, the units for scrolling (e.g., the change in view when the left and right arrows of a scrollbar are selected) will also be <code>xscrollincrement</code> . If the value of this option is less than or equal to zero, then horizontal scrolling is unconstrained. | distance | 10m 200 | 0       |
| yscrollcommand   | Specifies the prefix for a command used to communicate with vertical scrollbars. This option is treated in the same way as the <code>xScrollCommand</code> option, except that it is used for vertical scrollbars and is provided by widgets that support vertical scrolling. See the description of <code>xScrollCommand</code> for details on how this option is used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | function |         |         |
| yscrollincrement | Specifies an increment for horizontal scrolling, in any of the usual forms permitted for screen distances. If the value of this option is greater than zero, the horizontal view in the window will be constrained so that the canvas y coordinate at the top edge of the window is always an even multiple of <code>yscrollincrement</code> ; furthermore, the units for scrolling (e.g., the change in view when the top and bottom arrows of a scrollbar are selected) will also be <code>yscrollincrement</code> . If the value of this option is less than or equal to zero, then horizontal scrolling is unconstrained.  | distance | 10m 200 | 0       |

## Methods

### **addtag\_above(newtag, tagOrId)**

Adds `newtag` to the item just above the one given by `tagOrId` in the display list. If `tagOrId` denotes more than one item, then the topmost of these items in the display list is used.

### **addtag\_all(newtag)**

Adds `newtag` to all the items in the canvas.

### **addtag\_below(newtag, tagOrId)**

Adds `newtag` to the item just below the one given by `tagOrId` in the display list. If `tagOrId` denotes more than one item, then the lowest of these items in the display list is used.

**addtag\_closest(newtag, x, y, halo=None, start=None)**

Adds newtag to the item closest to the point given by *x* and *y*. If more than one item is at the same closest distance (meaning two items overlap the point), then the top-most of these items (the last one in the display list) is used. If *halo* is specified, then it must be a non-negative value. Any item closer than *halo* to the point is considered to overlap it. The *start* argument may be used to step circularly through all the closest items. If *start* is specified, it names an item using a tag or id (if by tag, it selects the first item in the display list with the given tag). Instead of selecting the top-most closest item, this form will select the top-most closest item that is below *start* in the display list; if no such item exists, then the selection behaves as if the *start* argument had not been specified.

**addtag\_enclosed(newtag, x1, y1, x2, y2)**

Adds newtag to all the items completely enclosed within the rectangular region given by *x1*, *y1*, *x2*, and *y2*. *x1* must be no greater than *x2* and *y1* must be no greater than *y2*.

**addtag\_overlapping(newtag, x1, y1, x2, y2)**

Adds newtag to all the items that overlap or are enclosed within the rectangular region given by *x1*, *y1*, *x2*, and *y2*. *x1* must be no greater than *x2* and *y1* must be no greater than *y2*.

**addtag\_withtag(newtag, tagOrId)**

Adds newtag to all the items given by *tagOrId*.

**bbox(tagOrId, bbox())**

Returns a tuple with four elements giving an approximate bounding box for all the items named by the *tagOrId* arguments. The tuple is in the order *x1*, *y1*, *x2*, *y2* such that the drawn areas of all the named elements are within the region bounded by *x1* on the left, *x2* on the right, *y1* on the top, and *y2* on the bottom. The return value may overestimate the actual bounding box by a few pixels. If no items match any of the *tagOrId* arguments or if the matching items have empty bounding boxes (i.e. they have nothing to display) then an empty string is returned.

**canvasx(screenx, gridspacing=None)**

Given a window x-coordinate in the canvas *screenx*, this method returns the canvas x-coordinate that is displayed at that location. If *gridspacing* is specified, then the canvas coordinate is rounded to the nearest multiple of *gridspacing* units.

**canvasy(screeny, gridspacing=None)**

Given a window y-coordinate in the canvas *screeny*, this method returns the canvas y-coordinate that is displayed at that location. If *gridspacing* is specified, then the canvas coordinate is rounded to the nearest multiple of *gridspacing* units.

**coords(tagOrId, x0, y0, x1, y1, ..., xn, yn)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this method returns a tuple whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by *tagOrId*. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If *tagOrId* refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

The following methods create canvas *items* but are documented as separate “widgets” to allow their attributes and behavior to be addressed more fully, although they are not discrete widgets in reality.

**create\_arc(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_bitmap(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_image(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_line(\*)**

See “Canvas line” on page 472.

**create\_oval(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_polygon(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_rectangle(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_text(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**create\_window(\*)**

See “Canvas Arc” on page 468.

**dchars(tagOrId, first=0, last=first)**

For each item given by `tagOrId`, deletes the characters in the range given by `first` and `last`, inclusive. If some of the items given by `tagOrId` don’t support text operations, then they are ignored. `first` and `last` are indices of characters within the item(s) as described in INDICES above. If `last` is omitted, it defaults to `first`. This method returns `None`.

**delete(tagOrId)**

Deletes each of the items given by each `tagOrId`, and returns an empty string.

**dtag(tagOrId, tagToDelete)**

For each of the items given by `tagOrId`, deletes the tag given by `tagToDelete` from the list of those associated with the item. If an item doesn’t have the tag `tagToDelete` then the item is unaffected by the method. If `tagToDelete` is omitted then it defaults to `tagOrId`. This method returns `None`.

**find\_above(tagOrId)**

Finds the item just after (above) the one given by `tagOrId` in the display list. If `tagOrId` denotes more than one item, then the last (top-most) of these items in the display list is used.

**find\_all()**

Returns a list containing the identities of all the items in the canvas.

**find\_below(tagOrId)**

Returns the item just before (below) the one given by `tagOrId` in the display list. If `tagOrId` denotes more than one item, then the first (lowest) of these items in the display list is used.

**find\_closest(x, y, halo=None, start=None)**

Returns the item closest to the point given by `x` and `y`. If more than one item is at the same closest distance (meaning two items overlap the point), then the top-most of these items (the last one in the display list) is used. If `halo` is specified, then it must be a non-negative value. Any item closer than `halo` to the point is considered to overlap it. The `start` argument may be used to step circularly through all the closest items. If `start` is specified, it names an item using a tag or ID (if by tag, it selects the first item in the display list with the given tag). Instead of selecting the top-most closest item, this form will select the top-most closest item that is below `start` in the display list; if no such item exists, then the selection behaves as if the `start` argument had not been specified. This method will always return an item if there are one or more items on the canvas.

**find\_enclosed(x1, y1, x2, y2)**

Returns a list containing the identities of all the items completely enclosed within the rectangular region given by `x1`, `y1`, `x2`, and `y2`. `x1` must be no greater than `x2` and `y1` must be no greater than `y2`.

**find\_overlapping(x1, y1, x2, y2)**

Returns a list containing the identities of all the items that overlap or are enclosed within the rectangular region given by `x1`, `y1`, `x2`, and `y2`. `x1` must be no greater than `x2` and `y1` must be no greater than `y2`.

**find\_withtag(tagOrId)**

Returns a list containing the identities of all the items given by `tagOrId`.

**focus(tagOrId)**

Sets the keyboard focus for the canvas widget to the item given by `tagOrId`. If `tagOrId` refers to several items, then the focus is set to the first such item in the display list that supports the insertion cursor. If `tagOrId` doesn't refer to any items, or if none of them support the insertion cursor, then the focus isn't changed. If `tagOrId` is an empty string, then the focus item is reset so that no item has the focus. If `tagOrId` is not specified then the method returns the ID for the item that currently has the focus, or an empty string if no item has the focus.

Once the focus has been set to an item, the item will display the insertion cursor and all keyboard events will be directed to that item. The focus item within a canvas and the focus window on the screen (set with the `focus` method) are totally independent; a given item doesn't actually have the input focus unless (a) its canvas is the focus window and (b) the item is the focus item within the canvas. In most cases it is advisable to follow the `focus` widget method with the `focus` method to set the focus window to the canvas (if it wasn't there already).

### **gettags(tagOrId)**

Returns a list whose elements are the tags associated with the item given by `tagOrId`. If `tagOrId` refers to more than one item, then the tags are returned from the first such item in the display list. If `tagOrId` doesn't refer to any items, or if the item doesn't contain tags, then an empty string is returned.

### **icursor(tagOrId, index)**

Sets the position of the insertion cursor for the item(s) given by `tagOrId` to just before the character whose position is given by `index`. If some or all of the items given by `tagOrId` don't support an insertion cursor then this method has no effect on them.

*Note:* The insertion cursor is only displayed in an item if that item currently has the keyboard focus (see the `widget` method `focus`, below), but the cursor position may be set even when the item doesn't have the focus. This method returns `None`.

### **index(tagOrId, Index)**

Returns an integer giving the numerical index within `tagOrId` corresponding to `index`. `index` gives a textual description of the desired position (such as `end`). The return value is guaranteed to lie between 0 and the number of characters within the item, inclusive. If `tagOrId` refers to multiple items, then the `index` is processed in the first of these items that supports indexing operations (in display list order).

### **insert(tagOrId, beforeThis, string)**

For each of the items given by `tagOrId`, if the item supports text insertion then `string` is inserted into the item's text just before the character whose `index` is `beforeThis`. This method returns `None`.

### **itemcget(tagOrId, option)**

Returns the current value of the configuration option for the item given by `tagOrId` whose name is `option`. This method is similar to the `cget` `widget` method except that it applies to a particular item rather than the `widget` as a whole. `option` may have any of the values accepted by the `create` `widget` method when the item was created. If `tagOrId` is a tag that refers to more than one item, the first (lowest) such item is used.

### **itemconfigure(tagOrId, options)**

This method is similar to the `configure` `widget` method except that it modifies item-specific options for the items given by `tagOrId` instead of modifying options for the overall `canvas` `widget`. If no `option` is specified, it returns a dictionary describing all of the available options

for the first item given by `tagOrId`. If `option` is specified with no value, then the method returns a dictionary describing the one named option (this list will be identical to the corresponding sublist of the value returned if no option is specified). If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given widget option(s) to have the given value(s) in each of the items given by `tagOrId`; in this case the method returns `None`. The options and values are the same as those permissible in the `create` widget method when the item(s) were created; see the sections describing individual item types below for details on the legal options.

### **move(tagOrId, xAmount, yAmount)**

Moves each of the items given by `tagOrId` in the canvas coordinate space by adding `xAmount` to the x-coordinate of each point associated with the item and `yAmount` to the y-coordinate of each point associated with the item. This method returns `None`.

### **postscript(options)**

Generates a Postscript representation for part or all of the canvas. If the `file` option is specified then the Postscript is written to a file and an empty string is returned; otherwise the Postscript is returned as the result of the method. If the interpreter that owns the canvas is marked as safe, the operation will fail because safe interpreters are not allowed to write files. If the `channel` option is specified, the argument denotes the name of a channel already opened for writing. The Postscript is written to that channel, and the channel is left open for further writing at the end of the operation. The Postscript is created in Encapsulated Postscript form using version 3.0 of the Document Structuring Conventions.

*Note:* By default Postscript is only generated for information that appears in the canvas's window on the screen. If the canvas is freshly created it may still have its initial size of  $1 \times 1$  pixel so nothing will appear in the Postscript. To get around this problem either invoke the `update` method to wait for the canvas window to reach its final size, or else use the `width` and `height` options to specify the area of the canvas to print. The option-value argument pairs provide additional information to control the generation of Postscript. The following options are supported:

| Option                 | Value (type)                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>colormap</code>  | <code>varName</code><br>(array)   | VarName must be the name of an array variable that specifies a color mapping to use in the Postscript. Each element of <code>varName</code> must consist of Postscript code to set a particular color value (e.g. <code>1.0 1.0 0.0 setrgbcolor</code> ). When outputting color information in the Postscript, Tk checks to see if there is an element of <code>varName</code> with the same name as the color. If so, Tk uses the value of the element as the Postscript command to set the color. If this option hasn't been specified, or if there isn't an entry in <code>varName</code> for a given color, then Tk uses the red, green, and blue intensities from the X color. |
| <code>colormode</code> | <code>mode</code><br>(string)     | Specifies how to output color information. Mode must be either <code>color</code> (for full color output), <code>gray</code> (convert all colors to their gray-scale equivalents) or <code>mono</code> (convert all colors to black or white).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>file</code>      | <code>fileName</code><br>(string) | Specifies the name of the file in which to write the Postscript. If this option isn't specified then the Postscript is returned as the result of the command instead of being written to a file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Option       | Value (type)          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fontmap      | varName<br>(array)    | VarName must be the name of an array variable that specifies a font mapping to use in the Postscript. Each element of varName must consist of a Tcl list with two elements, which are the name and point size of a Postscript font. When outputting Postscript commands for a particular font, Tk checks to see if varName contains an element with the same name as the font. If there is such an element, then the font information contained in that element is used in the Postscript. Otherwise Tk attempts to guess what Postscript font to use. Tk's guesses generally only work for well-known fonts such as Times and Helvetica and Courier, and only if the X font name does not omit any dashes up through the point size. For example, -Courier-Bold-R-Normal-*120-* will work but *CourierBoldRNor-mal*120* will not; Tk needs the dashes to parse the font name. |
| height       | height<br>(distance)  | Specifies the height of the area of the canvas to print. Defaults to the height of the canvas window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| pagean-chor  | constant              | Specifies which point of the printed area of the canvas should appear over the positioning point on the page (which is given by the pagex and pagey options). For example, pageanchor n means that the top center of the area of the canvas being printed (as it appears in the canvas window) should be over the positioning point. Defaults to center.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| page- height | height<br>(distance)  | Specifies that the Postscript should be scaled in both x and y so that the printed area is size high on the Postscript page. size consists of a floating-point number followed by c for centimeters, i for inches, m for millimeters, or p or nothing for printer's points (1/72 inch). Defaults to the height of the printed area on the screen. If both pageheight and pagewidth are specified then the scale factor from pagewidth is used (non-uniform scaling is not implemented).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| pagewidth    | width<br>(distance)   | Specifies that the Postscript should be scaled in both x and y so that the printed area is size wide on the Postscript page. size has the same form as for pageheight. Defaults to the width of the printed area on the screen. If both pageheight and pagewidth are specified then the scale factor from pagewidth is used (non-uniform scaling is not implemented).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| pagex        | position<br>(integer) | position gives the x-coordinate of the positioning point on the Postscript page, using any of the forms allowed for pageheight. Used in conjunction with the pagey and pageanchor options to determine where the printed area appears on the Postscript page. Defaults to the center of the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| pagey        | position<br>(integer) | position gives the y-coordinate of the positioning point on the Postscript page, using any of the forms allowed for pageheight. Used in conjunction with the pagex and pageanchor options to determine where the printed area appears on the Postscript page. Defaults to the center of the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| rotate       | boolean<br>(boolean)  | boolean specifies whether the printed area is to be rotated 90 degrees. In non-rotated output the x-axis of the printed area runs along the short dimension of the page ("portrait" orientation); in rotated output the x-axis runs along the long dimension of the page ("landscape" orientation). Defaults to non-rotated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| width        | width<br>(distance)   | Specifies the width of the area of the canvas to print. Defaults to the width of the canvas window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| x            | position<br>(integer) | Specifies the x-coordinate of the left edge of the area of the canvas that is to be printed, in canvas coordinates, not window coordinates. Defaults to the coordinate of the left edge of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Option | Value (type)          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| y      | position<br>(integer) | Specifies the y-coordinate of the top edge of the area of the canvas that is to be printed, in canvas coordinates, not window coordinates. Defaults to the coordinate of the top edge of the window. |

### **scale(tagOrId, xOrigin, yOrigin, xSc)**

Rescale all of the items given by `tagOrId` in canvas coordinate space. `xOrigin` and `yOrigin` identify the origin for the scaling operation and `xScale` and `yScale` identify the scale factors for x- and y-coordinates, respectively (a scale factor of 1.0 implies no change to that coordinate). For each of the points defining each item, the x-coordinate is adjusted to change the distance from `xOrigin` by a factor of `xScale`. Similarly, each y-coordinate is adjusted to change the distance from `yOrigin` by a factor of `yScale`. This method returns `None`.

### **scan\_dragto(x, y)**

Computes the difference between its `x` and `y` arguments (which are typically mouse coordinates) and the `x` and `y` arguments to the last `scan_mark` call for the widget. It then adjusts the view by 10 times the difference in coordinates. This method is typically associated with mouse motion events in the widget, to produce the effect of dragging the canvas at high speed through its window. The return value is an empty string.

### **scan\_mark(x, y)**

Records `x` and `y` and the canvas's current view; used in conjunction with later `scan_dragto` calls. Typically this method is associated with a mouse button press in the widget and `x` and `y` are the coordinates of the mouse. It returns `None`.

### **select\_adjust(tagOrId, index)**

Locates the end of the selection in `tagOrId` nearest to the character given by `index`, and adjusts that end of the selection to be at `index` (i.e. including but not going beyond `index`). The other end of the selection is made the anchor point for future `select_to` calls. If the selection isn't currently in `tagOrId` then this method behaves the same as the `select_to` widget method. Returns `None`.

### **select\_clear()**

Clears the selection if it is in this widget. If the selection isn't in this widget then the method has no effect. Returns `None`.

### **select\_from(tagOrId, index)**

Sets the selection anchor point for the widget to be just before the character given by `index` in the item given by `tagOrId`. This method doesn't change the selection; it just sets the fixed end of the selection for future `select_to` calls. Returns `None`.

### **select\_item()**

Returns the ID of the selected item, if the selection is in an item in this canvas. If the selection is not in this canvas then an empty string is returned.

### **select\_to(tagOrId, index)**

Sets the selection to consist of those characters of `tagOrId` between the selection anchor point and `index`. The new selection will include the character given by `index`; it will include the character given by the anchor point only if `index` is greater than or equal to the anchor point. The anchor point is determined by the most recent `select_adjust` or `select_from` call for this widget. If the selection anchor point for the widget isn't currently in `tagOrId`, then it is set to the same character given by `index`. Returns `None`.

### **tag\_bind(tagOrId, sequence=None, function=None, add=None)**

Associates `function` with all the items given by `tagOrId` so that whenever the event sequence given by `sequence` occurs for one of the items, the `function` will be invoked. This widget method is similar to the `bind` method except that it operates on items in a canvas rather than entire widgets. If all arguments are specified then a new binding is created, replacing any existing binding for the same sequence and `tagOrId` (if the first character of `function` is `+` then `function` augments an existing binding rather than replacing it). In this case the return value is an empty string. If `function` is omitted then the method returns the function associated with `tagOrId` and `sequence` (an error occurs if there is no such binding). If both `function` and `sequence` are omitted then the method returns a list of all the sequences for which bindings have been defined for `tagOrId`.

The only events for which bindings may be specified are those related to the mouse and keyboard (such as `Enter`, `Leave`, `ButtonPress`, `Motion`, and `KeyPress`) or virtual events. `Enter` and `Leave` events trigger for an item when it becomes the current item or ceases to be the current item; note that these events are different than `Enter` and `Leave` events for windows.

Mouse-related events are directed to the current item, if any. Keyboard related events are directed to the focus item, if any. If a virtual event is used in a binding, that binding can trigger only if the virtual event is defined by an underlying mouse-related or keyboard-related event. It is possible for multiple bindings to match a particular event. This could occur, for example, if one binding is associated with the item's ID and another is associated with one of the item's tags. When this occurs, all of the matching bindings are invoked. A binding associated with the `ALL` tag is invoked first, followed by one binding for each of the item's tags (in order), followed by a binding associated with the item's ID. If there are multiple matching bindings for a single tag, then only the most specific binding is invoked.

A “break” string returned by an event handler terminates that handler and skips any remaining handlers for the event, just as for the `bind` method. If bindings have been created for a canvas window using the `bind` method, then they are invoked in addition to bindings created for the canvas's items using the `bind` widget call. The bindings for items will be invoked before any of the bindings for the window as a whole.

### **tag\_lower(tagOrId, belowThis)**

Moves all of the items given by `tagOrId` to a new position in the display list just before the item given by `belowThis`. If `tagOrId` refers to more than one item then all are moved but the relative order of the moved items will not be changed. `belowThis` is a tag or ID; if it refers to more than one item then the first (lowest) of these items in the display list is used as the destination location for the moved items.

*Note:* This method has no effect on window items. Window items always obscure other item types, and the stacking order of window items is determined by the `raise` and

lower methods, not the `raise` and `lower` widget methods for canvases. This method returns `None`.

### **`tag_raise(tagOrId, aboveThis)`**

Moves all of the items given by `tagOrId` to a new position in the display list just after the item given by `aboveThis`. If `tagOrId` refers to more than one item then all are moved but the relative order of the moved items will not be changed. `aboveThis` is a tag or ID; if it refers to more than one item then the last (topmost) of these items in the display list is used as the destination location for the moved items.

*Note:* This method has no effect on window items. Window items always obscure other item types, and the stacking order of window items is determined by the `raise` and `lower` methods, not the `raise` and `lower` widget methods for canvases. This method returns `None`.

### **`tag_unbind(tagOrId, sequence, funcId=None)`**

Removes the association of the event `sequence` with the event handler `funcId` for all the items given by `tagOrId`. If `funcId` is supplied the handler will be destroyed.

### **`type(tagOrId)`**

Returns the type of the item given by `tagOrId`, such as `rectangle` or `text`. If `tagOrId` refers to more than one item, then the type of the first item in the display list is returned. If `tagOrId` doesn't refer to any items at all then an empty string is returned.

### **`xview_moveto(fraction)`**

Adjusts the view in the window so that `fraction` of the total width of the canvas is off-screen to the left. `Fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1.

### **`xview_scroll(number, what)`**

This command shifts the view in the window left or right according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either `UNITS` or `PAGES`. If `what` is `UNITS`, the view adjusts left or right in units of the `xScrollIncrement` option, if it is greater than zero, or in units of one-tenth the window's width otherwise. If `what` is `PAGES` then the view adjusts in units of nine-tenths the window's width. If `number` is negative, information farther to the left becomes visible; if it is positive, then information farther to the right becomes visible.

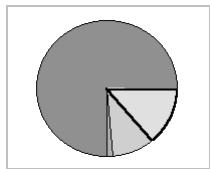
### **`yview_moveto(fraction)`**

Adjusts the view in the window so that `fraction` of the canvas's area is off-screen to the top. `fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1.

### **`yview_scroll(number, what)`**

Adjusts the view in the window up or down according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either `UNITS` or `PAGES`. If `what` is `UNITS`, the view adjusts up or down in units of the `yScrollIncrement` option, if it is greater than zero, or in units of one-tenth the window's height otherwise. If `what` is `PAGES` then the view adjusts in units of nine-tenths the window's height. If `number` is negative then higher information becomes visible; if it is positive then lower information becomes visible.

# Canvas Arc



## Description

Items of type `arc` appear on the display as arc-shaped regions. An arc is a section of an oval delimited by two angles (specified by the `start` and `extent` options) and is displayed in one of several ways (specified by the `style` option).

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

## Shared options

| Option             | Default     |
|--------------------|-------------|
| <code>fill</code>  | Transparent |
| <code>width</code> | 1           |

## Options specific to Arc

| Option (alias)              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units               | Typical             | Default |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------|
| <code>extent</code>         | Specifies the size of the angular range occupied by the arc. The arc's range extends for degrees degrees counter-clockwise from the starting angle given by the <code>start</code> option. degrees may be negative. If it is greater than 360 or less than -360, then degrees modulo 360 is used as the extent.                          | degrees             | 10.0                |         |
| <code>outline</code>        | <code>color</code> specifies a color to use for drawing the arc's outline; it may have any of the forms accepted by Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetColor</code> ). This option defaults to black. If <code>color</code> is specified as an empty string then no outline is drawn for the arc.                                                     | <code>color</code>  | RED 'black' 'black' |         |
| <code>outlinestipple</code> | Indicates that the outline for the arc should be drawn with a stipple pattern; <code>bitmap</code> specifies the stipple pattern to use. If the <code>outline</code> option hasn't been specified then this option has no effect. If <code>bitmap</code> is an empty string (the default), then the outline is drawn in a solid fashion. | <code>bitmap</code> | 'gray12'            | None    |
| <code>start</code>          | Specifies the beginning of the angular range occupied by the arc. degrees is given in units of degrees measured counter-clockwise from the three-o'clock position; it may be either positive or negative.                                                                                                                                | degrees             | 0.0                 | 0.0     |

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units    | Typical         | Default  |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| stipple        | Indicates that the arc should be filled in a stipple pattern; bitmap specifies the stipple pattern to use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | bitmap   | 'gray25'        | None     |
| style          | Specifies how to draw the arc. If type is PIESLICE (the default) then the arc's region is defined by a section of the oval's perimeter plus two line segments, one each between the center of the oval and each end of the perimeter section. If type is CHORD then the arc's region is defined by a section of the oval's perimeter plus a single line segment connecting the two end points of the perimeter section. If type is ARC then the arc's region consists of a section of the perimeter alone. In this last case the fill option is ignored. | constant | CHORD 'arc'     | PIESLICE |
| tags           | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. TagList consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | tuple    | ('tag1', 'arc') | None     |

## Methods

### **create\_arc(x0, y0, x1, y1, \*options)**

The arguments `x0`, `y0`, `x1`, and `y1` give the coordinates of two diagonally opposite corners of a rectangular region enclosing the oval that defines the arc. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes an arc item.

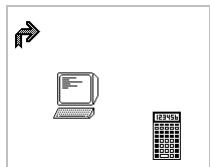
### **coords(item, x0, y0, x1, y1)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by `item`. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named `item`. If `item` refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more arc items.

# Canvas bitmap



## Description

Items of type `bitmap` appear on the display as images with two colors, foreground and background.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

## Shared options

| Option                  | Default                  |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>anchor</code>     | <code>CENTER</code>      |
| <code>background</code> | <code>transparent</code> |
| <code>foreground</code> | <code>"black"</code>     |

## Options specific to Bitmap

| Option (alias)      | Description                                                                                                                                                                           | Units | Typical                         | Default |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|---------|
| <code>bitmap</code> | Specifies the bitmap to display in the item. <code>bitmap</code> may have any of the forms accepted by Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetBitmap</code> ).                                         |       | 'info'                          |         |
| <code>tags</code>   | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. <code>TagList</code> consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. <code>TagList</code> may be empty. | tuple | ('tag1', None<br>'bit-<br>map') |         |

## Methods

### **`create_bitmap(x, y, *options)`**

The arguments `x` and `y` specify the coordinates of a point used to position the bitmap on the display (using the `anchor` option). After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` calls to change the item's configuration.

### **`delete(item)`**

Deletes a bitmap item

**coords(item, x, y)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by item. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If item refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

**itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more bitmap items.

# Canvas image

**Description**

Items of type image are used to display images on a canvas.

**Inheritance**

Inherits from Widget, Canvas.

**Shared options**

| Option | Default |
|--------|---------|
| anchor | CENTER  |

**Options specific to Image**

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                 | Units | Typical         | Default |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-----------------|---------|
| image  | Specifies the name of the image to display in the item. This image must have been created previously with the create_image method.                          | image | 'scene.gif'     |         |
| tags   | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. TagList consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. TagList may be empty. | tuple | ('tag1', 'img') | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_image(x, y, \*options)**

The arguments `x` and `y` specify the coordinates of a point used to position the image on the display (using the `anchor` option). After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes an image `item`.

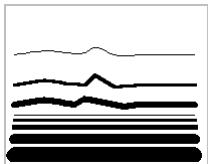
### **coords(item, x, y)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an `item`. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by `item`. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named `item`. If `item` refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more image items.

## Canvas line



### **Description**

Items of type `line` appear on the display as one or more connected line segments or curves.

### **Inheritance**

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

### **Shared options**

| Option             | Default |
|--------------------|---------|
| <code>fill</code>  | "black" |
| <code>width</code> | 1       |

## Options specific to Line

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Units    | Typical          | Default    |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------|------------|
| arrow       | Indicates whether or not arrowheads are to be drawn at one or both ends of the line. where must have one of the values None (for no arrowheads), FIRST (for an arrowhead at the first point of the line), last (for an arrowhead at the last point of the line), or both (for arrowheads at both ends).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | constant | FIRST<br>'last'  | None       |
| arrowshape  | This option indicates how to draw arrowheads. The shape argument must be a tuple with three elements, each specifying a distance in any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter. The first element of the list gives the distance along the line from the neck of the arrowhead to its tip. The second element gives the distance along the line from the trailing points of the arrowhead to the tip, and the third element gives the distance from the outside edge of the line to the trailing points. If this option isn't specified then Tk picks a "reasonable" shape. | tuple    | (6, 8, 3)        | (8, 10, 3) |
| capstyle    | Specifies the ways in which caps are to be drawn at the endpoints of the line. The style may have any of the forms (BUTT, PROJECTING, or ROUND). Where arrowheads are drawn the cap style is ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | constant | BUTT<br>'round'  | BUTT       |
| joinstyle   | Specifies the ways in which joints are to be drawn at the vertices of the line. The style may have any of the forms (BEVEL, MITER, or ROUND). If the line only contains two points then this option is irrelevant.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | constant | BEVEL<br>'miter' | ROUND      |
| smooth      | The value must be a boolean. It indicates whether or not the line should be drawn as a curve. If so, the line is rendered as a set of parabolic splines: one spline is drawn for the first and second line segments, one for the second and third, and so on. Straight-line segments can be generated within a curve by duplicating the end-points of the desired line segment.                                                                                                                                                                                         | boolean  | 1 FALSE          | FALSE      |
| splinesteps | Specifies the degree of smoothness desired for curves: each spline will be approximated with number line segments. This option is ignored unless the smooth option is true.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | integer  | 20               | 12         |

| Option  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Units  | Typical          | Default |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|---------|
| stipple | Indicates that the line should be filled in a stipple pattern; <code>bitmap</code> specifies the stipple pattern to use, in any of the forms accepted by Tkinter ( <code>TK_GetBitmap</code> ). If <code>bitmap</code> is an empty string (the default), then filling is done in a solid fashion. | bitmap | 'gray25'         | None    |
| tags    | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. <code>tuple</code><br><code>TagList</code> consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item.<br><code>TagList</code> may be empty.                                                                                    |        | ('tag1', 'line') | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_line(x0, y0, x1, y1, ..., xn, yn, \*options)**

The arguments `x0` through `yn` give the coordinates for a series of two or more points that describe a series of connected line segments. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes a line item.

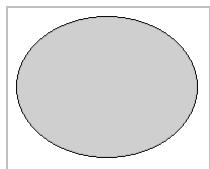
### **coords(item, x0, y0, x1, y1, ..., xn, yn)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by `item`. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If `item` refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more line items.

## Canvas oval



### **Description**

Items of type oval appear as circular or oval regions on the display. Each oval may have an outline, a fill, or both.

## Inheritance

Inherits from Widget, Canvas.

## Shared options

| Option | Default     |
|--------|-------------|
| fill   | transparent |
| width  | 1           |

## Options specific to Oval

| Option  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units  | Typical             | Default |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------------------|---------|
| outline | color specifies a color to use for drawing the oval's outline. If color is an empty string then no outline will be drawn for the oval.                                                                                                                                    | color  | RED<br>'black'      | 'black' |
| stipple | Indicates that the oval should be filled in a stipple pattern; bitmap specifies the stipple pattern to use. If the fill option hasn't been specified then this option has no effect. If bitmap is an empty string (the default), then filling is done in a solid fashion. | bitmap | 'gray25'            | None    |
| tags    | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. TagList consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. TagList may be empty.                                                                                                               | tuple  | ('tag1',<br>'oval') | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_oval(x0, y0, x1, y1, \*options)**

The arguments `x0`, `y0`, `x1`, and `y1` give the coordinates of two diagonally opposite corners of a rectangular region enclosing the oval. The oval will include the top and left edges of the rectangle, not the lower or right edges. If the region is square then the resulting oval is circular; otherwise it is elongated in shape. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes an oval item.

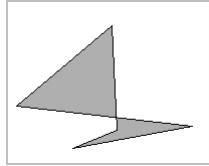
### **coords(item, x0, y0, x1, y1)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by item. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If item refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more oval items.

# Canvas polygon



## Description

Items of type `polygon` appear as polygonal or curved-filled regions on the display.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

## Shared options

| Option             | Default                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>fill</code>  | <code>transparent</code> |
| <code>width</code> | 1                        |

## Options specific to Polygon

| Option                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units   | Typical             | Default |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|
| <code>outline</code>     | <code>color</code> specifies a color to use for drawing the polygon's outline. If <code>color</code> is an empty string then no outline will be drawn for the polygon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | color   | BLUE<br>'black'     | 'black' |
| <code>smooth</code>      | <code>boolean</code> must have one of the forms accepted by Tkinter. It indicates whether or not the polygon should be drawn with a curved perimeter. If so, the outline of the polygon becomes a set of parabolic splines, one spline for the first and second line segments, one for the second and third, and so on. Straight-line segments can be generated in a smoothed polygon by duplicating the end-points of the desired line segment. | boolean | 1 FALSE             | FALSE   |
| <code>splinesteps</code> | Specifies the degree of smoothness desired for curves: each spline will be approximated with number line segments. This option is ignored unless the <code>smooth</code> option is <code>true</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | integer | 20                  | 12      |
| <code>stipple</code>     | Indicates that the polygon should be filled in a stipple pattern; <code>bitmap</code> specifies the stipple pattern to use. If the <code>fill</code> option hasn't been specified then this option has no effect. If <code>bitmap</code> is an empty string (the default), then filling is done in a solid fashion.                                                                                                                              | bitmap  | 'gray25'            | None    |
| <code>tags</code>        | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. <code>TagList</code> consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. <code>TagList</code> may be empty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | tuple   | ('tag1',<br>'poly') | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_polygon(x0, y0, x1, y1, ..., xn, yn, \*options)**

The arguments `x0` through `yn` specify the coordinates for three or more points that define a closed polygon. The first and last points may be the same; whether they are or not, Tk will draw the polygon as a closed polygon. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes a polygon item.

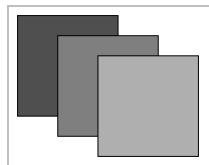
### **coords(item, x0, y0, x1, y1, ..., xn, yn)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an `item`. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by `item`. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named `item`. If `item` refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more polygon items.

## Canvas rectangle



### Description

Items of type `rectangle` appear as rectangular regions on the display. Each rectangle may have an outline, a fill, or both.

### Inheritance

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

### Shared options

| Option             | Default                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>fill</code>  | <code>transparent</code> |
| <code>width</code> | 1                        |

## Options specific to Rectangle

| Option  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units  | Typical             | Default |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------------------|---------|
| outline | color specifies a color to use for drawing the rectangle's outline. If color is an empty string then no outline will be drawn for the rectangle.                                                                                                                               | color  | RED<br>'black'      | 'black' |
| stipple | Indicates that the rectangle should be filled in a stipple pattern; bitmap specifies the stipple pattern to use. If the fill option hasn't been specified then this option has no effect. If bitmap is an empty string (the default), then filling is done in a solid fashion. | bitmap | 'gray25'            | None    |
| tags    | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. TagList tuple consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. TagList may be empty.                                                                                                              | tuple  | ('tag1',<br>'rect') | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_rectangle(x0, y0, x1, y1, \*options)**

The arguments x0, y0, x1, and y1 give the coordinates of two diagonally opposite corners of the rectangle (the rectangle will include its upper and left edges but not its lower or right edges). After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes a rectangle item.

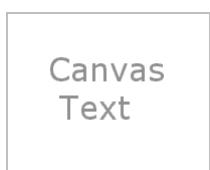
### **coords(item, x0, y0, x1, y1)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by item. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If item refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more rectangle items.

## Canvas text



### **Description**

A text item displays a string of characters on the screen in one or more lines. Text items support indexing and selection, along with the following text-related canvas widget methods: `dchars`, `focus`, `icursor`, `index`, `insert`, and `select`.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Widget`, `Canvas`.

## Shared options

| Option              | Default                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>anchor</code> | <code>CENTER</code>      |
| <code>fill</code>   | <code>transparent</code> |
| <code>width</code>  | <code>1</code>           |

## Options specific to Text

| Option               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units                 | Typical          | Default                        |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>font</code>    | Specifies the font to use for the text item. <code>FontName</code> may be any string acceptable to Tkinter. If this option isn't specified, it defaults to a system-dependent font.                                                                                                                              | <code>font</code>     | 'Ver-dana'       | (('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8') |
| <code>justify</code> | Specifies how to justify the text within its bounding region. Must be one of the values <code>LEFT</code> , <code>RIGHT</code> , or <code>CENTER</code> . This option will only matter if the text is displayed as multiple lines.                                                                               | <code>constant</code> | RIGHT            | LEFT                           |
| <code>stipple</code> | Indicates that the text should be filled in a stipple pattern; <code>bitmap</code> specifies the stipple pattern to use. If the <code>fill</code> option hasn't been specified then this option has no effect. If <code>bitmap</code> is an empty string (the default), then filling is done in a solid fashion. | <code>bitmap</code>   | 'gray25'         | None                           |
| <code>tags</code>    | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. <code>TagList</code> consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. <code>TagList</code> may be empty.                                                                                                                            | <code>tuple</code>    | ('tag1', 'text') | None                           |
| <code>text</code>    | <code>string</code> specifies the characters to be displayed in the text item. Newline characters cause line breaks. The characters in the item may also be changed with the <code>insert</code> and <code>delete</code> methods.                                                                                | <code>string</code>   | 'Hello'          | None                           |

## Methods

### `create_text(x, y, *options)`

The arguments `x` and `y` specify the coordinates of a point used to position the text on the display. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes a text item.

### **coords(item, x0, y0)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by item. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If item refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more text items.

## **Canvas window**



### **Description**

Items of type window cause a particular window to be displayed at a given position on the canvas.

### **Inheritance**

Inherits from Widget, Canvas.

### **Shared options**

| Option | Default       |
|--------|---------------|
| anchor | CENTER        |
| height | window height |
| width  | window width  |

### **Options specific to Window**

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units  | Typical         | Default |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|---------|
| tags   | Specifies a set of tags to apply to the item. TagList consists of a tuple of tag names, which replace any existing tags for the item. TagList may be empty.                                                          | tuple  | ('tag1', 'win') | None    |
| window | Specifies the window to associate with this item. The window specified must either be a child of the canvas widget or a child of some ancestor of the canvas widget. The window may not refer to a top-level window. | window | mywin           | None    |

## Methods

### **create\_window(x, y, \*options)**

The arguments `x` and `y` specify the coordinates of a point used to position the window on the display. After the coordinates there may be any number of option-value pairs, each of which sets one of the configuration options for the item. These same option-value pairs may be used in `itemconfigure` method calls to change the item's configuration.

### **delete(item)**

Deletes a window item.

### **coords(item, x0, y0)**

Queries or modifies the coordinates that define an item. If no coordinates are specified, this command returns a list whose elements are the coordinates of the item named by `item`. If coordinates are specified, then they replace the current coordinates for the named item. If `item` refers to multiple items, then the first one in the display list is used.

### **itemconfigure(item, \*options)**

Modifies the options for one or more window items.

## Checkbutton



### Description

The Checkbutton class defines a new window and creates an instance of a checkbutton widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the checkbutton such as its colors, font, text, and initial relief. The `checkbutton` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the checkbutton's parent must exist.

A checkbutton is a widget that displays a textual string, bitmap, or image and a square called an indicator. If text is displayed, it must all be in a single font, but it can occupy multiple lines on the screen (if it contains newlines or if wrapping occurs because of the `wrapLength` option) and one of the characters may optionally be underlined using the `underline` option. A checkbutton has all of the behavior of a simple button, including the following: it can display itself in either of three different ways, according to the `state` option; it can be made to appear raised, sunken, or flat; it can be made to flash; and it invokes a callback whenever mouse button 1 is clicked over the checkbutton. In addition, checkbuttons can be selected. If a checkbutton is selected then the indicator is normally drawn with a selected appearance, and a Tkinter variable associated with the checkbutton is set to a particular value (normally 1). Under UNIX, the indicator is drawn with a sunken relief and a special color. Under Windows, the indicator is drawn with a check mark inside.

If the checkbutton is not selected, then the indicator is drawn with a deselected appearance, and the associated variable is set to a different value (typically 0). Under UNIX, the indi-

cator is drawn with a raised relief and no special color. Under Windows, the indicator is drawn without a checkmark inside.

The `on` and `off` values stored in the checkbutton may be modified with options on the command line or in the option database. Configuration options may also be used to modify the way the indicator is displayed (or whether it is displayed at all). By default a checkbutton is configured to select and deselect itself on alternate button clicks. In addition, each checkbutton monitors its associated variable and automatically selects and deselects itself when the variable's value changes to and from the button's `on` value.

## Inheritance

Checkbutton inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                   | Default                                     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>activebackground</code>    | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>activeforeground</code>    | <code>SystemWindowText</code>               |
| <code>anchor</code>              | <code>center</code>                         |
| <code>background (bg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>bitmap</code>              |                                             |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code>    | 2                                           |
| <code>command</code>             |                                             |
| <code>cursor</code>              |                                             |
| <code>disabledforeground</code>  | <code>SystemDisabledText</code>             |
| <code>font</code>                | <code>(('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground (fg)</code>     | <code>SystemWindowText</code>               |
| <code>height</code>              | 0                                           |
| <code>highlightbackground</code> | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>      | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>              |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>  | 1                                           |
| <code>image</code>               |                                             |
| <code>justify</code>             | <code>center</code>                         |
| <code>padx</code>                | 1                                           |
| <code>pady</code>                | 1                                           |
| <code>relief</code>              | <code>flat</code>                           |
| <code>state</code>               | <code>normal</code>                         |
| <code>takefocus</code>           |                                             |
| <code>text</code>                |                                             |
| <code>textvariable</code>        |                                             |

| Option (alias) | Default |
|----------------|---------|
| underline      | -1      |
| width          | 0       |
| wraplength     | 0       |

## Options specific to Checkbutton

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Typical     | Default       |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|---------------|
| indicatoron    | Specifies whether or not the indicator should be drawn. Must be a proper boolean value. If FALSE, the relief option is ignored and the widget's relief is always sunken if the widget is selected and raised otherwise.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Boolean  | 0 TRUE      | 1             |
| offvalue       | Specifies the value to store in the widget's associated variable whenever this button is deselected. Defaults to 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | string   | 0 off       | 0             |
| onvalue        | Specifies the value to store in the widget's associated variable whenever this button is selected. Defaults to 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | string   | 1 On        | 1             |
| selectcolor    | Specifies a background color to use when the widget (usually a check or radio button) is selected. If indicatoron is TRUE then the color applies to the indicator. Under Windows, this color is used as the background for the indicator regardless of the select state. If indicatoron is FALSE, this color is used as the background for the entire widget, in place of background or activeBackground, whenever the widget is selected. If specified as an empty string then no special color is used for displaying when the widget is selected. | color    | "red"       | System-Window |
| selectimage    | Specifies an image to display (in place of the image option) when the widget (typically a checkbutton) is selected. This option is ignored unless the image option has been specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | image    | "red-cross" |               |
| variable       | Specifies name of a Tkinter variable to contain the content and set the content of the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | variable | myVariable  |               |

## Methods

### **deselect()**

Deselects the checkbutton and sets the associated variable to its off value.

### **flash()**

Flashes the checkbutton. This is accomplished by redisplaying the checkbutton several times, alternating between active and normal colors. At the end of the flash the checkbutton is left in the same normal/active state as when the method was invoked. This method is ignored if the checkbutton's state is disabled.

### **invoke()**

Does just what would have happened if the user invoked the checkbutton with the mouse: toggles the selection state of the button and invokes the callback associated with the checkbutton, if there is one. The return value is the return value from the callback, or an empty string if no callback is associated with the checkbutton. This method is ignored if the checkbutton's state is disabled.

### **select()**

Selects the checkbutton and sets the associated variable to its on value.

### **toggle()**

Toggles the selection state of the button, redisplaying it and modifying its associated variable to reflect the new state.

## Entry

### Description

**Entry**

The Entry class defines a new window and creates an instance of an entry widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the entry such as its colors, font, and relief. The `entry` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the entry's parent must exist.

An entry is a widget that displays a one-line text string and allows that string to be edited using methods described below, which are typically bound to keystrokes and mouse actions. When first created, an entry's string is empty. A portion of the entry may be selected as described below. If an entry is exporting its selection (see the `exportSelection` option), then it will observe the standard *X11* protocols for handling the selection; entry selections are available as type `STRING`.

Entries also observe the standard Tk rules for dealing with the input focus. When an entry has the input focus it displays an insertion cursor to indicate where new characters will be inserted.

Entries are capable of displaying strings that are too long to fit entirely within the widget's window. In this case, only a portion of the string will be displayed; commands described below may be used to change the view in the window.

Entries use the standard `xScrollCommand` mechanism for interacting with scrollbars (see the description of the `xScrollCommand` option for details). They also support scanning, as described below.

## Inheritance

Entry inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemWindow</code>                   |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 2                                           |
| <code>cursor</code>                          | <code>xterm</code>                          |
| <code>font</code>                            | <code>(('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground</code> ( <code>fg</code> )  | <code>SystemWindowText</code>               |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>              |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 0                                           |
| <code>justify</code>                         | <code>left</code>                           |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>sunken</code>                         |
| <code>selectbackground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlight</code>                |
| <code>selectborderwidth</code>               | 0                                           |
| <code>selectforeground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlightText</code>            |
| <code>state</code>                           | <code>normal</code>                         |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       |                                             |
| <code>textvariable</code>                    |                                             |
| <code>width</code>                           | 20                                          |
| <code>xscrollcommand</code>                  |                                             |

## Options specific to Entry

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units   | Typical  | Default          |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------|------------------|
| exportselection   | Specifies whether or not a selection in the widget should also be the X selection. The value may have any of the forms accepted by <code>Tcl_GetBoolean</code> , such as <code>true</code> , <code>false</code> , <code>0</code> , <code>1</code> , <code>yes</code> , or <code>no</code> . If the selection is exported, then selecting in the widget deselects the current X selection, selecting outside the widget deselects any widget selection, and the widget will respond to selection retrieval requests when it has a selection. The default is usually for widgets to export selections. | boolean | 0 YES    | 1                |
| insertbackground  | Specifies the color to use as background in the area covered by the insertion cursor. This color will normally override either the normal background for the widget or the selection background if the insertion cursor happens to fall in the selection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | color   | 'yellow' | SystemWindowText |
| insertborderwidth | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border to draw around the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | pixel   | 2        | 0                |
| insertofftime     | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain "off" in each blink cycle. If this option is zero then the cursor doesn't blink—it is on all the time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | integer | 250      | 300              |
| insertontime      | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain "on" in each blink cycle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | integer | 175      | 600              |
| insertwidth       | Specifies a value indicating the total width of the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ). If a border has been specified for the insertion cursor (using the <code>insertBorderWidth</code> option), the border will be drawn inside the width specified by the <code>insertWidth</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | pixel   | 2        | 2                |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units     | Typical | Default |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| show   | If this option is specified, then the true contents of the entry are not displayed in the window. Instead, each character in the entry's value will be displayed as the first character in the value of this option, such as *. This is useful, for example, if the entry is to be used to enter a password. If characters in the entry are selected and copied elsewhere, the information copied will be what is displayed, not the true contents of the entry. | character | **      |         |

## Methods

### **delete(first, last=None)**

Deletes one or more elements of the entry. `first` is the index of the first character to delete, and `last` is the index of the character just after the last one to delete. If `last` isn't specified it defaults to `first+1`, meaning a single character is deleted. This method returns `None`.

### **get()**

Returns the entry's string.

### **icursor(index)**

Arranges for the insertion cursor to be displayed just before the character given by `index`. Returns `None`.

### **index(index)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the character given by `index` is displayed at the left edge of the window.

### **insert(index, string)**

Inserts the characters of `string` just before the character indicated by `index`. Returns `None`.

### **scan\_dragto(x)**

Computes the difference between its `x` argument and the `x` argument to the last `scan_mark` method call for the widget. It then adjusts the view left or right by 10 times the difference in x-coordinates. This command is typically associated with mouse motion events in the widget, to produce the effect of dragging the entry at high speed through the window. The return value is an empty string.

### **scan\_mark(x)**

Records `x` and the current view in the entry window; it is used in conjunction with later `scan_dragto` method. Typically this command is associated with a mouse button press in the widget. It returns an empty string.

### **selection\_adjust(index)**

Locates the end of the selection nearest to the character given by `index`, and adjusts that end of the selection to be at `index` (meaning including but not going beyond `index`). The other end of the selection is made the anchor point for future `select to` commands. If the selection isn't currently in the entry, then a new selection is created to include the characters between `index` and the most recent selection anchor point, inclusive. Returns an empty string.

### **selection\_clear()**

Clears the selection if it is in this widget. If the selection isn't in this widget then the method has no effect. Returns `None`.

### **selection\_from(index)**

Sets the selection anchor point to just before the character given by `index`. Doesn't change the selection. Returns `None`.

### **selection\_present()**

Returns `TRUE` if characters are selected in the entry, `FALSE` if nothing is selected.

### **selection\_range(start, end)**

Sets the selection to include the characters starting with the one indexed by `start` and ending with the one just before `end`. If `end` refers to the same character as `start` or an earlier one, then the entry's selection is cleared.

### **selection\_to(index)**

If `index` is before the anchor point, sets the selection to the characters from `index` up to but not including the anchor point. If `index` is the same as the anchor point, does nothing. If `index` is after the anchor point, sets the selection to the characters from the anchor point up to but not including `index`. The anchor point is determined by the most recent `select from` or `select adjust` command in this widget. If the selection isn't in this widget then a new selection is created using the most recent anchor point specified for the widget. Returns `None`.

### **xview(index)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the character given by `index` is displayed at the left edge of the window.

### **xview\_moveto(fraction)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the character `fraction` of the way through the text appears at the left edge of the window. `fraction` must be a fraction between 0 and 1.

### **xview\_scroll(number, what)**

Shifts the view in the window left or right according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either `UNITS` or `PAGES` or an abbreviation of one of these. If `what` is `UNITS`, the view adjusts left or right by `number` average-width characters on the display; if it is

PAGES then the view adjusts by number screenfuls. If number is negative then characters farther to the left become visible; if it is positive then characters farther to the right become visible.

# Font class

## Inheritance

Inherits from None.

## Description

The Font class provides several facilities for dealing with fonts, such as defining named fonts and inspecting the actual attributes of a font. The class defines several methods.

## Shared options

None.

## Options specific to Font

| Option     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Units   | Typical                                 | Default |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|
| family     | The case-insensitive font family name. Tk guarantees to support the font families named Courier (a monospaced “typewriter” font), Times (a serifed “newspaper” font), and Helvetica (a sans-serif “European” font). The most closely matching native font family will automatically be substituted when one of the above font families is used. The name may also be the name of a native, platform-specific font family; in that case it will work as desired on one platform but may not display correctly on other platforms. If the family is unspecified or unrecognized, a platform-specific default font will be chosen. | string  | 'Times'                                 | 'MS'    |
| font       | Font specifier in X-font format or as a (family, size, style) tuple.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | font    | ('MS',<br>'Sans',<br>'Serif')<br>, '8') |         |
| overstrike | The value is a boolean flag that specifies whether a horizontal line should be drawn through the middle of characters in this font. The default value for overstrike is false.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Boolean | 1                                       | FALSE   |
| size       | The desired size of the font. If the size argument is a positive number, it is interpreted as a size in points. If size is a negative number, its absolute value is interpreted as a size in pixels. If a font cannot be displayed at the specified size, a nearby size will be chosen. If size is unspecified or zero, a platform-dependent default size will be chosen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | integer | 12, -16                                 |         |

| Option    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Units    | Typical | Default |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| slant     | The amount the characters in the font are slanted away from the vertical. Valid values for <code>slant</code> are <code>roman</code> and <code>italic</code> . A <code>roman</code> font is the normal, upright appearance of a font, while an <code>italic</code> font is one that is tilted some number of degrees from upright. The closest available slant to the one specified will be chosen. The default slant is <code>roman</code> . | constant | ITALIC  | NORMAL  |
| underline | The value is a boolean flag that specifies whether characters in this font should be underlined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Boolean  | TRUE 0  | FALSE   |
| weight    | The nominal thickness of the characters in the font. The value <code>NORMAL</code> specifies a normal weight font, while <code>BOLD</code> specifies a bold font. The closest available weight to the one specified will be chosen.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | constant | BOLD    | NORMAL  |

## Methods

### **actual(option=None)**

Returns information about the the actual attributes that are obtained when font is used on the window's display; the actual attributes obtained may differ from the attributes requested due to platform-dependant limitations, such as the availability of font families and pointsizes. If `option` is omitted, returns all actual font attributes as a dictionary. If `option` is specified, returns the value of that attribute.

### **cget(option)**

Queries the desired attribute, `option`, for the current font.

### **configure(\*\*options)**

Queries or modifies the desired attributes for the current font. If no `option` is specified, returns a dictionary describing all the options and their values for `fontname`. If a single `option` is specified with no value, then it returns the current value of that attribute. If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given named font to have the given values; in this case, all widgets using that font will redisplay themselves using the new attributes for the font.

### **copy()**

Returns a copy of the actual font.

### **measure(text)**

Measures the amount of space the string `text` would use in the given font when displayed in the current font. The return value is the total width in pixels of text, not including the extra pixels used by highly exaggerated characters such as cursive "f." If the string contains newlines or tabs, those characters are not expanded or treated specially when measuring the string.

**metrics(\*options)**

Returns information about the metrics (the font-specific data), for `font` when it is used on window's display. If `option` is specified, returns the value of that metric; if it is omitted, the return value is a dictionary of all the metrics and their values.

**Functions****families(root=None)**

The return value is a list of all the available font families.

**names(root=None)**

The return value is a list of all the named fonts that are currently defined.

# Frame

**Description**

The Frame class defines a new window and creates an instance of a frame widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the frame such as its background color and relief. The `frame` command returns the path name of the new window.

A frame is a simple widget. Its primary purpose is to act as a spacer or container for complex window layouts. The only features of a frame are its background color and an optional 3-D border to make the frame appear raised or sunken.

**Inheritance**

Frame inherits from `Widget`.

**Shared options**

| Option (alias)                               | Default                        |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>  |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 0                              |
| <code>cursor</code>                          |                                |
| <code>height</code>                          | 0                              |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>  |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code> |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 0                              |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>flat</code>              |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       | 0                              |
| <code>width</code>                           | 0                              |

## Options specific to Frame

| Option    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Units    | Typical      | Default |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|--------------|---------|
| class     | Specifies a class for the window. This class will be used when querying the option database for the window's other options, and it will also be used later for other purposes such as bindings. The <code>class</code> option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method. Note that because <code>class</code> is a reserved word, <code>_class</code> must be used with Tkinter.                                                                                                                                        | class    |              | Frame   |
| colormap  | Specifies a colormap to use for the window. The value may be either <code>NEW</code> , in which case a new colormap is created for the window and its children, or the name of another window (which must be on the same screen and have the same visual as <code>pathName</code> ), in which case the new window will use the colormap from the specified window. If the colormap option is not specified, the new window uses the same colormap as its parent. This option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method. | colormap | NEW myWindow |         |
| container | The value must be a boolean. If <code>TRUE</code> , it means that this window will be used as a container in which some other application will be embedded (for example, a Tkinter toplevel can be embedded using the <code>use</code> option). The window will support the appropriate window manager protocols for things like geometry requests. The window should not have any children of its own in this application. This option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method.                                      | boolean  | TRUE 0       | 0       |
| visual    | Specifies visual information for the new window in any of the forms accepted by <code>winfo.visual</code> . If this option is not specified, the new window will use the same visual as its parent. The <code>visual</code> option may not be modified with the <code>configure</code> method.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | visual   | monochrome   |         |

## Methods

There are no `Frame` methods, other than common widget methods such as `configure`.

# Grid geometry manager

## Inheritance

Inherits from None.

## Description

`Grid` is used to communicate with the grid geometry manager that arranges widgets in rows and columns inside of another window, called the geometry master (or master window).

## Shared options

None.

## Options specific to Grid

| Option                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units    | Typical | Default  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| column                | Insert the slave so that it occupies the <i>n</i> th column in the grid. Column numbers start with 0. If this option is not supplied, then the slave is arranged just to the right of previous slave specified on this call to <code>grid</code> , or column 0 if it is the first slave. For each <i>x</i> that immediately precedes the slave, the column position is incremented by one. Thus the <i>x</i> represents a blank column for this row in the grid. | integer  | 1 4     | 0        |
| columnspan            | Insert the slave so that it occupies <i>n</i> columns in the grid.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | integer  | 2       | 1        |
| in_                   | Insert the slave(s) in the master window supplied.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | widget   | myWin   | None     |
| ipadx                 | The amount specifies how much horizontal internal padding to leave on each side of the slave(s). This space is added inside the slave(s) border. The amount must be a valid screen distance, such as 2 or .5c.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | distance | 5m      | 0        |
| ipady                 | The amount specifies how much vertical internal padding to leave on the top and bottom of the slave(s). This space is added inside the slave(s) border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | distance | 3m      | 0        |
| minsize (row, column) | The <code>minsize</code> option sets the minimum size, in screen units, that will be permitted for this row/column.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | integer  | 25      | None     |
| pad                   | Specifies the number of screen units that will be added to the largest window contained completely in that column when the grid geometry manager requests a size from the containing window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | integer  | 5       | 0        |
| padx                  | The amount specifies how much horizontal external padding to leave on each side of the slave(s), in screen units. This space is added outside the slave(s) border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 5       | 0        |
| pady                  | The amount specifies how much vertical external padding to leave on the top and bottom of the slave(s), in screen units. This space is added outside the slave(s) border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | distance | 5       | 0        |
| row                   | Insert the slave so that it occupies the <i>n</i> th row in the grid. Row numbers start with 0. If this option is not supplied, then the slave is arranged on the same row as the previous slave specified on this call to <code>grid</code> , or the first unoccupied row if this is the first slave.                                                                                                                                                           | integer  | 3       | Same row |

| Option              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units   | Typical | Default  |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|----------|
| rowspan             | Insert the slave so that it occupies n rows in the grid. The default is one row.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | integer | 4       | Same row |
| sticky              | If a slave's cell is larger than its requested dimensions, this option may be used to position (or stretch) the slave within its cell. <code>Style</code> is a string that contains zero or more of the characters N, S, E or W. The string can optionally contain spaces or commas, but they are ignored. Each letter refers to a side (north, south, east, or west) that the slave will "stick" to. If both N and S (or E and W) are specified, the slave will be stretched to fill the entire height (or width) of its cavity. The sticky option subsumes the combination of anchor and fill that is used by pack. | string  | EW      | CENTER   |
| weight (row/column) | The weight option sets the relative weight for apportioning any extra spaces among rows/columns. A weight of zero (0) indicates the column will not deviate from its requested size. A column whose weight is two will grow at twice the rate as a column of weight one when extra space is allocated to the layout.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | integer | 2       | 0        |

## Methods

### **grid(option=value, ...)**

Use the grid manager for `self`.

### **grid\_bbox(column=None, row=None, col2=None, row2=None)**

With no arguments, the bounding box (in pixels) of the grid is returned. The return value consists of four integers. The first two are the pixel offset from the master window (x then y) of the top-left corner of the grid, and the second two integers are the width and height of the grid, also in pixels. If a single `column` and `row` is specified in the method call, then the bounding box for that cell is returned, where the top left cell is numbered from zero. If both `column` and `row` arguments are specified, then the bounding box spanning the rows and columns indicated is returned.

### **grid\_columnconfigure(index, options...)**

Queries or sets the column properties of the `index` column of the geometry master, `master`. The valid options are `minsize`, `weight` and `pad`.

### **grid\_configure(options...)**

The arguments consist of pairs of arguments that specify how to manage the slaves.

### **grid\_forget()**

Removes `self` from `grid` for its master and unmaps their windows. The slave will no longer be managed by the grid geometry manager. The configuration options for that window are

forgotten, so that if the slave is managed once more by the grid geometry manager, the initial default settings are used.

### **grid\_info()**

Returns a list whose elements are the current configuration state of the slave. The first two elements of the tuple are `in master` where `master` is the slave's master

### **grid\_location(x, y)**

Given `x` and `y` values in screen units relative to the master window, the column and row number at that `x` and `y` location is returned. For locations that are above or to the left of the grid, -1 is returned.

### **grid\_propagate(flag=\_noarg\_)**

If `flag` has a true boolean value such as 1 or ON then propagation is enabled for `self`. If `flag` has a false boolean value then propagation is disabled for `self`. If `flag` is omitted then the command returns FALSE or TRUE to indicate whether propagation is currently enabled for `self`. Propagation is enabled by default.

### **grid\_rowconfigure(index, options...)**

Queries or sets the row properties of the `index` row of the geometry master, `master`. The valid options are `minsize`, `weight` and `pad`.

### **grid\_remove()**

Removes slave from `grid` for its master and unmaps the window. The slave will no longer be managed by the grid geometry manager. However, the configuration options for that window are remembered, so if the slave is managed once more by the grid geometry manager, the previous values are retained.

### **grid\_size()**

Returns the size of the grid (in columns then rows) for `master`. The size is determined either by the slave occupying the largest row or column, or the largest column or row with a `minsize`, `weight`, or `pad` that is non-zero.

### **grid\_slaves(row=None, column=None)**

If no options are supplied, a list of all of the slaves in `master` are returned, with the most recently managed first. Option can be either `row` or `column` which causes only the slaves in the row (or column) specified by value to be returned.

## **Label**

### **Description**

#### **Label**

The Label class defines a new window and creates an instance of a label widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the label such as its colors,

font, text, and initial relief. The `label` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the label's parent must exist.

A label is a widget that displays a textual string, bitmap or image. If text is displayed, it must all be in a single font, but it can occupy multiple lines on the screen (if it contains newlines or if wrapping occurs because of the `wrapLength` option) and one of the characters may optionally be underlined using the `underline` option. The label can be manipulated in a few simple ways, such as changing its relief or text, using the standard widget options.

## Inheritance

Label inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>anchor</code>                          | <code>center</code>                         |
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>bitmap</code>                          |                                             |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 2                                           |
| <code>cursor</code>                          |                                             |
| <code>font</code>                            | <code>(('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground</code> ( <code>fg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonText</code>               |
| <code>height</code>                          | 0                                           |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>              |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 0                                           |
| <code>image</code>                           |                                             |
| <code>justify</code>                         | <code>center</code>                         |
| <code>padx</code>                            | 1                                           |
| <code>pady</code>                            | 1                                           |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>flat</code>                           |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       | 0                                           |
| <code>text</code>                            |                                             |
| <code>textvariable</code>                    |                                             |
| <code>underline</code>                       | -1                                          |
| <code>width</code>                           | 0                                           |
| <code>wraplength</code>                      | 0                                           |

## Methods

There are no `label` methods, other than common widget methods such as `configure`.

# Listbox



## Description

The Listbox class defines a new window and creates an instance of a listbox widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the listbox such as its colors, font, text, and relief. The `listbox` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the listbox's parent must exist.

A listbox is a widget that displays a list of strings, one per line. When first created, a new listbox has no elements. Elements may be added or deleted using the methods described below. In addition, one or more elements may be selected as described below.

If a listbox is exporting its selection (see the `exportSelection` option), then it will observe the standard X11 protocols for handling the selection. Listbox selections are available as type `STRING`; the value of the selection will be the text of the selected elements, with new-lines separating the elements.

It is not necessary for all the elements to be displayed in the listbox window at once; commands described below may be used to change the view in the window. Listboxes allow scrolling in both directions using the standard `xscrollCommand` and `yscrollCommand` options. They also support scanning, as described below.

## Inheritance

Listbox inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                                      |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>                |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 2                                            |
| <code>cursor</code>                          |                                              |
| <code>font</code>                            | <code>(( 'MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground</code> ( <code>fg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonText</code>                |
| <code>height</code>                          | 10                                           |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>                |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>               |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 1                                            |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>sunken</code>                          |
| <code>selectbackground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlight</code>                 |
| <code>selectborderwidth</code>               | 1                                            |
| <code>selectforeground</code>                | <code>SystemHighlightText</code>             |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       |                                              |

| Option (alias) | Default |
|----------------|---------|
| width          | 20      |
| xscrollcommand |         |

## Options specific to Listbox

| Option          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Units    | Typical            | Default |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|--------------------|---------|
| exportselection | Specifies whether or not a selection in the widget should also be the X selection. The value may have any of the forms accepted by <code>Tcl_GetBoolean</code> , such as <code>true</code> , <code>false</code> , <code>0</code> , <code>1</code> , <code>yes</code> , or <code>no</code> . If the selection is exported, then selecting in the widget deselects the current X selection, selecting outside the widget deselects any widget selection, and the widget will respond to selection retrieval requests when it has a selection. The default is usually for widgets to export selections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | boolean  | 0 YES              | 1       |
| selectmode      | Specifies one of several styles for manipulating the selection. The value of the option may be arbitrary, but the default bindings expect it to be either <code>SINGLE</code> , <code>BROWSE</code> , <code>MULTIPLE</code> , or <code>EXTENDED</code> ; the default value is <code>BROWSE</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | constant | SINGLE<br>"browse" |         |
| setgrid         | Specifies a boolean value that determines whether this widget controls the resizing grid for its top-level window. This option is typically used in text widgets, where the information in the widget has a natural size (the size of a character) and it makes sense for the window's dimensions to be integral numbers of these units. These natural window sizes form a grid. If the <code>setGrid</code> option is set to <code>true</code> then the widget will communicate with the window manager so that when the user interactively resizes the top-level window that contains the widget, the dimensions of the window will be displayed to the user in grid units and the window size will be constrained to integral numbers of grid units. See the section "Gridded geometry management" in the <code>wm</code> entry in the Tkman pages for more details. | boolean  | NO 1               | 0       |
| yscrollcommand  | Specifies the prefix for a command used to communicate with vertical scrollbars. This option is treated in the same way as the <code>xScrollCommand</code> option, except that it is used for vertical scrollbars and is provided by widgets that support vertical scrolling. See the description of <code>xScrollCommand</code> for details on how this option is used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | function |                    |         |

## Methods

### **activate(index)**

Sets the active element to the one indicated by `index`. If `index` is outside the range of elements in the listbox then the closest element is activated. The active element is drawn with an underline when the widget has the input focus, and its index may be retrieved with the `index active`.

### **bbox(index)**

Returns a list of four numbers describing the bounding box of the text in the element given by `index`. The first two elements of the list give the x and y coordinates of the upper-left corner of the screen area covered by the text (specified in pixels relative to the widget) and the last two elements give the width and height of the area, in pixels. If no part of the element given by `index` is visible on the screen, or if `index` refers to a non-existent element, then the result is `None`; if the element is partially visible, the result gives the full area of the element, including any parts that are not visible.

### **curselection()**

Returns a list containing the numerical indices of all of the elements in the listbox that are currently selected. If no elements are selected in the listbox then an empty string is returned.

### **delete(first, last=None)**

Deletes one or more elements of the listbox. `first` and `last` are indices specifying the first and last elements in the range to delete. If `last` isn't specified it defaults to `first`, for example, a single element is deleted.

### **get(first, last=None)**

If `last` is omitted, returns the contents of the listbox element indicated by `first`, or an empty string if `first` refers to a non-existent element. If `last` is specified, the method returns a list whose elements are all of the listbox elements between `first` and `last`, inclusive. Both `first` and `last` may have any of the standard forms for indices.

### **index(index)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the element given by `index` is displayed at the top of the window.

### **insert(index, \*elements)**

Inserts zero or more new `elements` in the list just before the element given by `index`. If `index` is specified as `END` then the new elements are added to the end of the list. Returns `None`.

### **nearest(y)**

Given a y-coordinate within the listbox window, this method returns the index of the (visible) listbox element nearest to that y-coordinate.

### **scan\_dragto(x, y)**

This method computes the difference between its `x` and `y` arguments (which are typically mouse coordinates) and the `x` and `y` arguments to the last `scan_mark` call for the widget. It then adjusts the view by 10 times the difference in coordinates. This method is typically associated with mouse motion events in the widget, to produce the effect of dragging the list at high speed through its window. The return value is an empty string.

### **scan\_mark(x, y)**

Records `x` and `y` and the listbox's current view; used in conjunction with later `scan_dragto` calls. Typically this method is associated with a mouse button press in the widget and `x` and `y` are the coordinates of the mouse. It returns `None`.

### **see(index)**

Adjusts the view in the listbox so that the element given by `index` is visible. If the element is already visible then the method has no effect; if the element is near one edge of the window then the listbox scrolls to bring the element into view at the edge; otherwise the listbox scrolls to center the element.

### **selection\_anchor(index)**

Sets the selection anchor to the element given by `index`.

### **selection\_clear(first, last=None)**

If any of the elements between `first` and `last` (inclusive) are selected, they are deselected. The selection state is not changed for elements outside this range.

### **selection\_includes(index)**

Returns `TRUE` if the element indicated by `index` is currently selected, `FALSE` if it isn't.

### **selection\_set(first, last=None)**

Selects all of the elements in the range between `first` and `last`, inclusive, without affecting the selection state of elements outside that range.

### **size()**

Returns an integer indicating the total number of elements in the listbox.

### **xview\_moveto(fraction)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that `fraction` of the the total width of the listbox is off-screen to the left. `fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1.

### **xview\_scroll(number, what)**

This command shifts the view in the window left or right according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either `UNITS` or `PAGES` or an abbreviation of one of these. If `what` is `UNITS`, the view adjusts left or right by `number` character units (the width of the 0 character) on the display; if it is `PAGES` then the view adjusts by `number` screenfuls. If `number` is negative then characters farther to the left become visible; if it is positive then characters farther to the right become visible.

**yview\_moveto(fraction)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that `fraction` of the total height of the listbox is off-screen to the top. `fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1.

**yview\_scroll(number, what)**

This command adjusts the view in the window up or down according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer, `what` must be either `UNITS` or `PAGES`. If `what` is `UNITS`, the view adjusts up or down by `number` lines; if it is `PAGES` then the view adjusts by `number` screenfuls. If `number` is negative then earlier elements become visible; if it is positive then later elements become visible.

# Menu

[Button](#)   [Cascade](#)   [Checkbutton](#)   [Radiobutton](#)

## Description

The `Menu` class defines a new top-level window and creates an instance of a menu widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the menu such as its colors and font. The `menu` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the menu's parent must exist.

## Inheritance

`Menu` inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                  | Default                          |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <code>activebackground</code>   | <code>SystemHighlight</code>     |
| <code>activeforeground</code>   | <code>SystemHighlightText</code> |
| <code>background (bg)</code>    | <code>SystemMenu</code>          |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code>   | 1                                |
| <code>cursor</code>             | <code>arrow</code>               |
| <code>disabledforeground</code> | <code>SystemDisabledText</code>  |
| <code>font</code>               | <code>('Georgia', '8')</code>    |
| <code>foreground (fg)</code>    | <code>SystemMenuText</code>      |
| <code>relief</code>             | <code>flat</code>                |
| <code>takefocus</code>          | 0                                |

## Options specific to Menu

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units   | Typical      | Default         |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------------|-----------------|
| activeborderwidth | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border drawn around active elements. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ). This option is typically only available in widgets displaying more than one element at a time (such as menus but not buttons).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | pixel   | 2, 1m        | 1               |
| postcommand       | If this option is specified then it provides a Tkinter command to execute each time the menu is posted. The command is invoked by the widget before posting the menu. Note that in 8.0 on Macintosh and Windows, all commands in a menu system are executed before any are posted. This is due to the limitations in the individual platforms's menu managers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | command | display-Menu |                 |
| selectcolor       | Specifies a background color to use when the widget (usually a check or radio-button) is selected. If <code>indicatoron</code> is TRUE then the color applies to the indicator. Under Windows, this color is used as the background for the indicator regardless of the select state. If <code>indicatoron</code> is FALSE, this color is used as the background for the entire widget, in place of <code>background</code> or <code>activeBackground</code> , whenever the widget is selected. If specified as an empty string then no special color is used for displaying when the widget is selected. | color   | "red"        | SystemMenu-Text |
| tearoff           | This option must have a proper boolean value, which specifies whether or not the menu should include a tear-off entry at the top. If so, it will exist as entry 0 of the menu and the other entries will number starting at 1. The default menu bindings arrange for the menu to be torn off when the tear-off entry is invoked.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | boolean | TRUE 0       | 1               |

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units    | Typical        | Default |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------|---------|
| tearoffcommand | If this option has a non-empty value, then it specifies a Tkinter command to invoke whenever the menu is torn off. The actual command will consist of the value of this option, followed by a space, followed by the name of the menu window, followed by a space, followed by the name of the torn-off menu window.                  | command  | myTearoff      |         |
| title          | The string will be used to title the window created when a shell is created or a menu is torn off. For menus, if the title is NULL, then the window will have the title of the menubutton or the text of the cascade item from which this menu was invoked.                                                                           | string   | "Widget Table" |         |
| type           | This option can be one of MENUBAR, TEAROFF, or NORMAL, and it is set when a menu is created. While the string returned by the configuration database will change if this option is changed, this does not affect the menu widget's behavior. This is used by the cloning mechanism and is not normally set outside of the Tk library. | constant | NORMAL         | normal  |

## Methods

### **add\_cascade(options...)**

Adds a new cascade to the bottom of the menu.

### **add\_checkbutton(options...)**

Adds a new checkbutton to the bottom of the menu.

### **add\_command(options...)**

Adds a new command to the bottom of the menu.

### **add\_radiobutton(options...)**

Adds a new radiobutton to the bottom of the menu.

### **add\_separator(options...)**

Adds a new separator to the bottom of the menu.

### **delete(index1, index2=None)**

Deletes all of the menu entries between index1 and index2 inclusive. If index2 is omitted then it defaults to index1. Attempts to delete a tear-off menu entry are ignored (instead, you should change the `tearOff` option to remove the tear-off entry).

### **entrycget(index, option)**

Returns the current value of a configuration option for the entry given by `index`. `option` may have any of the values accepted by the `add` method.

### **entryconfigure(index, options...)**

This method is similar to the `configure` command, except that it applies to the options for an individual entry `index`, whereas `configure` applies to the options for the menu as a whole. `options` may have any of the values accepted by the `add` widget method. If `options` are specified, `options` are modified as indicated in the method and the method returns `None`. If no `options` are specified, it returns a list describing the current options for entry `index`.

### **index(index)**

Returns the numerical index corresponding to `index`, or `None` if `index` was specified as `None`.

### **insert\_cascade(index, options...)**

Same as the `add` method except that it inserts the new cascade entry just before the entry given by `index`, instead of appending to the end of the menu. `options` arguments have the same interpretation as for the `add` method. It is not possible to insert new menu entries before the tear-off entry, if the menu has one.

### **insert\_checkbutton(index, options...)**

Same as the `add` method except that it inserts the new checkbutton entry just before the entry given by `index`, instead of appending to the end of the menu. `options` arguments have the same interpretation as for the `add` method. It is not possible to insert new menu entries before the tear-off entry, if the menu has one.

### **insert\_command(index, options...)**

Same as the `add` method except that it inserts the new command entry just before the entry given by `index`, instead of appending to the end of the menu. `options` arguments have the same interpretation as for the `add` method. It is not possible to insert new menu entries before the tear-off entry, if the menu has one.

### **insert\_radiobutton(index, options...)**

Same as the `add` method except that it inserts the new radiobutton entry just before the entry given by `index`, instead of appending to the end of the menu. `options` arguments have the same interpretation as for the `add` method. It is not possible to insert new menu entries before the tear-off entry, if the menu has one.)

### **insert\_separator(index, options...)**

Same as the `add` method except that it inserts the new separator entry just before the entry given by `index`, instead of appending to the end of the menu. `options` arguments have the same interpretation as for the `add` method. It is not possible to insert new menu entries before the tear-off entry, if the menu has one.

**invoke(index)**

Invokes the action of the menu entry `index`. If the menu entry is disabled then nothing happens. If the entry has a callback associated with it then the result of that callback is returned as the result of the `invoke` widget call. Otherwise the result is an empty string.

*Note:* Invoking a menu entry does not automatically unpost the menu; the default bindings normally take care of this before invoking the `invoke` widget call.

**post(x, y)**

Arranges for the menu to be displayed on the screen at the root-window coordinates given by `x` and `y`. These coordinates are adjusted, if necessary, to guarantee that the entire menu is visible on the screen. This method normally returns `None`. If the `postCommand` option has been specified, then its value is executed as a callback before posting the menu and the result of that script is returned as the result of the `post` method. If an error returns while executing the method, then the error is returned without posting the menu.

With the exception of `tk_popup`, the following methods are really only useful if you are writing your own event handling for menus. Their function is to set the state of menu elements as if the default actions had occurred. They may also be useful in simulating user interaction with a GUI.

**tk\_bindForTraversal()****tk\_firstMenu()****tk\_getMenuButtons()****tk\_invokeMenu()****tk\_mbButtonDown()****tk\_mbPost()****tk\_mbUnpost()****tk\_nextMenu(count)****tk\_nextMenuEntry(count)****tk\_popup(x, y, entry="")**

Posts a menu at a given position on the screen and configures Tk so that the menu and its cascaded children can be traversed with the mouse or the keyboard. `x` and `y` are the root coordinates at which to display the menu. If `entry` is omitted or is an empty string, the menu's upper left corner is positioned at the given point. Otherwise `entry` gives the index of an entry in `menu` and the menu will be positioned so that the entry is positioned over the given point.

**tk\_traverseToMenu(char)****tk\_traverseWithinMenu(char)****type(index)**

Returns the type of the menu entry given by `index`. This is the type argument passed to the `add` method when the entry was created, such as `command` or `separator`, or `tearoff` for a tear-off entry.

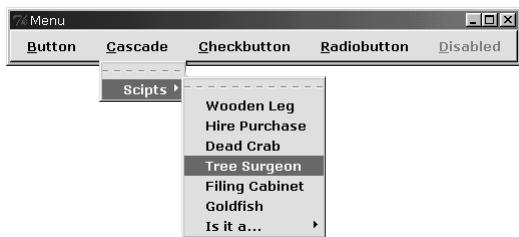
### **unpost()**

Unmaps the window so that it is no longer displayed. If a lower-level cascaded menu is posted, unpost that menu. Returns an empty string. This method does not work on Windows and Macintosh, as those platforms have their own way of unposting menus.

### **yposition(index)**

Returns an integer giving the y-coordinate within the menu window of the top-most pixel in the entry specified by `index`.

## **Menubutton**



### **Description**

The Menubutton class defines a new window and creates an instance of a menubutton widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the menubutton such as its colors, font, text, and initial relief. The `menubutton` method returns

the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the menubutton's parent must exist.

A menubutton is a widget that displays a textual string, bitmap, or image and is associated with a menu widget. If text is displayed, it must all be in a single font, but it can occupy multiple lines on the screen (if it contains newlines or if wrapping occurs because of the `wrapLength` option) and one of the characters may optionally be underlined using the `underline` option.

In normal usage, pressing mouse button 1 over the menubutton causes the associated menu to be posted just underneath the menubutton. If the mouse is moved over the menu before releasing the mouse button, the button release causes the underlying menu entry to be invoked. When the button is released, the menu is unposted. Menubuttons are typically organized into groups called menu bars that allow scanning: if the mouse button is pressed over one menubutton (causing it to post its menu) and the mouse is moved over another menubutton in the same menu bar without releasing the mouse button, then the menu of the first menubutton is unposted and the menu of the new menubutton is posted instead.

There are several interactions between menubuttons and menus; see the menu entry for information on various menu configurations, such as pulldown menus and option menus.

### **Inheritance**

Menubutton inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)      | Default                        |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| activebackground    | SystemButtonFace               |
| activeforeground    | SystemButtonText               |
| anchor              | center                         |
| background (bg)     | SystemButtonFace               |
| bitmap              |                                |
| borderwidth (bd)    | 2                              |
| cursor              |                                |
| disabledforeground  | SystemDisabledText             |
| font                | (('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8') |
| foreground (fg)     | SystemButtonText               |
| height              | 0                              |
| highlightbackground | SystemButtonFace               |
| highlightcolor      | SystemWindowFrame              |
| highlightthickness  | 0                              |
| image               |                                |
| justify             | center                         |
| padx                | 4p                             |
| pady                | 3p                             |
| relief              | flat                           |
| state               | normal                         |
| takefocus           | 0                              |
| text                |                                |
| textvariable        |                                |
| underline           | -1                             |
| width               | 0                              |
| wraplength          | 0                              |

## Options specific to Menubutton

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units    | Typical          | Default |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------|---------|
| direction      | Specifies where the menu is going to pop up. ABOVE tries to pop the menu above the menubutton. BELOW tries to pop the menu below the menubutton. LEFT tries to pop the menu to the left of the menubutton. RIGHT tries to pop the menu to the right of the menu button. FLUSH pops the menu directly over the menubutton. | constant | FLUSH<br>"above" | below   |
| indicatoron    | Specifies whether or not the indicator should be drawn. Must be a proper boolean value. If FALSE, the relief option is ignored and the widget's relief is always sunken if the widget is selected; otherwise, it is raised.                                                                                               | Boolean  | 0 TRUE           | 0       |
| menu           | Specifies the pathname of the menu associated with a menubutton. The menu must be a child of the menubutton.                                                                                                                                                                                                              | string   | subMenu-Action   |         |

## Methods

### **menubutton(options...)**

options determine the exact behavior of the menubutton method.

### **cget(option)**

Returns the current value of the configuration option.

### **configure(options...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options of the widget. If no option is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the menubutton. If option is specified with no value, then the command returns a dictionary describing the one named option. If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given widget option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns an empty string. options may have any of the values accepted by the menubutton method.

## Message

It's not a palindrome! The palindrome of "Bolton" would be "Notlob"! It doesn't work!

### **Description**

The Message class defines a new window and creates an instance of a message widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the message such as its colors, font, text, and initial

relief. The `message` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this method is invoked, the message's parent must exist.

A message is a widget that displays a textual string. A message widget has three special features. First, it breaks up its string into lines in order to produce a given aspect ratio for the window. The line breaks are chosen at word boundaries wherever possible (if not even a single word will fit on a line, then the word will be split across lines). Newline characters in the string will force line breaks; they can be used, for example, to leave blank lines in the display.

The second feature of a message widget is justification. The text may be displayed left-justified (each line starts at the left side of the window), centered on a line-by-line basis, or right-justified (each line ends at the right side of the window).

The third feature of a message widget is that it handles control characters and non-printing characters specially. Tab characters are replaced with enough blank space to line up on the next 8-character boundary. Newlines cause line breaks. Other control characters (ASCII code less than `0x20`) and characters not defined in the font are displayed as a four-character sequence `\xhh` where `hh` is the two-digit hexadecimal number corresponding to the character. In the unusual case where the font doesn't contain all of the characters in `0123456789abcdefx` then control characters and undefined characters are not displayed at all.

## Inheritance

Message inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                   | Default                                     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>anchor</code>              | <code>center</code>                         |
| <code>background (bg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code>    | <code>2</code>                              |
| <code>cursor</code>              |                                             |
| <code>font</code>                | <code>(('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground (fg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonText</code>               |
| <code>highlightbackground</code> | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>      | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>              |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>  | <code>0</code>                              |
| <code>justify</code>             | <code>left</code>                           |
| <code>padx</code>                | <code>-1</code>                             |
| <code>pady</code>                | <code>-1</code>                             |
| <code>relief</code>              | <code>flat</code>                           |
| <code>takefocus</code>           | <code>0</code>                              |
| <code>text</code>                |                                             |
| <code>textvariable</code>        |                                             |
| <code>width</code>               | <code>0</code>                              |

## Options specific to Message

| Option (alias) | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Units   | Typical | Default |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| aspect         | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the desired aspect ratio for the text. The aspect ratio is specified as 100*width/height. 100 means the text should be as wide as it is tall, 200 means the text should be twice as wide as it is tall, 50 means the text should be twice as tall as it is wide, and so on. Used to choose line length for text if the width option isn't specified. Defaults to 150. | integer | 50 75   | 150     |

## Methods

### **message(options...)**

options determine the exact behavior of the message method.

### **cget(option)**

Returns the current value of the configuration option.

### **configure(options...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options of the widget. If no option is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the menubutton. If option is specified with no value, then the command returns a dictionary describing the one named option. If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given widget option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns an empty string. options may have any of the values accepted by the message method.

## OptionMenu class



### **Description**

This class instantiates an option menubutton with an associated menu. Together they allow the user to select one of the values given by the value arguments.

The current value will be stored in the Tkinter variable whose name is given in the constructor and it will also be displayed as the label in the option menubutton. The user can click on the menubutton to display a menu containing all of the values and thereby select a new value. Once a new value is selected, it will be stored in the variable and appear in the option menubutton. The current value can also be changed by setting the variable.

### **Inheritance**

Inherits from Menubutton.

## Shared options

None.

## Options specific to Widget

None.

## Methods

### **OptionMenu(master, variable, value, \*values)**

Creates an instance of `OptionMenu`. `master` is the parent widget, and `variable` is the identity of the Tkinter variable. `value` is the default value and `values` is a list of values to be inserted in the optionmenu's menu.

# Pack geometry manager

## Description

The `pack` method is used to communicate with the Packer, a geometry manager that arranges the children of a parent by packing them in order around the edges of the parent.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `None`. `Pack` does not inherit from anything.

## Shared options

None.

## Options specific to Pack

| Option              | Description                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Typical                 | Default |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------|---------|
| <code>after</code>  | Value must be another window. Use its master as the master for the slaves, and insert the slaves just after <code>other</code> in the packing order.                           | widget   | label                   |         |
| <code>before</code> | Value must be another window. Use its master as the master for the slaves, and insert the slaves just before <code>other</code> in the packing order.                          | widget   | <code>self.entry</code> |         |
| <code>expand</code> | Specifies whether the slaves should be expanded to consume extra space in their master. Boolean may have any proper boolean value, such as <code>1</code> or <code>NO</code> . | boolean  | YES                     | 0       |
| <code>fill</code>   | If a slave's parcel is larger than its requested dimensions, this option may be used to stretch the slave.                                                                     | constant | <code>X 'both'</code>   | NONE    |
| <code>in_</code>    | Insert the slave(s) at the end of the packing order for the master window given by <code>value</code> .                                                                        | widget   | container               | parent  |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                            | Units    | Typical    | Default |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|---------|
| ipadx  | Amount specifies how much horizontal internal padding to leave on each side of the slave(s). Amount must be a valid screen distance, such as 2 or .5c. | distance | 2          | 0       |
| ipady  | Amount specifies how much vertical internal padding to leave on each side of the slave(s).                                                             | distance | 1m         | 0       |
| padx   | Amount specifies how much horizontal external padding to leave on each side of the slave(s).                                                           | distance | 3          | 0       |
| pady   | Amount specifies how much vertical external padding to leave on each side of the slave(s).                                                             | distance | '2m'       | 0       |
| side   | Specifies which side of the master the slave(s) will be packed against. Must be LEFT, RIGHT, TOP or BOTTOM.                                            | constant | LEFT 'top' | TOP     |

## Methods

### **pack(option=value, ...)**

The arguments consist of pairs of arguments that specify how to manage the slaves.

### **pack\_forget()**

Removes `self` from the packing order for its master and unmaps its windows. The slave will no longer be managed by the Packer.

### **pack\_info()**

Returns a dictionary whose elements are the current configuration state of `self` in the same option-value form that might be specified to `pack_configure`.

### **pack\_propagate(flag=\_noarg\_)**

If `flag` has a true boolean value such as 1 or ON then propagation is enabled for `self`. If `flag` has a FALSE boolean value then propagation is disabled for master. If `flag` is omitted then the command returns FALSE or TRUE to indicate whether propagation is currently enabled for master. Propagation is enabled by default.

### **pack\_slaves()**

Returns a list of IDs for all of the slaves in the packing order for master. The order of the slaves in the list is the same as their order in the packing order. If master has no slaves then None is returned.

# PhotoImage class

## Description

A photo is an image whose pixels can display any color or be transparent. A photo image is stored internally in full color (24 bits per pixel), and is displayed using dithering if necessary.

Image data for a photo image can be obtained from a file or a string, or it can be supplied from C code through a procedural interface. At present, only `GIF` and `PPM/PGM` formats are supported, but an interface exists to allow additional image file formats to be added easily. A photo image is transparent in regions where no image data has been supplied.

## Inheritance

Inherits from `Image`.

## Shared options

| Option              | Default                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>width</code>  | <code>requested width</code>  |
| <code>height</code> | <code>requested height</code> |

## Options specific to `Photolimage`

| Option              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Units  | Typical    | Default |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------|---------|
| <code>data</code>   | Specifies the contents of the image as a string. The format of the string must be one of those for which there is an image file format handler that will accept string data (currently <code>GIF</code> ). If both the <code>data</code> and <code>file</code> options are specified, the <code>file</code> option takes precedence.                                                                                                                                                                                              | string |            |         |
| <code>file</code>   | <code>filename</code> gives the name of a file that is to be read to supply data for the photo image. The file format must be one of those for which there is an image file format handler that can read data (currently <code>GIF</code> , <code>PGM</code> and <code>PPM</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | string | "icon.gif" |         |
| <code>format</code> | Specifies the name of the file format for the data specified with the <code>data</code> or <code>file</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | string |            |         |
| <code>gamma</code>  | Specifies that the colors allocated for displaying this image in a window should be corrected for a non-linear display with the specified gamma exponent value. (The intensity produced by most CRT displays is a power function of the input value, to a good approximation; gamma is the exponent and is typically around 2). The value specified must be greater than zero. The default value is 1 (no correction). In general, values greater than 1 will make the image lighter, and values less than 1 will make it darker. | float  | 1.2        | 1.0     |

| Option  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Units             | Typical       | Default          |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| palette | Specifies the resolution of the color cube to be allocated for displaying this image, and thus the number of colors used from the colormaps of the windows where it is displayed. The palette-spec string may be either a single decimal number, specifying the number of shades of gray to use, or three decimal numbers separated by slashes (/), specifying the number of shades of red, green and blue to use, respectively. If the first form (a single number) is used, the image will be displayed in monochrome (i.e., grayscale). | integer or string | '255/220/125' | system dependent |

## Methods

### **PhotoImage(option...)**

Creates a photo instance using option-value pairs in option.

### **blank()**

Blank the image; that is, set the entire image to have no data, so it will be displayed as transparent, and the background of whatever window it is displayed in will show through.

### **cget(option)**

Returns the current value of the configuration option given by option. option may have any of the values accepted by the photoimage constructor.

### **configure(option=value...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options for the image. If no option is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the image. If option is specified with no value, then the command returns a dictionary describing the one named option (this dictionary will be identical to the corresponding sublist of the value returned if no option is specified). If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns an empty string. option may have any of the values accepted by the photoimage constructor.

### **copy()**

Copies the current image. Note the Tkinter method simplifies the Tk command which allows copying of a region within the image.

### **get(x, y)**

Returns the color of the pixel at coordinates (x,y) in the image as a tuple of three integers between 0 and 255, representing the red, green and blue components respectively.

### **height()**

Returns an integer giving the height of the image in pixels.

**put(data, to=None)**

Sets pixels in the image to the colors specified in `data`. `data` is used to form a two-dimensional array of pixels that are then copied into the image. `data` is structured as a list of horizontal rows, from top to bottom, each of which is a list of colors, listed from left to right. Each color may be specified by name (e.g., `blue`) or in hexadecimal form (e.g., `#2376af`). The `to` option can be used to specify the bounding box to be affected. If the tuple contains only `x1` and `y1`, the area affected has its top-left corner at `(x1,y1)` and is the same size as the array given in `data`. If all four coordinates are given, they specify diagonally opposite corners of the affected rectangle, and the array given in `data` will be replicated as necessary in the `x` and `y` directions to fill the rectangle.

**subsample(x, y = None)**

Reduces the image in size by using only every `x`th pixel in the `x` direction and `y`th pixel in the `y` direction. Negative values will cause the image to be flipped about the `y` or `x` axes, respectively. If `y` is not given, the default value is the same as `x`.

**type()**

Returns the type of image as a string (the value of the `type` argument to `image.create` when the image was created).

**width()**

Returns an integer giving the width of the image in pixels.

**write(filename, options...)**

Writes image data from the image to a `file` named `filename`. The following options may be specified:

| Option                   | Type                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>format</code>      | <code>string</code> | Specifies the name of the image file format handler to be used to write the data to the file. Specifically, this subcommand searches for the first handler whose name matches an initial substring of <code>format-name</code> and which has the capability to write an image file. If this option is not given, this subcommand uses the first handler that has the capability to write an image file.         |
| <code>from_coords</code> | <code>tuple</code>  | Specifies a rectangular region of <code>imageName</code> to be written to the image file. If only <code>x1</code> and <code>y1</code> are specified, the region extends from <code>(x1,y1)</code> to the bottom-right corner of the image. If all four coordinates are given, they specify diagonally opposite corners of the rectangular region. The default, if this option is not given, is the whole image. |

**zoom(x, y = None)**

Magnifies the image by a factor of `x` in the `x` direction and `y` in the `y` direction. If `y` is not given, the default value is the same as `x`. With this option, each pixel in the source image will be expanded into a block of `x` × `y` pixels in the new image, all the same color. `x` and `y` must be greater than 0.

# Place geometry manager

## Description

The Placer is a geometry manager for Tk. It provides simple fixed placement of windows, where you specify the exact size and location of one window, called the slave, within another window, called the master. The Placer also provides rubber-sheet placement, where you specify the size and location of the slave in terms of the dimensions of the master, so that the slave changes size and location in response to changes in the size of the master. Lastly, the Placer allows you to mix these styles of placement so that, for example, the slave has a fixed width and height but it is centered inside the master.

## Inheritance

Inherits from None. Place does not inherit from anything.

## Shared options

None.

## Options specific to Place

| Option     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Typical | Default |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| anchor     | Value specifies which point of window is to be positioned at the (x,y) location selected by the <code>x</code> , <code>y</code> , <code>relx</code> , and <code>rely</code> options. The anchor point is in terms of the outer area of the window including its border, if any. Thus if <code>where</code> is <code>SE</code> then the lower-right corner of window's border will appear at the given (x,y) location in the master.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | constant | N SE    | NW      |
| bordermode | mode determines the degree to which borders within the master are used in determining the placement of the slave. The default and most common value is <code>INSIDE</code> . In this case the Placer considers the area of the master to be the innermost area of the master, inside any border: an option of <code>x 0</code> corresponds to an x-coordinate just inside the border and an option of <code>relwidth 1.0</code> means the window will fill the area inside the master's border. If <code>mode</code> is <code>OUTSIDE</code> then the Placer considers the area of the master to include its border; this mode is typically used when placing the window outside its master, as with the options <code>x 0 y 0</code> <code>anchor NE</code> . Lastly, <code>mode</code> may be specified as <code>IGNORE</code> , in which case borders are ignored: the area of the master is considered to be its official X area, which includes any internal border but no external border. A <code>bordermode</code> of <code>ignore</code> is probably not very useful. | constant | OUTSIDE | INSIDE  |

| Option    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Units   | Typical | Default      |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|--------------|
| height    | value specifies the height for window in screen units. The height will be the outer dimension of the window including its border, if any. If no height or relheight option is specified, then the height requested internally by the window will be used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | integer | 134     | Natural size |
| in_       | value specifies the identity of the window relative to which window is to be placed. Master must either be window's parent or a descendant of window's parent. In addition, master and window must both be descendants of the same top-level window. These restrictions are necessary to guarantee that window is visible whenever master is visible.                                                                                                                                                                              | widget  | fred    | parent       |
| relheight | value specifies the height for window. In this case the height is specified as a floating-point number relative to the height of the master: 0.5 means window will be half as high as the master, 1.0 means window will have the same height as the master, and so on. If both height and relheight are specified for a slave, their values are summed. For example, relheight 1.0 height 2 makes the slave 2 pixels shorter than the master.                                                                                      | float   | 0.45    | 1.0          |
| relwidth  | value specifies the width for window. In this case the width is specified as a floating-point number relative to the width of the master: 0.5 means window will be half as wide as the master, 1.0 means window will have the same width as the master, and so on. If both width and relwidth are specified for a slave, their values are summed. For example, relwidth 1.0 width 5 makes the slave 5 pixels wider than the master.                                                                                                | float   | 0.5     | 1.0          |
| relx      | location specifies the x-coordinate within the master window of the anchor point for window. In this case the location is specified in a relative fashion as a floating-point number: 0.0 corresponds to the left edge of the master and 1.0 corresponds to the right edge of the master. location need not be in the range 0.0 - 1.0. If both x and relx are specified for a slave then their values are summed. For example, relx 0.5 × 2 positions the left edge of the slave 2 pixels to the left of the center of its master. | float   | 0.66    | 0.0          |
| rely      | location specifies the y-coordinate within the master window of the anchor point for window. In this case the value is specified in a relative fashion as a floating-point number: 0.0 corresponds to the top edge of the master and 1.0 corresponds to the bottom edge of the master. location need not be in the range 0.0 - 1.0. If both y and rely are specified for a slave then their values are summed. For example, rely 0.5 × 3 positions the top edge of the slave 3 pixels below the center of its master.              | float   | 0.34    | 0.0          |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units   | Typical | Default       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------------|
| x      | location specifies the x-coordinate within the master window of the anchor point for window. The location is specified in screen units and need not lie within the bounds of the master window.                                                                                                                                                             | integer | 105     | 0             |
| width  | size specifies the width for window in screen units (i.e. any of the forms accepted by Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> )). The width will be the outer width of the window including its border, if any. If size is empty, or if no width or <code>relwidth</code> option is specified, then the width requested internally by the window will be used. | integer | 125     | natural width |
| y      | location specifies the y-coordinate within the master window of the anchor point for window. The location is specified in screen units and need not lie within the bounds of the master window.                                                                                                                                                             | integer | 88      | 0             |

## Methods

### **place(option=value, ...)**

The arguments consist of one or more option-value pairs that specify the way in which `self`'s geometry is managed. If the Placer is already managing `self`, then the option-value pairs modify the configuration for its window. In this form the `place` method returns `None` as the result.

### **place\_forget()**

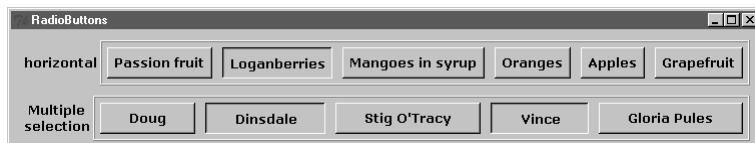
The `place_forget` method causes the Placer to stop managing the geometry of window. As a side effect of this method `self` will be unmapped so that it doesn't appear on the screen. If `self` isn't currently managed by the Placer then the method has no effect.

### **place\_info()**

The `place_info` method returns a dictionary giving the current configuration of the window. The dictionary consists of option-value pairs in exactly the same form as might be specified to the `place` method. If the configuration of a window has been retrieved with `place_info`, that configuration can be restored later by first using `place_forget` to erase any existing information for the window and then invoking `place` with the saved information.

### **place\_slaves()**

The `place_slaves` method returns a list of all the slave windows for which `self` is the master. If there are no slaves for `self` then `None` is returned.



## Description

The Radiobutton class defines a new window and creates an instance of a radiobutton widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the radiobutton such as its colors, font, text, and initial relief. The `radiobutton` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this command is invoked, the radiobutton's parent must exist.

A radiobutton is a widget that displays a textual string, bitmap or image and a diamond or circle called an indicator. If text is displayed, it must all be in a single font, but it can occupy multiple lines on the screen (if it contains newlines or if wrapping occurs because of the `wrapLength` option), and one of the characters may optionally be underlined using the `underline` option.

A radiobutton has all of the behavior of a simple button: it can display itself in either of three different ways, according to the `state` option; it can be made to appear raised, sunken, or flat; it can be made to flash; and it invokes a Tcl command whenever mouse button 1 is clicked over the checkbox. In addition, radiobuttons can be selected.

If a radiobutton is selected, the indicator is normally drawn with a selected appearance, and a Tkinter variable associated with the radiobutton is set to a particular value (normally 1). Under UNIX, the indicator is drawn with a sunken relief and a special color. Under Windows, the indicator is drawn with a round mark inside.

If the radiobutton is not selected, then the indicator is drawn with a deselected appearance, and the associated variable is set to a different value (typically 0). Under UNIX, the indicator is drawn with a raised relief and no special color. Under Windows, the indicator is drawn without a round mark inside.

Typically, several radiobuttons share a single variable and the value of the variable indicates which radiobutton is to be selected. When a radiobutton is selected it sets the value of the variable to indicate that fact; each radiobutton also monitors the value of the variable and automatically selects and deselects itself when the variable's value changes.

Configuration options may also be used to modify the way the indicator is displayed (or whether it is displayed at all). By default a radiobutton is configured to select itself on button clicks.

## Inheritance

Radiobutton inherits from `Widget`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)      | Default                        |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| activebackground    | SystemButtonFace               |
| activeforeground    | SystemWindowText               |
| anchor              | center                         |
| background (bg)     | SystemButtonFace               |
| bitmap              |                                |
| borderwidth (bd)    | 2                              |
| command             |                                |
| cursor              |                                |
| disabledforeground  | SystemDisabledText             |
| font                | (('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8') |
| foreground (fg)     | SystemWindowText               |
| height              | 0                              |
| highlightbackground | SystemButtonFace               |
| highlightcolor      | SystemWindowFrame              |
| highlightthickness  | 1                              |
| image               |                                |
| justify             | center                         |
| padx                | 1                              |
| pady                | 1                              |
| relief              | flat                           |
| state               | normal                         |
| takefocus           |                                |
| text                |                                |
| textvariable        |                                |
| underline           | -1                             |
| width               | 0                              |
| wraplength          | 0                              |

## Options specific to Radiobutton

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units   | Typical | Default |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| indicatoron | Specifies whether or not the indicator should be drawn. Must be a proper boolean value. If FALSE, the relief option is ignored and the widget's relief is always sunken if the widget is selected; otherwise, it is raised. | Boolean | 0 TRUE  | 1       |

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Units    | Typical    | Default        |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|----------------|
| selectcolor | Specifies a background color to use when the widget (usually a check or radiobutton) is selected. If indicatoron is TRUE then the color applies to the indicator. Under Windows, this color is used as the background for the indicator regardless of the select state. If indicatoron is FALSE, this color is used as the background for the entire widget, in place of background or activeBackground, whenever the widget is selected. If specified as an empty string then no special color is used for displaying when the widget is selected. | color    | "red"      | SystemWindow   |
| selectimage | Specifies an image to display (in place of the image option) when the widget (typically a checkbox) is selected. This option is ignored unless the image option has been specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | image    | "redcross" |                |
| value       | Specifies the value to store in the button's associated Tkinter variable whenever this button is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | string   | 0          | "Power"        |
| variable    | Specifies the name of a Tkinter variable to contain the content and set the content of the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | variable | myVariable | selectedButton |

## Methods

### **deselect()**

Deselects the radiobutton and sets the associated variable to an empty string. If this radiobutton was not currently selected, the method has no effect.

### **flash()**

Flashes the radiobutton. This is accomplished by redisplaying the radiobutton several times, alternating between active and normal colors. At the end of the flash the radiobutton is left in the same normal/active state as when the method was invoked. This method is ignored if the radiobutton's state is disabled.

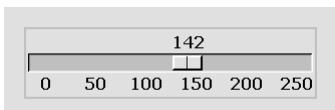
### **invoke()**

Does just what would have happened if the user invoked the radiobutton with the mouse: selects the button and invokes its associated callback, if there is one. The return value is the return value from the callback, or an empty string if no callback is associated with the radiobutton. This method is ignored if the radiobutton's state is disabled.

## **select()**

Selects the radiobutton and sets the associated variable to the value corresponding to this widget.

# **Scale**



## **Description**

The Scale class defines a new window and creates an instance of a scale widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the scale such as its colors, orientation, and relief. The `scale` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this command is invoked, the scale's parent must exist.

A scale is a widget that displays a rectangular trough and a small slider. The trough corresponds to a range of real values (determined by the `from`, `to`, and `resolution` options), and the position of the slider selects a particular real value. The slider's position (and hence the scale's value) may be adjusted with the mouse or keyboard. Whenever the scale's value is changed, a callback is invoked (using the `command` option) to notify other interested widgets of the change. In addition, the value of the scale can be linked to a Tkinter variable (using the `variable` option), so that changes in either are reflected in the other.

Three annotations may be displayed in a scale widget: a label appearing at the top right of the widget (top left for horizontal scales), a number displayed just to the left of the slider (just above the slider for horizontal scales), and a collection of numerical tick marks just to the left of the current value (just below the trough for horizontal scales). Each of these three annotations may be enabled or disabled using the configuration options.

## **Inheritance**

Scale inherits from `Widget`.

## **Shared options**

| Option (alias)                   | Default                                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>activebackground</code>    | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>                |
| <code>background (bg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>                |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code>    | 2                                            |
| <code>command</code>             |                                              |
| <code>cursor</code>              |                                              |
| <code>font</code>                | <code>(( 'MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground (fg)</code>     | <code>SystemButtonText</code>                |
| <code>highlightbackground</code> | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>                |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>      | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>               |

| Option (alias)     | Default |
|--------------------|---------|
| highlightthickness | 2       |
| relief             | flat    |
| state              | normal  |
| takefocus          |         |
| width              | 15      |

## Options specific to Scale

| Option       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units    | Typical                | Default  |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------|----------|
| bigincrement | Some interactions with the scale widget cause its value to change by “large” increments; this option specifies the size of the large increments. If specified as 0, the large increments default to 1/10 the range of the scale.                                                                      | integer  | 60                     | 0        |
| digits       | An integer specifying how many significant digits should be retained when converting the value of a scale widget to a string. If the number is less than or equal to zero, then the scale picks the smallest value that guarantees that every possible slider position prints as a different string.  | integer  | 2                      | 0        |
| from_        | A real value corresponding to the left or top end of the scale widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | float    | 0.0                    | 0        |
| label        | A string to display as a label for a scale widget. For vertical scales the label is displayed just to the right of the top end of the scale. For horizontal scales the label is displayed just above the left end of the scale. If the option is specified as an empty string, no label is displayed. | string   | Power<br>Level         |          |
| length       | Specifies the desired long dimension of the scale in screen units (i.e. any of the forms acceptable to <code>winfo.pixels</code> ). For vertical scales this is the scale’s height; for horizontal scales it is the scale’s width.                                                                    | distance | 150 1i                 | 100      |
| orient       | For widgets that can lay themselves out with either a horizontal or vertical orientation, such as scrollbars, this option specifies which orientation should be used. Must be either HORIZONTAL or VERTICAL or an abbreviation of one of these.                                                       | constant | VERTICAL<br>"vertical" | vertical |
| repeatdelay  | Specifies the number of milliseconds a button or key must be held down before it begins to auto-repeat. Used, for example, on the up- and down-arrows in scrollbars.                                                                                                                                  | integer  | 300                    | 300      |

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units    | Typical    | Default           |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| repeatinterval | Used in conjunction with <code>repeatDelay</code> : once auto-repeat begins, this option determines the number of milliseconds between auto repeats.                                                                                                                                                                                        | integer  | 100        | 100               |
| resolution     | A real value specifying the resolution for a scale widget. If this value is greater than zero then the scale's value will always be rounded to an even multiple of this value, as will tick marks and the endpoints of the scale. If the value is less than zero then no rounding occurs. Defaults to 1 (i.e., the value will be integral). | float    | 2.0 10.0   | 1                 |
| showvalue      | Specifies a boolean value indicating whether or not the current value of a scale widget is to be displayed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | boolean  | TRUE 0     | 1                 |
| sliderlength   | Specifies the size of a slider, measured in screen units along the slider's long dimension. The value may be specified in any of the forms acceptable to <code>winfo.pixels</code> .                                                                                                                                                        | distance | 140 2i     | 30                |
| sliderrelief   | Specifies the relief to use when drawing the slider, such as raised.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |          |            | raised            |
| tickinterval   | Must be a real value. Determines the spacing between numerical tick marks displayed below or to the left of the slider. If it is 0, no tick marks will be displayed.                                                                                                                                                                        | float    | 0 5.0      | 0                 |
| to             | Specifies a real value corresponding to the right or bottom end of the scale. This value may be either less than or greater than the <code>from</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                              | float    | 25.0 -30.0 | 100               |
| troughcolor    | Specifies the color to use for the rectangular trough areas in widgets such as scrollbars and scales.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | color    | 'gray40'   | System-Scroll-bar |
| variable       | Specifies name of a Tkinter variable to contain the content and set the content of the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | variable | myVariable |                   |

## Methods

### **coords(value=None)**

Returns a tuple whose elements are the x and y coordinates of the point along the centerline of the trough that corresponds to `value`. If `value` is omitted then the scale's current value is used.

### **get()**

Returns the current value of the scale.

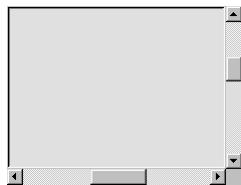
**identify(x, y)**

Returns a string indicating what part of the scale lies under the coordinates given by `x` and `y`. A return value of `SLIDER` means that the point is over the slider; `TROUGH1` means that the point is over the portion of the slider above or to the left of the slider; and `TROUGH2` means that the point is over the portion of the slider below or to the right of the slider. If the point isn't over one of these elements, an empty string is returned.

**set(value)**

This method is invoked to change the current value of the scale, and hence the position at which the slider is displayed. `value` gives the new value for the scale. The method has no effect if the scale is disabled.

## Scrollbar

**Description**

The Scrollbar class defines a new window and creates an instance of a scrollbar widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the scrollbar such as its colors, orientation, and relief. The `scrollbar` method returns the identity of the new widget. At the time this command is invoked, the scrollbar's parent must exist.

A scrollbar is a widget that displays two arrows, one at each end of the scrollbar, and a slider in the middle portion of the scrollbar. It provides information about what is visible in an associated window that displays a document of some sort (such as a file being edited or a drawing). The position and size of the slider indicate which portion of the document is visible in the associated window.

For example, if the slider in a vertical scrollbar covers the top third of the area between the two arrows, it means that the associated window displays the top third of its document. Scrollbars can be used to adjust the view in the associated window by clicking or dragging with the mouse.

**Inheritance**

Scrollbar inherits from `Widget`.

**Shared options**

| Option (alias)                | Default                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <code>activebackground</code> | <code>SystemButtonFace</code> |
| <code>background (bg)</code>  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code> |
| <code>borderwidth (bd)</code> | 0                             |
| <code>command</code>          |                               |

| Option (alias)      | Default           |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| cursor              |                   |
| highlightbackground | SystemButtonFace  |
| highlightcolor      | SystemWindowFrame |
| highlightthickness  | 0                 |
| relief              | sunken            |
| takefocus           |                   |
| width               | 16                |

## Options specific to Scrollbar

| Option             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Units    | Typical                     | Default  |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|----------|
| activerelief       | Specifies the relief to use when displaying the element that is active, if any. Elements other than the active element are always displayed with a raised relief.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | constant | SUNKEN                      | raised   |
| elementborderwidth | Specifies the width of borders drawn around the internal elements of a scrollbar (the two arrows and the slider). The value may have any of the forms acceptable to <code>winfo.pixels</code> . If this value is less than zero, the value of the <code>borderwidth</code> option is used in its place.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | distance | 10 1m                       | -1       |
| jump               | For widgets with a slider that can be dragged to adjust a value, such as scrollbars, this option determines when notifications are made about changes in the value. The option's value must be a boolean of the form accepted by <code>Tcl_GetBoolean</code> . If the value is <code>false</code> , updates are made continuously as the slider is dragged. If the value is <code>true</code> , updates are delayed until the mouse button is released to end the drag; at that point a single notification is made (the value "jumps" rather than changing smoothly). | boolean  | TRUE NO                     | 0        |
| orient             | For widgets that can lay themselves out with either a horizontal or vertical orientation, such as scrollbars, this option specifies which orientation should be used. Must be either <code>HORIZONTAL</code> or <code>VERTICAL</code> or an abbreviation of one of these.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | constant | VERTICAL<br>"verti-<br>cal" | vertical |
| repeatdelay        | Specifies the number of milliseconds a button or key must be held down before it begins to auto-repeat. Used, for example, on the up- and down-arrows in scrollbars.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | integer  | 300                         | 300      |

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                    | Units | Typical  | Default           |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------|-------------------|
| repeatinterval | Used in conjunction with repeatDelay: integer once auto-repeat begins, this option determines the number of milliseconds between auto repeats. |       | 100      | 100               |
| troughcolor    | Specifies the color to use for the rectangular trough areas in widgets such as scrollbars and scales.                                          | color | 'gray40' | System-Scroll-bar |

## Methods

### **activate(element)**

Marks the element indicated by `element` as active, which causes it to be displayed as specified by the `activeBackground` and `activeRelief` options. The only element values understood by this method are `ARROW1`, `SLIDER`, or `ARROW2`. If any other value is specified then no element of the scrollbar will be active. If `element` is not specified, the method returns the name of the element that is currently active, or an empty string if no element is active.

### **delta(deltaX, deltaY)**

Returns a real number indicating the fractional change in the scrollbar setting that corresponds to a given change in slider position. For example, if the scrollbar is horizontal, the result indicates how much the scrollbar setting must change to move the slider `deltaX` pixels to the right (`deltaY` is ignored in this case). If the scrollbar is vertical, the result indicates how much the scrollbar setting must change to move the slider pixels down. The arguments and the result may be zero or negative.

### **fraction(x, y)**

`fraction` is a real number between 0 and 1. The widget should adjust its view so that the point given by `fraction` appears at the beginning of the widget. If `fraction` is 0 it refers to the beginning of the document. 1.0 refers to the end of the document, 0.333 refers to a point one-third of the way through the document, and so on.

### **get()**

Returns the scrollbar settings in the form of a list whose elements are the arguments to the most recent `set` widget method.

### **identify(x, y)**

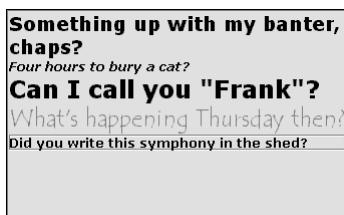
Returns the name of the element under the point given by `x` and `y` (such as `ARROW1`), or an empty string if the point does not lie in any element of the scrollbar. `x` and `y` must be pixel coordinates relative to the scrollbar widget.

### **set(first, last)**

This method is invoked by the scrollbar's associated widget to tell the scrollbar about the current view in the widget. The method takes two arguments, each of which is a real fraction between 0 and 1. The fractions describe the range of the document that is visible in the asso-

ciated widget. For example, if `first` is 0.2 and `last` is 0.4, it means that the first part of the document visible in the window is 20% of the way through the document, and the last visible part is 40% of the way through.

## Text



### Description

The `Text` class defines a new window and creates an instance of a text widget. Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the text such as its default background color and relief. The `text` method returns the path name of the new window.

A text widget displays one or more lines of text and allows that text to be edited. Text widgets support four different kinds of annotations on the text: tags, marks, embedded windows and embedded images. Tags allow different portions of the text to be displayed with different fonts and colors. In addition, Tcl commands can be associated with tags so that scripts are invoked when particular actions such as keystrokes and mouse button presses occur in particular ranges of the text.

The second form of annotation consists of marks, which are floating markers in the text. Marks are used to keep track of various interesting positions in the text as it is edited.

The third form of annotation allows arbitrary windows to be embedded in a text widget.

The fourth form of annotation allows Tk images to be embedded in a text widget.

Many of the widget commands for texts take one or more indices as arguments. An index is a string used to indicate a particular place within a text, such as a place to insert characters or one endpoint of a range of characters to delete.

### Inheritance

Text inherits from `Widget`.)

### Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemWindow</code>                   |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 2                                           |
| <code>cursor</code>                          | <code>xterm</code>                          |
| <code>font</code>                            | <code>(('MS', 'Sans', 'Serif'), '8')</code> |
| <code>foreground</code> ( <code>fg</code> )  | <code>SystemWindowText</code>               |
| <code>height</code>                          | 24                                          |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>               |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code>              |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 0                                           |

| Option (alias)    | Default             |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| padx              | 1                   |
| pady              | 1                   |
| relief            | sunken              |
| selectbackground  | SystemHighlight     |
| selectborderwidth | 0                   |
| selectforeground  | SystemHighlightText |
| state             | normal              |
| takefocus         |                     |
| width             | 80                  |
| xscrollcommand    |                     |

## Options specific to Text

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units   | Typical  | Default            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------|--------------------|
| exportselection   | Specifies whether or not a selection in the widget should also be the X selection. The value may have any of the forms accepted by <code>Tcl_GetBoolean</code> , such as <code>true</code> , <code>false</code> , <code>0</code> , <code>1</code> , <code>yes</code> , or <code>no</code> . If the selection is exported, then selecting in the widget deselects the current X selection, selecting outside the widget deselects any widget selection, and the widget will respond to selection retrieval requests when it has a selection. The default is usually for widgets to export selections. | boolean | 0 YES    | 1                  |
| insertbackground  | Specifies the color to use as background in the area covered by the insertion cursor. This color will normally override either the normal background for the widget or the selection background if the insertion cursor happens to fall in the selection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | color   | 'yellow' | System-Window-Text |
| insertborderwidth | Specifies a non-negative value indicating the width of the 3-D border to draw around the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | pixel   | 2        | 0                  |
| insertofftime     | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain "off" in each blink cycle. If this option is zero then the cursor doesn't blink: it is on all the time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | integer | 250      | 300                |
| insertontime      | Specifies a non-negative integer value indicating the number of milliseconds the insertion cursor should remain "on" in each blink cycle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | integer | 175      | 600                |

| <b>Option</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Units</b> | <b>Typical</b> | <b>Default</b> |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| insertwidth   | Specifies a value indicating the total width of the insertion cursor. The value may have any of the forms acceptable to Tkinter ( <code>Tk_GetPixels</code> ). If a border has been specified for the insertion cursor (using the <code>insertBorderWidth</code> option), the border will be drawn inside the width specified by the <code>insertWidth</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | pixel        | 2              | 2              |
| setgrid       | Specifies a boolean value that determines whether this widget controls the resizing grid for its top-level window. This option is typically used in text widgets, where the information in the widget has a natural size (the size of a character) and it makes sense for the window's dimensions to be integral numbers of these units. These natural window sizes form a grid. If the <code>setGrid</code> option is set to <code>true</code> then the widget will communicate with the window manager so that when the user interactively resizes the top-level window that contains the widget, the dimensions of the window will be displayed to the user in grid units and the window size will be constrained to integral numbers of grid units. See the section "Gridded geometry management" in the <code>wm</code> manual entry for more details. | boolean      | NO 1           | 0              |
| spacing1      | Requests additional space above each text line in the widget, using any of the standard forms for screen distances. If a line wraps, this option only applies to the first line on the display. This option may be overridden with <code>spacing1</code> options in tags.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | distance     | 2m 15          | 0              |
| spacing2      | For lines that wrap (so that they cover more than one line on the display) this option specifies additional space to be provided between the display lines that represent a single line of text. The value may have any of the standard forms for screen distances. This option may be overridden with <code>spacing2</code> options in tags.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance     | 1m, 3          | 0              |
| spacing3      | Requests additional space below each text line in the widget, using any of the standard forms for screen distances. If a line wraps, this option only applies to the last line on the display. This option may be overridden with <code>spacing3</code> options in tags.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | distance     | 3m, 14         | 0              |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units            | Typical | Default |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------|---------|
| tabs   | Specifies a set of tab stops for the window. The option's value consists of a list of screen distances giving the positions of the tab stops. Each position may optionally be followed in the next list element by one of the keywords LEFT, RIGHT, CENTER, or NUMERIC; these all specify how to justify text relative to the tab stop. LEFT is the default; it causes the text following the tab character to be positioned with its left edge at the tab position. RIGHT means that the right edge of the text following the tab character is positioned at the tab position, and CENTER means that the text is centered at the tab position. NUMERIC means that the decimal point in the text is positioned at the tab position; if there is no decimal point then the least significant digit of the number is positioned just to the left of the tab position; if there is no number in the text then the text is right-justified at the tab position. For example, <code>tabs=(2c, left, 4c, 6c, center)</code> creates three tab stops at two-centimeter intervals; the first two use left justification and the third uses center justification. If the list of tab stops does not have enough elements to cover all of the tabs in a text line, then Tk extrapolates new tab stops using the spacing and alignment from the last tab stop in the list. The value of the <code>tabs</code> option may be overridden by <code>-tabs</code> options in tags. If no <code>-tabs</code> option is specified, or if it is specified as an empty list, then Tk uses default tabs spaced every eight (average size) characters. | string           |         |         |
| wrap   | Specifies how to handle lines in the text that are too long to be displayed in a single line of the text's window. The value must be NONE or CHAR or WORD. A wrap mode of None means that each line of text appears as exactly one line on the screen; extra characters that don't fit on the screen are not displayed. In the other modes each line of text will be broken up into several screen lines if necessary to keep all the characters visible. In CHAR mode a screen line break may occur after any character; in WORD mode a line break will only be made at word boundaries.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | constant<br>NONE | "char"  | char    |

| Option                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units    | Typical | Default |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| <code>yscrollcommand</code> | Specifies the prefix for a command used to communicate with vertical scrollbars. This option is treated in the same way as the <code>xScrollCommand</code> option, except that it is used for vertical scrollbars and is provided by widgets that support vertical scrolling. See the description of <code>xScrollCommand</code> for details on how this option is used. | function |         |         |

## Methods

### **`bbox(index)`**

Returns a list of four elements describing the screen area of the character given by `index`. The first two elements of the list give the x and y coordinates of the upper-left corner of the area occupied by the character, and the last two elements give the width and height of the area. If the character is only partially visible on the screen, then the return value reflects just the visible part. If the character is not visible on the screen then the return value is an empty list.

### **`compare(index1, op, index2)`**

Compares the indices given by `index1` and `index2` according to the relational operator given by `op`, and returns `TRUE` if the relationship is satisfied and `FALSE` if it isn't. `op` must be one of the operators `<`, `<=`, `==`, `>=`, `>`, or `!=`. If `op` is `==` then `TRUE` is returned if the two indices refer to the same character; if `op` is `<` then `TRUE` is returned if `index1` refers to an earlier character in the text than `index2`, and so on.

### **`debug(boolean=None)`**

If `boolean` is specified, then it must have one of the true or false values accepted by `Tcl_GetBoolean`. If the value is a true one then internal consistency checks will be turned on in the B-tree code associated with text widgets. If `boolean` has a false value then the debugging checks will be turned off. In either case the method returns a boolean indicating whether debug is enabled. If `boolean` is not specified then the method returns `on` or `off` to indicate whether or not debugging is turned on. There is a single debugging switch shared by all text widgets: turning debugging on or off in any widget turns it on or off for all widgets. For widgets with large amounts of text, the consistency checks may cause a noticeable slowdown.

### **`delete(index1, index2=None)`**

Deletes a range of characters from the text. If both `index1` and `index2` are specified, then deletes all the characters starting with the one given by `index1` and stopping just before `index2` (i.e. the character at `index2` is not deleted). If `index2` doesn't specify a position later in the text than `index1` then no characters are deleted. If `index2` isn't specified then the single character at `index1` is deleted.

It is not allowable to delete characters in a way that would leave the text without a newline as the last character. Returns `None`.

### **dlineinfo(index)**

Returns a tuple with five elements describing the area occupied by the display line containing `index`. The first two elements of the list give the x and y coordinates of the upper-left corner of the area occupied by the line, the third and fourth elements give the width and height of the area, and the fifth element gives the position of the baseline for the line, measured down from the top of the area. All of this information is measured in pixels.

If the current wrap mode is `None` and the line extends beyond the boundaries of the window, the area returned reflects the entire area of the line, including the portions that are out of the window. If the line is shorter than the full width of the window then the area returned reflects just the portion of the line that is occupied by characters and embedded windows. If the display line containing `index` is not visible on the screen then the return value is an empty list.

### **get(index1, index2=None)**

Returns a range of characters from the text. The return value will be all the characters in the text starting with the one whose index is `index1` and ending just before the one whose index is `index2` (the character at `index2` will not be returned). If `index2` is omitted then the single character at `index1` is returned. If there are no characters in the specified range (e.g. `index1` is past the end of the file or `index2` is less than or equal to `index1`) then an empty string is returned. If the specified range contains embedded windows, no information about them is included in the returned string.

### **image\_cget(index, option)**

Returns the value of a configuration option for an embedded image. `index` identifies the embedded image, and `option` specifies a particular configuration option.

### **image\_configure(index, options...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options for an embedded image. If no `option` is specified, returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the embedded image at `index`. If `option` is specified with no value, then the method returns a dictionary describing the one named `option` (this dictionary will be identical to the corresponding sublist of the value returned if no `option` is specified).

If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the command modifies the given option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the command returns an empty string.

### **image\_names()**

Returns a tuple whose elements are the names of all windows currently embedded in window.

### **index(index)**

Returns the position corresponding to `index` in the form `line.char` where `line` is the line number and `char` is the character number.

### **insert(index, chars, tagList, chars, tagList...)**

Inserts all of the `chars` arguments just before the character at `index`. If `index` refers to the end of the text (the character after the last new line) then the new text is inserted just before

the last newline instead. If there is a single `chars` argument and no `tagList`, then the new text will receive any tags that are present on both the character before and the character after the insertion point; if a tag is present on only one of these characters then it will not be applied to the new text.

If `tagList` is specified then it consists of a list of tag names; the new characters will receive all of the tags in this list and no others, regardless of the tags present around the insertion point. If multiple `chars`-`tagList` argument pairs are present, they produce the same effect as if a separate `insert` widget method had been issued for each pair, in order. The last `tagList` argument may be omitted.

### **`mark_gravity(markName, direction=None)`**

If `direction` is not specified, returns `LEFT` or `RIGHT` to indicate which of its adjacent characters `markName` is attached to. If `direction` is specified, it must be `LEFT` or `RIGHT`; the gravity of `markName` is set to the given value.

### **`mark_names()`**

Returns a tuple whose elements are the names of all windows currently embedded in window.

### **`mark_set(markName, index)`**

Sets the mark named `markName` to a position just before the character at `index`. If `markName` already exists, it is moved from its old position; if it doesn't exist, a new mark is created.

### **`mark_unset(mark)`**

Removes the mark corresponding to `mark`. The removed mark will not be usable in indices and will not be returned by future calls to `mark_names` calls. This method returns `None`.

### **`scan_dragto(x, y)`**

Computes the difference between its `x` and `y` arguments and the `x` and `y` arguments to the last `scan_mark` call for the widget. It then adjusts the view by 10 times the difference in coordinates. This command is typically associated with mouse motion events in the widget, to produce the effect of dragging the text at high speed through the window. The return value is an empty string.

### **`scan_mark(x, y)`**

Records `x` and `y` and the current view in the text window, for use in conjunction with later `scan_dragto` commands. Typically this command is associated with a mouse button press in the widget. It returns `None`.

### **`see(index)`**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the character given by `index` is completely visible. If `index` is already visible then the method does nothing. If `index` is a short distance out of view, the method adjusts the view just enough to make `index` visible at the edge of the window. If `index` is far out of view, then the method centers `index` in the window.

### **tag\_add(tagName, index1, index2=None)**

Associates the tag `tagName` with all of the characters starting with `index1` and ending just before `index2` (the character at `index2` isn't tagged). A single method may contain any number of `index1`/`index2` pairs. If the last `index2` is omitted then the single character at `index1` is tagged. If there are no characters in the specified range (e.g. `index1` is past the end of the file or `index2` is less than or equal to `index1`) then the command has no effect.

### **tag\_bind(tagName, sequence, function, add=None)**

Associates `function` with the tag given by `tagName`. Whenever the event sequence given by `sequence` occurs for a character that has been tagged with `tagName`, the function will be invoked.

This widget command is similar to the `bind` method except that it operates on characters in a text rather than entire widgets.

If all arguments are specified then a new binding is created, replacing any existing binding for the same `sequence` and `tagName` (if the first character of `function` is `+` then `function` augments an existing binding rather than replacing it). In this case the return value is an empty string. If `function` is omitted then the command returns the function associated with `tagName` and `sequence` (an error occurs if there is no such binding).

If both `function` and `sequence` are omitted then the command returns a list of all the sequences for which bindings have been defined for `tagName`.

The only events for which bindings may be specified are those related to the mouse and keyboard (such as `Enter`, `Leave`, `ButtonPress`, `Motion`, and `KeyPress`) or virtual events. Event bindings for a text widget use the `CURRENT` mark. An `Enter` event triggers for a tag when the tag first becomes present on the current character, and a `Leave` event triggers for a tag when it ceases to be present on the current character. `Enter` and `Leave` events can happen either because the `CURRENT` mark moved or because the character at that position changed.

Note that these events are different than `Enter` and `Leave` events for windows. Mouse and keyboard events are directed to the current character. If a virtual event is used in a binding, that binding can trigger only if the virtual event is defined by an underlying mouse-related or keyboard-related event. It is possible for the current character to have multiple tags, and for each of them to have a binding for a particular event sequence. When this occurs, one binding is invoked for each tag, in order from lowest priority to highest priority.

If there are multiple matching bindings for a single tag, then the most specific binding is chosen. The tag bindings will be invoked first, followed by general bindings.

### **tag\_cget(tagName, option)**

Returns the current value of the option named `option` associated with the tag given by `tagName`. `option` may have any of the values accepted by `tag_configure`.

### **tag\_configure(tagName, options...)**

This command is similar to the `configure_widget` method except that it modifies options associated with the tag given by `tagName` instead of modifying options for the overall text widget. If no `option` is specified, the command returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for `tagName`. If `option` is specified with no value, then the command

returns a dictionary describing the one named option (this dictionary will be identical to the corresponding dictionary of the value returned if no option is specified).

If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given option(s) to have the given value(s) in `tagName`; in this case the command returns an empty string.

### **tag\_delete(\*tagNames)**

Deletes all tag information for each of the `tagName` arguments. The method removes the tags from all characters in the file and also deletes any other information associated with the tags, such as bindings and display information.

### **tag\_lower(tagName, belowThis=None)**

Changes the priority of tag `tagName` so that it is just lower in priority than the tag whose name is `belowThis`. If `belowThis` is omitted, then `tagName`'s priority is changed to make it the lowest priority of all tags.

### **tag\_names(index=None)**

Returns a tuple whose elements are the names of all the tags that are active at the character position given by `index`. If `index` is omitted, then the return value will describe all of the tags that exist for the text (this includes all tags that have been named in a `tag` widget method call but haven't been deleted by a `tag_delete` method call, even if no characters are currently marked with the tag). The tuple will be sorted in order from lowest priority to highest priority.

### **tag\_nextrange(tagName, index1, index2=None)**

Searches the text for a range of characters tagged with `tagName` where the first character of the range is no earlier than the character at `index1` and no later than the character just before `index2` (a range starting at `index2` will not be considered). If several matching ranges exist, the first one is chosen. The method's return value is a list containing two elements, which are the index of the first character of the range and the index of the character just after the last one in the range.

If no matching range is found then the return value is an empty string. If `index2` is not given then it defaults to the end of the text.

### **tag\_prevrange(tagName, index1, index2=None)**

Searches the text for a range of characters tagged with `tagName` where the first character of the range is before the character at `index1` and no earlier than the character at `index2` (a range starting at `index2` will be considered). If several matching ranges exist, the one closest to `index1` is chosen. The method's return value is a list containing two elements, which are the index of the first character of the range and the index of the character just after the last one in the range.

If no matching range is found then the return value is an empty string. If `index2` is not given then it defaults to the beginning of the text.

**tag\_raise(tagName, aboveThis=None)**

Changes the priority of tag `tagName` so that it is just higher in priority than the tag whose name is `aboveThis`. If `aboveThis` is omitted, then `tagName`'s priority is changed to make it the highest priority of all tags.

**tag\_ranges(tagName)**

Returns a tuple describing all of the ranges of text that have been tagged with `tagName`. The first two elements of the tuple describe the first tagged range in the text, the next two elements describe the second range, and so on. The first element of each pair contains the index of the first character of the range, and the second element of the pair contains the index of the character just after the last one in the range. If no characters are tagged with tag then an empty string is returned.

**tag\_remove(tagName, index1, index2=None)**

Removes the tag `tagName` from all of the characters starting at `index1` and ending just before `index2` (the character at `index2` isn't affected). A single call may contain any number of `index1`/`index2` pairs. If the last `index2` is omitted then the single character at `index1` is tagged. If there are no characters in the specified range (e.g. `index1` is past the end of the file or `index2` is less than or equal to `index1`) then the method has no effect. This method returns `None`.

**tag\_unbind(tagName, sequence, funcid=None)**

Removes the association of the event `sequence` with the event handler `funcID` for all the items given by `tagOrId`. If `funcID` is supplied the handler will be destroyed.

**tk\_textBackspace()**  
**tk\_textIndexCloser(a, b, c)**  
**tk\_textResetAnchor(index)**  
**tk\_textSelectTo(index)**

These four methods are really only useful if you are writing your own event handling for text. Their function is to set the text appearance as if the default actions had occurred. They may also be useful in simulating user interaction with a GUI.

**window\_cget(index, option)**

Returns the value of a configuration option for an embedded window. `index` identifies the embedded window, and `option` specifies a particular configuration option.

**window\_configure(index, options...)**

Queries or modifies the configuration options for an embedded window. If no option is specified, it returns a dictionary describing all of the available options for the embedded window at `index`. If `option` is specified with no value, then the method returns a dictionary describing the one named `option` (this dictionary will be identical to the corresponding dictionary of the value returned if no option is specified).

If one or more option-value pairs are specified, then the method modifies the given option(s) to have the given value(s); in this case the method returns an empty string.

### **window\_create(index, options...)**

Creates a new window annotation, which will appear in the text at the position given by `index`. Any number of option-value pairs may be specified to configure the annotation.

### **window\_names()**

Returns a list whose elements are the names of all windows currently embedded in window.

### **xview\_moveto(fraction)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that `fraction` of the horizontal span of the text is off-screen to the left. `fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1.

### **xview\_scroll(number, what)**

Shifts the view in the window left or right according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either UNITS or PAGES or an abbreviation of one of these. If `what` is UNITS, the view adjusts left or right by `number` average-width characters on the display; if it is PAGES then the view adjusts by `number` screenfuls. If `number` is negative then characters farther to the left become visible; if it is positive then characters farther to the right become visible.

### **yview\_moveto(fraction)**

Adjusts the view in the window so that the character given by `fraction` appears on the top line of the window. `fraction` is a fraction between 0 and 1; 0 indicates the first character in the text, 0.33 indicates the character one-third of the way through the text, and so on.

### **yview\_scroll(number, what)**

Adjusts the view in the window up or down according to `number` and `what`. `number` must be an integer. `what` must be either UNITS or PAGES. If `what` is UNITS, the view adjusts up or down by `number` lines on the display; if it is PAGES then the view adjusts by `number` screenfuls. If `number` is negative then earlier positions in the text become visible; if it is positive then later positions in the text become visible.

### **yview\_pickplace(index)**

Changes the view in the widget's window to make `index` visible. If the `pickplace` option isn't specified then `index` will appear at the top of the window. If `pickplace` is specified then the widget chooses where `index` appears in the window. If `index` is already visible somewhere in the window then the method does nothing.

If `index` is only a few lines off-screen above the window then it will be positioned at the top of the window. If `index` is only a few lines off-screen below the window then it will be positioned at the bottom of the window. Otherwise, `index` will be centered in the window.

The `pickplace` option has been made obsolete by the `see` widget method (see handles both x- and y-motion to make a location visible, whereas `pickplace` only handles motion in y).

# Toplevel



## Description

The Toplevel class defines a new toplevel widget (given by the `pathName` argument). Additional options, described below, may be specified in the method call or in the option database to configure aspects of the toplevel such as its background color and relief. The `toplevel` method returns the pathname of the new window.

A toplevel is similar to a frame except that it is created as a top-level window: its X parent is the root window of a screen rather than the logical parent from its pathname. The primary purpose of a toplevel is to serve as a container for dialog boxes and other collections of widgets. The only visible features of a toplevel are its background color and an optional 3-D border to make the toplevel appear raised or sunken.

## Inheritance

Toplevel inherits from `BaseWidget`, `Wm`.

## Shared options

| Option (alias)                               | Default                        |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <code>background</code> ( <code>bg</code> )  | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>  |
| <code>borderwidth</code> ( <code>bd</code> ) | 0                              |
| <code>cursor</code>                          |                                |
| <code>height</code>                          | 0                              |
| <code>highlightbackground</code>             | <code>SystemButtonFace</code>  |
| <code>highlightcolor</code>                  | <code>SystemWindowFrame</code> |
| <code>highlightthickness</code>              | 0                              |
| <code>relief</code>                          | <code>flat</code>              |
| <code>takefocus</code>                       | 0                              |
| <code>width</code>                           | 0                              |

## Options specific to Toplevel

| Option    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Typical       | Default  |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| class     | Specifies a class for the window. This class will be used when querying the option database for the window's other options, and it will also be used later for other purposes such as bindings. The <code>class</code> option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method. Note that because <code>class</code> is a reserved word, <code>_class</code> must be used with Tkinter.                                                                                                                                                     | class    |               | Toplevel |
| colormap  | Specifies a colormap to use for the window. The value may be either <code>NEW</code> , in which case a new colormap is created for the window and its children, or the name of another window (which must be on the same screen and have the same visual as <code>pathName</code> ), in which case the new window will use the colormap from the specified window. If the <code>colormap</code> option is not specified, the new window uses the same colormap as its parent. This option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method. | colormap | NEW myWindow  |          |
| container | The value must be a boolean. If <code>TRUE</code> , it means that this window will be used as a container in which some other application will be embedded (for example, a Tkinter toplevel can be embedded using the <code>use</code> option). The window will support the appropriate window manager protocols for things like geometry requests. The window should not have any children of its own in this application. This option may not be changed with the <code>configure</code> method.                                                   | boolean  | TRUE 0        | 0        |
| menu      | Specifies the pathname of the menu associated with a menubutton. The menu must be a child of the menubutton.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | string   | subMenuAction |          |
| screen    | Specifies the screen on which to place the new window. Any valid screen name may be used, even one associated with a different display. Defaults to the same screen as its parent. This option is special in that it may not be specified via the option database, and it may not be modified with the <code>configure</code> method.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | screen   | "Default"     |          |
| use       | Specifies the value to store in the widget's associated Tkinter variable whenever the widget is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | string   |               |          |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units  | Typical    | Default |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------|---------|
| visual | Specifies visual information for the new window in any of the forms accepted by <code>winfo.visual</code> . If this option is not specified, the new window will use the same visual as its parent. The <code>visual</code> option may not be modified with the <code>configure</code> method. | visual | monochrome |         |

## Methods

Toplevel has standard widget methods such as `configure`.

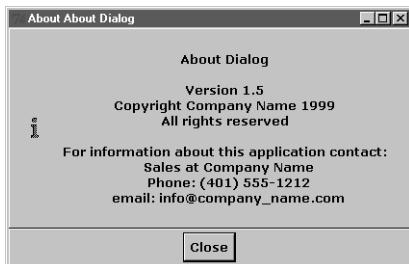
## A P P E N D I X C

---

# *Pmw reference: Python megawidgets*

The information presented in this appendix has been largely generated, in a manner similar to appendix B, using Python programs to walk the Pmw package and the Pmw HTML documentation, which was then processed to generate a large ASCII file which contained headings, text and tables ready for importing into FrameMaker, which was used to produce this book.

## AboutDialog



### Description

This class displays a window with application, copyright and contact information.

### Inheritance

AboutDialog inherits from Pmw.MessageDialog.

## AboutDialog options

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units            | Default  |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| activatecommand   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the mega-widget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | function         | None     |
| applicationname   | Sets the application name displayed by <code>AboutDialog</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | string           | None     |
| borderx           | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | distance         | 20       |
| bordery           | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance         | 20       |
| buttonboxpos      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E, or W.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | anchor           | S        |
| buttons           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | (string,<br>...) | ('OK', ) |
| command           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or <code>None</code> if the window was deleted by the window manager.                                                         | function         | None     |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the mega-widget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | function         | None     |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the Return key is pressed when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If <code>defaultbutton</code> is <code>None</code> , there will be no default button and pressing the Return key will have no effect.                                                                           | index            | 0        |
| iconmargin        | Specifies the space to be left around the icon, if present.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | distance         | 20       |
| iconpos           | Determines the placement of the icon if it is to be displayed. Value must be either one of the letters N, S, E, and W or None.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | anchor           | W        |
| separatorwidth    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component-named separator. Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and child site. | distance         | 0        |
| title             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | string           | None     |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default, it is created with the options (`hull_borderwidth = 1, hull_relief = 'raised'`).

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (`borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised'`).

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **icon**

This is the icon to display alongside the message.

### **message**

This widget contains the text displayed within the dialog.

### **separator**

If the `separatorwidth` initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

There are no `AboutDialog` methods, other than inherited methods from the base classes.

## Functions

### **aboutversion(value)**

Sets the version displayed by the `AboutDialog` to `value`.

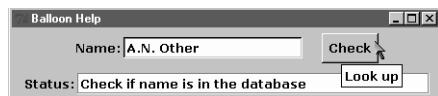
### **aboutcopyright(value)**

Sets the copyright string displayed by the `AboutDialog` to `value`.

### **aboutcontact(value)**

Sets the contact information displayed by the `AboutDialog` to `value`.

# Balloon



## Description

This class implements a balloon help system and provides a mechanism to supply the same (or different) messages to a status area, if present. It

is good practice to provide a mechanism for the user to turn off such messages if they are not required.

## Inheritance

Balloon inherits from `Pmw.MegaToplevel`.

## Balloon options

| Option                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                            | Units        | Default |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------|
| <code>activatecommand</code>   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                     | function     | None    |
| <code>deactivatecommand</code> | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                 | function     | None    |
| <code>initwait</code>          | The time to wait, in milliseconds, after the pointer has entered the widget before the balloon is displayed.                                                                           | milliseconds | 500     |
| <code>state</code>             | Determines whether balloon help or status messages are displayed. May be <code>none</code> , <code>balloon</code> , <code>status</code> or <code>both</code> .                         | constant     | 'both'  |
| <code>statuscommand</code>     | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the status message is to be updated. This will normally be a call to a <code>Pmw.MessageBar</code> 's <code>helpmessage</code> method. | function     | None    |
| <code>title</code>             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                     | string       | None    |
| <code>xoffset</code>           | Horizontal offset for the balloon help widget. Starts at the bottom left-hand corner of the associated widget's bounding box.                                                          | distance     | 20      |
| <code>yoffset</code>           | Vertical offset for the balloon help widget. Starts at the bottom left-hand corner of the associated widget's bounding box.                                                            | distance     | 1       |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the mega-widget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## **Methods**

### **bind(widget, balloonHelp, statusHelp = None)**

Adds `balloonHelp` to the specified widget. If `statusHelp` is `None`, `balloonHelp` is bound as the status message. If `statusHelp` is specified, the `bind` message is bound to the status area for `widget`. If both `balloonHelp` and `statusHelp` are `None`, `bind(widget, None)` is equivalent to `unbind(widget)`.

### **clearstatus()**

Removes any existing status message.

### **showstatus(statusHelp)**

If `statuscommand` is defined, it is called with `statusHelp` as its argument.

### **tagbind(widget, tagOrItem, balloonHelp, statusHelp = None)**

Similar to `bind`, this method adds `balloonHelp` to the item `tagOrItem` defined within `widget`.

### **tagunbind(widget, tagOrItem)**

Removes any existing binding for `tagOrId` within `widget`.

### **unbind(widget)**

Removes all `<Motion>`, `<Enter>`, `<Leave>` and `<ButtonPress>` bindings for `widget`.

## **ButtonBox**



### **Description**

This class creates a manager widget for containing buttons. One of these buttons may be specified as the default and it will be displayed with the platform-specific appearance for a default button. The buttons may be laid out either horizontally or vertically.

## **Inheritance**

`ButtonBox` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## ButtonBox options

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| labelmargin | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0                       |
| labelpos    | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>W</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>W</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None                    |
| orient      | Specifies the orientation of the button box. This may be <code>HORIZONTAL</code> or <code>VERTICAL</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | constant | <code>HORIZONTAL</code> |
| padx        | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each button in the x direction and also between the buttons and the outer edge of the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | distance | 3                       |
| pady        | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each button in the y direction and also between the buttons and the outer edge of the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | distance | 3                       |

## Components

### frame

If the label component has been created (that is, the `labelpos` option is not `None`), the frame component is created to act as the container of the buttons created by the `add()` and `insert()` methods. If there is no label component, then no frame component is created and the hull component acts as the container.

### hull

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### label

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## Methods

### **add(name, \*\*kw)**

Adds a button to the end of the button box as a component named name. Any keyword arguments present will be passed to the constructor when creating the button. If the text keyword argument is not given, the text option of the button defaults to name. The method returns the name component widget.

### **alignbuttons(when = 'later')**

Sets the widths of all the buttons to be the same as the width of the widest button. If when is later, this will occur when the interpreter next becomes idle; otherwise, the resizing will occur immediately.

### **delete(index)**

Deletes the button given by index from the button box. index may have any of the forms accepted by the index() method.

### **index(index, forInsert = 0)**

Returns the numerical index of the button corresponding to index. This may be specified in any of the following forms:

- number Specifies the button numerically, where 0 corresponds to the left (or top) button.
- end Indicates the right (or bottom) button.
- default Indicates the current default button.
- name Specifies the button named name.

If forInsert is true, end returns the number of buttons rather than the index of the last button.

### **insert(name, before = 0, \*\*kw)**

Adds a button just before the button specified by before, as a component named name. Any keyword arguments present will be passed to the constructor when creating the button. before may have any of the forms accepted by the index() method. To add a button to the end of the button box, use add(). The method returns the name component widget.

### **invoke(index = 'default', noFlash = 0)**

Invokes the callback command associated with the button specified by index. Unless noFlash is true, flashes the button to indicate to the user that something happened. index may have any of the forms accepted by the index() method.

### **numbuttons()**

Returns the number of buttons in the button box.

### **setdefault(index)**

Sets the default button to the button given by index. This causes the specified button to be displayed with the platform-specific appearance for a default button. If index is None, there



## Description

This class creates an entry field and an associated scrolled listbox. When an item in the listbox is selected, it is displayed in the entry field. Optionally, the user may also edit the entry field directly.

For a simple combobox, the scrolled listbox is displayed beneath the entry field. For a dropdown combobox (the default), the scrolled listbox is displayed in a window which pops up beneath the entry field when the user clicks on an arrow button on the right of the entry field. Either style allows an optional label.

## Inheritance

ComboBox inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## ComboBox options

| Option                    | Description                                                                                                                                                     | Units    | Default |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| <code>autoclear</code>    | If both <code>autoclear</code> and <code>history</code> are true, clear the entry field whenever RETURN is pressed, after adding the value to the history list. | boolean  | 0       |
| <code>buttonaspect</code> | The width of the arrow button as a proportion of the height. The height of the arrow button is set to the height of the entry widget.                           | float    | 1.0     |
| <code>dropdown</code>     | Specifies whether the combobox megawidget should be dropdown or simple.                                                                                         | boolean  | 1       |
| <code>fliparrow</code>    | If true, the arrow button is drawn upside down when the listbox is being displayed. Used only in dropdown megawidgets.                                          | boolean  | 0       |
| <code>history</code>      | When RETURN is pressed in the entry field, the current value of the entry field is appended to the listbox if <code>history</code> is true.                     | boolean  | 1       |
| <code>labelmargin</code>  | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.          | distance | 0       |

| Option           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units    | Default |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| labelpos         | Specifies where to place the label component. If not None, it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters N, S, E and W. The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if labelpos is W, the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is WN, the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is WS, the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None    |
| listheight       | The height, in pixels, of the dropdown listbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | height   | 150     |
| selectioncommand | The function to call when an item is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | function | None    |
| Pmw:unique       | If both unique and history are true, the current value of the entry field is not added to the listbox if it is already in the list.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | boolean  | 1       |

## Components

### **arrowbutton**

In a dropdown combobox, this is the button to pop up the listbox.

### **entryfield**

The entry field where the current selection is displayed.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the labelpos option is not None, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the labelpos option for details. Note that to set, for example, the text option of the label, you need to use the label\_text component option.

### **popup**

In a dropdown combobox, this is the dropdown window.

### **scrolledlist**

The scrolled listbox which displays the items to select.

## Methods

### **get(first = None, last = None)**

This is the same as the get() method of the scrolledlist component, except that if neither first nor last are specified, the value of the entry field is returned.

**invoke()**

If it's a dropdown combobox, displays the dropdown listbox. In a simple combobox, selects the currently selected item in the listbox, calls the `selectioncommand` and returns the result.

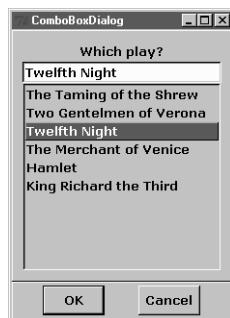
**selectitem(index, setentry = 1)**

Selects the item in the listbox specified by `index` which may be either one of the items in the listbox or the integer index of one of the items in the listbox.

**size()**

This method is explicitly forwarded to the `scrolledlist` component's `size()` method. Without this explicit forwarding, the `size()` method (aliased to `grid_size()`) of the hull would be invoked, which is probably not what the programmer intended.

## ComboBoxDialog

**Description**

A `ComboBoxDialog` is a convenience dialog window with a simple combobox. This is used to request the user to enter a value or make a selection from the combobox list.

**Inheritance**

`ComboBoxDialog` inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## ComboBoxDialog options

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                 | Units         | Default     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <code>activatecommand</code> | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget function is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> . | function      | None        |
| <code>borderx</code>         | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                | distance      | 10          |
| <code>bordery</code>         | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                               | distance      | 10          |
| <code>buttonboxpos</code>    | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                          | anchor        | S           |
| <code>buttons</code>         | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                    | (string, ...) | ('OK', ...) |

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Units    | Default |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| command           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager.                                                                          | function | None    |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to deactivate().                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | function | None    |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the index RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If defaultbutton is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                         | index    | None    |
| separatorwidth    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named separator. Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and the child site. | distance | 0       |
| title             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | string   | None    |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (hull\_borderwidth = 1, hull\_relief = 'raised').

### **combobox**

The widget used as the selection widget. By default, this component is a Pmw.ComboBox.

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised').

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

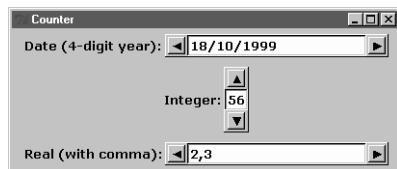
### **separator**

If the separatorwidth initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

This megawidget has no methods of its own. In addition, methods from the Pmw.ComboBox class are forwarded by this megawidget to the combobox component.

# Counter



## Description

This class consists of an entry field with arrow buttons to increment and decrement the value in the entry field. Standard counting types include numbers, times and dates. A user-defined counting function may also be supplied for specialized counting.

Counting can be used in combination with the entry field's validation. The components may be laid out horizontally or vertically.

Each time an arrow button is pressed the value displayed in the entry field is incremented or decremented by the value of the increment option. If the new value is invalid (according to the entry field's validate option, perhaps due to exceeding minimum or maximum limits), the old value is restored.

When an arrow button is pressed and the value displayed is not an exact multiple of the increment, it is “truncated” up or down to the nearest increment.

## Inheritance

Counter inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## Counter options

| Option                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Units    | Default   |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| <code>autorepeat</code>   | If true, the counter will continue to count up or down while an arrow button is held down.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | boolean  | 1         |
| <code>buttonaspect</code> | Specifies the width of the arrow buttons as a proportion of their height. Values less than 1.0 will produce thin arrow buttons. Values greater than 1.0 will produce fat arrow buttons.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | float    | 1.0       |
| <code>datatype</code>     | Specifies how the counter should count up and down. The most general way to specify the datatype option is as a dictionary. The kind of counting is specified by the counter dictionary field, which may be either a function or the name of one of the standard counters described below. *Any other fields in the dictionary are passed on to the counter function as keyword arguments. | constant | 'numeric' |

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units        | Default    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|
|             | If datatype is not a dictionary, then it is equivalent to specifying it as a dictionary with a single counter field. For example, datatype = 'real' is equivalent to datatype = {'counter' : 'real'}.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |              |            |
| increment   | Specifies how many units should be added or subtracted when the counter is incremented or decremented. If the currently displayed value is not a multiple of increment, the value is changed to the next multiple greater or less than the current value.<br><br>For the number datatypes, the value of increment is a number. For the time datatype, the value is in seconds. For the date datatype, the value is in days.                                                                                                              | units        | 1          |
| initwait    | Specifies the initial delay (in milliseconds) before a depressed arrow button automatically starts to repeat counting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | milliseconds | 300        |
| labelmargin | If the labelpos option is not None, this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | distance     | 0          |
| labelpos    | Specifies where to place the label component. If not None, it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters N, S, E and W. The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if labelpos is W, the label is placed in the centre of the left-hand side; if it is WN, the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is WS, the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor       |            |
| orient      | Specifies whether the arrow buttons should appear to the left and right of the entry field (HORIZONTAL) or above and below (VERTICAL).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | constant     | HORIZONTAL |
| padx        | Specifies a padding distance to leave around the arrow buttons in the x direction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | distance     | 0          |
| pady        | Specifies a padding distance to leave around the arrow buttons in the y direction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | distance     | 0          |
| repeatrate  | Specifies the delay (in milliseconds) between automatic counts while an arrow button is held down.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | milliseconds | 50         |

\* The standard counters are:

- numeric An integer number, as accepted by `string.atol()`
- integer Same as numeric.
- real A real number, as accepted by `string.atof()`. This counter accepts a separator argument, which specifies the character used to represent the decimal point. The default separator is '.'.

- `time` A time specification, as accepted by `Pmw.timestringtoseconds()`. This counter accepts a `separator` argument, which specifies the character used to separate the time fields. The default separator is ':'.
- `date` A date specification, as accepted by `Pmw.datestringtojdn()`. This counter accepts a `separator` argument, which specifies the character used to separate the three date fields. The default is '/'. This counter also accepts a `format` argument, which is passed to `Pmw.datestringtojdn()` to specify the desired ordering of the fields. The default is `ymd`.

If `counter` is a function, then it will be called whenever the counter is incremented or decremented. The function is called with at least three arguments, the first three being (`text`, `factor`, `increment`), where `text` is the current contents of the entry field, `factor` is 1 when incrementing or -1 when decrementing, and `increment` is the value of the increment megawidget option.

The other arguments are keyword arguments made up of the fields of the datatype dictionary (excluding the `counter` field). The `counter` function should return a string representing the incremented or decremented value. It should raise a `ValueError` exception if the text is invalid. In this case the bell is rung and the entry text is not changed.

## Components

### **downarrow**

The arrow button used for decrementing the counter. Depending on the value of `orient`, it will appear on the left or below the entry field. Its component group is `Arrow`.

### **entryfield**

The entry field widget where the text is entered, displayed and validated.

### **frame**

If the label component has been created (that is, the `labelpos` option is not `None`), the frame component is created to act as the container of the entry field and arrow buttons. If there is no label component, then no frame component is created and the hull component acts as the container. In either case the border around the container of the entry field and arrow buttons will be raised (but not around the label).

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## **uparrow**

The arrow button used for incrementing the counter. Depending on the value of `orient`, it will appear on the right or above the entry field. Its component group is `Arrow`.

## **Methods**

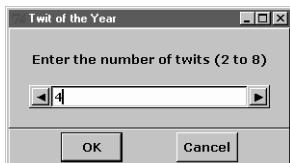
### **decrement()**

Decrements the counter once, as if the down arrow had been pressed.

### **increment()**

Increments the counter once, as if the up arrow had been pressed.

# **CounterDialog**



## **Description**

A CounterDialog is a convenience dialog window with a simple counter. This is used to request the user to select a value using the up or down buttons.

## **Inheritance**

CounterDialog inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## **CounterDialog options**

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Units         | Default  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|
| <code>activatecommand</code> | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                     | function      | None     |
| <code>borderx</code>         | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | distance      | 20       |
| <code>bordery</code>         | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | distance      | 20       |
| <code>buttonboxpos</code>    | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                     | anchor        | S        |
| <code>buttons</code>         | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                               | (string, ...) | ('OK', ) |
| <code>command</code>         | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager. | function      | None     |

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units    | Default |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to deactivate().                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | function | None    |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If defaultbutton is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                           | index    | None    |
| separatorwidth    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named separator. Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and child site. | distance | 0       |
| title             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | string   | None    |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (hull\_borderwidth = 1, hull\_relief = 'raised').

### **counter**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.Counter`.

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised').

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **separator**

If the separatorwidth initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

### **deleteentry(first, last = None)**

Removes entries from the counter starting at first and ending at last. first and last are integer indices. If last is None, first will be deleted.

## **indexentry(index)**

Returns the numerical index of the item corresponding to `index`.

## **insertentry(index, text)**

Inserts `text` at the integer position `index`.

# **Dialog**



## **Description**

This class creates a toplevel window composed of a button box and a child site area. The child site area can be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. This can be done by using this class directly or by deriving from it.

## **Inheritance**

Dialog inherits from `Pmw.MegaToplevel`.

## **Dialog options**

| Option                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units         | Default |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|
| <code>activatecommand</code>   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | function      | None    |
| <code>buttonboxpos</code>      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | anchor        | S       |
| <code>buttons</code>           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | (string, ...) | ('OK',) |
| <code>command</code>           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager.                                                                                    | function      | None    |
| <code>deactivatecommand</code> | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | function      | None    |
| <code>defaultbutton</code>     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If <code>defaultbutton</code> is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                            | index         | None    |
| <code>separatorwidth</code>    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named <code>separator</code> . Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and child site. | distance      | 0       |

| Option | Description                                                                        | Units  | Default |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| title  | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window. | string | None    |

## Components

### buttonbox

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (`hull_borderwidth = 1, hull_relief = 'raised'`).

### dialogchildsite

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (`borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised'`).

### hull

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### separator

If the `separatorwidth` initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

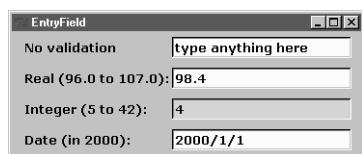
### interior()

Returns the child site for the dialog. This is the same as `component('dialogchildsite')`.

### invoke(index = 'default')

Invokes the command specified by the command option as if the button specified by index had been pressed. index may have any of the forms accepted by the `Pmw.ButtonBox.index()` method.

## EntryField



### Description

This class consists of an entry widget with optional validation of various kinds. Built-in validation may be used, such as `integer`, `real`, `time` or `date`, or an external validation function may be supplied. If valid text is entered, it will be displayed with the normal background. If invalid text is entered, it is not displayed and the previously displayed text is restored. If partially valid text is entered, it

will be displayed with a background color to indicate it is in error. An example of partially valid real text is ‘-.’, which may be the first two characters of the valid string ‘-.5’. Some validators, such as `date`, have a relaxed interpretation of partial validity, which allows the user flexibility in how he enters the text.

Validation is performed early, at each keystroke or other event which modifies the text. However, if partially valid text is permitted, the validity of the entered text can be checked just before it is to be used; this is a form of late validation.

Minimum and maximum values may be specified. Some validators also accept other specifications, such as date and time formats and separators.

## Validation function return values

Validation is performed by a function which takes as its first argument the entered text and returns one of three standard values, indicating whether the text is valid:

- `Pmw.OK` The text is valid.
- `Pmw.ERROR` The text is invalid and is not acceptable for display. In this case the entry will be restored to its previous value.
- `Pmw.PARTIAL` The text is partially valid and is acceptable for display. In this case the text will be displayed using the `errorbackground` color.

## Inheritance

`EntryField` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## EntryField options

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Units           | Default |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------|
| <code>command</code>         | This specifies a function to call whenever the RETURN key is pressed or <code>invoke()</code> is called.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | function        | None    |
| <code>errorbackground</code> | Specifies the background color to use when displaying invalid or partially valid text.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | color           | 'pink'  |
| <code>extravalidators</code> | This is a dictionary of extra validators. The keys are the names of validators which may be used in a future call to the <code>validate</code> option. Each value in the dictionary is a tuple of ( <code>validate_function</code> , <code>stringtovalue_function</code> ).<br>The <code>validate_function</code> is used to implement the validation and the <code>stringtovalue_function</code> is used to convert the entry input into a value which can be compared with the minimum and maximum limits. These functions are as described for the <code>validate</code> option.<br>If either of these is not given as a function, it is assumed to be the name of one of the other extra validators or one of the standard validators. The alias search is performed when the <code>validate</code> option is configured, not when the <code>extravalidators</code> option is configured or when the <code>validate</code> function is called. | dictio-<br>nary | {}      |

| Option          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default                |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------|
|                 | If the name of one of the extra validators is the same as one of the standard validators, the extra validator takes precedence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |          |                        |
| invalidcommand  | This is executed when invalid text is entered and the text is restored to its previous value (that is, when the validate function returns <code>Pmw.ERROR</code> ). It is also called if an attempt is made to set invalid text in a call to <code>setentry()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | function | <code>self.bell</code> |
| labelmargin     | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0                      |
| labelpos        | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>W</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>W</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | <code>None</code>      |
| modifiedcommand | This is called whenever the content of the entry has been changed due to user action or by a call to <code>setentry()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | function | <code>None</code>      |
| validate        | Specifies what kind of validation should be performed on the entry input text. See below for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | constant | <code>None</code>      |
| value           | Specifies the initial contents of the entry. If this text is invalid, it will be displayed with the <code>errorbackground</code> color and the <code>invalidcommand</code> function will be called. If both <code>value</code> and <code>entry_textvariable</code> options are specified in the constructor, <code>value</code> will take precedence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | string   | <code>' '</code>       |

## Validators

The most general way to specify the `validate` option is as a dictionary. The kind of validation is specified by the `validator` dictionary field, which may be the name of one of the standard validators described below, the name of a validator supplied by the `extravalidators` option, a function or `None`.

Any other dictionary fields specify other restrictions on the entered values. For all validators, the following fields may be specified:

- `min` Specifies the minimum acceptable value, or `None` if no minimum checking should be performed. The default is `None`.
- `max` Specifies the maximum acceptable value, or `None` if no maximum checking should be performed. The default is `None`.
- `minstrict` If `true`, then minimum checking is strictly enforced. Otherwise, the entry input may be less than `min`, but it will be displayed using the `errorbackground` color. The default is `true`.

- `maxstrict` If true, then maximum checking is strictly enforced. Otherwise, the entry input may be more than `max`, but it will be displayed using the `errorbackground` color. The default is true.

If the dictionary contains a `stringtovalue` field, it overrides the normal `stringtovalue` function for the validator. The `stringtovalue` function is described below.

Other fields in the dictionary (apart from the core fields mentioned above) are passed on to the validator and `stringtovalue` functions as keyword arguments.

If `validate` is not a dictionary, then it is equivalent to specifying it as a dictionary with a single `validator` field. For example, `validate = 'real'` is equivalent to `validate = {'validator' : 'real'}` and it specifies real numbers without any minimum or maximum limits and using “.” as the decimal point character.

The standard validators accepted in the `validator` field are these:

- `numeric` An integer greater than or equal to 0. Digits only. No sign.
- `hexadecimal` Hex number (with optional leading `0x`), as accepted by `string.atol(text, 16)`.
- `real` A number, with or without a decimal point and optional exponent (`e` or `E`), as accepted by `string.atof()`. This validator accepts a `separator` argument, which specifies the character used to represent the decimal point. The default separator is “.”.
- `alphabetic` Consisting of the letters a-z and A-Z. In this case, `min` and `max` specify limits on the length of the text.
- `alphanumeric` Consisting of the letters a-z, A-Z and the numbers 0-9. In this case, `min` and `max` specify limits on the length of the text.
- `time` Hours, minutes and seconds, in the format `HH:MM:SS`, as accepted by `Pmw.timestringtoseconds()`. This validator accepts a `separator` argument, which specifies the character used to separate the three fields. The default separator is “:”. The time may be negative.
- `date` Day, month and year, as accepted by `Pmw.datestringtojdn()`. This validator accepts a `separator` argument, which specifies the character used to separate the three fields. The default is “:”. This validator also accepts a `format` argument, which is passed to `Pmw.datestringtojdn()` to specify the desired ordering of the fields. The default is `ymd`.

If `validator` is a function, then it will be called whenever the contents of the entry may have changed due to user action or by a call to `setentry()`. The function is called with at least one argument, the first one being the new text as modified by the user or `setentry()`. The other arguments are keyword arguments made up of the non-core fields of the validate dictionary.

The validator function should return `Pmw.OK`, `Pmw.ERROR` or `Pmw.PARTIAL` as described above. It should not perform minimum and maximum checking. This is done after the call, if it returns `Pmw.OK`.

The `stringtovalue` field in the dictionary may be specified as the name of one of the standard validators, the name of a validator supplied by the `extravalidators` option, a function or `None`.

The `stringtovalue` function is used to convert the entry input into a value which can then be compared with any minimum or maximum values specified for the validator. If the `min` or `max` fields are specified as strings, they are converted using the `stringtovalue` function. The `stringtovalue` function is called with the same arguments as the validator

function. The `stringtovalue` function for the standard number validators convert the string to a number. Those for the standard alpha validators return the length of the string. Those for the standard `time` and `date` validators return the number of seconds and the Julian Day Number, respectively. See `Pmw.stringtoreal()`, `Pmw.timestamptoseconds()` and `Pmw.datestringtojdn()`.

If the validator has been specified as a function and no `stringtovalue` field is given, then it defaults to the standard Python `len()` function.

If `validator` is `None`, no validation is performed. However, minimum and maximum checking may be performed, according to the `stringtovalue` function. For example, to limit the entry text to a maximum of five characters:

```
Pmw.EntryField(validate = {'max' : 5})
```

The `validator` functions for each of the standard validators can be accessed this way:

```
Pmw.numericvalidator
Pmw.integervalidator
Pmw.hexadecimalvalidator
Pmw.realvalidator
Pmw.alphabeticvalidator
Pmw.alphanumericvalidator
Pmw.timevalidator
Pmw.datevalidator
```

Whenever the `validate` option is configured, the text currently displayed in the entry widget is revalidated. If it is not valid, the `errorbackground` color is set and the `invalidcommand` function is called. However, the displayed text is not modified.

## Components

### **entry**

The widget where the user may enter text. Long text may be scrolled horizontally by dragging with the middle mouse button.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## Methods

### **checkentry()**

Checks the validity of the current contents of the entry widget. If the text is not valid, sets the background to `errorbackground` and calls the `invalidcommand` function. If a variable is

specified by the `entry_textvariable` option, this method should be called after the `set()` method of the variable is called. If this is not done in this case, the entry widget background will not be set correctly.

### **clear()**

Removes all text from the entry widget. Equivalent to `setentry('')`.

### **invoke()**

Invokes the command specified by the `command` option as if the RETURN key had been pressed and returns the result.

### **setentry(text)**

Sets the contents of the entry widget to `text` and carries out validation as if the text had been entered by the user. If the text is invalid, the entry widget will not be changed and the `invalidcommand` function will be called.

### **valid()**

Returns `true` if the contents of the entry widget are valid.

## **Group**



### **Description**

This megawidget consists of an interior frame with an exterior ring border and an identifying tag displayed over the top edge of the ring. The programmer can create other widgets within the interior frame.

### **Inheritance**

Group inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## **Group options**

| Option                  | Description                                                                        | Units    | Default |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| <code>tagindent1</code> | The distance from the left edge of the ring to the left side of the tag component. | distance | 10      |

## **Components**

### **groupchildsite**

The frame which can contain other widgets to be grouped.

**hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

**ring**

This component acts as the enclosing ring around the `groupchildsite`. The default border-width is 2 and the default relief is groove.

**tag**

The identifying tag displayed over the top edge of the enclosing ring. If this is `None`, no tag is displayed.

**Methods****`interior()`**

Returns the frame within which the programmer may create widgets. This is the same as `component('groupchildsite')`.

# LabeledWidget

**Description**

This megawidget consists of an interior frame with an associated label which can be positioned on any side of the frame. The programmer can create other widgets within the interior frame.

**Inheritance**

`LabeledWidget` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## LabeledWidget options

| Option                   | Description                                                                                                                                            | Units    | Default |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| <code>labelmargin</code> | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget. | distance | 0       |

| Option   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units  | Default |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| labelpos | Specifies where to place the label component. If not None, it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters N, S, E and W. The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if labelpos is W, the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is WN, the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is WS, the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor | None    |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the labelpos option is not None, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the labelpos option for details. Note that to set, for example, the text option of the label, you need to use the label\_text component option.

### **labelchildsite**

The frame which can contain other widgets to be labelled.

## Methods

### **interior()**

Returns the frame within which the programmer may create widgets. This is the same as component('labelchildsite').

# MegaArchetype

## Description

This class is the basis for all Pmw megawidgets. It provides methods to manage options and component widgets.

This class is normally used as a base class for other classes. If the hullClass argument is specified, such as in the Pmw.MegaWidget and Pmw.MegaToplevel classes, a container widget is created to act as the parent of all other component widgets. Classes derived from these subclasses create other component widgets and options to implement megawidgets that can be used in applications.

If no hullClass argument is given to the constructor, no container widget is created and only the option configuration functionality is available.

## Inheritance

MegaArchetype inherits from `None`.

## Methods

### **addoptions(optionDefs)**

Adds additional options for this megawidget. The `optionDefs` argument is treated in the same way as the `defineoptions()` method. This method is used by derived classes. It is only used if a megawidget should conditionally define some options, perhaps depending on the value of other options. Usually, megawidgets unconditionally define all their options in the call to `defineoptions()` and do not need to use `addoptions()`. This method may be called after the call to `defineoptions()` and before the call to `initialiseoptions()`.

### **cget(option)**

Returns the current value of `option` (which should be in the format described in the Options section). This method is also available using object subscripting, for example `myWidget['font']`. Unlike Tkinter's `cget()`, which always returns a string, this method returns the same value and type as used when the `option` was set (except where `option` is a component option and the component is a Tkinter widget, in which case it returns the string returned by Tcl/Tk).

### **component(name)**

Returns the component widget whose name is `name`. This allows the user of a megawidget to access and configure component widgets directly.

### **componentaliases()**

Returns the list of aliases for components. Each item in the list is a tuple whose first item is the name of the alias and whose second item is the name of the component or subcomponent it refers to.

### **componentgroup(name)**

Returns the group of the component whose name is `name` or `None` if it does not have a group.

### **components()**

Returns a sorted list of names of the components of this megawidget.

### **configure (option = None, \*\* kw)**

Queries or configures the megawidget options. If no arguments are given, returns a tuple consisting of all megawidget options and values, each as a 5-element tuple (`name, resourceName, resourceClass, default, value`). This is in the same format as the value returned by the standard Tkinter `configure()` method, except that the resource name is always the same as the option name and the resource class is the option name with the first letter capitalized.

If one argument is given, it returns the 5-element tuple for `option`. Otherwise, it sets the configuration options specified by the keyword arguments.

### **createcomponent(name, aliases, group, widgetClass, widgetArgs, \*\* kw)**

Creates a component widget by calling `widgetClass` with the arguments given by `widgetArgs` and any keyword arguments. The `name` argument is the name by which the component will be known and must not contain the underscore character (`_`). The `group` argument specifies the group of the component. The `aliases` argument is a sequence of 2-element tuples, whose first item is an alias name and whose second item is the name of the component or subcomponent it is to refer to.

### **createlabel(parent, childCols = 1, childRows = 1)**

Creates a `Label` component named `label` in the parent widget. This convenience method is used by several megawidgets that require an optional label. The widget must have options named `labelpos` and `labelmargin`. If `labelpos` is `None`, no label is created. Otherwise, a label is created and positioned according to the value of `labelpos` and `labelmargin`. The label is added to the parent using the `grid()` method, with `childCols` and `childRows` indicating how many rows and columns the label should span. Note that all other child widgets of the parent must be added to the parent using the `grid()` method. The `createlabel()` method may be called by derived classes during megawidget construction.

### **defineoptions(keywords, optionDefs)**

Creates options for this megawidget. The `optionDefs` argument defines the options. It is a sequence of 3-element tuples, `(name, default, callback)`, where `name` is the name of the option, `default` is its default value and `callback` is the function to call when the value of the option is set by a call to `configure()`. The `keywords` argument should be the keyword arguments passed in to the constructor of a megawidget. The user may override the default value of an option by supplying a keyword argument to the constructor.

This should be called before the constructor of the base class, so that default values defined in a derived class override those in a base class.

If `callback` is `Pmw.INITOPT`, then the option is an initialization option.

### **destroycomponent(name)**

Removes the megawidget component called `name`. This method may be called by derived classes to destroy a megawidget component. It destroys the component widget and then removes all record of the component from the megawidget.

### **hulldestroyed()**

Returns `true` if the Tk widget corresponding to the hull component has been destroyed.

### **initialiseoptions(myclass)**

Checks keyword arguments and calls option callback functions. This must be called at the end of a megawidget constructor with `myClass` set to the class being defined. It checks that all keyword arguments given to the constructor have been used. If not, it raises an error indicating which arguments were unused. A keyword is defined to be used if, during the construction of a megawidget, it is defined in a call to `defineoptions()` or `addoptions()` (by the

megawidget or one of its base classes); or if it references, by name, a component of the megawidget; or if it references, by group, at least one component.

It also calls the configuration callback function for all configuration options.

This method is only effective when called by the constructor of the leaf class, that is, if `myClass` is the same as the class of the object being constructed. The method returns immediately when called by the constructors of base classes.

### **interior()**

Returns the widget framing the interior space in which any children of this megawidget should be created. By default, this returns the hull component widget, if one was created, or `None` otherwise. A subclass should use the widget returned by `interior()` as the parent of any components or sub-widgets it creates. Megawidgets which can be further subclassed, such as `Pmw.Dialog`, should redefine this method to return the widget in which subclasses should create children. The overall containing widget is always available as the hull component.

### **isinitoption(option)**

If `option` is an initialization option, returns `true`. Otherwise returns `false` (the `option` is a configuration option). The `option` argument must be an option of this megawidget, not an option of a component. Otherwise an exception is raised.

### **options()**

Returns a sorted list of this megawidget's options. Each item in the list is a 3-element tuple, (`option`, `default`, `isinit`), where `option` is the name of the option, `default` is its default value and `isinit` is `true` if the option is an initialization option.

## **MegaToplevel**

### **Description**

This class creates a megawidget contained within a toplevel window. It may be used directly to create a toplevel megawidget or it may be used as a base class for more specialized toplevel megawidgets, such as `Pmw.Dialog`. It creates a `Toplevel` component, named `hull`, to act as the container of the megawidget. The window class name for the hull widget is set to the most-specific class name for the megawidget. Derived classes specialize this widget by creating other widget components as children of the hull widget.

The megawidget may be used as either a normal toplevel window or as a modal dialog. Use `show()` and `withdraw()` for normal use and `activate()` and `deactivate()` for modal dialog use. If the window is deleted by the window manager while being shown normally, the default behavior is to destroy the window. If the window is deleted by the window manager while the window is active (such as when it is used as a modal dialog), the window is deactivated. Use the `userdeletefunc()` and `usermodaldeletefunc()` methods to override these behaviors. Do not call `protocol()` to set the `WM_DELETE_WINDOW` window manager protocol directly if you want to use this window as a modal dialog.

The currently active windows form a stack with the most recently activated window at the top of the stack. All mouse and keyboard events are sent to this top window. When it deactivates, the next window in the stack will start to receive events.

## Inheritance

MegaToplevel inherits from `Pmw.MegaArchetype`.

## MegaToplevel options

| Option            | Description                                                                                                            | Units    | Default |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| activatecommand   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .     | function | None    |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> . | function | None    |
| title             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                     | string   | None    |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## Methods

### **activate(globalMode = 0, master = None, geometry = 'centerscreenfirst')**

Displays the window as a modal dialog. This means that all mouse and keyboard events go to this window and no other windows can receive any events. If you do not want to restrict mouse and keyboard events to this window, use the `show()` method instead. The `activate()` method does not return until the `deactivate()` method is called, when the window is withdrawn, the grab is released and the result is returned.

If `globalMode` is `false`, the window will grab control of the pointer and keyboard, preventing any events from being delivered to any other toplevel windows within the application. If `globalMode` is true, the grab will prevent events from being delivered to any other toplevel windows regardless of application. Global grabs should be used sparingly.

When the window is displayed, it is positioned on the screen according to `geometry` which may be one of the following:

- `centerscreenfirst` The window will be centered the first time it is activated. On subsequent activations it will be positioned in the same position as the last time it was displayed, even if it has been moved by the user.
- `centerscreenalways` The window will be centered on the screen (halfway across and one-third down).

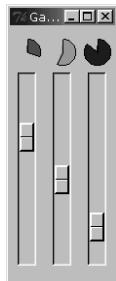
- `first + spec` It is assumed that the rest of the argument (after `first`) is a standard geometry specification. The window will be positioned using this specification the first time it is activated. On subsequent activations it will be positioned in the same position as the last time it was displayed, even if it has been moved by the user. For example, `geometry = first+100+100` will initially display the window at position (100,100). Other calls to `activate()` will not change the previous position of the window.
- `spec` This is a standard geometry specification. The window will be positioned using this specification.

If the BLT Tcl extension library is present, a clock cursor will be displayed until the window is deactivated.

If the `activatecommand` option is callable, it is called just before the window begins to wait for the result.

If `master` is not `None`, the window will become a transient window of `master`. The `master` should be another existing toplevel window.

## MegaWidget



### Description

This class creates a megawidget contained within a Frame window. The class acts as the base class for megawidgets that are not contained in their own toplevel window, such as `Pmw.ButtonBox` and `Pmw.ComboBox`. It creates a Frame component named `hull` to act as the container of the megawidget. The window class name for the hull widget is set to the most-specific class name for the megawidget. Derived classes specialize this widget by creating other widget components as children of the hull widget.

### Inheritance

`MegaWidget` inherits from `Pmw.MegaArchetype`.

### Components

#### **hull**

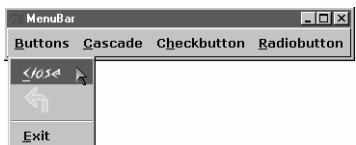
This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### Methods

#### **destroy()**

Destroys the hull component widget, including all of its children.

# MenuBar



## Description

This class creates a manager widget for containing menus. There are methods to add menu buttons and menus to the menu bar and for adding menu items to the menus. Menu buttons may be added to the left or right of the widget. Each menu button and menu item may have help text to be displayed by a `Pmw.Balloon` widget.

## Inheritance

MenuBar inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## MenuBar options

| Option  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units    | Default |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| balloon | Specifies the <code>Pmw.Balloon</code> widget to display the help text for menu buttons and menu items. If <code>None</code> , no help is displayed.                                        | widget   | None    |
| hotkeys | Specifies if the menu is to support "hot keys", otherwise known as "accelerators". If <code>true</code> , the user may select menu items using the underlined character in the item's text. | boolean  | 1       |
| padx    | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each menu button in the x direction and also between the menu buttons and the outer edge of the menu bar.                                     | distance | 0       |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## Methods

**addcasademenu(menuName, submenu, help = "", traverseSpec = None, \*\* kw)**

Adds a cascade submenu which is named `submenu`-menu to menu `menuName`. `submenu` must not already exist. If `help` is defined it is used for `balloonHelp`. If `traverseSpec` is defined it defines the underline character within the cascade which may be used as a keyboard accelerator. `traverseSpec` may be defined either as the character or the integer index of the character to be underlined.

**addmenu(menuName, balloonHelp, statusHelp = None, side = 'left', traverseSpec = None, \*\* kw)**

Adds a menu button and its associated menu to the menu bar. Any keyword arguments present will be passed to the constructor when creating the menu button. If the text keyword argument is not given, the text option of the menu button defaults to `menuName`. Each menu button is packed into the menu bar using the given side, which should be either left or right.

If the `balloon` option has been defined, `balloonHelp` and `statusHelp` are passed to the balloon as the help strings for the menu button. See the `bind()` method of `Pmw.Balloon` for information on how these strings may be displayed.

The menu button is created as a component named `menuName-button` and the menu is created as a component named `menuName-menu`. The method returns the menu button component widget.

**addMenuItem(menuName, type, help = '', traverseSpec = None, \*\* kw)**

Adds a menu item to the menu given by `menuName`. The kind of menu item is given by `type` and it may be one of `command`, `separator`, `checkbutton`, `radiobutton` or `cascade`. Any keyword arguments present will be passed to the menu when creating the menu item. See `Menu` for the valid options for each type. When the mouse is moved over the menu item, the string given by `help` will be displayed by the balloon's `statuscommand`.

**deleteMenu(menuName)**

Deletes the menu named `menuName`. Subordinate cascade menus should be deleted before main menu items.

**deleteMenuItems(menuName, start = '0', end = None)**

Deletes menu items from the menu named `menuName`. If `start` and `end` are defined it deletes items beginning at index `start` and ending at index `end`. If `start` is defined without `end`, it deletes the item at `start`. If neither `start` or `end` are defined it deletes all items in `menuName`.

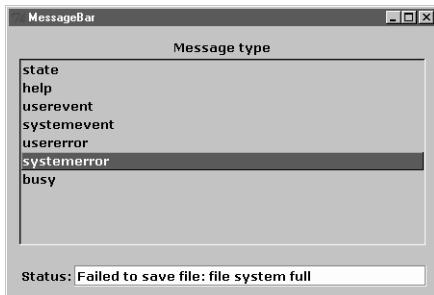
**disableAll()**

Disables all items in the menubar.

**enableAll()**

Enables all items in the menubar.

# MessageBar



## Description

This class creates a single-line message display area. Messages of several different types may be displayed. Messages are cleared after a period defined for each message type. Each message type has a priority so that if the application attempts to display more than one message at a time, the message with the highest priority will be displayed. Messages may be accompanied by a number of audible bells.

## Inheritance

MessageBar inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## MessageBar options

| Option                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units      | Default           |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------|
| <code>labelmargin</code>  | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | distance   | 0                 |
| <code>labelpos</code>     | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>W</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>W</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | anchor     | <code>None</code> |
| <code>messagetypes</code> | This defines what message types are supported by the message bar and the characteristics of those message types. It is a dictionary where the key is a string specifying a message type and the value is a tuple of four integers ( <code>priority</code> , <code>showtime</code> , <code>bellets</code> , <code>logmessage</code> ), where <code>priority</code> is the rank of the message type, <code>showtime</code> is the number of seconds to display messages of this message type, <code>bellets</code> is the number of audible bells to ring and <code>logmessage</code> is a boolean specifying whether this message should be logged for retrieval later. Messages with a higher priority are displayed in preference to those with lower priority. If a high priority message times out (because it has been displayed for <code>showtime</code> seconds), then a lower priority message may be displayed. A <code>showtime</code> of 0 means that the message will never time out and it is useful for displaying messages describing the current state of the application as opposed to messages describing events. Logging is not currently implemented. The default is: | dictionary |                   |

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Units | Default |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------|
|        | <pre>{     'systemerror' : (5, 10, 2, 1),     'usererror' : (4, 5, 1, 0),     'busy' : (3, 0, 0, 0),     'systemevent' : (2, 5, 0, 0),     'userevent' : (2, 5, 0, 0),     'help' : (1, 5, 0, 0),     'state' : (0, 0, 0, 0), }</pre> |       |         |
| silent | If true, no audible bells will sound, regardless of the value for boolean bells defined in the messagetypes option.                                                                                                                   |       | 0       |

## Components

### entry

The widget where the messages are displayed. Long messages may be scrolled horizontally by dragging with the middle mouse button.

### hull

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### label

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## Methods

### helpmessage(text)

A convenience method that displays `text` in the message bar according to the characteristics defined by the help message type. Equivalent to `message('help', text)`.

### message(type, text)

Displays `text` in the message bar according to the characteristics defined by the `type` message type, as discussed under `messagetypes`.

### resetmessages(type)

Clears the `type` message and all message types with a lower priority, except permanent messages, such as state. This is useful for clearing the busy message and any outstanding event and help messages.

# MessageDialog



## Description

A MessageDialog is a convenience dialog window containing a message widget. This is used to display multiple lines of text to the user in a transient window.

## Inheritance

MessageDialog inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## MessageDialog options

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Units         | Default |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|
| activatecommand   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                     | function      | None    |
| borderx           | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | distance      | 20      |
| bordery           | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | distance      | 20      |
| buttonboxpos      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                     | anchor        | S       |
| buttons           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                               | (string, ...) | ('OK',) |
| command           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager. | function      | None    |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                 | function      | None    |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If defaultbutton is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                      | index         | None    |
| iconmargin        | Specifies the space to be left around the icon, if present.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | distance      | 20      |
| iconpos           | Determines the placement of the icon if it is to be displayed. Value must be either one of the letters N, S, E and W or None.                                                                                                                                                          | distance      | None    |

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Units    | Default |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| separatorwidth | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named <code>separator</code> . Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and the child site. | distance | 0       |
| title          | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | string   | None    |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (`hull_borderwidth = 1, hull_relief = 'raised'`).

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (`borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised'`).

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **icon**

By default, this component is a `Label`.

### **message**

By default, this component is a `Label`.

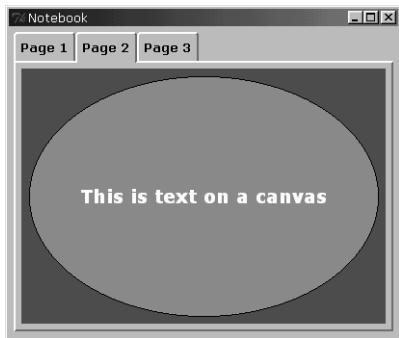
### **separator**

If the `separatorwidth` initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

This megawidget has no methods of its own.

# NoteBook



## Description

This widget replaces NoteBookR and NoteBookS in release 0\_8\_3 and later.

A notebook contains a set of tabbed pages. At any one time only one of these pages (the selected page) is visible, with the other pages being hidden “beneath” it. Another page in the notebook may be displayed by clicking on the tab attached to the page. The tabs are displayed along the top edge.

Optionally, the notebook may be displayed without tabs. In this case, another selection widget, such as `Pmw.OptionMenu`, may be used to select the pages.

## Inheritance

NoteBook inherits from `Pmw.MegaArchetype`.

## NoteBook options

| Option                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Units    | Default          |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------|
| <code>borderwidth</code>   | The width of the border drawn around each tab and around the selected page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | integer  | 2                |
| <code>createcommand</code> | Specifies a function to call when a page is selected for the first time. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the selected page, and it is called before the <code>raisecommand</code> function. This allows the creation of the page contents to be deferred until the page is first displayed. | function | None             |
| <code>lowercommand</code>  | Specifies a function to call when the selected page is replaced with a new selected page. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the previously selected page, and it is called before the <code>createcommand</code> or <code>raisecommand</code> functions.                                      | function | None             |
| <code>pagemargin</code>    | The margin around the selected page inside the notebook’s page border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | pixels   | 4                |
| <code>raisecommand</code>  | Specifies a function to call when a new page is selected. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the selected page.                                                                                                                                                                                | function | None             |
| <code>tabpos</code>        | Specifies the location of the tabs. If <code>n</code> , tabs are created for each page and positioned at the top of the notebook. If <code>None</code> , no tabs are created, in which case another selection widget can be used to select pages by calling the <code>selectpage()</code> method.                               | string   | <code>'n'</code> |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the megawidget. The contents of the megawidget are created as canvas items and positioned in the hull using the canvas coordinate system. By default, this component is a Tkinter.Canvas.

## Methods

### **add(pagename, \*\* kw)**

Adds a page at the end of the notebook. See the `insert()` method for full details.

### **delete(\*pageNames)**

Deletes the pages given by `pageNames` from the notebook. Each of the `pageNames` may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method. If the currently selected page is deleted, then the next page, in index order, is selected. If the end page is deleted, then the previous page is selected.

### **getcurselection()**

Returns the name of the currently selected page.

### **index(index, forInsert = 0)**

Returns the numerical index of the page corresponding to `index`. This may be specified in any of the following forms:

- `name` Specifies the page labelled `name`.
- `number` Specifies the page numerically, where 0 corresponds to the first page.
- `END` Specifies the last page.
- `SELECT` Specifies the currently selected page.

### **insert(pageName, before = 0, \*\*kw)**

Adds a page to the notebook as a component named `pageName`. The page is added just before the page specified by `before`, which may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method. If `tabpos` is not `None`, also create a tab as a component named `pageName-tab`. Keyword arguments prefixed with `page_` or `tab_` are passed to the respective constructors when creating the page or tab. If the `tab_text` keyword argument is not given, the `text` option of the tab defaults to `pageName`. If a page is inserted into an empty notebook, the page is selected. To add a page to the end of the notebook, use `add()`. The method returns the `pageName` component widget.

### **page(pageIndex)**

Returns the frame component widget of the page `pageIndex`, where `pageIndex` may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method.

### **pagenames()**

Returns a list of the names of the pages, in display order.

### **recolorborders()**

Changes the color of the page and tab borders. This method is required because the borders are created as canvas polygons and hence do not respond to normal color changing techniques, such as `Pmw.Color.changecolor()`.

### **selectpage(page)**

Selects page to be the currently selected page. The page will be raised and the previous selected page will be lowered.

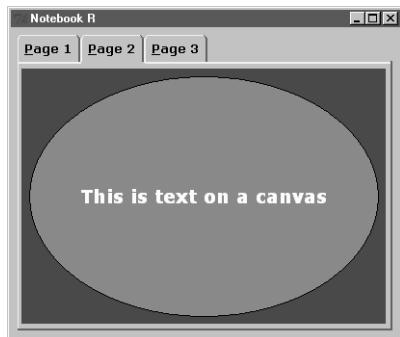
### **setnaturalpagesize(pageNames = None)**

Sets the width and height of the notebook to be the maximum requested width and height of all the pages. This should be called after all pages and their contents have been created. It calls `update_idletasks()` so that the width and height of the pages can be determined. This may cause the notebook to flash onto the screen at the default size before resizing to the natural size.

### **tab(pageIndex)**

Returns the tab component widget of the page `pageIndex`, where `pageIndex` may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method. If `tabpos` is `None`, returns `None`.

## **NoteBookR**



### **Description**

NoteBookR implements the familiar *notebook* motif. The window is arranged as a series of overlaid panes with a tab which raises the corresponding pane to the top of the stack.

### **Inheritance**

NoteBookR inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## **NoteBookR options**

| Option               | Description                                                                | Units    | Default |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| <code>balloon</code> | Specifies balloon help for the widget.                                     | string   | None    |
| <code>ipadx</code>   | Specifies a padding distance to leave within each pane in the x direction. | distance | 4       |
| <code>ipady</code>   | Specifies a padding distance to leave within each pane in the y direction. | distance | 4       |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **nbframe**

By default, this component is a Canvas.

## Methods

### **add(pagename, \*\* kw)**

Adds a page at the end of the notebook. See the `insert()` method for full details.

### **initialise(e = None, w = 1, h = 1)**

### **interior()**

Returns the widget framing the interior space in which any children of this megawidget should be created. By default, this returns the hull component widget, if one was created, or `None` otherwise. A subclass should use the widget returned by `interior()` as the parent of any components or sub-widgets it creates. Megawidgets which can be further subclassed, such as `Pmw.Dialog`, should redefine this method to return the widget in which subclasses should create children. The overall containing widget is always available as the hull component.

### **lift(pagenameOrIndex)**

If `pagenameOrIndex` is a string, it raises the pane with that name. If `pagenameOrIndex` is an integer, it raises the page with `index`.

### **pagecget(pagename, option)**

Returns the value of `option` for the pane `pagename`.

### **pageconfigure(pagename, \*\* kw)**

Configures the pane specified by `pagename`, where `name` is a string, specifying the name of the pane. The keyword arguments specify the new values for the options for the pane.

### **pages()**

Returns a list of the panes currently defined in the notebook.

### **raised()**

Returns the name of the pane that is currently at the top of the stack.

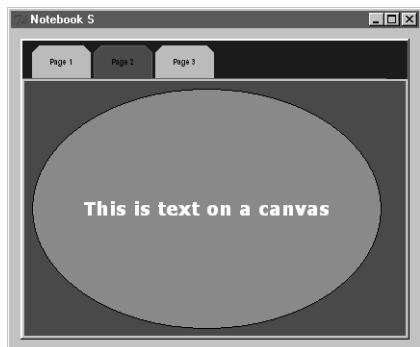
### **tkdelete(pagename)**

Removes the pane and tab button for pane `pagename`.

### **tkraise(pagenameOrIndex)**

`tkraise` is an alias for `lift`.

# NoteBookS



## Description

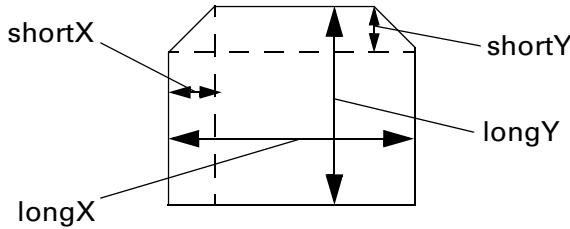
NoteBookS implements an alternative to the familiar *notebook* motif. The window is arranged as a series of overlaid panes with a tab which raises the corresponding pane to the top of the stack. NoteBookS has more precise control of options than NoteBookR.

## Inheritance

NoteBookS inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## NoteBookS options

| Option        | Description                                                                                                               | Units         | Default                     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| activeColor   | Specifies the color of the tab and its associated pane when it is the active tab.                                         | color         | 'red'                       |
| canvasColor   | Specifies the background color of the canvas behind the notebook panes (normally not seen if there is at least one pane). | color         | 'white'                     |
| canvasHeight  | Specifies the overall height of the base canvas.                                                                          | height        | 250                         |
| canvasWidth   | Specifies the overall width of the base canvas.                                                                           | width         | 400                         |
| deactiveColor | Specifies the color of any tab that is not currently the active tab.                                                      | color         | 'grey'                      |
| longX         | Specifies the long X dimension (see diagram below).                                                                       | coord         | 30                          |
| longY         | Specifies the long Y dimension (see diagram below).                                                                       | coord         | 35                          |
| offsetY       | Specifies the offset of the top of the tab from the top of the canvas.                                                    | dis-<br>tance | 5                           |
| shadeColor    | Specifies the color of the "shadow" effect behind each tab.                                                               | color         | '#666666'                   |
| shortX        | Specifies the short X dimension (see diagram below).                                                                      | coord         | 7                           |
| shortY        | Specifies the short short Y dimension (see diagram below).                                                                | coord         | 7                           |
| tabColor      | Specifies the color of the canvas behind the tabs.                                                                        | color         | 'blue'                      |
| tabHeight     | Specifies the height of the area in which the tabs will be drawn.                                                         | height        | 40                          |
| textColor     | The color (fill) of the text used for the tab labels                                                                      | color         | 'black'                     |
| textFont      | The font used to draw the tab labels.                                                                                     | font          | ('Helvetica,<br>10, normal) |



## Components

### **containerCanvas**

By default, this component is a Canvas.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **mainCanvas**

By default, this component is a Canvas.

### **tabCanvas**

By default, this component is a Canvas.

## Methods

### **addPage(name)**

Creates a Frame within the notebook associated with name name.

### **delPage(name)**

Deletes the pane (Frame) associated with name name.

### **getPage(name)**

Returns the panel (Frame) associated with name name. Does not raise the specified panel to the top of the stack.

### **pageNames()**

Returns a list of all the page names currently defined for the notebook.

### **pages()**

Returns a list of all the panes (Frames) currently defined for the notebook.

### **raisePage(name, select = 1)**

Raises the pane associated with name name to the top of the stack. If select is false, do not deselect the currently active pane.

### **raised()**

Returns the name of the currently active pane.

### **reBind()**

Allows selection of panes by clicking on the tabs.

### **unBind()**

Disallows selection of panes by clicking on the tabs.

## **OptionMenu**



### **Description**

This class creates an option menu which consists of a menu button and an associated menu which pops up when the button is pressed. The text displayed in the menu button is updated whenever an item is selected in the menu. The currently selected value can be retrieved from the megawidget.

### **Inheritance**

OptionMenu inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

### **OptionMenu options**

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| command     | Specifies a function to call whenever a menu item is selected or the <code>invoke()</code> method is called. The function is called with the currently selected value as its single argument.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | function | None    |
| initialitem | Specifies the initial selected value. This option is treated in the same way as the <code>index</code> argument of the <code>setitems()</code> method.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |          | None    |
| items       | A sequence containing the initial items to be displayed in the menu component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |          | ( )     |
| labelmargin | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0       |
| labelpos    | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>w</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>w</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>ws</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None    |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

### **menu**

The popup menu displayed when the menu button is pressed.

### **menubutton**

The menu button displaying the currently selected value.

## Methods

### **get()**

Returns the currently selected value.

### **index(index)**

Returns the numerical index of the menu item corresponding to `index`. This may be specified in any of the following forms:

- `end` Indicates the last menu item.
- `name` Specifies the menu item labelled `name`.
- `None` Specifies the currently selected menu item.

### **invoke (index = None)**

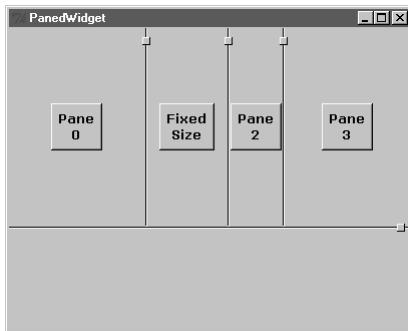
Calling this method is the same as selecting the menu item specified by `index`, meaning the text displayed by the `menubutton` component is updated and the function specified by the `command` option is called. `index` may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method.

### **setitems (items, index = None)**

Replaces all the items in the menu component with those specified by the `items` sequence. If `index` is not `None`, it sets the selected value to `index`, which may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method. If `index` is `None` and the `textvariable` option of the `menubutton` component is the empty string, it sets the selected value to the first value in `items`. If `items` is empty, it sets the selected value to the empty string.

If `index` is `None` and the `textvariable` option of the `menubutton` component is not the empty string, then do not set the selected value. This assumes that the variable is already (or will be) set to the desired value.

# PanedWidget



## Description

This class creates a manager widget for containing resizable frames, known as panes. Each pane may act as the container for other widgets. The user may resize the panes by dragging a small rectangle (the handle) or the line between the panes (the separator).

## Inheritance

PanedWidget inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## PanedWidget options

| Option          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Units    | Default  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|
| command         | Specifies a function to be called whenever the size of any of the panes changes. The function is called with a single argument, being a list of the sizes of the panes, in order. For vertical orientation, the size is the height of the panes. For horizontal orientation, the size is the width of the panes. | function | None     |
| orient          | Specifies the orientation of the paned widget. This may be HORIZONTAL or VERTICAL. If VERTICAL, the panes are stacked above and below each other; otherwise the panes are laid out side by side.                                                                                                                 | constant | VERTICAL |
| separatorrelief | Specifies the relief of the line separating the panes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | constant | SUNKEN   |

## Pane options

| Option | Description                             | Units           | Default |
|--------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------|---------|
| size   | Specifies the initial size of the pane. | integer or real | 0       |
| min    | Specifies the minimum size of the pane. | integer or real | 0       |
| max    | Specifies the maximum size of the pane. | integer or real | 100000  |

## Components

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## Methods

### **add(name, \*\* kw)**

Adds a pane to the end of the paned widget using the component name `name`. This is equivalent to calling `insert()` with `before` set to the current number of panes. The method returns the `name` component widget.

### **configurepane(name, \*\* kw)**

Configures the pane specified by `name`, where `name` is either an integer, specifying the index of the pane, or a string, specifying the name of the pane. The keyword arguments specify the new values for the options for the pane. These options are described in the `Pane` options section.

### **insert(name, before = 0, \*\* kw)**

Adds a pane just before (that is, to the left of or above) the pane specified by `before`, where `before` is either an integer, specifying the index of the pane, or a string, specifying the name of the pane. The keyword arguments specify the initial values for the options for the new pane. These options are described in the `Pane` options section. To add a pane to the end of the paned widget, use `add()`.

### **pane(name)**

Returns the `Frame` pane widget for the pane specified by `name`, where `name` is either an integer, specifying the index of the pane, or a string, specifying the name of the pane.

### **panes()**

Returns a list of the names of the panes, in display order.

### **remove(name)**

Removes the pane specified by `name`, where `name` is either an integer, specifying the index of the pane, or a string, specifying the name of the pane.

## PromptDialog



### **Description**

A `PromptDialog` is a convenience dialog window that requests input from the user.

## Inheritance

PromptDialog inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## PromptDialog options

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Units         | Default |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|
| activatecommand   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | function      | None    |
| borderx           | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | distance      | 20      |
| bordery           | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | distance      | 20      |
| buttonboxpos      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | anchor        | S       |
| buttons           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | (string, ...) | ('OK',) |
| command           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager.                                                                                        | function      | None    |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | function      | None    |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If <code>defaultbutton</code> is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                                | index         | None    |
| separatorwidth    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named <code>separator</code> . Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and the child site. | distance      | 0       |
| title             | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | string        | None    |

## Components

### buttonbox

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (`hull_borderwidth = 1, hull_relief = 'raised'`).

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (`borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised'`).

### **entryfield**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.EntryField`.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **separator**

If the `separatorwidth` initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## **Methods**

### **deleteentry(first, last = None)**

Removes characters from the `entryField` starting at `first` and ending at `last`. `first` and `last` are integer indices. If `last` is `None`, `first` will be deleted.

### **indexentry(index)**

Returns the numerical index of the character corresponding to `index`.

### **insertentry(index, text)**

Inserts `text` at the integer position `index`.

# **RadioSelect**

## **Description**

This class creates a manager widget for containing buttons. The buttons may be laid out either horizontally or vertically. In single selection mode, only one button may be selected at any one time. In multiple selection mode, several buttons may be selected at the same time and clicking on a selected button will deselect it.

The buttons displayed can be either standard buttons, radio buttons or check buttons. When selected, standard buttons are displayed sunken, and radio and check buttons are displayed with the appropriate indicator color and relief.

## **Inheritance**

`RadioSelect` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## RadioSelect options

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units    | Default    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|
| buttontype  | Specifies the default type of buttons created by the add() method. If button, the default type is Button. If radiobutton, the default type is Radiobutton. If checkbutton, the default type is Checkbutton.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | constant | None       |
| command     | Specifies a function to call when one of the buttons is clicked on or when invoke() is called.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | function | None       |
| labelmargin | If the labelpos option is not None, this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | distance | 0          |
| labelpos    | Specifies where to place the label component. If not None, it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters N, S, E and W. The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if labelpos is W, the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is WN, the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is WS, the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None       |
| orient      | Specifies the direction in which the buttons are laid out. This may be HORIZONTAL or VERTICAL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | constant | HORIZONTAL |
| padx        | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each button in the x direction and also between the buttons and the outer edge of the radio select widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | distance | 5          |
| pady        | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each button in the y direction and also between the buttons and the outer edge of the radio select widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | distance | 5          |
| selectmode  | Specifies the selection mode: whether a single button or multiple buttons can be selected at one time. If single, clicking on an unselected button selects it and deselects all other buttons. If multiple, clicking on an unselected button selects it and clicking on a selected button deselects it. This option is ignored if buttontype is radiobutton or checkbutton.                                                                                                                                                              | constant | 'single'   |

## Components

### frame

If the label component has been created (that is, the labelpos option is not None), the frame component is created to act as the container of the buttons created by the add() method. If there is no label component, then no frame component is created and the hull component acts as the container.

### hull

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## label

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the mega-widget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## Methods

### **add(name, \*\* kw)**

Adds a button to the end of the radio select widget as a component named `name`, with a default type as specified by `buttontype`. Any keyword arguments present (except `command`) will be passed to the constructor when creating the button. If the `text` keyword argument is not given, the `text` option of the button defaults to `name`. The method returns the `name` component widget.

### **deleteall()**

Deletes all buttons and clears the current selection.

### **getcurselection()**

In single selection mode, returns the name of the currently selected button, or `None` if no buttons have been selected yet. In multiple selection mode, returns a list of the names of the currently selected buttons.

### **index(index)**

Returns the numerical index of the button corresponding to `index`. This may be specified in any of the following forms:

- `number` Specifies the button numerically, where 0 corresponds to the left (or top) button.
- `end` Indicates the right (or bottom) button.
- `name` Specifies the button named `name`.

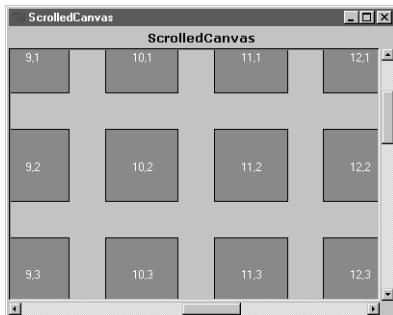
### **invoke (index)**

Calling this method is the same as clicking on the button specified by `index`: the buttons are displayed selected or deselected according to the selection mode and `command` is called. `index` may have any of the forms accepted by the `index()` method.

### **numbuttons ()**

Returns the number of buttons in the radio select widget.

# ScrolledCanvas



## Description

This megawidget consists of a standard canvas widget with optional scrollbars which can be used to scroll the canvas. The scrollbars can be dynamic, which means that a scrollbar will only be displayed if it is necessary (if the scrollregion of the canvas is larger than the canvas).

## Inheritance

ScrolledCanvas inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## ScrolledCanvas options

| Option                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default   |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| <code>borderframe</code>  | A frame widget which snugly fits around the canvas, to give the appearance of a canvas border. It is created with a border so that the canvas, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | widget   | Frame     |
| <code>canvasmargin</code> | The margin around the items in the canvas. Used by the <code>resizescrollregion()</code> method.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | distance | 0         |
| <code>hscrollmode</code>  | The horizontal scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the horizontal scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | constant | 'dynamic' |
| <code>labelmargin</code>  | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0         |
| <code>labelpos</code>     | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>W</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>W</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None      |
| <code>scrollmargin</code> | The distance between the scrollbars and the enclosing canvas widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | distance | 2         |
| <code>usehullsize</code>  | If <code>true</code> , the size of the megawidget is determined solely by the width and height options of the hull component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | boolean  | 0         |

| Option      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Default   |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| vscrollmode | The vertical scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the vertical scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary. | constant | 'dynamic' |

## Components

### **borderframe**

A frame widget which snugly fits around the canvas, to give the appearance of a canvas border. It is created with a border so that the canvas, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border.

### **canvas**

The canvas widget which is scrolled by the scrollbars. If the `borderframe` option is `true`, this is created with a `borderwidth` of `0` to overcome a known problem with canvas widgets—if a widget inside a canvas extends across one of the edges of the canvas, then the widget obscures the border of the canvas. Therefore, if the canvas has no border, then this overlapping does not occur.

### **horizscrollbar**

The horizontal scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

### **vertscrollbar**

The vertical scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

## Methods

### **bbox(\* args)**

This method is explicitly forwarded to the canvas component's `bbox()` method. Without this explicit forwarding, the `bbox()` method (aliased to `grid_bbox()`) of the hull would be invoked, which is probably not what the programmer intended.

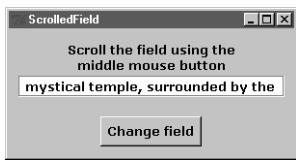
### **interior()**

Returns the canvas widget within which the programmer should create graphical items and child widgets. This is the same as component ('canvas').

### **resizescrollregion()**

Resizes the scrollregion of the canvas component to be the bounding box covering all the items in the canvas plus a margin on all sides, as specified by the canvasmargin option.

## **ScrolledField**



### **Description**

This megawidget displays a single line of text. If the text is wider than the widget the user can scroll to the left and right by dragging with the middle mouse button. The text is also selectable by clicking or dragging with the left mouse button.

This megawidget can be used instead of a `Label` widget when displaying text of unknown width such as application status messages.

### **Inheritance**

`ScrolledField` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

### **ScrolledField options**

| Option                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default           |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------|
| <code>labelmargin</code> | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0                 |
| <code>labelpos</code>    | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>w</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>w</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>ws</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | <code>None</code> |
| <code>text</code>        | Specifies the text to display in the scrolled field.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | string   | <code>None</code> |

## **Components**

### **entry**

This is used to display the text and it allows the user to scroll and select the text. The state of this component is set to `disabled`, so that the user is unable to modify the text.

## **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

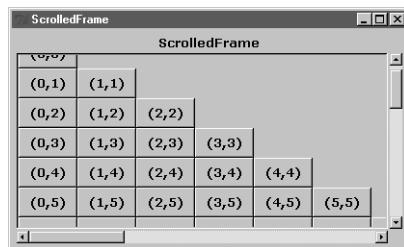
## **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## **Methods**

This megawidget has no methods of its own.

# **ScrolledFrame**



## **Description**

This megawidget consists of a scrollable interior frame within a clipping frame. The programmer can create other widgets within the interior frame. If the frame becomes larger than the surrounding clipping frame, the user can position the frame using the horizontal and vertical scrollbars.

The scrollbars can be dynamic, which means that a scrollbar will only be displayed if it is necessary—if the frame is smaller than the surrounding clipping frame, the scrollbar will be hidden.

## **Inheritance**

`ScrolledFrame` inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## **ScrolledFrame options**

| Option                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                              | Units  | Default |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| <code>borderframe</code> | A frame widget which snugly fits around the clipper, to give the appearance of a border. It is created with a border so that the clipper, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border. | widget | Frame   |

| Option        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Units    | Default   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| horizflex     | Specifies how the width of the scrollable interior frame should be resized relative to the clipping frame. If <code>fixed</code> , the interior frame is set to the natural width, as requested by the child widgets of the frame. If <code>expand</code> and the requested width of the interior frame is less than the width of the clipping frame, the interior frame expands to fill the clipping frame. If <code>shrink</code> and the requested width of the interior frame is more than the width of the clipping frame, the interior frame shrinks to the width of the clipping frame. If <code>elastic</code> , the width of the interior frame is always set to the width of the clipping frame.          | constant | 'fixed'   |
| horizfraction | The fraction of the width of the clipper frame to scroll the interior frame when the user clicks on the horizontal scrollbar arrows.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | distance | 0.05      |
| hscrollmode   | The horizontal scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the horizontal scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | constant | 'dynamic' |
| labelmargin   | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | distance | 0         |
| labelpos      | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>w</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>w</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side.                                                | anchor   | None      |
| scrollmargin  | The distance between the scrollbars and the clipping frame.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | distance | 2         |
| usehullsize   | If <code>true</code> , the size of the megawidget is determined solely by the width and height options of the hull component. Otherwise, the size of the megawidget is determined by the width and height of the clipper component, along with the size and/or existence of the other components, such as the label, the scrollbars and the <code>scrollmargin</code> option. All these affect the overall size of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | boolean  | 0         |
| vertflex      | Specifies how the height of the scrollable interior frame should be resized relative to the clipping frame. If <code>fixed</code> , the interior frame is set to the natural height, as requested by the child widgets of the frame. If <code>expand</code> and the requested height of the interior frame is less than the height of the clipping frame, the interior frame expands to fill the clipping frame. If <code>shrink</code> and the requested height of the interior frame is more than the height of the clipping frame, the interior frame shrinks to the height of the clipping frame. If <code>elastic</code> , the height of the interior frame is always set to the height of the clipping frame. | constant | 'fixed'   |

| Option       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Units    | Default   |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| vertfraction | The fraction of the height of the clipper frame to scroll the interior frame when the user clicks on the vertical scrollbar arrows.                                                                                                            | distance | 0.05      |
| vscrollmode  | The vertical scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the vertical scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary. | constant | 'dynamic' |

## Components

### **borderframe**

A frame widget which snugly fits around the clipper, to give the appearance of a border. It is created with a border so that the clipper, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border.

### **clipper**

The frame which is used to provide a clipped view of the frame component. If the `borderframe` option is `true`, this is created with a `borderwidth` of `0` to overcome a known problem with using `place` to position widgets: if a widget (in this case, the frame component) is placed inside a frame (in this case the clipper component) and it extends across one of the edges of the frame, then the widget obscures the border of the frame. Therefore, if the clipper has no border, then this overlapping does not occur.

### **frame**

The frame within the clipper to contain the widgets to be scrolled.

### **horizscrollbar**

The horizontal scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the mega-widget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

### **vertscrollbar**

The vertical scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

## Methods

### **interior()**

Returns the frame within which the programmer may create widgets to be scrolled. This is the same as `component('frame')`.

### **reposition()**

Updates the position of the frame component in the clipper and updates the scrollbar.

Usually, this method does not need to be called explicitly, since the position of the frame component and the scrollbars are automatically updated whenever the size of the frame or clipper components change or the user clicks in the scrollbars. However, if `horizflex` or `vertflex` is `expand`, the megawidget cannot detect when the requested size of the frame increases to greater than the size of the clipper. Therefore, this method should be called when a new widget is added to the frame (or a widget is increased in size) after the initial megawidget construction.

## ScrolledListBox



### Description

This megawidget consists of a standard listbox widget with optional scrollbars which can be used to scroll the listbox. The scrollbars can be dynamic, which means that a scrollbar will only be displayed if it is necessary—if the listbox does not contain enough entries, the vertical scrollbar will be automatically hidden and if the entries are not wide enough, the horizontal scrollbar will be automatically hidden.

### Inheritance

ScrolledListBox inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

### ScrolledListBox options

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Units         | Default                |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| <code>dblclickcommand</code> | This specifies a function to call when mouse button 1 is double clicked over an entry in the listbox component.                                                                                                                                    | function      | <code>None</code>      |
| <code>hscrollmode</code>     | The horizontal scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the horizontal scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary. | constant      | <code>'dynamic'</code> |
| <code>items</code>           | A tuple containing the initial items to be displayed by the listbox component.                                                                                                                                                                     | (string, ...) | <code>()</code>        |

| Option           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default   |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| labelmargin      | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0         |
| labelpos         | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>w</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>w</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None      |
| scrollmargin     | The distance between the scrollbars and the listbox widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | distance | 2         |
| selectioncommand | This specifies a function to call when mouse button 1 is single clicked over an entry in the listbox component.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | function | None      |
| usehullsize      | If <code>true</code> , the size of the megawidget is determined solely by the width and height options of the hull component.<br>Otherwise, the size of the megawidget is determined by the width and height of the listbox component, along with the size and/or existence of the other components, such as the label, the scrollbars and the <code>scrollmargin</code> option. All of these affect the overall size of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | boolean  | 0         |
| vscrollmode      | The vertical scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the vertical scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | constant | 'dynamic' |

## Components

### horizscrollbar

The horizontal scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

### hull

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### label

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

### listbox

The listbox widget which is scrolled by the scrollbars.

## **vertscrollbar**

The vertical scrollbar. Its component group is Scrollbar.

## **Methods**

### **bbox(index)**

This method is explicitly forwarded to the listbox component's `bbox()` method. Without this explicit forwarding, the `bbox()` method (aliased to `grid_bbox()`) of the hull would be invoked, which is probably not what the programmer intended.

### **get(first = None, last = None)**

This is the same as the `get()` method of the listbox component, except that if neither `first` nor `last` are specified, all list elements are returned.

### **getcurselection()**

Returns the currently selected items of the listbox. This returns the text of the selected items, rather than their indexes as returned by `curselection()`.

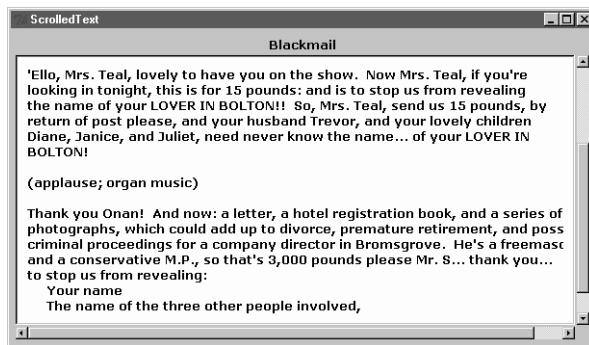
### **setlist(items)**

Replaces all the items of the listbox component with those specified by the item's sequence.

### **size()**

This method is explicitly forwarded to the listbox component's `size()` method. Without this explicit forwarding, the `size()` method (aliased to `grid_size()`) of the hull would be invoked, which is probably not what the programmer intended.

## **ScrolledText**



## **Description**

This megawidget consists of a standard text widget with optional scrollbars which can be used to scroll the text widget. The scrollbars can be dynamic, which means that a scrollbar will only be displayed if it is necessary—if the text widget does not contain enough text (either horizontally or vertically), the scrollbar will be automatically hidden.

## Inheritance

ScrolledText inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## ScrolledText options

| Option                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units    | Default   |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|
| <code>borderframe</code>  | A frame widget which snugly fits around the text widget, to give the appearance of a text border. It is created with a border so that the text widget, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | widget   | Frame     |
| <code>hscrollmode</code>  | The horizontal scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the horizontal scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | constant | 'dynamic' |
| <code>labelmargin</code>  | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance | 0         |
| <code>labelpos</code>     | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>W</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>W</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WS</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor   | None      |
| <code>scrollmargin</code> | The distance between the scrollbars and the text widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | distance | 2         |
| <code>usehullsize</code>  | If <code>true</code> , the size of the megawidget is determined solely by the <code>width</code> and <code>height</code> options of the hull component.<br>Otherwise, the size of the megawidget is determined by the width and height of the text component, along with the size and/or existence of the other components, such as the label, the scrollbars and the <code>scrollmargin</code> option. All of these affect the overall size of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | boolean  | 0         |
| <code>vscrollmode</code>  | The vertical scroll mode. If <code>none</code> , the vertical scrollbar will never be displayed. If <code>static</code> , the scrollbar will always be displayed. If <code>dynamic</code> , the scrollbar will be displayed only if necessary.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | constant | 'dynamic' |

## Components

### **borderframe**

A frame widget which snugly fits around the text widget, to give the appearance of a text border. It is created with a border so that the text widget, which is created without a border, looks like it has a border.

### **horizscrollbar**

The horizontal scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

## **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

## **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not `None`, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

## **text**

The text widget which is scrolled by the scrollbars. If the `borderframe` option is `true`, this is created with a borderwidth of `0` to overcome a known problem with text widgets: if a widget inside a text widget extends across one of the edges of the text widget, then the widget obscures the border of the text widget. Therefore, if the text widget has no border, then this overlapping does not occur.

## **vertscrollbar**

The vertical scrollbar. Its component group is `Scrollbar`.

# **Methods**

## **bbox(index)**

This method is explicitly forwarded to the text component's `bbox()` method. Without this explicit forwarding, the `bbox()` method (aliased to `grid_bbox()`) of the hull would be invoked, which is probably not what the programmer intended.

## **clear()**

Deletes all text from the text component.

## **exportfile(fileName)**

Writes the contents of the text component to the file `fileName`.

## **get(first = None, last = None)**

This is the same as the `get()` method of the text component, except that if neither `first` nor `last` are specified the entire contents of the text widget are returned.

## **importfile(fileName, where = 'end')**

Reads the contents of the file `fileName` into the text component at the position given by `where`.

## **settext(text)**

Replaces the entire contents of the text component with `text`.

# SelectionDialog



## Description

A SelectionDialog is a convenience dialog window with a ScrolledList. This is used to request the user to make a selection from the ScrolledList.

## Inheritance

SelectionDialog inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## SelectionDialog options

| Option            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Units         | Default |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|
| activatecommand   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | function      | None    |
| borderx           | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | distance      | 10      |
| bordery           | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | distance      | 10      |
| buttonboxpos      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | anchor        | S       |
| buttons           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | (string, ...) | ('OK',) |
| command           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager.                                                                                    | function      | None    |
| deactivatecommand | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | function      | None    |
| defaultbutton     | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If defaultbutton is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                                         | index         | None    |
| separatorwidth    | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named <code>separator</code> . Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and child site. | distance      | 0       |

| Option | Description                                                                        | Units  | Default |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| title  | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window. | string | None    |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (`hull_borderwidth = 1, hull_relief = 'raised'`).

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (`borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised'`).

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **scrolledlist**

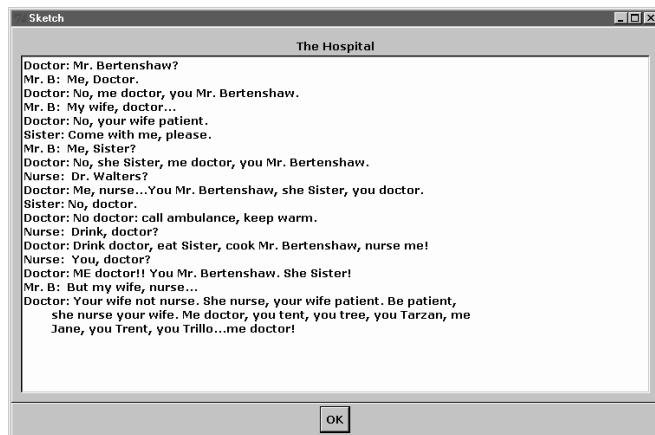
By default, this component is a Pmw.ScrolledListBox.

### **separator**

If the separatorwidth initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

This megawidget has no methods of its own.



## Description

A TextDialog is a convenience dialog window containing a scrolled text widget. This is used to display multiple lines of text to the user.

## Inheritance

TextDialog inherits from `Pmw.Dialog`.

## TextDialog options

| Option                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Units         | Default     |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <code>activatecommand</code>   | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is activated by a call to <code>activate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                     | function      | None        |
| <code>borderx</code>           | Specifies the width of the border to the left and right of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | distance      | 10          |
| <code>bordery</code>           | Specifies the height of the border to the top and bottom of the message area.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | distance      | 10          |
| <code>buttonboxpos</code>      | Specifies on which side of the dialog window to place the button box. Must be one of N, S, E or W.                                                                                                                                                                                     | anchor        | S           |
| <code>buttons</code>           | This must be a tuple or a list. It specifies the names on the buttons in the button box.                                                                                                                                                                                               | (string, ...) | ('OK', ...) |
| <code>command</code>           | Specifies a function to call whenever a button in the button box is invoked or the window is deleted by the window manager. The function is called with a single argument, which is the name of the button which was invoked, or None if the window was deleted by the window manager. | function      | None        |
| <code>deactivatecommand</code> | If this is callable, it will be called whenever the megawidget is deactivated by a call to <code>deactivate()</code> .                                                                                                                                                                 | function      | None        |

| Option         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Units    | Default |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| defaultbutton  | Specifies the default button in the button box. If the index RETURN key is hit when the dialog has focus, the default button will be invoked. If defaultbutton is None, there will be no default button and hitting the RETURN key will have no effect.                                                                                                     | index    | None    |
| separatorwidth | If this is greater than 0, a separator line with the specified width will be created between the button box and the child site, as a component named separator. Since the default border of the button box and child site is raised, this option does not usually need to be set for there to be a visual separation between the button box and child site. | distance | 0       |
| title          | This is the title that the window manager displays in the title bar of the window.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | string   | None    |

## Components

### **buttonbox**

This is the button box containing the buttons for the dialog. By default it is created with the options (hull\_borderwidth = 1, hull\_relief = 'raised').

### **dialogchildsite**

This is the child site for the dialog, which may be used to specialize the megawidget by creating other widgets within it. By default it is created with the options (borderwidth = 1, relief = 'raised').

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **scrolledtext**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.ScrolledText`.

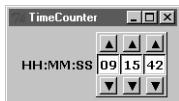
### **separator**

If the separatorwidth initialization option is nonzero, the separator component is the line dividing the area between the button box and the child site.

## Methods

This megawidget has no methods of its own.

# TimeCounter



## Description

A TimeCounter presents three up/down counters which act together to allow the user to input a time. Incrementing a second or minute counter past 59 will increment the minute or hour counter respectively.

## Inheritance

TimeCounter inherits from `Pmw.MegaWidget`.

## TimeCounter options

| Option       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Units        | Default           |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| autorepeat   | If <code>autorepeat</code> is true the up and down buttons will activate every <code>repeatrate</code> milliseconds after the <code>initwait</code> delay.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | boolean      | 1                 |
| buttonaspect | Specifies the width of the arrow buttons as a proportion of their height. Values less than 1.0 will produce thin arrow buttons. Values greater than 1.0 will produce fat arrow buttons.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | float        | 1.0               |
| initwait     | If <code>autorepeat</code> is true the widget will wait <code>initwait</code> milliseconds before repeatedly activating an up or down button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | milliseconds | 300               |
| labelmargin  | If the <code>labelpos</code> option is not <code>None</code> , this specifies the distance between the label component and the rest of the megawidget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | distance     | 0                 |
| labelpos     | Specifies where to place the label component. If not <code>None</code> , it should be a concatenation of one or two of the letters <code>N</code> , <code>S</code> , <code>E</code> and <code>w</code> . The first letter specifies on which side of the megawidget to place the label. If a second letter is specified, it indicates where on that side to place the label. For example, if <code>labelpos</code> is <code>w</code> , the label is placed in the center of the left-hand side; if it is <code>WN</code> , the label is placed at the top of the left-hand side; if it is <code>ws</code> , the label is placed at the bottom of the left-hand side. | anchor       | <code>None</code> |
| max          | The maximum value to be displayed by the widget. A value of <code>23:59:59</code> will result in a 24-hour time counter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | string       | "                 |
| min          | The minimum time to be displayed in the widget. This will normally be <code>00:00:00</code> or be left as the default.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |              | "                 |
| padx         | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each spin button in the x dimension.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | distance     | 0                 |
| pady         | Specifies a padding distance to leave between each spin button in the y dimension.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | distance     | 0                 |
| repeatrate   | If <code>autorepeat</code> is true, specifies the rate at which a button will repeatedly activate if the button is held down.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | milliseconds | 50                |
| value        | The initial value to be displayed in the widget.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |              | "                 |

## Components

### **downhourarrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

### **downminutearrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

### **downsecondarrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

### **frame**

By default, this component is a Frame.

### **hourentryfield**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.EntryField`.

### **hull**

This acts as the body for the entire megawidget. Other components are created as children of the hull to further specialize the widget.

### **label**

If the `labelpos` option is not None, this component is created as a text label for the megawidget. See the `labelpos` option for details. Note that to set, for example, the `text` option of the label, you need to use the `label_text` component option.

### **minuteentryfield**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.EntryField`.

### **secondentryfield**

By default, this component is a `Pmw.EntryField`.

### **uphourarrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

### **upminutearrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

### **upsecondarrow**

Its component group is Arrow.

## Methods

### **decrement()**

Decrements the time by one second.

**getint()**

Returns the time as an `integer`.

**getstring()**

Returns the time as a `string` with the format `HH:MM:SS`.

**increment()**

Increments the time by one second.

**invoke()**

If `command` is callable, it invokes `command`.

## A P P E N D I X     D

---

# *Building and installing Python, Tkinter*

In general, you will not need to build Python or its components from source; binary distributions are readily available from [www.python.org](http://www.python.org) for several UNIX variants, Win32, and MacOS. However, if you intend to build extensions to Python you will need to obtain the sources for Python and sometimes for Tcl and Tk.

If you *do* decide to build Python, you may also want to build Tcl/Tk. The information presented here is for Python 1.5.2 and Tcl/Tk 8.0.5, which were the stable releases at the time of writing. For newer releases, you should visit the respective web pages for up-to-date information.

We will look at building everything for UNIX, Win32, and MacOS in turn.

### ***Building for UNIX***

Building Python and Tkinter for UNIX is probably the most straightforward process when compared to the other architectures. Personally, I've had only two UNIX systems that have given me trouble and the problems can be attributed to the fact that they were new systems.

Before starting, you will need to obtain the appropriate source distributions.

### **Obtaining source distributions**

Before collecting any source, decide where you are going to store the source files. You are going to have three directories (Python, Tcl and Tk) each with their revision as a suffix. You

must arrange for these directories to be at the *same* relative level on the disk (for example, all in `/python_source`).

Next, visit [www.python.org](http://www.python.org) and find the latest version of Python (you will usually find a reference to the current version in the Topics panel). This should point you to the source distribution which is currently a gzipped tar file. While on this page, find out which version of Tcl/Tk was used for the binary distribution of Python. This is the version that you will need to build Tkinter. Retrieve the Python distribution and copy the file to the location you have chosen. Extract the source as follows (substitute the current version number for the **bolded** version).

```
gunzip -c py152.tgz | tar xf -
```

Tcl/Tk may be obtained from [www.scriptics.com/products/tcltk](http://www.scriptics.com/products/tcltk). From this page, you will find a reference to the source distribution for the current patch level. You do not have to build Tcl/Tk if you do not want to; binary distributions of Tcl/Tk are available which include libraries that may be used to build Tkinter. It is quite likely that you will find a version later than the one used for the binary distribution of Python. Normally the patches represent bug fixes and should not cause any problems. However, do not be tempted into using the very latest release (for example, if Python was originally built with 8.0.5 and there are three later versions (8.0.6, 8.1.0 and 8.2.0 available, select 8.0.6). Retrieve the two gzipped tar files and copy them to the location you have chosen. Extract the source as follows (substitute the current version number for the **bolded** version).

```
gunzip -c tcl8.0.5.tar.gz | tar xf -
gunzip -c tk8.0.5.tar.gz | tar xf -
```

You must now build Tcl, Tk and Python, in that order.

## Building Tcl

Change directory to the UNIX directory in the Tcl directory. In that directory you will find a ReadMe file giving complete details for building Tcl. The following is a summary of what you need to do. Of course, certain UNIX systems have special issues, so you may need to read all of the ReadMe file or consult the web.

- 1** Decide where the binary and library files will be installed. We will assume that the install directory is `/usr/local` (the default).
- 2** Run the configuration script. This automatically determines the compiler options and system facilities to be used by the build.

```
./configure
```

- 3** Run the make utility to create the Tcl library.

```
make
```

- 4** Install the binary and library files.

```
make install
```

Assuming that you did not encounter errors, you may go on to build Tk.

## **Building Tk**

Building Tk is similar to building Tcl. Change directory to the UNIX directory in the Tk directory. In that directory you will find a ReadMe file giving complete details for building Tk. The following is a summary of what you need to do.

- 1 You should install Tk into the same directory structure as Tcl. If you did change from the default /usr/local then you should use the same path for the configure script.

- 2 Run the configuration script. This automatically determines the compiler options and system facilities to be used by the build.

```
./configure
```

- 3 Run the make utility to create the Tk library.

```
make
```

- 4 Install the binary and library files.

```
make install
```

We are now ready to build Python.

## **Building Python**

Building Python is quite similar to building Tcl or Tk. A little more work is required to configure the build to add Tkinter, which is *not* built by default. You'll find a ReadMe file at the top-level Python directory which gives full details and explains differences between different variants of UNIX. Once again, the following is a summary.

- 1 We will assume again that the install directory is /usr/local (the default). It does not have to be the same as the Tcl/Tk installation directory, but there is little reason to use a different location.

- 2 Run the configuration script. This automatically determines the compiler options and system facilities to be used by the build. Note that if you intend to use threading, you will have to add the --with-thread option to configure. Read the ReadMe file for further details and information about platform-specific issues.

```
./configure
```

- 3 Copy Modules/Setup.in to Modules/Setup. This file is used to determine which built-in modules will be added to Python. For the moment, we are concerned only with adding Tkinter. You will find many platform-specific modules that may be added or removed from the build.

- 4 Edit Modules/Setup and locate the line commented as:

```
# The _tkinter module.
```

- 5 Follow the instructions in the file. The example shown here is appropriate for Solaris 2.5 or 2.6 (the bold sections should not be commented):

```
# The TKPATH variable is always enabled, to save you the effort.  
TKPATH=:lib-tk  
# The command for _tkinter is long and site-specific. Please  
# uncomment and/or edit those parts as indicated. If you don't have a  
# specific extension (e.g. Tix or BLT), leave the corresponding line  
# commented out. (Leave the trailing backslashes in! If you  
# experience strange errors, you may want to join all uncommented
```

```

# lines and remove the backslashes -- the backslash interpretation is
# done by the shell's "read" command and it may not be implemented on
# every system.

# *** Always uncomment this (leave the leading underscore in!):
_tkinter _tkinter.c tkappinit.c -DWITH_APPINIT \
# *** Uncomment and edit to reflect where your Tcl/Tk headers are:
-I/usr/local/include \
# *** Uncomment and edit to reflect where your X11 header files are:
# -I/usr/X11R6/include \
# *** Or uncomment this for Solaris:
-I/usr/openwin/include \
# *** Uncomment and edit for Tix extension only:
# -DWITH_TIX -ltix4.1.8.0 \
# *** Uncomment and edit for BLT extension only:
# -DWITH_BLT -I/usr/local/blt/blt8.0-unoff/include -lBLT8.0 \
# *** Uncomment and edit for PIL (TkImaging) extension only:
# -DWITH_PIL -I../Extensions/Imaging/libImaging tkImaging.c \
# *** Uncomment and edit for TOGL extension only:
# -DWITH_TOGL togl.c \
# *** Uncomment and edit to reflect where your Tcl/Tk libraries are:
-L/usr/local/lib \
# *** Uncomment and edit to reflect your Tcl/Tk versions:
-ltk8.0 -ltcl8.0 \
# *** Uncomment and edit to reflect where your X11 libraries are:
# -L/usr/X11R6/lib \
# *** Or uncomment this for Solaris:
-I/usr/openwin/lib \
# *** Uncomment these for TOGL extension only:
# -lGL -lGLU -lXext -lXmu \
# *** Uncomment for AIX:
# -lld \
# *** Always uncomment this; X11 libraries to link with:
-lX11

```

- 6 If you wish to build modules as shared objects, uncomment the line which contains \*shared\*. All subsequent modules will be built as separate shared objects.
- 7 Save Modules/Setup. You may wish to save a copy of Modules/Setup so that you will be able to identify your chosen configuration in later versions of Python.
- 8 Run the make utility to create the Python executable and library.  
make
- 9 Install the binary and library files.  
make install
- 10 Define environment variables to reflect your chosen installation locations:  

```

PATH= .....:/usr/local/bin:.....
PYTHONPATH=/usr/local/lib/python1.5
TCL_LIBRARY=/usr/local/lib/tcl8.0
TK_LIBRARY=/usr/local/lib/tk8.0

```

## **Building for Windows**

Building Python and Tkinter for Windows is relatively straightforward, but it involves a little more editing work when compared to UNIX, particularly if you have additional modules to add to Python. Although it is possible to use Borland's C compiler to build Tcl/Tk, Python requires Microsoft Visual C++ version 5 or 6.

### **Obtaining source distributions**

Before collecting any source, decide where you are going to store the source files. You are going to have three directories (Python, Tcl and Tk) each with their revision as a suffix. You must arrange for these directories to be at the same relative level on the disk (for example, all in C:\python\_source).

Next, visit [www.python.org](http://www.python.org) and find the latest version of Python (you will usually find a reference to the current version in the Topics panel). This should point you to the source distribution which is currently a gzipped tar file. While on this page, find out which version of Tcl/Tk was used for the binary distribution of Python. This is the version that you will need to build Tkinter. The source for the Windows (and Macintosh) distribution is identical to the UNIX distribution, although you will probably want to retrieve the zipped version. Retrieve the Python distribution and copy the file to the location you have chosen. Assuming that you have a copy of WinZip, double click on the zip file in Explorer and extract to your chosen location.

Similarly, Tcl/Tk may be obtained from [www.scriptics.com/products/tcltk](http://www.scriptics.com/products/tcltk). From this page, you will find a reference to the source distribution for the current patch level for Windows. It is quite likely that you will find a version *later* than the one used for the binary distribution of Python. Normally the patches represent bug fixes and should not cause any problems. However, do not be tempted into using the very latest release (for example, if Python was originally built with 8.0.5 and there are three later versions (8.0.6, 8.1.0 and 8.2.0) available, select 8.0.6). Retrieve the two zip files and copy them to the location you have chosen. Extract the source to the chosen location using WinZip.

You must now build Tcl, Tk, and Python, in that order.

### **Building Tcl**

Change directory to the `win` directory in the `Tcl` directory. In that directory you will find a `ReadMe` file giving complete details for building Tcl. The following is a summary of what you need to do.

- 1 Decide where the binary and library files will be installed. By default Tcl installs into `C:\Program Files` but there is a bug in the makefile which causes the install to fail (because of the embedded space in the directory name). It is suggested that you install into `C:\Tcl`.
- 2 Copy `MakeFile.vc` to `MakeFile`. Edit `MakeFile` and change the paths at the beginning of the file, as appropriate for your installation and chosen install location:

```
ROOT      = ..
TOOLS32   = c:\program files\devstudio\vc
TOOLS32_rc= c:\program files\devstudio\sharedide
TOOLS16   = c:\msvc
INSTALLDIR= c:\Tcl
```

- 3** In an MS-DOS window, run the `nmake` utility to create the Tk library.

```
nmake
```

- 4** Install the binary and library files.

```
nmake install
```

Assuming that you did not encounter errors, you may go on to build Tk.

## Building Tk

Building Tk is similar to building Tcl. Change directory to the `win` directory in the `Tk` directory. In that directory you will find a `ReadMe` file giving complete details for building Tk. The following is a summary of what you need to do.

- 1** You should install Tk into the same directory structure as a *peer* of Tcl.

- 2** Copy `MakeFile.vc` to `MakeFile`. Edit `MakeFile` and change the paths at the beginning of the file, as appropriate for your installation and chosen install location:

```
ROOT      = ...
TOOLS32   = c:\program files\devstudio\vc
TOOLS32_rc= c:\program files\devstudio\sharedide
TCLDIR    = ...\\tcl8.0.5
INSTALLDIR= c:\\tcl
```

- 3** Run the `nmake` utility to create the Tk library.

```
nmake
```

- 4** Install the binary and library files.

```
nmake install
```

We are now ready to build Python.

## Building Python

The current distribution of Python requires you to build with Microsoft Visual C++ 5.x (or 6.x). Once Tcl/Tk has been built, it is quite easy to complete the build.

- 1** In Explorer, navigate to the `PCbuild` directory.
- 2** Open the workspace `pcbuild.dsw`.
- 3** Select the Debug or Release setting (using `Set Active Configuration...` in the Build menu).
- 4** Select `python15` from `Select Active Project` in the Project menu.
- 5** Select Build `python_15.dll` from the Build menu.
- 6** Select `python` from `Select Active Project` in the Project menu.
- 7** Select Build `python.exe` from the Build menu.
- 8** Select `pythonw` from `Select Active Project` in the Project menu.
- 9** Select Build `pythonw.exe` from the Build menu.
- 10** Select `_tkinter` from `Select Active Project` in the Project menu.
- 11** Select Build `_tkinter.pyd` from the Build menu.

- 12** Move `python.exe`, `pythonw.exe`, `python15.dll` and `_tkinter.pyd` to the directory you wish to run Python from (see “Distributing Tkinter applications” on page 374 for further details).

## ***Building for MacOS***

I have to admit that I do not build the MacOS version of Tcl/Tk or Python. I have been informed that you do not need to build Tcl/Tk for MacOS; the standard installer contains a complete Tcl/Tk installation.

Visit [www.python.org](http://www.python.org) and find the latest version of Python (you will usually find a reference to the current version in the Topics panel). This should point you to the source distribution page; at the time of writing, it is [www.cwi.nl/~jack/macpython.html](http://www.cwi.nl/~jack/macpython.html). There you will find Stuffit and BinHex versions of the source. The source for the MacOS distribution is almost identical to the UNIX distribution, although you will retrieve the Stuffit or binhex version. Retrieve the Python distribution and copy the file to the location you have chosen.

Once you have retrieved the files, follow the instructions included with the release.

## A P P E N D I X E

---

# *Events and keysyms*

The tables in this appendix document the modifiers, event types and keysyms recognized by Tkinter (strictly Tk). Translation of keycodes is highly implementation-dependent so it is important to note that not all keys can be detected consistently across multiple architectures.

The generalized format of events is as follows:

< [ modifier [ '|'- modifier ...] '|- ] [[ type [ qualifier ] | qualifier ] >

## **Modifiers**

| Modifier | Alt. 1  | Alt. 2 | Mask        |
|----------|---------|--------|-------------|
| Control  |         |        | ControlMask |
| Shift    |         |        | ShiftMask   |
| Lock     |         |        | LockMask    |
| Meta     | M       |        | META_MASK   |
| Alt      |         |        | ALT_MASK    |
| B1       | Button1 |        | Button1Mask |
| B2       | Button2 |        | Button2Mask |
| B3       | Button3 |        | Button3Mask |
| B4       | Button4 |        | Button4Mask |

| <b>Modifier</b> | <b>Alt. 1</b> | <b>Alt. 2</b> | <b>Mask</b> |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| B5              | Button5       |               | Button5Mask |
| Mod1            | M1            | Command       | Mod1Mask    |
| Mod2            | M2            | Option        | Mod2Mask    |
| Mod3            | M3            |               | Mod3Mask    |
| Mod4            | M4            |               | Mod4Mask    |
| Mod5            | M5            |               | Mod5Mask    |
| Double          |               |               |             |
| Triple          |               |               |             |

## **Event types**

| <b>Event name</b> | <b>Alt. 1</b> | <b>Type</b>      | <b>Mask</b>                       |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Key               | KeyPress      | KeyPress         | KeyPressMask                      |
| KeyRelease        |               | KeyRelease       | KeyPressMask KeyReleaseMask       |
| Button            | ButtonPress   | ButtonPress      | ButtonPressMask                   |
| ButtonRelease     |               | ButtonRelease    | ButtonPressMask ButtonReleaseMask |
| Motion            |               | MotionNotify     | ButtonPressMask PointerMotionMask |
| Enter             |               | EnterNotify      | EnterWindowMask                   |
| Leave             |               | LeaveNotify      | LeaveWindowMask                   |
| FocusIn           |               | FocusIn          | FocusChangeMask                   |
| FocusOut          |               | FocusOut         | FocusChangeMask                   |
| Expose            |               | Expose           | ExposureMask                      |
| Visibility        |               | VisibilityNotify | VisibilityChangeMask              |
| Destroy           |               | DestroyNotify    | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Unmap             |               | UnmapNotify      | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Map               |               | MapNotify        | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Reparent          |               | ReparentNotify   | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Configure         |               | ConfigureNotify  | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Gravity           |               | GravityNotify    | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Circulate         |               | CirculateNotify  | StructureNotifyMask               |
| Property          |               | PropertyNotify   | PropertyChangeMask                |
| Colormap          |               | ColormapNotify   | ColormapChangeMask                |
| Activate          |               | ActivateNotify   | ActivateMask                      |
| Deactivate        |               | DeactivateNotify | ActivateMask                      |
| MouseWheel        |               | MouseWheelEvent  | MouseWheelMask                    |

# Qualifier

| Qualifier | Mask            |
|-----------|-----------------|
| 1         | ButtonPressMask |
| 2         | ButtonPressMask |
| 3         | ButtonPressMask |
| 4         | ButtonPressMask |
| 5         | ButtonPressMask |
| keysym    | KeyPressMask    |

## Keysyms

Not all of the possible keysyms are presented here. In fact, only the Latin-1 set is presented. This is generally the set of keys that you will bind to. If you need to bind to other key sets (such as Cyrillic or Balkan) you will find them in the Tk source code (*Tk[Release]/generic/ks\_names.h*).

### E.5.1 Latin-1

| Keysym    | Key       | Keysym        | Key           |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| BackSpace | BackSpace | Win_L         | Left Window   |
| Tab       | Tab       | Win_R         | Right Window  |
| Linefeed  | Linefeed  | App           | Application   |
| Clear     | Clear     | Select        | Select        |
| Return    | Return    | Print         | Print         |
| Pause     | Pause     | Execute       | Execute       |
| Escape    | Escape    | Insert        | Insert        |
| Delete    | Delete    | Undo          | Undo          |
| Multi_key | Multi_key | Redo          | Redo          |
| Kanji     | Kanji     | Menu          | Menu          |
| Home      | Home      | Find          | Find          |
| Left      | Left      | Cancel        | Cancel        |
| Up        | Up        | Help          | Help          |
| Right     | Right     | Break         | Break         |
| Down      | Down      | Mode_switch   | Mode_switch   |
| Prior     | Prior     | script_switch | script_switch |
| Next      | Next      | Num_Lock      | Num_Lock      |
| End       | End       | KP_Space      | Keypad Space  |
| Begin     | Begin     | KP_Tab        | Keypad Tab    |

| <b>Keysym</b> | <b>Key</b>                 | <b>Keysym</b> | <b>Key</b>   |
|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| KP_Enter      | Keypad Enter               | numbersign    | numbersign   |
| KP_F1         | Keypad F1                  | dollar        | dollar       |
| KP_F2         | Keypad F2                  | percent       | percent      |
| KP_F3         | Keypad F3                  | ampersand     | ampersand    |
| KP_F4         | Keypad F4                  | quoteright    | quoteright   |
| KP_Equal      | Keypad Equal               | parenleft     | parenleft    |
| KP_Multiply   | Keypad Multiply            | parenright    | parenright   |
| KP_Add        | Keypad Add                 | asterisk      | asterisk     |
| KP_Separator  | Keypad Separator           | plus          | plus         |
| KP_Subtract   | Keypad Subtract            | comma         | comma        |
| KP.Decimal    | Keypad Decimal             | minus         | minus        |
| KP_Divide     | Keypad Divide              | period        | period       |
| KP_0 ... KP_9 | Keypad 0 ... Keypad 9      | slash         | slash        |
| F1 ... F35    | Function 1 ... Function 35 | 0 ... 9       | 0 ... 9      |
| L1 ... L10    | L1 ... L10                 | colon         | colon        |
| R1 ... R15    | R1 ... R15                 | semicolon     | semicolon    |
| Shift_L       | Left Shift                 | less          | less         |
| Shift_R       | Right Shift                | equal         | equal        |
| Control_L     | Left Control               | greater       | greater      |
| Control_R     | Right Control              | question      | question     |
| Caps_Lock     | Caps_Lock                  | at            | at           |
| Shift_Lock    | Shift_Lock                 | A ... Z       | A ... Z      |
| Meta_L        | Left Meta                  | bracketleft   | bracketleft  |
| Meta_R        | Right Meta                 | backslash     | backslash    |
| Alt_L         | Left Alt                   | bracketright  | bracketright |
| Alt_R         | Right Alt                  | asciicircum   | asciicircum  |
| Super_L       | Left Super                 | underscore    | underscore   |
| Super_R       | Right Super                | quotelleft    | quotelleft   |
| Hyper_L       | Left Hyper                 | a ... z       | a ... z      |
| Hyper_R       | Right Hyper                | braceleft     | braceleft    |
| space         | space                      | bar           | bar          |
| exclam        | exclam                     | braceright    | braceright   |
| quotedbl      | quotedbl                   | asciitilde    | asciitilde   |

## A P P E N D I X F

---

# Cursors

The tables in this appendix illustrate the cursors available to Tkinter applications. The cursors are available on all platforms. However, certain cursors may have special meaning on some operating systems (the *watch* cursor on Win32 uses the current watch cursor defined in the system, for example).

| Cursor name      | Cursor | Cursor name         | Cursor |
|------------------|--------|---------------------|--------|
| X_cursor         |        | bottom_left_corner  |        |
| arrow            |        | bottom_right_corner |        |
| based_arrow_down |        | bottom_side         |        |
| based_arrow_up   |        | bottom_tee          |        |
| boat             |        | box_spiral          |        |
| bogosity         |        | center_ptr          |        |

---

| <b>Cursor name</b> | <b>Cursor</b> | <b>Cursor name</b> | <b>Cursor</b> |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| circle             |               | fleur              |               |
| clock              |               | gobbler            |               |
| coffee_mug         |               | gumby              |               |
| cross              |               | hand1              |               |
| cross_reverse      |               | hand2              |               |
| crosshair          |               | heart              |               |
| diamond_cross      |               | icon               |               |
| dot                |               | iron_cross         |               |
| dotbox             |               | left_ptr           |               |
| double_arrow       |               | left_side          |               |
| draft_large        |               | left_tee           |               |
| draft_small        |               | leftbutton         |               |
| draped_box         |               | ll_angle           |               |
| exchange           |               | lr_angle           |               |

| Cursor name    | Cursor | Cursor name       | Cursor |
|----------------|--------|-------------------|--------|
| man            |        | sb_h_double_arrow |        |
| middlebutton   |        | sb_left_arrow     |        |
| mouse          |        | sb_right_arrow    |        |
| pencil         |        | sb_up_arrow       |        |
| pirate         |        | sb_v_double_arrow |        |
| plus           |        | shuttle           |        |
| question_arrow |        | sizing            |        |
| right_ptr      |        | spider            |        |
| right_side     |        | spraycan          |        |
| right_tee      |        | star              |        |
| rightbutton    |        | target            |        |
| rtl_logo       |        | tcross            |        |
| sailboat       |        | top_left_arrow    |        |
| sb_down_arrow  |        | top_left_corner   |        |

| <b>Cursor name</b> | <b>Cursor</b>                                                                     | <b>Cursor name</b> | <b>Cursor</b>                                                                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| top_right_corner   |  | umbrella           |  |
| top_side           |  | ur_angle           |  |
| top_tee            |  | watch              |  |
| trek               |  | xterm              |  |

---

## A P P E N D I X G

---

# *References*

This appendix presents sources for Python resources and some book references you may find useful for obtaining more detailed information on Python, the X Window system, Tcl/Tk and human factors engineering. For most of the resources located on the web, I have reproduced the original authors' description of the resource.

## **Resources**

### **Siomodule**

Sio.pyd is a DLL and is a wrapper to another DLL which is a commercial package. The maker of that package agreed to let their DLL be distributed as long as the following appears:

Serial Communications DLLs by MarshallSoft Computing, Inc.  
POB 4543 Huntsville AL 35815. 205-881-4630.  
Email: mike@marshallsoft.com  
Web : [www.marshallsoft.com](http://www.marshallsoft.com)

### **SWIG**

SWIG is a software development tool that connects programs written in C, C++, and Objective-C with a variety of high-level programming languages. SWIG is primarily used with common scripting languages such as Perl, Python and Tcl/Tk, but it has also been

extended to include languages such as Java, Eiffel and Guile. SWIG is most commonly used to create high-level interpreted programming environments and systems integration, and as a tool for building user interfaces. SWIG may be freely used, distributed and modified for commercial or noncommercial use.

<http://www.swig.org/>

## NumPy

NumPy is a nickname for a package of Numerical Extensions to Python. These extensions add two powerful new types to Python: a new sequence type which implements multidimensional arrays efficiently (multiarray) and a new type of function called a universal function (ufunc) which works efficiently on the new arrays and other sequence types. These new objects give Python the number-crunching power of numeric languages like MATLAB and IDL while maintaining all of the advantages which Python has as a general-purpose programming language. It's also free, just like the rest of Python.

<ftp://ftp-icf.llnl.gov/pub/python/README.html>

## Python News Group

comp.lang.python  
comp.lang.python.announce

## Python Imaging Library (PIL)

The Python Imaging Library adds an image object to your Python interpreter. You can load image objects from a variety of file formats and apply a rich set of image operations to them.

<http://www.pythonware.com/downloads.htm>

## PythonWorks

PythonWorks is a rapid-development environment under development by PythonWare/ Secret Labs AB.

<http://www.pythonware.com/products/works/index.htm>

## Python books

- 1 Ascher, David and Mark Lutz. *Learning Python*. O'Reilly & Associates, 1999. ISBN: 1-56592-464-9.
- 2 Beazley, David. *Python Essential Reference*. New Riders, 1999. ISBN: 0-7357-090-17.
- 3 Harms, Daryl and Kenneth McDonald. *The Quick Python Book*. Manning Publications, 2000. ISBN: 1-884777-74-0.
- 4 Lundh, Fredrik. (*the eff-bot guide to*) *The Standard Python Library*. Electronic edition at [www.fatbrain.com](http://www.fatbrain.com).
- 5 Lutz, Mark. *Programming Python*. O'Reilly & Associates, 1996. ISBN: 1-56592-197-6.

## X Window books

- 6 Nye, Adrian and Tim O'Reilly. *X Toolkit Intrinsics Programming Manual for X11, Release 5 (Definitive Guides to the X Window System, Vol 4)*. O'Reilly & Associates, 1992. ISBN: 1-56592-013-9.
- 7 Young, Douglas. *The X Window System: Programming and Applications with Xt, OSF/Motif*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. Prentice-Hall, 1994. ISBN: 0-13123-803-5.

## Tcl/Tk books

- 8 Flynt, Clifton. *Tcl/Tk for Real Programmers*. Academic Press (AP Professional), 1998. ISBN: 0-12261-205-1.
- 9 Foster-Johnson, Eric. *Graphical Applications with Tcl and Tk*, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition. M&T Books, 1997. ISBN: 1-55851-569-0.
- 10 Harrison, Mark and Michael J. McLennan. *Effective Tcl/Tk Programming: Writing Better Programs in Tcl and Tk*. Addison Wesley Longman, 1997. ISBN: 0-20163-474-0.
- 11 Ousterhout, John. *Tcl and the Tk Toolkit*. Addison-Wesley, 1994. ISBN: 0-20163-337-X.
- 12 Raines, Paul. *Tcl/Tk Pocket Reference*. O'Reilly & Associates, 1998. ISBN: 1-56592-498-3.

## Human factors engineering

- 13 Coe, Marlana. *Human Factors for Technical Communicators*. John Wiley & Sons, 1996. ISBN: 0-47103-530-0.
- 14 Cooper, Alan. *About Face: The Essentials of User Interface Design*. IDG Books, 1995. ISBN 1-56884-322-4.
- 15 Olsen, Dan R., Jr., Dan E. Olsen and Dan R. Olsen. *Developing User Interfaces*. Morgan Kaufmann, 1998. ISBN 1-55860-418-9.



# *index*

---

## A

aboutcontact 147, 544  
aboutcopyright 147, 544  
AboutDialog 50, 147, 150,  
159, 542  
aboutcontact 544  
aboutcopyright 544  
aboutversion 147, 544  
buttonbox 544  
components 544  
dialogchildsite 544  
hull 544  
message 544  
options 543  
separator 544  
absolute measurements 257  
abstract class 11  
accessing dictionaries 8  
activate 92, 96, 304, 499, 527,  
570, 618  
activatecommand 543, 545,  
551, 556, 558, 576, 588,  
603, 605  
activebackground 40, 428, 439  
activeborderwidth 502  
activecolor 582  
activeforeground 428, 439  
activerelief 526  
add 240, 548, 579, 581, 587,  
591

add\_cascade 41, 503  
add\_checkbutton 41, 503  
add\_command 40, 503  
add\_radiobutton 41, 503  
add\_separator 503  
addcascademenu 572  
adding scroll bars  
dynamically 151  
additional Menu options 399  
addmenu 147, 148, 159, 573  
addMenuItem 147, 160, 263,  
573  
addoptions 567  
addPage 173, 174, 583  
addtag 267  
addtag\_above 458  
addtag\_all 458  
addtag\_below 458  
addtag\_closest 458  
addtag\_enclosed 459  
addtag\_overlapping 459  
addtag\_withtag 256, 257,  
459  
after 107, 110, 124, 219, 224,  
369, 433, 511  
after\_cancel 434  
after\_idle 369, 434  
alarms 369  
alignbuttons 548  
alignlabels 113  
alignment 301  
alphabeticvalidator 563  
alphanumericvalidator 563  
anchor 84, 87, 92, 124, 168,  
205, 428, 516  
animation 134, 214  
button press 247  
making a widget flash 123  
anonymous function 103  
Any-Enter 99, 252  
event 96  
Any-Leave 116, 252  
API 314, 316  
append 109, 176, 193  
appending lists 5  
application framework 14  
application level events 104,  
107  
application profiling 357  
Application Program Interface  
(See API)  
application structure 21, 27  
application-level binding 106  
applicationname 543  
AppShell 50, 156, 169, 172,  
175, 245  
arc options 388  
architecture 14, 375  
argument 10  
keyword 10

argument (continued)  
    named 10  
    positional 10  
arrow 261, 473  
arrowbutton 550  
arrowshape 261, 473  
askfloat 141  
askinteger 141, 142, 144  
askokcancel 143  
askquestion 143  
askretrycancel 141, 143  
askstring 141  
askyesno 141, 143  
aspect 446, 510  
assert 350  
assigning a unique identity to  
    canvas items 267  
asynchronous  
    techniques 361–373  
atomic operation 365  
attribute variables 351  
audio feedback 105  
author online xxiii  
autoclear 549  
automatic scroll bars 151  
autorepeat 553, 607

## B

B1 617  
B2 617  
B2-Motion 99  
B3 617  
background 426, 439  
    color 341  
    setting color 154  
Balloon 50, 147, 245,  
    545–546  
bind 546  
clearstatus() 546  
hull 545  
label 546  
methods 546  
showstatus 546  
tagbind 546  
tagunbind 546

unbind 546  
Balloon help 148, 160, 245,  
    343  
bargraphs 286  
base class 11  
Base text indices 401  
batch file 378  
baud 230  
bbox 242, 268, 459, 499,  
    532, 593, 600, 602  
bd 426  
before 511  
behavior of complex  
    systems 96  
bell 434  
bg 426  
bigincrement 523  
binary distribution 611  
bind 20, 96, 100, 101, 102,  
    104, 105, 115, 193, 434,  
    546  
    application level 104  
        binding 106  
    binding events and  
        callbacks 104  
    binding events to  
        callbacks 95  
    binding widgets to dynam-  
        ic data 108  
    callbacks 95  
    changing bindings 107  
    class level 104, 105  
    instance level 104  
        shell level 104  
        toplevel window level 105  
Bind and event methods 420  
bind method 103, 104  
bind\_all 105, 252, 434  
bind\_class 105, 106, 434  
binding 95–119  
    binding and virtual  
        events 420  
    binding Balloon help to a  
        widget 162  
    binding widgets to dynamic  
        data 108  
bindtags 434  
BinHex 616  
bitmap 208, 428, 453, 470  
    bitmap 453  
    cget 453  
    class 452–453  
    configure 453  
    data 452  
    file 452  
    height 453  
    image type 416  
    maskdata 452  
    maskfile 452  
    options 389, 416  
    shared options 452  
    type 453  
    width 453  
BitmapImage 245  
blank 514  
blank cards 212  
blocking I/O 364  
blocking read 231  
BMP 215  
BooleanVar 108, 152  
borderframe 592, 593, 595,  
    597, 601  
bordermode 516  
borderwidth 426, 578  
borderx 543, 551, 556, 576,  
    588, 603, 605  
bordery 543, 551, 556, 576,  
    588, 603, 605  
borrowed reference 326  
bounding box (See bbox)  
break 107  
breakpoints 336  
browsers 175–183  
    tree 175  
building a dispatcher 235  
building a ruler 254  
building extensions in  
    C++ 320  
building extensions to  
    Python 311  
building for MacOS 616  
building for UNIX 610

building for Windows 614  
building front panels 199  
building navigation into an application 302  
building Python 610, 612, 615  
  extensions 316  
building Tk 612, 615  
built-in validation 114  
bus error 325  
busy cursor 155  
Button 16, 20, 36, 453, 618  
  disabling 36, 89  
  flash 455  
  iconic 247  
  invoke 455  
  methods 406  
  methodsmapping 406  
  relief 36  
  shared options 454  
  tkButtonDown 455  
  tkButtonEnter 455  
  tkButtonInvoke 455  
  tkButtonLeave 455  
  tkButtonUp 455  
  widget 405  
widget standard  
  options 405  
widget-specific  
  options 405  
Button-1 99, 193, 196, 209  
Button1 617  
Button1-ButtonRelease 193  
Button1-Motion 193  
Button-2 99  
Button2 617  
Button3 617  
buttonaspect 549, 553, 607  
ButtonBox 51, 161, 544, 552, 557, 559, 577, 588, 604, 606  
  add 548  
  alignbuttons 548  
  components 547  
  delete 548  
frame 547  
hull 547  
index 548  
insert 548  
invoke 548  
label 547  
methods 548  
numbuttons 548  
setdefault 548  
buttonboxpos 543, 551, 556, 558, 576, 588, 590, 603, 605  
ButtonPress 97, 618  
ButtonPress-1 99, 178, 245  
ButtonPress-2 99  
ButtonRelease 97, 618  
ButtonRelease-1 20, 245  
ButtonRelease-3 99  
buttons 543, 551, 556, 558, 576, 588, 603, 605  
butontype 590  
bytecode 349  
bytecode engine 4

**C**

C compiler 314  
C structure 9  
cache 198  
callback 95–119  
  binding events 95  
calling Python from C/C++ 320  
Canvas 44, 122, 192, 202, 456  
  addtag\_above 458  
  addtag\_all 458  
  addtag\_below 458  
  addtag\_closest 458  
  addtag\_enclosed 459  
  addtag\_overlapping 459  
  addtag\_withtag 459  
  bbox 459  
  canvasx 459  
  canvasy 459  
  closeenough 457  
confine 457  
coords 459  
create\_bitmap 460  
create\_arc 460  
create\_image 460  
create\_line 460  
create\_oval 460  
create\_polygon 460  
create\_rectangle 460  
create\_text 460  
create\_window 460  
dchars 460  
delete 460  
dtag 460  
find\_above 461  
find\_all 461  
find\_below 461  
find\_closest 461  
find\_enclosed 461  
find\_overlapping 461  
find\_withtag 461  
focus 461  
gettags 462  
icursor 462  
index 462  
insert 462  
insertbackground 457  
insertborderwidth 457  
insertofftime 457  
insertontime 457  
insertwidth 457  
itemcget 462  
itemconfigure 462  
move 463  
PostScript 463  
  colormap 463  
  colormode 463  
  file 463  
  fontmap 464  
  height 464  
  pageanchor 464  
  pageheight 464  
  pagewidth 464  
  pagex 464  
  pagey 464

Canvas, PostScript  
(continued)  
    rotate 464  
    width 464  
    x 464  
    y 465  
scale 465  
scan\_dragto 465  
scan\_mark 465  
scrollregion 457  
select\_adjust 465  
select\_clear 465  
select\_from 465  
select\_item 465  
select\_to 466  
shared options 456  
tag\_bind 466  
tag\_lower 466  
tag\_raise 467  
tag\_unbind 467  
type 467  
xscrollincrement 458  
xview\_moveto 467  
xview\_scroll 467  
yscrollcommand 458  
yscrollincrement 458  
yview\_moveto 467  
yview\_scroll 467  
canvas 17, 593  
    adding scrollbars 251  
    coordinates 242  
    create line 238  
    create oval 238  
    create rectangle 238  
    deciding if the pointer is in  
        a region 198  
    determining the size of an  
        image 194  
    generating PostScript 250  
    grab handles 258  
    locating the nearest  
        object 242  
    moving objects 243  
    origin 242  
    panning 253  
    relative positioning 201

    scan\_dragto 252  
    scan\_mark 252  
    scrollregion 252  
    selecting items 242  
    stretching canvas  
        objects 258  
    tags 250  
    xscrollcommand 252  
    yscrollcommand 252  
Canvas Arc 468  
    coords 469  
    create\_arc 469  
    delete 469  
    extent 468  
    itemconfigure 469  
    outline 468  
    outlinestipple 468  
    shared options 468  
    start 468  
    stipple 469  
    style 469  
    tags 469  
Canvas bitmap 470  
    bitmap 470  
    coords 471  
    create\_bitmap 470  
    delete 470  
    itemconfigure 471  
    shared options 470  
    tags 470  
Canvas image 471  
    coords 472  
    create\_image 472  
    delete 472  
    image 471  
    itemconfigure 472  
    shared options 471  
    tags 471  
canvas item  
    bounding box 238  
Canvas item types 388  
Canvas line 472  
    arrow 261, 473  
    arrowshape 261, 473  
    capstyle 473  
coords 474  
create\_line 474  
delete 474  
itemconfigure 474  
joinstyle 473  
shared options 472  
smooth 473  
splinesteps 473  
stipple 474  
tags 474  
Canvas methods 386  
canvas origin 242  
Canvas oval 474  
    coords 475  
    create\_oval 475  
    delete 475  
    itemconfigure 475  
    outline 475  
    shared options 475  
    stipple 475  
    tags 475  
Canvas polygon 476  
    create\_polygon 477  
    delete 477  
    itemconfigure 477  
    outline 476  
    shared options 476  
    smooth 476  
    splinesteps 476  
    stipple 476  
    tags 476  
Canvas postscript  
    options 393  
Canvas rectangle 477  
    coords 478  
    create\_rectangle 478  
    delete 478  
    itemconfigure 478  
    outline 478  
    shared options 477  
    stipple 478  
    tags 478  
Canvas text 478  
    coords 480  
    create\_text 479

delete 480  
font 479  
itemconfigure 480  
justify 479  
shared options 479  
stipple 479  
tags 479  
text 479  
Canvas widget 385–393  
Canvas widget standard  
    options 385  
Canvas widget-specific  
    options 386  
Canvas window 480  
    coords 481  
    create\_window 481  
    delete 481  
    itemconfigure 481  
    shared options 480  
    tags 480  
    window 480  
canvascolor 582  
canvasheight 582  
canvasmargin 592  
canvaswidth 582  
canvasx 193, 240, 459  
canvasy 193, 240459  
capstyle 473  
CDE 306  
C-extension 13  
cget 434, 453, 490, 508, 510,  
    514, 567  
change-password dialog 86  
changing bindings 107  
Checkbutton 38, 481  
    deselect 484  
    flash 484  
    indicatoron 483  
    invoke 484  
    offvalue 483  
    onvalue 483  
    select 484  
    selectcolor 483  
    selectimage 483  
    shared options 482  
    toggle 484  
    variable 483  
Checkbutton methods 407  
Checkbutton widget 406  
Checkbutton widget standard  
    options 406  
Checkbutton widget-specific  
    options 407  
checkentry 563  
child widgets 78  
choosing fonts 343  
class 9–11, 120, 492, 540  
    \_\_init\_\_ 10  
    abstract 11  
    base 11  
    class library 129  
    composite widgets 139  
    creating an instance 10  
    defining a class 9  
    generalized 11  
    header 11  
    inheritance 10, 11  
    inherited methods 139  
    instance 9  
    MegaWidget 136  
    methods 10  
    mixin 126  
    mixin classes 11  
    multiple inheritance 11,  
        139  
    name mangling 11  
    object description 9  
    private methods 11  
    private variables 11  
    public methods 11  
    public variables 11  
    self 10  
    subclassing 129  
    switch 133  
    switches 138  
    this 10  
    toggle switch 136  
    variable 138  
class constructors 14  
class header 11  
class level 105  
class libraries 9, 10, 129, 131,  
    202  
class variable 138, 158, 186  
class-level binding 106  
clear 564, 602  
clearstatus() 546  
client 446  
    registration 97  
client/server techniques 371  
clipboard\_append 434  
clipboard\_clear 435  
clipper 597  
closeenough 457  
collecting passwords 145  
color 48, 129  
    in GUIs 344  
    setting colors 47  
    supporting color blind  
        users 345  
    transforming 130  
    variations 130  
color bitmap 309  
color blind users 345  
color in graphical user  
    interfaces 344  
color transformation 129,  
    131  
color variations 130  
colormap 98, 463, 492, 540  
colormap events 98  
colormap flashing 98  
colormap notification 98  
ColormapNotify 98  
colormapwindows 446  
colormode 463  
column 87, 116, 117, 493,  
    79, 301  
columnconfigure 252  
colspan 89, 189, 493  
ComboBox 16, 52, 88, 153,  
    340, 549, 552  
arrowbutton 550  
components 550  
entryfield 550

**ComboBox** (continued)  
 get 153, 550  
 hull 550  
 invoke 551  
 label 550  
 methods 550  
 options 549  
 popup 550  
 scrolledlist 550  
 selectitem 153, 551  
 setlist 153  
 size 551  
**ComboBoxDialog** 53, 551  
 buttonbox 552  
 combobox 552  
 components 552  
 dialogchildsite 552  
 hull 552  
 methods 553  
 options 551  
 separator 552  
 command 429, 447, 543,  
     552, 556, 558, 560, 576,  
     584, 586, 588, 590, 603,  
     605  
 common methods  
     bind\_all 434  
     configure 435  
     focus\_get 436  
     grab\_set 436  
     image\_types 437  
     tk\_focusPrev 439  
 compare 532  
 compiled C++ 348  
 compiler 314  
 complex 272  
 component 113, 567  
 componentaliases 567  
 componentgroup 567  
 composite widgets 136, 139  
 composites 120  
 concatenating lists 6  
 config.h 318  
 configuration 78, 97  
 configuration events 98  
 configure 93, 99, 158, 159,  
     303, 435, 453, 490, 508,  
     510, 514, 567  
**ConfigureNotify** 98  
**configurepane** 587  
**confine** 457  
**connector**  
     10Base-T 200  
     BNC 200, 201  
     FDDI 200, 201  
     J-25 201  
     J-45 201  
     J-50 201  
**constraint** 254  
**Constraint Widget class** 77  
**container** 78, 77, 81, 92, 492,  
     540  
**containerCanvas** 583  
**Control** 617  
**Control-Insert** 99  
**Control-Shift-F3** 99  
**converting screen coordinates**  
     to canvas coordinates 241  
**converting Tcl/Tk scripts to**  
     Tkinter 237  
**coordinates** 238  
**coords** 459, 469, 471, 472,  
     474, 475, 477, 478, 480,  
     481, 524  
**copy** 490, 514  
**Corporation for National**  
     Research Initiatives  
     (CNRI) 4  
**Counter** 54, 553  
     components 555  
     decrement 556  
     downarrow 555  
     entryfield 555  
     frame 555  
     hull 555  
     increment 556  
     label 555  
     methods 556  
     options 553  
     uparrow 556  
**CounterDialog** 55, 556  
     buttonbox 557  
     components 557  
     counter 557  
     deleteentry 557  
     dialogchildsite 557  
     hull 557  
     indexentry 558  
     insertentry 558  
     methods 557  
     options 556  
     separator 557  
**create** 331  
**create arc** 388  
**create bitmap** 389  
**create image** 389  
**create line** 390  
**create oval** 390  
**create polygon** 391  
**create rectangle** 391  
**create text** 392  
**create window** 392  
**create\_arc** 460, 469  
**create\_bitmap** 460, 470  
**create\_image** 177, 217, 224,  
     460, 472  
**create\_line** 225, 331, 460,  
     474  
**create\_oval** 122, 132, 204,  
     209, 460, 475  
**create\_polygon** 122, 132,  
     255, 460, 477  
**create\_rectangle** 122, 193,  
     204, 209, 460, 478  
**create\_text** 224, 331, 460, 479  
**create\_window** 45, 460, 481  
**createCommand** 578  
**createcomponent** 76, 159,  
     239, 568  
**createfilehandler** 370  
**createlabel** 568  
**creating a data dictionary**  
     165  
**creating a drawing**  
     program 238

creating a progress  
    widget 161  
creating a scrolled canvas 251  
creating a separator 185  
creating a tool bar 264  
creating a tree widget 181  
creating arrows 261  
creating image maps 191  
creating new megawidgets 73  
crossing events 97  
CURRENT 234, 253  
curselection 499  
cursor 426  
cursors 621–624  
    arrow 621  
    bottom\_left\_corner 621  
    bottom\_right\_corner 621  
    bottom\_side 621  
    crosshair 622  
    draft\_large 622  
    draft\_small 622  
    fleur 622  
    left\_ptr 622  
    left\_side 622  
    ll\_angle 622  
    lr\_angle 622  
    plus 623  
    right\_side 623  
    top\_left\_arrow 623  
    top\_left\_corner 623  
    top\_right\_corner 624  
    top\_side 624  
    ul\_angle 624  
    ur\_angle 624  
watch 624  
xterm 624  
curved lines 238

**D**

data 452, 513  
data dictionaries 165–171  
data entry 140  
data entry dialogs 142  
data verification 95, 111

datagram 372  
datatype 553  
date validator 113  
dates 117  
datevalidator 563  
dblclickcommand 598  
dchars 460  
DDD 337  
Deactivate 618  
deactivatecommand 543,  
    545, 552, 557, 558, 576,  
    588, 603, 605  
deactiveColor 582  
debug 532  
    DDD 337  
    how to debug an  
        application 333  
    IDLE 336  
    pdb 336  
debug information 339  
debug window 334  
debugger 27, 329, 333, 336,  
    361  
debugging applications 329–  
    337  
debugging network  
    applications 330  
debugging techniques 311  
deconstructor 325  
decoration  
    window 307  
decrement 556, 608  
default action 142  
default binding 304  
default value 154  
defaultbutton 543, 552, 557,  
    558, 576, 588, 603, 606  
defineoptions 75, 156, 568  
defining classes 9  
defining validation  
    requirements 165  
deiconify 308, 309, 447  
deleteall 591  
deleteentry 557, 589  
deletemenu 573  
deletemenuitems 263, 573  
deleting a member 7  
delPage 583  
delta 527  
deselect 484, 521  
deselectall 176  
designing effective  
    graphics 338–347  
destroy 99, 435  
destroycomponent 568  
destroying a window 94  
device events 97  
Dialog 56, 558  
    buttonbox 559  
    components 559  
    dialogchildsite 559  
    hull 559  
    interior 559  
    invoke 559  
    methods 559  
    options 558  
    separator 559  
dialog 140–198  
    askokcancel 143  
    askquestion 143  
    askretrycancel 143  
    askyesno 143  
browser 175  
data entry 142  
error messages 141  
getting a filename from the  
    user 271  
hierarchical browsers 175  
human factors 144  
image map 191  
modal 141  
password 145  
popup 144  
showerror 143  
showinfo 143  
showwarning 143  
single-shot forms 146  
warning messages 141  
wizard 184  
Dialog module 141

dialogchildsite 544, 552, 557, 559, 577, 589, 604, 606  
 dictionary 5, 23  
     accessing 8  
     data 8  
     initializing 8  
     iterating through entries 8  
     keys 8  
     modifying 8  
     sorting 8  
 dictionary reference 15  
 digital multimeter 220  
 digits 523  
 direction 508  
 disableall 573  
 disabledforeground 429, 439  
 disabling a button 89  
 dispatcher 23  
     simple example 235  
 display 310  
 display stack 243  
 distributing applications 374  
 distributing Python 311  
 distributing Tkinter  
     applications 374–379  
 distribution  
     alternative schemes 375  
     architectures 375  
     batch file 378  
     Distutils special interest  
         group 379  
         freeze 379  
         general issues 374  
         installation 374  
         InstallShield 376  
         squeeze 379  
         tools 379  
     UNIX applications 375  
 distribution tools 379  
 dlineinfo 533  
 dll 376  
 Double-Button-1 99, 178  
 DoubleVar 109, 152  
 downarrow 555  
 downhourarrow 608  
 downminutearrow 608  
 downsecondarrow 608  
 draw  
     charts 276  
     curved lines 238  
     filled oval 244  
     filled rectangle 244  
     freehand curves 244  
     graphs 276  
     lines 237–275  
     objects 237–275  
     open oval 244  
     open rectangle 244  
     ovals 238  
     rectangles 238  
     rubber lines 244  
     smoothed curves 244  
     straight lines 244  
 drawing on a canvas 238  
 drawing program 238  
 drawing tools 237  
 drawn objects 238  
 dropdown 549  
 dtag 265, 460  
 dtwm 306  
 dynamic callback  
     handlers 95, 107  
 dynamic linking 316  
 dynamic load libraries 374  
 dynamically-loadable  
     modules 317

**E**

effect of debug on  
     performance 330  
 elementborderwidth 526  
 elements of good interface  
     design 339  
 emacs 333  
 embedding Python 313, 325  
 enableall 573  
 encoding 48  
 Enter 99, 245, 618  
 EnterNotify 97  
 Entry 20, 37, 87, 484  
     delete 487  
     exportselection 486  
     get 487  
     icursor 487  
     index 487  
     indices 394  
     insert 487  
     insertbackground 486  
     insertborderwidth 486  
     insertofftime 486  
     insertontime 486  
     insertwidth 486  
     scan\_dragto 487  
     scan\_mark 487  
     selection\_adjust 488  
     selection\_clear 488  
     selection\_from 488  
     selection\_present 488  
     selection\_range 488  
     selection\_to 488  
     shared options 485  
     show 487  
     types 398  
     widget 393–395  
     widget methods 395  
     widget standard  
         options 393  
     widget-specific  
         options 394  
 xvview 488  
 xvview\_moveto 488  
 xvview\_scroll 488  
 entry 16, 563, 575, 594  
     behavior of a widget 166  
     password entry 145  
 entry fields 86  
 entrycget 504  
 entryconfigure 504  
 EntryField 56, 111, 112, 142, 559  
     checkentry 563  
     clear 564  
     components 563  
     entry 563

hull 563  
invoke 564  
label 563  
methods 563  
options 560  
setentry 564  
valid 564  
validation function return  
    values 560  
validators 561  
entryfield 550, 555, 589  
environment 376  
environment variables 613  
errorbackground 560  
eval 21, 25, 26, 128  
event 95–119  
    And-Enter 96  
    behavior of complex  
        systems 96  
    bind 96  
    bind methods 104  
    binding callbacks 102  
    binding events to  
        callbacks 95  
    binding widgets to dynam-  
        ic data 108  
    boundary 97  
    ButtonPress 97  
    ButtonRelease 97  
    callbacks 95, 102  
    colormap 98  
    configuration 78, 97, 98  
    ConfigureNotify 98  
    crossing 96, 97  
    device events 97  
    direct 102  
    dynamic callback  
        handlers 95, 107  
    enter widget 96  
    EnterNotify 97  
    event loop 96  
    event mask 97, 99  
    event queue 96  
    event storm 107  
    exposure 97, 98  
filter 96  
flushing the event  
    queue 125  
focus 98  
FocusIn 98  
FocusOut 98  
grab 97  
Gravity 98  
handler 96  
handling multiple  
    bindings 106  
handling multiple  
    callbacks 106  
indirect 102  
keyboard 97  
KeyPress 97  
KeyRelease 97  
keysyms 98, 619  
LeaveNotify 97  
Map 98  
modifier keys 97  
modifiers 98, 617  
motion 97  
motion events 102  
MotionNotify 97  
mouse 97  
performance issues 102  
pointer 97  
pointer motion 97  
propagation 97  
qualifier 98, 619  
Reparent 98  
takefocus 98  
type 98  
types 618  
Unmap 98  
unrecognized events 101  
Visibility 98  
event driven systems 95  
event handler 96, 101, 102,  
    107  
    break 107  
event key symbols 619  
event loop 96, 365  
event mask 97, 99, 101  
event mechanism 99  
event object 102, 106  
    event.focus 100  
    event.height 100  
    event.keysym 100  
    event.keysym\_num 100  
    event.num 100  
    event.send\_event 100  
    event.serial 100  
    event.time 100  
    event.type 100  
    event.widget 100, 106  
    event.width 100  
    event.x 100  
    event.x\_root 100  
    event.y 100  
    event.y\_root 100  
    focus 101  
    send\_event 101  
event propagation 97, 106  
event queue 96  
event storm 107  
event type 97, 101, 618  
    Activate 618  
    Button 618  
    ButtonPress 618  
    ButtonRelease 618  
    Deactivate 618  
    Enter 618  
    FocusIn 618  
    FocusOut 618  
    Key 618  
    KeyPress 618  
    Leave 618  
    Map 618  
    Motion 618  
    Unmap 618  
event.focus 100  
event.height 100  
event.keysym 100, 106  
event.keysym\_num 100  
event.num 100  
event.send\_event 100  
event.serial 100  
event.time 100

event.type 100  
event.widget 100, 106, 118  
event.width 100  
event.x 100, 193  
event.x\_root 100  
event.y 100, 193  
event.y\_root 100  
event\_add 435  
event\_delete 435  
event\_generate 435  
event\_info 435  
event-mechanism 95  
events and keysyms 617–620  
exceptions 23, 26, 356  
    mechanism 23  
        NotImplementedError 127  
exec 21, 25, 26, 168, 173, 215  
expand 82, 84, 87, 124, 511  
exportfile 602  
exportselection 486, 498, 529  
exposure events 98  
extending Python 313–328  
extension libraries 375  
extension module 229  
extent 290, 468  
extravalidators 560

## F

fg 426  
file 452, 463, 513  
    reading 190  
File menu 148  
fill 80, 82, 83, 84, 124, 249,  
    281, 511  
    transparent 235  
fill color 244  
filter 96, 356, 357  
find\_above 461  
find\_all 461  
find\_below 461  
find\_closest 240, 461  
find\_enclosed 461  
find\_overlapping 461  
find\_withtag 234, 253, 256,  
    461

flash 455, 484, 521  
FLAT 33  
fliparrow 549  
float 293  
floating-point operations 359  
flushing the event queue 125  
focus 101, 114, 303, 305, 461  
focus events 98  
focus window 98  
focus\_displayof 435  
focus\_force 436  
focus\_get 436  
focus\_lastfor 436  
focus\_set 100, 106, 159, 193,  
    303, 436  
FocusIn 98, 99, 209, 618  
focusmodel 447  
FocusOut 98, 99, 116, 209,  
    618  
font class 489  
    actual 490  
    cget 490  
    configure 490  
    copy 490  
    families 491  
    family 489  
    font 489  
    measure 490  
    metrics 491  
    names 491  
    overstrike 489  
    size 489  
    slant 490  
    underline 490  
    weight 490  
font descriptors 47  
font family 47, 489  
font methods 423  
font options 422  
fontmap 464  
fonts 16, 203, 422, 426, 479,  
    489  
    encoding 48  
    family 47  
    pointSize 48  
sans serif 340, 343  
serif 343  
setting a font 47  
slant 48  
    weight 48  
fonts and colors 47  
foreground 426, 439  
forget 185, 187  
format 513, 515  
format strings 321  
forms 140–198  
    designing effective  
    forms 140  
fractals 271  
fraction 527  
Frame 20, 21, 33, 491  
    class 492  
    colormap 492  
    container 492  
    master 33  
    shared options 491  
    widget 407  
    widget standard  
        options 407  
    widget-specific  
        options 408  
    visual 492  
frame 20, 447, 547, 555, 590,  
    597, 608  
freehand curves 244  
freeze 379  
from 523  
from\_coords 515  
front panel 199  
    making  
        measurements 202  
FTP 297  
function 10

## G

gamma 513  
garbage collection 218  
generalized class 11  
generating random  
    numbers 109

geometry 81, 93, 150, 156,  
   307, 308, 447  
 geometry management 78,  
   420  
 geometry manager 33, 77, 307  
   Grid 86, 492  
   grid 116  
   Pack 511  
   Packer 79  
   Place 516  
   Placer 90  
 geometry methods 307  
 get 118, 152, 487, 499, 514,  
   524, 527, 533, 550, 585,  
   600, 602  
 getattr 217  
 getboolean 436  
 getcurselection 579, 591, 600  
 getint 609  
 getPage 583  
 getstring 609  
 gettags 234, 253, 462  
 getting optimum  
   performance 311  
 getvar 436  
 ghosting 257  
 GIF 208, 215, 220  
 global data 9  
 global data space 361  
 grab 97  
 grab handles 258, 262, 267  
 grab\_current 436  
 grab\_release 436  
 grab\_set 436  
 grab\_set\_global 436  
 grab\_status 437  
 graph widget 279  
 graphic selection 194  
 graphs 276  
   bargraphs 286  
   cubic splines 281  
   drawing axes 277  
   fit to scale 282  
   pie charts 289  
   smoothing lines 279  
 strip charts 296  
 3-dimensional 292  
 threshholds 298  
 Gravity 98  
 Grid 77, 78, 86, 308, 492  
   column 86, 493  
   columnspan 89, 493  
   grid 494  
   grid\_bbox 494  
   grid\_columnconfigure  
     494  
   grid\_configure 494  
   grid\_forget 494  
   grid\_info 495  
   grid\_location 495  
   grid\_propagate 495  
   grid\_remove 495  
   grid\_rowconfigure 495  
   grid\_size 495  
   grid\_slaves 495  
 GROOVE 33  
 groove 342  
 Group 57, 564  
   components 564  
   groupchildsite 564  
   hull 565  
   interior 565  
   methods 565  
   options 564  
   ring 565  
   tag 565  
 group 448  
 groupchildsite 564  
 GUI  
   color scheme 338  
   designing effective  
     interfaces 338  
   ergonomics 338  
   font selection 338  
   interface design 339  
   layout 77  
   screen 77  
 GUI toolkit 12  
 GUIAppD xvii

## H

handling multiple  
   bindings 106  
 handshaking 231  
 HAVE\_CONFIG\_H 318  
 height 429, 453, 464, 514,  
   517  
 “Hello World” 18  
 helpmessage 575  
 hex nut 131

hexadecimalvalidator 563  
hierarchical packing 84  
highlight color 214  
highlightbackground 426, 439  
highlightcolor 426, 439  
highlightthickness 100, 170, 302, 303, 426  
high-speed serial 200  
histograms 276, 286  
history 549  
horizflex 596  
horizfraction 596  
horizontal scroll bar 151  
horizscrollbar 593, 597, 599, 601  
hotkey 148  
hourentryfield 608  
hscrollmode 592, 596, 598, 601  
hull 26, 544, 545, 547, 550, 552, 555, 557, 559, 563, 565, 566, 570, 572, 575, 577, 579, 581, 583, 585, 589, 590, 593, 595, 597, 599, 602, 604, 606, 608  
hull\_borderwidth 239  
hull\_height 150  
hull\_relief 239  
hull\_width 150  
hulldestroyed 568  
Human Factor  
Engineering 342  
human factors 342  
using dialogs 144

**I**

ibnd  
instance level 105  
ICCCM 309  
icon 176, 307, 308, 544, 577  
bitmap 309  
color bitmap 309  
name 309  
position 309

icon methods 309  
iconbitmap 309, 448  
iconbox 309  
iconic 308  
iconic button 247  
iconify 308  
iconify windows 308  
iconmargin 543, 576  
iconmask 448  
iconname 22, 309, 448  
iconpos 543, 576  
iconposition 309, 448  
iconwindow 309, 449  
icursor 462, 487  
IDE 336  
identify 525, 527  
IDLE 329, 336  
if-elif-else 127, 129  
Image 88, 91, 93, 176  
class 416  
options 389  
methods 416  
image 90, 429, 471  
bitmap 208  
BMP 182, 208  
determining the size of an image 194  
editor 86, 87  
GIF 182, 208  
JPEG 182  
JPG 182  
maps 191–198, 305  
overlay 215, 220  
overlay techniques 233  
PPM 182  
ray-traced 232  
three-dimensional 232  
image\_cget 533  
image\_configure 533  
image\_create 44  
image\_names 437, 533  
image\_types 437  
ImageDraw 272  
ImageEnhance 88  
ImageTk 88, 91, 93, 176

import 353  
importfile 602  
in\_ 493, 511, 517  
increment 554, 556, 609  
indentation 331  
index 178, 462, 487, 499, 504, 533, 548, 579, 585, 591  
indexentry 558, 589  
indexing lists 6  
indicatoron 38, 483, 508, 520  
indicators 201  
inheritance 11  
inherited classes 10  
inherited methods 15, 139, 433  
\_\_init\_\_ 10, 11  
initialise 112, 148, 581  
initialiseoptions 76, 568  
initialitem 584  
initialization 352  
initializing an instance 10  
initializing colors 157  
initializing dictionaries 8  
initializing fonts 157  
initializing lists 5  
initializing Tk 158  
initializing tuples 7  
INITOPT 75, 156  
initwait 545, 554, 607  
insert 118, 189, 462, 487, 499, 533, 548, 579, 587  
insert\_cascade 504  
insert\_checkbutton 504  
insert\_command 504  
insert\_radiobutton 504  
insert\_separator 504  
insertbackground 439, 457, 486, 529  
insertborderwidth 457, 486, 529  
insertentry 558, 589  
insertofftime 457, 486, 529  
insertontime 457, 486, 529

insertwidth 457, 486, 530  
 installation tools 184  
 InstallShield 376  
 instance 9, 10, 351  
 instance level event 105  
 instance variable 10  
 int 273  
 integervalidator 563  
 interior 75, 163, 559, 565,  
     566, 569, 581, 594, 598  
 Internet addresses 117  
 interpreter 27, 103  
 IntVar 103, 152, 160  
 invalidcommand 561  
 invariant subexpression 351  
 invoke 41, 240, 455, 484,  
     505, 521, 548, 551, 559,  
     564, 585, 591, 609  
 ipadx 185, 493, 512  
 ipady 185, 493, 512  
 isinitoption 569  
 itemcget 209, 214, 234, 462  
 itemconfig 124, 234  
 itemconfigure 462, 469, 471,  
     472, 474, 475, 477, 478,  
     480, 481  
 items 584, 598  
 iterating through dictionary  
     entries 8  
 iterating through members 6, 7

**J**

joinstyle 473  
 jump 526  
 justify 429, 479

**K**

Key 99, 618  
 keybindings 307  
 keyboard events 97, 300, 301  
 keyboard focus 300, 303, 307  
 KeyPress 97, 99, 101, 247, 618  
 KeyPress-space 209  
 KeyRelease 97, 101, 247

KeyRelease-backslash 99  
 keys 269, 437  
 keystroke 114  
 keysyms 104, 106, 619  
 keyword 23  
 keyword arguments 15  
 keyword option 383  
 \*\*kw 104

**L**

Label 21, 35, 86, 309, 495  
     shared options 496  
     widget 408  
     widget standard  
         options 408  
 label 523, 546, 547, 550, 555,  
     563, 566, 575, 585, 591,  
     593, 595, 597, 599, 602,  
     608  
 labelchildsite 566  
 LabeledWidget 58, 565  
     components 566  
     hull 566  
     interior 566  
     label 566  
     labelchildsite 566  
     methods 566  
     options 565  
 labelmargin 142, 547, 549,  
     554, 561, 565, 574, 584,  
     590, 592, 594, 596, 599,  
     601, 607  
 labelpos 142, 547, 550, 554,  
     561, 566, 574, 584, 590,  
     592, 594, 596, 599, 601,  
     607  
 lambda 20, 25, 26, 91, 103  
     avoiding lambda  
         expressions 103  
     definition 103  
     expressions 103  
     function 106  
     when to use 103  
 layout 77  
     calculating positions 92

centering a widget 91  
 geometry management 78  
 introduction 77  
 negotiation 78  
 positioning a window outside the master 92  
 positioning widgets 90  
 tab groups 301  
 Leave 99, 245, 618  
 LeaveNotify 97  
 LED 120, 200  
 length 523  
 lib-dynload 319  
 lift 240, 242, 248, 309, 310,  
     581  
 Light Emitting Diode 120  
 line cards 199  
 line options 390  
 line segments 250  
 Listbox 45, 497  
     activate 499  
     bbox 499  
     curselection 499  
     delete 499  
     exportselection 498  
     get 499  
     index 499  
     indices 396  
     insert 499  
     nearest 499  
     scan\_dragto 500  
     scan\_mark 500  
     see 500  
     selection\_anchor 500  
     selection\_clear 500  
     selection\_includes 500  
     selection\_set 500  
     selectmode 498  
     setgrid 498  
     shared options 497  
     size 500  
     widget 395–397  
     widget methods 396  
     widget standard  
         options 395

Listbox (continued)

- widget-specific
  - options 396
- xview\_moveto 500
- xview\_scroll 500
- yscrollcommand 498
- yview\_moveto 501
- yview\_scroll 501

listbox 599

listheight 550

lists 5

- appending 5
- concatenating 6
- deleting a member 7
- indexing 6
- initializing 5
- inserting a member 7
- iterating through
  - members 6
- membership 6
- modifying members 6
- sorting and reversing 6

local variable 10, 138, 351, 355

Lock 617

lower 310, 437

lowercommand 578

**M**

MacOS 616

main thread 365

main toplevel 32

mainCanvas 583

mainloop 14, 96, 329, 437

make 316, 611, 612, 613

Mandelbrot 271

map 98, 99, 356, 618

mapping

- additional Menu
  - options 399
- Arc options 388
- Base text indices 401
- Bind and event
  - methods 420
- binding events 420

bitmap image type 416

Bitmap options 389, 416

Button widget standard
 

- options 405

Button widget-specific
 

- options 405

Canvas item types 388

Canvas methods 386

Canvas postscript
 

- options 393

Canvas widget standard
 

- options 385

Canvas widget-specific
 

- options 386

Checkbutton
 

- methods 407

Checkbutton widget standard options 406

Checkbutton widget-specific options 407

create arc 388

create bitmap 389

create image 389

create line 390

create oval 390

create polygon 391

create rectangle 391

create text 392

create window 392

Entry indices 394

Entry types 398

Entry widget
 

- methods 395

Entry widget standard
 

- options 393

Entry widget-specific
 

- options 394

font methods 423

Font options 422

Frame widget standard
 

- options 407

Frame widget-specific
 

- options 408

grid command 421

Grid methods 422

Grid options 421

Image methods 416

Image options 389

Label widget standard
 

- options 408

line options 390

Listbox indices 396

Listbox widget
 

- methods 396

Listbox widget standard
 

- options 395

Listbox widget-specific
 

- options 396

Menu indices 398

Menu widget
 

- methods 398

Menu widget specific
 

- options 398

Menu widget standard
 

- options 397

Menubutton widget standard options 409

Menubutton widget-specific options 410

Message widget standard
 

- options 410

Message widget-specific options 411

Oval options 390

Pack methods 420

PhotoImage methods 417

PhotoImage options 416

PhotoImage type 416

place command 420

place methods 421

Place options 420

Polygon options 391

Radiobutton widget
 

- methods 412

Radiobutton widget standard options 411

Radiobutton widget-specific options 412

Rectangle options 391

Scale widget methods 414

Scale widget standard  
     options 412  
 Scale widget-specific  
     options 413  
 Scrollbar widget  
     methods 415  
 Scrollbar widget standard  
     options 414  
 Scrollbar widget-specific  
     options 414  
 standard widget  
     options 384  
 Text embedded image  
     options 403  
 Text embedded window  
     options 403  
 Text index modifiers 402  
 Text options 392  
 Text tag specific  
     options 402  
 Text tag standard  
     options 402  
 Text widget methods 403  
 Text widget specific  
     options 401  
 Text widget standard  
     options 400  
 Tk special variables 385  
 Toplevel widget standard  
     options 415  
 Toplevel widget-specific  
     options 415  
     virtual events 420  
 Window options 392  
 Winfo methods 417  
     wm operations 419  
 mapping class 5  
 mapping Tcl/Tk to  
     Tkinter 14  
 mapping Tk to Tkinter 383  
 mark\_gravity 534  
 mark\_names 534  
 mark\_set 534  
 mark\_unset 534  
 marshal.dump 270  
 marshal.load 269  
 marshaled data 271  
 mask  
     stipple 244  
 maskdata 452  
 maskfile 452  
 master 33  
 master widget 15, 78, 79  
 master window 93  
 matrix operations 359  
 max 248, 265, 586, 607  
 maximum 308  
 maxsize 308, 449  
 measure 490  
 MegaArchetype 566  
     addoptions 567  
     cget 567  
     component 567  
     componentaliases 567  
     componentgroup 567  
     configure 567  
     createcomponent 568  
     createlabel 568  
     destroycomponent 568  
     hulldestroyed 568  
     initialiseoptions 568  
     interior 569  
     isinitoption 569  
     methods 567  
     options 569  
 MegaBar  
     addcascademenu 572  
     addmenu 573  
     addmenuitem 573  
     components 572  
     deletemenu 573  
     deletemenuitems 573  
     disableall 573  
     enableall 573  
     hull 572  
     methods 572  
 MegaToplevel 569  
     activate 570  
     components 570  
     hull 570  
 methods 570  
 options 570  
 MegaWidget 136, 156, 157, 571  
     components 571  
     methods 571  
 member  
     creating dynamically 9  
 membership of a list 6  
 Menu 39, 501  
     activeborderwidth 502  
     add\_cascade 503  
     add\_checkbutton 503  
     add\_command 503  
     add\_radiobutton 503  
     add\_separator 503  
     button commands 39  
     cascade 40  
     checkbuttons 41  
     delete 503  
     entrycget 504  
     entryconfigure 504  
     index 504  
     indices 398  
     insert\_cascade 504  
     insert\_checkbutton 504  
     insert\_command 504  
     insert\_radiobutton 504  
     insert\_separator 504  
     invoke 505  
     post 505  
     postcommand 502  
     Radiobutton 41  
     selectcolor 502  
     shared options 501  
     tearoff 502  
     tearoffcommand 503  
     title 503  
     tk\_bindForTraversal 505  
     tk\_firstMenu 505  
     tk\_invokeMenu 505  
     tk\_mbPost 505  
     tk\_mbUnpost 505  
     tk\_nextMenu 505  
     tk\_nextMenuEntry 505  
     tk\_popup 505

**Menu (continued)**  
 tk\_traverseToMenu 505  
 type 503, 505  
 unpost 506  
 widget 397  
 widget methods 398  
 widget specific  
     options 398  
 widget standard  
     options 397  
 yposition 506  
 menu 508, 540, 585  
**MenuBar** 59, 147, 148, 572  
     options 572  
**Menubutton** 506  
 cget 508  
 configure 508  
 direction 508  
 indicatoron 508  
 menu 508  
 menubutton 508  
 shared options 507  
 widget 409  
 widget standard  
     options 409  
 widget-specific  
     options 410  
**Message** 42, 508  
     aspect 510  
 cget 510  
 configure 510  
 message 510  
 shared options 509  
 widget 410  
 widget standard  
     options 410  
 widget-specific  
     options 411  
 message 96, 510, 544, 575,  
     577  
**MessageBar** 59, 147, 148,  
     161, 574  
     buttonbox 577  
     components 575, 577  
     dialogchldsite 577  
     entry 575  
     helpmessage 575  
     hull 575, 577  
     icon 577  
     label 575  
     message 575, 577  
     methods 575  
     options 574  
     resetmessages 575  
     separator 577  
**MessageDialog** 61, 576  
     options 576  
**messagetypes** 574  
**Microsoft Visual C++** 614,  
     615  
**min** 295, 586, 607  
**minimum** 308  
**minsize** 308, 449, 493  
**minuteentryfield** 608  
**mixin** 126, 129, 139  
 **mixin classes** 11  
**modal dialog** 141  
**modifiedcommand** 150, 561  
**modifier** 98, 617  
**modifier keys** 97  
**modifying dictionaries** 8  
**modifying members of a list** 6  
**modifying tuples** 7  
**module**  
     Tkinter 12  
**module references** 354  
**Monty Python's Flying  
Circus** 4  
**Motif** 13, 301, 303, 306, 341  
**Motion** 618  
**motion events** 102, 242  
**MotionNotify** 97  
**mounting screws** 201  
**mouse** 242, 301, 352  
**mouse bindings** 307  
**mouse click** 97  
**mouse drag** 243, 352  
**mouse events** 241  
**mouse movement** 268  
**mouse navigation** 301  
**mouseless navigation** 301  
**move** 244, 248, 260, 463  
**moving canvas objects** 243  
**multiple callbacks** 106  
**multiple display devices** 310  
**multiple inheritance** 11, 21,  
     139  
**multiple tasks** 361  
**mutex** 365  
**mutual exclusion locks (See  
    mutex)**  
**mwm** 306

## N

**name mangling** 11  
**named argument** 10  
**names** 491  
**namespace** 11, 27  
     variables 27  
**nametowidget** 437  
**native widgets** 13  
**navigation** 184, 300, 307,  
     347  
     explicit 300  
     image maps 305  
     models 300  
     mouse 301  
     mouseless 301  
     pointer 300  
     traversal 303  
     using the TAB key 214  
**navigation models** 300  
**nbframe** 581  
**nearest** 499  
**negotiation** 78  
**negotiation process** 78  
**nmake** 615  
**normal** 308  
**NoteBook** 63, 578  
     add 579  
     adding pages 174  
     components 579  
     delete 579  
     getcurselection 579  
     hull 579

index 579  
insert 579  
methods 579  
options 578  
page 579  
pagenames 579  
selectpage 580  
setnaturalpagesize 580  
tab 580  
notebook  
    adding pages 174  
NoteBookR 61, 172, 173,  
    580  
    add 581  
    components 581  
    hull 581  
    initialise 581  
    interior 581  
    lift 581  
    methods 581  
    nbframe 581  
    options 580  
    pagecget 581  
    pageconfigure 581  
    pages 581  
    raised 581  
    tkdelete 581  
    tkraise 581  
NoteBookS 62, 173, 582  
    addPage 583  
    components 583  
    containerCanvas 583  
    delPage 583  
    getPage 583  
    hull 583  
    mainCanvas 583  
    methods 583  
    options 582  
    pageNames 583  
    pages 583  
    raised 584  
    raisePage 583  
    reBind 584  
    tabCanvas 583  
    unBind 584

notifications 96  
NotImplementedError 127  
numbuttons 548, 591  
numeric keypad 347  
numericvalidator 563  
NumPy 279

**O**

object  
    behavior 9  
    grab handles 258  
    inheritance 9  
object descriptions 9  
Object-Oriented Analysis and  
    Design (See OOAD)  
object-oriented interfaces 14  
Object-Oriented Program-  
    ming (See OOP)  
offsetY 582  
offvalue 483  
onvalue 483  
OOAD 120  
OOP 9, 29, 120  
open file 193  
OpenView 306  
operator.add 357  
optimized bytecode 350  
option\_add 89, 112, 113,  
    157, 437  
option\_clear 437  
option\_get 437  
option\_readfile 49, 438  
OptionMenu 64, 510, 511,  
    584  
    components 585  
    get 585  
    hull 585  
    index 585  
    invoke 585  
    label 585  
    menu 585  
    menubutton 585  
    methods 585  
    OptionMenu 511

options 584  
setitems 585  
options 569  
ordered access 184  
orient 252, 523, 526, 547,  
    554, 586, 590  
os.listdir 91, 181  
os.path.join 179, 181  
os.path.splitext 193  
os.unlink 273  
Ousterhout, John 12, 79  
outline 203, 244, 249, 281,  
    468, 475, 476, 478  
outlinestipple 468  
oval options 390  
overlay  
    image 215, 220  
overlay techniques 233  
overridredirect 32, 449  
overstrike 489  
ovwm 306

**P**

pack 15, 20, 77, 187, 308,  
    340, 511, 512  
    after 511  
    before 511  
    command 420  
    expand 511  
    fill 511  
    in\_ 511  
    ipadx 512  
    ipady 512  
    methods 420  
    pack 512  
    pack\_forget 512  
    pack\_info 512  
    pack\_propagate 512  
    pack\_slaves 512  
    padx 512  
    pady 512  
    side 512  
pack\_forget 512  
pack\_info 512  
pack\_propagate 512

pack\_slaves 512  
 Packer 78, 79, 86, 92
 

- anchor 84
- columns 85
- expand 82
- fill 80, 82
- hierarchical approach 86
- operation 79
- packing list 79
- pad 79, 84
- padx 84
- pady 84
- parcel 79
- side 79

 packer 15  
 packing list 79, 80  
 pad 493  
 padx 84, 430, 493, 512, 547, 554, 590, 607  
 pady 84, 430, 493, 512, 547, 554, 590, 607  
 page 579  
 pageanchor 464  
 pagecget 581  
 pageconfigure 581  
 pageheight 464  
 pagemargin 578  
 pageNames 583  
 pagenames 579  
 pages 581, 583  
 pagewidth 464  
 pagex 464  
 pagey 464  
 palette 514
 

- activeBackground 439
- activeForeground 439
- background 439
- disabledForeground 439
- foreground 439
- highlightBackground 439
- highlightColor 439
- insertBackground 439
- selectBackground 439
- selectColor 439
- selectForeground 439

 troughColor 439  
 pane options 586  
 PanedWidget 65, 181, 586
 

- add 587
- components 587
- configurepane 587
- insert 587
- max 586
- methods 587
- min 586
- options 586
- pane 587
- Pane options 586
- panes 587
- remove 587
- size 586

 panel devices 201  
 parallel tasks 361  
 parcel 79, 84  
 parent widget 78  
 parity 230  
 pdb 336  
 performance 107
 

- byte code 349
- compiled C++ 348
- effect of event mechanism 107
- effect of validating data 114, 119
- filter 356
- initializing applications 352
- map 356
- optimizer 350
- optimizing code 126
- optimizing widget creation 207
- profiling 357
- program organization 349
- programming for performance 348
- Python extensions 359
- reduce 356
- throttling events 352
- Tkinter 350

 update rate 109  
 performance problems 102  
 Persistence of Vision 232  
 PhotoImage 88, 89, 91, 150, 175, 179, 184, 192, 245, 512, 514  
 blank 514  
 cget 514  
 configure 514  
 copy 514  
 data 513  
 file 513  
 format 513  
 gamma 513  
 get 514  
 height 514  
 methods 417  
 options 416  
 palette 514  
 put 515  
 shared options 513  
 subsample 515  
 type 416, 515  
 width 515  
 write 515
 

- format 515
- from\_coords 515
- zoom 515

 photo-realism 338  
 pie charts 276, 289  
 pieslice 290  
 PIL 89, 91, 175, 271
 

- Image 88
- ImageEnhance 88
- ImageTk 88

 pixel 273  
 place 77, 516, 518
 

- anchor 168, 516
- bordermode 516
- height 517
- in\_ 517
- place 518
- place\_forget 518
- place\_info 518
- place\_slaves 518

relheight 517  
 relwidth 517  
 relx 168, 517  
 rely 168, 517  
 width 518  
 x 518  
 y 518  
 place command 420  
 place methods 421  
 place options 420  
 place\_forget 176, 518  
 place\_info 518  
 place\_slaves 518  
 Placer 78, 90, 93  
 Pmw xvii, 15, 21, 29, 31, 49,  
     141, 375, 376  
 AboutDialog 50, 147,  
     159, 542  
 AboutDialog options 543  
 activatecommand 543,  
     545, 551, 556, 558, 576,  
     588, 603, 605  
 activeColor 582  
 aligning labels 113  
 alphabeticvalidator 563  
 alphanumericvalidator 563  
 applicationname 543  
 autoclear 549  
 autorepeat 553, 607  
 Balloon 50, 147  
 borderframe 592, 601  
 borderwidth 578  
 borderx 543, 551, 556,  
     576, 588, 603, 605  
 bordery 543, 551, 556,  
     576, 588, 603, 605  
 buttonaspect 549, 553, 607  
 ButtonBox 51, 161, 546  
 ButtonBox options 547  
 buttonboxpos 543, 551,  
     556, 558, 576, 588, 603,  
     605  
 buttons 543, 551, 556,  
     558, 576, 588, 603, 605  
 buttontype 590  
 canvasColor 582  
 canvasHeight 582  
 canvasMargin 592  
 canvasWidth 582  
 color 290  
 ComboBox 52, 153, 340,  
     549  
 ComboBox options 549  
 ComboBoxDialog 53, 551  
 ComboBoxDialog  
     options 551  
 command 543, 552, 556,  
     558, 560, 576, 584, 586,  
     588, 590, 603, 605  
 Counter 54, 553  
 Counter options 553  
 CounterDialog 55, 556  
 CounterDialog  
     options 556  
 createcommand 578  
 creating a ButtonBox  
     component 162  
 creating a Frame  
     component 162  
 creating a Label  
     component 164  
 creating a text widget 189  
 creating components 160  
 creating new  
     megawidgets 73  
 data validation 114  
 datatype 553  
 datevalidator 563  
 deactivatecommand 543,  
     545, 552, 557, 558, 576,  
     588, 603, 605  
 deactiveColor 582  
 default button 603  
 defaultbutton 543, 552,  
     557, 558, 576, 588, 606  
 Dialog 56, 558  
 Dialog options 558  
 dropdown 549  
 EntryField 56, 111, 142,  
     559  
 EntryField options 560  
 errorbackground 560  
 extravalidators 560  
 fliparrow 549  
 getting a component 113  
 Group 57, 564  
 Group options 564  
 hexadecimalvalidator 563  
 history 549  
 hscrollmode 592, 601  
 iconmargin 543, 576  
 iconpos 543, 576  
 in-built validators 114  
 increment 554  
 initialise 148  
 initialitem 584  
 INITOPT 156  
 initwait 545, 554, 607  
 integervalidator 563  
 invalidcommand 561  
 items 584  
 LabeledWidget 58, 565  
 LabeledWidget  
     options 565  
 labelmargin 547, 549,  
     554, 561, 565, 574, 584,  
     590, 592, 601, 607  
 labelpos 547, 550, 554,  
     561, 566, 574, 584, 590,  
     592, 601, 607  
 listheight 550  
 longX 582  
 longY 582  
 lowercommand 578  
 max 607  
 MegaArchetype 566  
 MegaToplevel 569  
 MegaToplevel  
     options 570  
 MegaWidget 156, 571  
 MenuBar 59, 147, 572  
 MenuBar options 572  
 MessageBar 59, 147, 161,  
     574  
 MessageBar options 574

Pmw (continued)

- MessageDialog 61, 576
- MessageDialog
  - options 576
  - messagetypes 574
  - min 607
  - modifiedcommand 561
  - NoteBook 63, 578
  - NoteBook options 578
  - NoteBookR 172, 580
  - NotebookR 61
  - NoteBookR options 580
  - NoteBookS 62, 173, 582
  - NoteBookS options 582
  - numericvalidator 563
  - offsetY 582
  - OptionMenu 64, 584
  - OptionMenu options 584
  - orient 547, 554, 586, 590
  - padx 547, 554, 590, 607
  - pady 547, 554, 590, 607
  - pagemargin 578
  - PanedWidget 65, 181, 586
  - PanedWidget options 586
  - PromptDialog 66, 587
  - PromptDialog
    - options 588
  - RadioSelect 66, 239, 589
  - RadioSelect options 590
  - raisecommand 578
  - repeatrate 554, 607
  - ScrolledCanvas 67, 592
  - ScrolledCanvas
    - options 592
  - ScrolledField 68, 594
  - ScrolledField options 594
  - ScrolledFrame 69, 595
  - ScrolledFrame
    - options 595
  - ScrolledListBox 70, 598
  - ScrolledListBox
    - options 598
  - ScrolledText 70, 149, 600
  - ScrolledText options 601
- scrollmargin 592, 601
- selectioncommand 550
- SelectionDialog 71, 603
- SelectionDialog
  - options 603
- selectmode 590
- separatorrelief 586
- separatorwidth 543, 552, 557, 558, 577, 588, 603, 606
- setting initial values 156
- shadeColor 582
- shortX 582
- shortY 582
- silent 575
- state 545
- statuscommand 545
- tabColor 582
- tabHeight 582
- tabPos 578
- tagindent1 564
- textColor 582
- TextDialog 72, 605
- TextDialog options 605
- textFont 582
- TimeCounter 73, 607
- TimeCounter options 607
- timevalidator 563
- title 543, 545, 552, 557, 559, 577, 588, 604, 606
- usehullsize 592, 601
- validate 561
- value 561, 607
- vscrollmode 593, 601
- xoffset 545
- yoffset 545
- Pmw reference 542–609
- Pmw widgets 542–609
- Pmw.Color.spectrum 290
- point 273
- pointer 300, 302
- pointer events 97
- pointer motion 97
- pointing devices 301
- pointSize 48

- polling 215
- polygon 133
- polygon options 391
- popup 550
- popup dialogs 144
- positional 10
- positionfrom 450
- positioning widgets 90
- post 505
- postcommand 502
- PostScript 244, 250, 251, 463
- POV-Ray 232, 346
- precise window placement 92
- preemption 364
- primary colors 345
- print 99
- print statements 333
- private methods 11
- private variables 11
- emulating 11
- profile 357
- profile.run 357, 358
- profiler 358
- profiling an application 357
- program organization 349
- programming for
- performance 348–360
- ProgressBar 161
- PromptDialog 66, 587
- buttonbox 588
- components 588
- deleteentry 589
- dialogchildsite 589
- entryfield 589
- hull 589
- indexentry 589
- insertentry 589
- methods 589
- options 588
- separator 589
- propagated events 106
- protocol 309, 450
- methods 309
- WM\_DELETE\_WINDOW 309

**WM\_SAVE\_YOURSELF** 309  
**WM\_TAKE\_FOCUS** 309  
 protocol methods 309  
 protocols 309  
 prototypes 13, 343  
 public methods 11  
 public variable 11  
 put 515  
 putpalette 273  
 Py 315  
 Py\_BuildValue 315  
 Py\_Initialize 325, 326  
 Py\_InitModule 315, 316  
 PyArg\_ParseTuple 315, 319,  
     321, 327  
 PyDict\_GetItemString 327  
 PyErr\_SetString 320  
 PyExc\_TypeError 320  
 PyFloat\_AsDouble 320  
 PyFloatObject 320  
 PyImport\_ImportModule  
     326, 327  
 PyList\_Check 320  
 PyList\_GetItem 320  
 PyList\_Size 320  
 PyMethodDef 315  
 PyObject 315, 320  
 PyObject\_CallMethod 326,  
     327  
 PyObject\_GetAttrString 326  
 PyRun\_SimpleFile 325  
 PyRun\_SimpleString 325  
 Python 374  
     \_\_tkinter 12  
     API 314, 315  
     binary distribution 611  
     building extensions 316  
     building Tkinter 612  
     embedding Python 313  
     embedding the  
         interpreter 325  
     environment 375  
     environment variables 613  
     exceptions 356

extending in C/C++ 313  
 extensions 359  
 features 4  
 format strings 321  
 generating code 195  
 install directory 612  
 interactive session 27  
 Modules/Setup 612  
 Python.h 314  
 reducing code  
     complexity 126  
 reference count 324  
 source 610  
 Tkinter 12  
 unpacking tuples 212  
 user environment 376  
 writing extension  
     modules 313

Python Imaging Library 89  
 Python MegaWidgets (See  
     Pmw) 29  
 python.exe 374  
 Python.h 314, 318  
 PYTHONPATH 319, 378  
 PyTuple\_Check 327

**Q**

qualifier 98, 619  
 quit 438

**R**

Radiobutton 37, 519  
     deselect 521  
     flash 521  
     indicatoron 38, 520  
     invoke 521  
     select 522  
     selectcolor 521  
     shared options 520  
     value 521  
     variable 521

Radiobutton widget 411  
 Radiobutton widget  
     methods 412

Radiobutton widget standard  
     options 411  
 Radiobutton widget-specific  
     options 412  
 RadioSelect 66, 88, 89, 239,  
     241, 589  
     add 591  
     components 590  
     deleteall 591  
     frame 590  
     getcurselection 591  
     hull 590  
     index 591  
     invoke 591  
     label 591  
     methods 591  
     numbuttons 591  
     options 590  
 raise 242  
 raisecommand 578  
 RAISED 33  
 raised 581, 584  
 raisePage 583  
 random.choice 109  
 ray tracing 232  
 ray-traced 233  
 ray-traced image 305  
 read 193  
 realvalidator 563  
 reBind 584  
 recolorborders 580  
 rectangle options 391  
 reduce 356, 357  
 reference counts 324  
 refresh 245  
 region  
     caching locations 198  
 registering events 97  
 relative placement 91  
 relative placing 92  
 relative positioning 201  
 Release 319  
 relheight 517  
 relief 203, 341, 427  
     FLAT 33

relief (continued)  
  GROOVE 33  
  RAISED 33  
  RIDGE 33  
  SOLID 33  
  SUNKEN 33  
relwidth 517  
relx 168, 205, 517  
rely 168, 205, 517  
remove 176, 587  
reparent 98  
repeatdelay 523, 526  
repeatinterval 524, 527  
repeatrate 554, 607  
reposition 598  
resetmessages 575  
resizable 308, 450  
resize behavior 307  
resizescrollregion 594  
resolution 524  
Return 116  
reverse video 107, 345,  
  346  
reverse-lookup 264  
RGB values 48  
RIDGE 33  
ring 565  
ripple 154, 352  
ripple callback 154  
root window 97  
rotate 464  
row 79, 87, 116, 117, 301,  
  493  
rowconfigure 252  
rowspan 89, 494  
rubber lines 237

## S

sans serif font 340, 343  
Scale 46, 109, 110, 522  
  bigincrement 523  
  coords 524  
  digits 523  
  from 523

get 524  
identify 525  
label 523  
length 523  
orient 523  
repeatdelay 523  
repeatinterval 524  
resolution 524  
set 525  
shared options 522  
showvalue 524  
sliderlength 524  
sliderrelief 524  
tickinterval 524  
to 524  
troughcolor 524  
variable 524  
scale 465  
Scale widget 412  
Scale widget methods 414  
Scale widget standard  
  options 412  
Scale widget-specific  
  options 413  
scaling images 90  
scan\_dragto 252, 253, 465,  
  487, 500, 534  
scan\_mark 252, 253, 465,  
  487, 500, 534  
scrapbook 90  
screen 310, 540  
screen layout 77  
screen resolution 343, 346  
Scriptics Corporation 13  
scripts 13  
Scrollbar 45, 252, 525  
  activate 527  
  active relief 526  
  delta 527  
  element border width 526  
  fraction 527  
  get 527  
  identify 527  
  jump 526  
  orient 526  
repeatdelay 526  
repeatinterval 527  
set 527  
shared options 525  
troughcolor 527  
widget 414  
widget methods 415  
widget standard  
  options 414  
widget-specific  
  options 414  
scrollbar 251  
  adding dynamically 151  
  orient 252  
  xview 252  
scrolled widgets 346  
ScrolledCanvas 67, 592  
  bbox 593  
  borderframe 593  
  canvas 593  
  components 593  
  horizscrollbar 593  
  hull 593  
  interior 594  
  label 593  
  methods 593  
  options 592  
  resizescrollregion 594  
  vertscrollbar 593  
ScrolledField 68, 594  
  components 594  
  entry 594  
  hull 595  
  label 595  
  label margin 594  
  label pos 594  
  methods 595  
  options 594  
  text 594  
ScrolledFrame 69, 595  
  borderframe 595, 597  
  clipper 597  
  components 597  
  frame 597  
  horizflex 596

horizfraction 596  
 horizscrollbar 597  
 hscrollmode 596  
 hull 597  
 interior 598  
 label 597  
 labelmargin 596  
 labelfpos 596  
 methods 598  
 options 595  
 reposition 598  
 scrollmargin 596  
 usehullsize 596  
 vertflex 596  
 vertfraction 597  
 vertscrollbar 597  
 vscrollmode 597  
**ScrolledListBox** 70, 598  
 bbox 600  
 components 599  
 dblclickcommand 598  
 get 600  
 getcurselection 600  
 horizscrollbar 599  
 hscrollmode 598  
 hull 599  
 items 598  
 label 599  
 labelmargin 599  
 labelfpos 599  
 listbox 599  
 methods 600  
 options 598  
 scrollmargin 599  
 selectioncommand 599  
 setlist 600  
 size 600  
 usehullsize 599  
 verscrollbar 600  
 vscrollmode 599  
**ScrolledText** 23, 24, 70, 149,  
 150, 151, 600  
 bbox 602  
 borderframe 601  
 clear 602  
 components 601  
 exportfile 602  
 get 602  
 horizscrollbar 601  
 hull 602  
 importfile 602  
 label 602  
 methods 602  
 options 601  
 settext 602  
 text 602  
 vertscrollbar 602  
 scrollmargin 592, 596, 599,  
 601  
 scrollregion 252, 457  
 search algorithm 262  
 secondentryfield 608  
 segmentation violation 325  
 select 372, 484, 522  
 select\_adjust 465  
 select\_clear 465  
 select\_from 465  
 select\_item 465  
 select\_to 466  
 selectbackground 175, 430,  
 439  
 selectborderwidth 175, 430  
 selectColor 439  
 selectcolor 483, 502, 521  
 selectforeground 175, 430,  
 439  
 selectimage 483, 521  
 selection\_adjust 488  
 selection\_anchor 500  
 selection\_clear 438, 488, 500  
 selection\_from 488  
 selection\_get 438  
 selection\_handle 438  
 selection\_includes 500  
 selection\_own 438  
 selection\_own\_get 438  
 selection\_present 488  
 selection\_range 193, 488  
 selection\_set 500  
 selection\_to 488  
 selectioncommand 154, 550,  
 599  
**SelectionDialog** 71, 603  
 buttonbox 604  
 components 604  
 dialogchildsite 604  
 hull 604  
 options 603  
 separator 604  
 selectitem 88, 153, 551  
 selectmode 498, 590  
 selectpage 580  
 self 10  
 semaphore 365  
 send 438  
 send\_event 101  
 separator 544, 552, 557, 559,  
 577, 589, 604, 606  
 separatorrelief 586  
 separatorwidth 543, 552,  
 557, 558, 577, 588, 603,  
 606  
 sequence classes 5  
 serial communications 221  
 serial protocol 223, 230  
 serif fonts 343  
 server 363  
 set 109, 152, 525, 527  
 setattr 133, 217  
 setdefault 548  
 setentry 564  
 setgrid 498, 530  
 setink 273  
 setitems 585  
 setlist 153, 600  
 setnaturalpagesize 580  
 settext 602  
 setting application-wide  
     attributes 49  
 setting the order in tab  
     group 303  
 setvar 439  
 shadeColor 582  
 shared-object files 374  
 Shift 617

show 487  
 showerror 141, 143, 145  
 showinfo 141, 143  
 showstatus 546  
 showvalue 524  
 showwarning 141, 143  
 side 79, 80, 81, 82, 85, 512  
 silent 575  
 simple graphs 276  
 single-shot forms 146  
 single-step 329  
 siomodule 229  
 size 489, 500, 551, 586, 600  
 size considerations 346  
 sizefrom 450  
 slant 48, 490  
 slave widget 78, 79  
 sliderlength 524  
 sliderrelief 524  
 smart widgets 340  
 smooth 249, 279, 281, 473,  
     476  
 smoothed curves 244  
 smoothing 250  
 snapping to a grid 257  
 SNMP 199, 347  
 SNMP poll 215  
 SNMP traps 108  
 Social Security 113  
 Social Security numbers 117  
 socket select 372  
 SOLID 33  
 sort 269  
 sorting and reversing lists 6  
 sorting dictionaries 8  
 source window 97  
 spacing1 530  
 spacing2 530  
 spacing3 530  
 spanning rows and  
     columns 87  
 special widgets 120  
 speed drawing 271  
 splinesteps 281, 473, 476  
 SqueezeTool 379  
 stack 336  
 stacking 307  
 stacking order 97  
 standard application  
     framework 155  
 standard dialogs 140, 141, 142  
 standard widget options 384  
 start 290, 368, 468  
 start\_new\_thread  
     arguments 363  
 start-up time 349  
 state 308, 431, 451, 545  
 \*static\* 316  
 statuscommand 545  
 statushelp 247  
 Stichting Mathematisch Cen-  
     trum (CWI) 4  
 sticky 87, 89, 116, 117, 145,  
     494  
 stipple 249, 256, 281, 469,  
     474, 475, 476, 478, 479  
 stipple masks 244  
 stream 372  
 stretching canvas objects 258  
 string.atof 227  
 string.split 113, 265  
 string.strip 227  
 string.upper 150  
 StringVar 20, 152, 177, 196  
 strip charts 296  
 Stuffit 616  
 style 290, 469  
 subclass 129  
 subsample 515  
 SUNKEN 33  
 superclasses 11  
 SWIG 314  
 switches 133, 138

**T**

tab 580  
 tab group 301  
     setting the order 303  
 Tab key 302  
 tabcanvas 583  
 tabcolor 582  
 tabheight 582  
 tabpos 578  
 tabs 531  
 tag 565  
     removing 134  
 tag\_add 535  
 tag\_bind 178, 233, 252, 255,  
     466, 535  
 tag\_cget 535  
 tag\_config 26  
 tag\_configure 535  
 tag\_delete 536  
 tag\_lower 466, 536  
 tag\_names 536  
 tag\_nextrange 536  
 tag\_prevrange 536  
 tag\_raise 467, 537  
 tag\_ranges 537  
 tag\_remove 537  
 tag\_unbind 467, 537  
 tagbind 546  
 tagindentl 564  
 tags 249, 469, 470, 471, 474,  
     475, 476, 478, 479, 480  
 tagunbind 546  
 takefocus 98, 100, 233, 302,  
     427  
 Tcl/Tk 12  
     binary distribution 611  
     converting to Tkinter 237  
     environment variables 613  
     library 13  
     source distribution 611  
 TCL\_LIBRARY 378  
 TCP 372  
 tearoff 502  
 tearoffcommand 503  
 telephone numbers 117  
 Text 43, 189, 190, 304, 528  
     bbox 532  
     debug 532  
     delete 532  
     dlinein 533  
     exportselection 529

embedded image 533  
  options 403  
embedded window 533  
  options 403  
get 533  
image\_cget 533  
image\_configure 533  
image\_names 533  
index 533  
index modifiers 402  
indices 401  
insert 533  
insertbackground 529  
insertborderwidth 529  
insertofftime 529  
insertontime 529  
insertwidth 530  
mark\_gravity 534  
mark\_names 534  
mark\_set 534  
mark\_unset 534  
scan\_dragto 534  
scan\_mark 534  
see 534  
setgrid 530  
shared options 528  
spacing1 530  
spacing2 530  
spacing3 530  
tabs 531  
tag specific options 402  
tag standard options 402  
tag\_add 535  
tag\_bind 535  
tag\_cget 535  
tag\_configure 535  
tag\_delete 536  
tag\_lower 536  
tag\_names 536  
tag\_nextrange 536  
tag\_prevrange 536  
tag\_ranges 537  
tag\_remove 537  
tag\_unbind 537  
tk\_textBackspace 537

tk\_textIndexCloser 537  
tk\_textResetAnchor 537  
tk\_textSelectTo 537  
widget 400  
widget methods 403  
widget specific 401  
widget standard 400  
widgets 304  
window\_cget 537  
window\_configure 537  
window\_create 538  
window\_names 538  
wrap 531  
xview\_moveto 538  
xview\_scroll 538  
yscrollcommand 532  
yview\_moveto 538  
yview\_scroll 538

text 431, 479, 594, 602  
  object 254  
  options 392  
  tag 26  
textColor 582

TextDialog 72, 605  
  buttonbox 606  
  components 606  
  dialogchildsite 606  
  hull 606  
  methods 606  
  options 605  
  scrolledtext 606  
  separator 606

textFont 582

textvariable 152, 177, 431

this 10

thread 96, 361–373  
  main thread 365  
  mutex 365  
  semaphores 365  
  updating screens 368  
  worker\_thread 366

thread.start\_new\_thread 362, 365

threading 361  
threads without GUIs 362

3-D graphs 292

threshold alarm 298

throttling events 352

thumbnail 89, 91

tickinterval 524

time.sleep 362

TimeCounter 73, 607  
  components 608  
  decrement 608  
  downhourarrow 608  
  downminutearrow 608  
  downsecondarrow 608  
  frame 608  
  getint 609  
  getstring 609  
  hourentryfield 608  
  hull 608  
  increment 609  
  invoke 609  
  label 608  
  methods 608  
  minuteentryfield 608  
  options 607  
  secondneyfield 608  
  uphourarrow 608  
  upminutearrow 608  
  upsecondarrow 608

timers and background procedures 107

timeslice 364

timestamps 334, 371

timevalidator 563

title 22, 451, 503, 543, 545, 552, 557, 559, 577, 588, 604, 606

Tk mapping 383

Tk special variables 385

Tk to Tkinter 383

Tk widgets 14

tk\_bindForTraversal 505

tk\_bisque 439

tk\_firstMenu 505

tk\_focusFollowsMouse 439

tk\_focusNext 439  
tk\_focusPrev 439  
tk\_getMenuButtons 505  
tk\_invokeMenu 505  
TK\_LIBRARY 378  
tk\_mbButtonDown 505  
tk\_mbPost 505  
tk\_mbUnpost 505  
tk\_menuBar 439  
tk\_nextMenu 505  
tk\_nextMenuEntry 505  
tk\_popup 505  
tk\_setPalette 439  
tk\_strictMotif 439  
tk\_textBackspace 537  
tk\_textIndexCloser 537  
tk\_textResetAnchor 537  
tk\_textSelectTo 537  
tk\_traverseToMenu 505  
tk\_traverseWithinMenu 505  
tkButtonDown 455  
tkButtonEnter 455  
tkButtonInvoke 455  
tkButtonLeave 455  
tkButtonUp 455  
tkdelete 581  
tkFileDialog 271  
Tkinter  
    class constructors 14  
    common options 425  
    creating large numbers of  
        widgets 125  
    creating widgets in a  
        loop 212  
    drawing polygons 132  
    environment variables 613  
    how to handle variable  
        widgets 133  
    initializing 158  
    introduction 12–17  
    performance 13  
    reference 425–541  
    strict Motif mode 301  
    variable 20  
\_tkinter 13, 15

Tkinter class hierarchy 16  
Tkinter Life Preserver xv  
Tkinter performance 350  
Tkinter widget 29, 31–76  
    Canvas 44  
    Checkbutton 38  
    Entry 37  
    Frame 33  
    Label 35  
    Listbox 45  
    Menu 39  
    Message 42  
    Radiobutton 37  
    Scale 46  
    Scrollbar 45  
    Text 43  
    Toplevel 32  
Tkinter widget  
    appearance 31  
tkMessageBox  
    askyesno 141  
    showerror 141  
    showinfo 141  
    showwarning 141  
TkPlotCanvas xvii  
tkraise 440, 581  
tkSimpleDialog 141, 142  
    askfloat 141  
    askinteger 141  
    askstring 141  
    to 524  
    toggle 484  
    toggle switch 136  
Toplevel 32, 307, 539  
    class 540  
    colormap 540  
    container 540  
    menu 540  
    screen 540  
    shared options 539  
    use 540  
    visual 541  
    widget 415  
    widget standard  
        options 415

widget-specific  
    options 415  
toplevel  
    child 32  
    main 32  
    transient 32  
    undecorated 32  
top-level shell 301  
top-level widget 78  
toplevel window level 105  
transforming colors 130  
transient 451  
transient toplevel 32  
transparent fill 235  
transparent GIF image 220  
traversal 303  
Tree 181  
tree 182  
trigonometric operations 359  
troughcolor 439, 524, 527  
try ... except 330  
tuples 5, 7  
    initializing 7  
    iterating through  
        members 7  
    modifying 7  
type 98, 453, 467, 503, 505,  
    515

## U

UART 230  
UDP 372  
UML editor 275  
unbind 104, 105, 440, 546,  
    584  
unbind\_all 440  
unbind\_class 106, 440  
undecorated 32  
underline 39, 431, 490  
unique 550  
UNIX  
    linking dynamically 317  
    linking statically 316  
UNIX CDE 344

Unmap 98, 618  
unpost 506  
unrecognized event 101  
uparrow 556  
update 440  
update\_display 169  
update\_idletasks 107, 110,  
    111, 193, 440  
uphourarrow 608  
upminutearrow 608  
upsecondarrow 608  
use 540  
use of the ripple  
    technique 154  
usehullsize 592, 596, 599,  
    601  
user-defined data type 9  
using labels to bind events 35  
using print to debug  
    applications 329  
using the Python  
    optimizer 350

## V

valid 564  
validate 112, 115, 561  
validating input 111  
validation 107, 111, 116  
    date 113, 117  
    defining requirements 165  
    errors 113  
    IP address 114, 117  
    social security  
        number 113  
    Social Security  
        numbers 117  
    telephone numbers 117  
    times 117  
validation error 113  
validation function return  
    values 560  
validator 112, 115, 561  
value 521, 561, 607  
value changed callback 150

variable 20, 108, 483, 521,  
    524  
    BooleanVar 108, 152  
    DoubleVar 109, 152  
    get 152  
    IntVar 152  
    set 152  
    StringVar 152, 177, 196  
    textvariable 177  
Variable class 108, 152  
variable data 133  
vertflex 596  
vertfraction 597  
vertical scroll bar 151  
vertscrollbar 593, 597, 600,  
    602  
virtual events binding 420  
virtual machines 232, 346  
virtual reality 338  
Visibility 98  
visibility methods 308  
visual 492, 541  
vscrollmode 593, 597, 599,  
    601

**W**

wait\_variable 440  
wait\_visibility 440  
wait\_window 440  
warning or error  
    messages 141  
webpages 191  
weight 48, 490, 494  
widget  
    alignment 301  
    animation 123, 134  
    behavior 104  
    behavior of ripple  
        function 154  
    Button 453  
    Canvas 456  
    Canvas Arc 468  
    Canvas bitmap 470  
    Canvas image 471

Canvas line 472  
Canvas oval 474  
Canvas polygon 476  
Canvas rectangle 477  
Canvas text 478  
Canvas window 480  
Checkbutton 481  
classes 120  
common methods 433  
composites 120, 136  
data verification 111  
default value 154  
Entry 484  
events 104  
Font class 489  
formatted 117  
Frame 491  
hex nut 131  
hierarchy 16  
inherited methods 310  
Label 495  
LED 200  
lift 242  
Listbox 497  
mapping 383  
master 78, 79  
Menu 501  
Menubutton 506  
Message 508  
notebook 172  
nut 131  
OptionMenu 510  
options shared by most  
    widgets 426  
overriding default  
    behavior 106  
PhotoImage class 512  
Radiobutton 519  
raise 242  
relief 124  
reverse video 107  
Scale 522  
Scrollbar 525  
setting background  
    color 154

widget (continued)  
  slave 78, 79  
  smart 117  
  smart widget 340  
  special 120  
  Text 528  
  textvariable 152  
  Toplevel 539  
  tree 181  
  validation 107  
  variable 152  
    wm methods 446  
widget appearance 17  
widget common methods  
  after 433  
  after\_cancel 434  
  after\_idle 434  
  bell 434  
  bind 434  
  bind\_class 434  
  bindtags 434  
  cget 434  
  clipboard\_append 434  
  clipboard\_clear 435  
  destroy 435  
  event\_add 435  
  event\_delete 435  
  event\_generate 435  
  event\_info 435  
  focus\_display 435  
  focus\_force 436  
  focus\_lastfor 436  
  focus\_set 436  
  getboolean 436  
  getvar 436  
  grab\_current 436  
  grab\_release 436  
  grab\_set\_global 436  
  grab\_status 437  
  image\_names 437  
  keys 437  
  lower 437  
  mainloop 437  
  nametowidget 437  
  option\_add 437

option\_clear 437  
option\_get 437  
option\_readfile 438  
quit 438  
selection\_clear 438  
selection\_get 438  
selection\_handle 438  
selection\_own 438  
selection\_own\_get 438  
send 438  
setvar 439  
tk\_bisque 439  
tk\_focusFollowsMouse  
  439  
tk\_focusNext 439  
tk\_menuBar 439  
tk\_setPallette 439  
tk\_strictMotif 439  
tkraise 440  
unbind 440  
unbind\_all 440  
unbind\_class 440  
update 440  
update\_idletasks 440  
wait\_variable 440  
wait\_visibility 440  
wait\_window 440  
widget options  
  activebackground 428  
  activeforeground 428  
  anchor 428  
  background 426  
  bd 426  
  bg 426  
  bitmap 428  
  borderwidth 426  
  command 429  
  cursor 426  
  disabledforeground 429  
  fg 426  
  font 426  
  foreground 426  
  height 429  
  highlightbackground 426  
  highlightcolor 426  
highlightthickness 426  
image 429  
justify 429  
padx 430  
pady 430  
relief 427  
selectbackground 430  
selectborderwidth 430  
selectforeground 430  
state 431  
takefocus 427  
text 431  
textvariable 431  
underline 431  
width 427  
wraplength 432  
xscrollcommand 432  
yscrollcommand 433  
Widget.bind 246  
width 427, 453, 464, 515,  
  518  
window 480  
  background color 341  
  behavior 307  
  controlling ability to resize  
    window 308  
  controls 307  
  decoration 307  
  destroying 94  
  dynamic creation 78  
  focus 300  
  getting the current  
    state 308  
  grab 97  
  hiding a window 308  
  icon 308  
  information 417  
  menu 307  
  maximum size 308  
  minimum size 308  
  naming an icon 309  
  resizing 91  
  setting a color bitmap 309  
  setting two-color  
    icon 309

sizing a window 81  
title 307  
visibility 308  
window appearance 307  
window boundary 97  
window coordinates 91  
window decoration 307  
window manager 14, 78, 300,  
    306, 419  
    dtwm 306  
    mwm 306  
    negotiation 78  
    ovwm 306  
    positioning windows 307  
    sizing windows 307  
    wm.geometry 81  
window options 392  
window\_cget 537  
window\_configure 537  
window\_create 43, 538  
window\_names 538  
Windows  
    binary distribution 614  
    coordinates 91  
    events 96  
    linking dynamically 318  
    linking statically 317  
    message 96  
    source distribution 614  
Windows SDK 16  
winfo  
    winfo\_atom 440  
    winfo\_atomname 441  
    winfo\_cells 441  
    winfo\_children 441  
    winfo\_class 441  
    winfo\_colormapfull 441  
    winfo\_containing 441  
    winfo\_exists 441  
    winfo\_fpixels 441  
    winfo\_geometry 442  
    winfo\_height 442  
    winfo\_id 442  
    winfo\_interps 442  
    winfo\_ismapped 442  
    winfo\_manager 442  
    winfo\_name 442  
    winfo\_parent 442  
    winfo\_pathname 442  
    winfo\_pixels 443  
    winfo\_pointerx 443  
    winfo\_pointery 443  
    winfo\_pointery 443  
    winfo\_reqwidth 443  
    winfo\_rgb 130, 443  
    winfo\_rootx 443  
    winfo\_rooty 443  
    winfo\_screen 444  
    winfo\_screencells 444  
    winfo\_screendepth 444  
    winfo\_screenheight 444  
    winfo\_screenmmheight  
        444  
    winfo\_screenmmwidth  
        444  
    winfo\_screenvisual 444  
    winfo\_screenwidth 444  
    winfo\_server 444  
    winfo\_toplevel 444  
    winfo\_viewable 444  
    winfo\_visual 444  
    winfo\_visualid 445  
    winfo\_visualsavailable  
        445  
    winfo\_vrootheight 445  
    winfo\_vrootwidth 445  
    winfo\_vrootx 445  
    winfo\_vrooty 445  
    winfo\_width 445  
    winfo\_x 445  
    winfo\_y 445  
Winfo methods 417  
winfo\_atom 440  
winfo\_atomname 441  
winfo\_cells 441  
winfo\_children 441  
winfo\_class 441  
winfo\_colormapfull 441  
winfo\_containing 441  
winfo\_exists 441  
winfo\_fpixels 441  
winfo\_geometry 442  
winfo\_height 442  
winfo\_id 442  
winfo\_interps 442  
winfo\_ismapped 442  
winfo\_manager 442  
winfo\_name 442  
winfo\_parent 442  
winfo\_pathname 442  
winfo\_pixels 255, 443  
winfo\_pointerx 443  
winfo\_pointery 443  
winfo\_pointery 443  
winfo\_reqwidth 443  
winfo\_rgb 130, 294, 443  
winfo\_rootx 443  
winfo\_rooty 443  
winfo\_screen 444  
winfo\_screencells 444  
winfo\_screendepth 444  
winfo\_screenheight 444  
winfo\_screenmmheight 444  
winfo\_screenmmwidth 444  
winfo\_screenvisual 444  
winfo\_screendepth 444  
winfo\_screenheight 444  
winfo\_screenmmheight 444  
winfo\_screenmmwidth 444  
winfo\_screenvisual 444  
winfo\_screenwidth 444  
winfo\_server 444  
winfo\_toplevel 444  
winfo\_viewable 444  
winfo\_visual 444  
winfo\_visualid 445  
winfo\_visualsavailable 445  
winfo\_vrootheight 445  
winfo\_vrootwidth 445  
winfo\_vrootx 445  
winfo\_vrooty 445  
winfo\_width 239, 293, 445  
winfo\_x 445  
winfo\_y 445  
withdraw 147, 308, 451  
withdrawn 308  
withtag 257  
wizards 184–190  
wm 306, 446–451  
    aspect 446

wm (continued)  
  client 446  
  colormapwindows 446  
  command 447  
  deiconify 447  
  focusmodel 447  
  frame 447  
  geometry 447  
  group 448  
  iconbitmap 448  
  iconmask 448  
  iconname 448  
  iconposition 448  
  iconwindow 449  
  maxsize 449  
  minsize 449  
  overrideredirect 449  
  positionfrom 450  
  protocol 450  
  resizable 450  
  sizefrom 450  
  state 451  
  title 451  
  transient 451  
  withdraw 451  
  wm\_iconify 448  
wm methods 310

wm operations 419  
wm.geometry 81  
WM\_DELETE\_WINDOW 309, 310  
wm\_iconify 448  
WM\_SAVE\_YOURSELF 309, 310  
WM\_TAKE\_FOCUS 309, 310  
worker\_thread 366  
wrap 531  
wraplength 432  
write  
  file 515  
writing a Python extension 313  
www.python.org 611, 614, 616  
www.scriptics.com 611

**X**

x 464, 518  
X Window behavior 77  
X Window system 13  
X Window System font descriptors 47  
.Xdefaults 49  
xoffset 545

xscrollcommand 432  
xscrollincrement 458  
XtAppAddInput 370  
XtAppAddTimeOut 369  
XtAppAddWorkProc 369  
xview 252, 488  
xview\_moveto 467, 488, 500, 538  
xview\_scroll 467, 488, 500, 538

**Y**

yoffset 545  
yposition 506  
yscrollcommand 252, 433, 458, 498, 532  
yscrollincrement 458  
yview 252  
yview\_moveto 467, 501, 538  
yview\_pickplace 538  
yview\_scroll 467, 501, 538

**Z**

zoom 515

# Python and Tkinter Programming

John E. Grayson

Tkinter (pronounced tea-kay-inter), the GUI package bundled with the Python programming language, is a clean, object-oriented interface to the Tcl/Tk graphical toolkit. It enables you to quickly write GUI code that runs with a native look and feel on Unix, Macintosh, and Windows.

*Python and Tkinter Programming* is a detailed introduction that carefully leads you through the landscape. It makes Tkinter's capabilities available to any reader who knows the basics of Python. It gives you real-world code that does real work—no toy examples. And it documents Tkinter in a reference section that you will find often helpful and always easy to use.

Everything you need to add graphics to your applications is here, from a gentle introduction, to hard-working examples, to comprehensive, keyboard-side reference material.

## What's inside

- A master's advice on creating knock-out interfaces
- Graphs, blobs, rubber-lines, trees, machines, threads, ...
- Controls such as drawn interfaces, photorealistic panels, and many more
- How to debug in Python and how to tune performance
- Reference section with all classes, methods, options

**John Grayson** can recite by heart any scene from *Monty Python and the Holy Grail*. He has a Ph.D. in molecular biology and has been putting Python to work since 1993. He has built large-scale Python applications and innovative user-interfaces for state governments, airlines, and telecommunication companies.

“Packed with well-explained examples that teach good Python habits.”

—Guido van Rossum  
Inventor of Python

“This book is a winner. I'll be recommending it to a lot of readers.”

—Cameron Laird  
Columnist, *SunWorld's Regular Expressions*

“Some very cool material is covered here, which takes one well beyond the 'yet another collection of the same old buttons and sliders' stuff.”

—Garry Hodgson  
Technology Consultant

“Using chapters from this book, interns here at General Dynamics were producing knockout GUIs in a week ...”

—Gordon Smith  
General Dynamics



Author responds on the Web  
to questions from our readers  
[www.manning.com/grayson](http://www.manning.com/grayson)



\$49.95 US/\$72.95 Canada

ISBN 1-884777-81-3